00037695

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 26 June, 2018

Timur-Bec. The Europeans have form'd the name of Tamerlain and Tambourlan, out of Timur-Lenc, which is compos'd of his true name, and a ridiculous nick-name. As Timur-Bec had conquer'd the Turks and Arabians of Syria, and had even taken the Sultan Bajazet priſoner, it is no wonder that he has been miſrepreſented by the hiſtorians of thoſe nations, who, in deſpite of truth, and againſt the dignity of hiſtory, have fallen into great exceſſes upon this ſubject[6]. We find by reading Condemir, and ſeveral other hiſtorians, that what they have written concerning the origin and adventures of Timur-Bec, are mere fables, which their prejudice againſt this prince put 'em upon inventing. Wherefore ſetting aſide the fable, we will keep to the name of Timur-Bec, and drop the ſuppoſititious name of Tamerlain.

III. The method obſerv'd in this tranſlation.

We come now to ſpeak of this tranſlation, and the copy from which it was done. When M. Petis de la Croix was in the Levant, he was very diligent in attaining a knowledg of the beſt authors. It was not long before he heard of our hiſtorian, from thoſe learned men with whom he convers'd: and he ſoon found the value of it, when he perus'd it himſelf, as he ſays, with a ſingular ſatisfaction. When he was at Iſpahan, the capital of Perſia, he purchas'd a very handſom copy, which he brought to Paris, and ex-

[6] Theſe prejudic'd hiſtorians have invented the fable of the iron-cage, in which they ſay our conqueror put Bajazet: and they have been follow'd in this by ſeveral Europeans. But we ſee the folly of this in our author his contemporary, who on the contrary tells us, that Timur always treated Bajazet as his equal, and render'd him all the honors due to the greateſt princes.

plain'd

plain'd ſeveral paſſages of it to M. Colbert. This miniſter conceiv'd ſo great an idea of it, and judg'd of its worth ſo well, by the account which M. de la Croix gave him, that he order'd him to tranſlate it into French. He accordingly began it, but was interrupted by the voyages[7] and negotiations, which the king order'd him to perform, and in which he was employ'd for ſeveral years. Therefore not being able to finiſh his tranſlation before the death of M. Colbert, he preſented it to the marquis of Seignelay. This miniſter, whoſe penetration and fine genius are known to all the world, found the matter of this hiſtory ſo delightful, that he judg'd it worthy of the king's knowledg and peruſal. His majeſty was pleas'd to hear the moſt beautiful paſſages of it read by this miniſter, who had diſcover'd a conformity between the great actions of the Gallic hero, and thoſe of the Tartarian conqueror, abating the exceſs of rigor and ſeverity, which he cou'd not but acknowledg and blame in the latter *.

---

[7] His voyages, which were eleven in all, were in the fleets which the king ſent ſeveral years together againſt the republics of Barbary, and the ports dependent on Morocco, when his majeſty reſolv'd to reduce 'em to reaſon, and make 'em demand a peace; as they have ſince done. There is a ſhort account of theſe voyages at the end of this preface.

* The reader is left to judg what color the French editor had for paying this compliment to Lewis XIV. for tho Timur might perſecute thoſe who did not believe in MAHOMET, in caſe they ſubmitted not to him; yet we don't find he ever perſecuted any of the followers of that prophet, tho differing from himſelf in ſome points of doctrine: while 'tis notorious, that Lewis rais'd bloody perſecutions againſt vaſt numbers who believ'd in JESUS CHRIST, altho they were his own ſubjects, willing to live quietly under him; nay, had been inſtrumental in ſetting the crown upon his head.

M.

M. DE LA CROIX made a literal verſion of his author, which he plac'd over-againſt the Perſian text: but however prejudic'd he was in favor of a language, which was in a manner natural to him (as he us'd to ſay) and which he extremely lov'd; yet he foreſaw the French reader cou'd never digeſt the figurative and frequent poetic expreſſions of the Perſian ſtyle, with which this work is every where intermix'd. The truth of the hiſtory, and the moſt beautiful thoughts, we find wrap'd up in ſtrain'd metaphors, which our manners and the genius of our language can't bear. This hiſtorian in that has conform'd to the way of writing of his countrymen, us'd to the boldeſt hyperboles and metaphors: beſides that he wrote for people of the ſame taſte and humor, and his ſubject was ſuſceptible of all the moſt rich and beautiful ornaments of the Perſian language and poetry, we may ſay that he hath diſplay'd in this work all the vivacity which the Orientals affect in their expreſſions. But all this is ſo foreign to our genius, that tho M. de la Croix paid a decent reſpect to expreſſions of that nature in the ſacred writings, and even bore with ſomething like them in the ſtyle of Homer; yet he would not tire the reader's patience with thoſe flouriſhes of Tartarian rhetoric.

HE therefore thought it beſt to make his verſion truly French, that is, rather to give the ſenſe and thoughts of his author, than his turns and expreſſions, always retrenching what is not conformable to the taſte of our nation: and in doing ſo, he hath met with the approbation of ſeveral learned men.

THE Mahometan writers are oblig'd by their law to place the name of God at the beginning of all their works, to give praiſe to God, and after-

00037695

afterwards to bleſs Mahomet [8], whom they uſually call the ſeal of the prophets, believing none other will come after him. M. de la Croix wou'd not tranſlate this form, with which the author begins his diſcourſe, or his introduction to the hiſtory: and he has alſo ſuppreſs'd the elogium which he makes on God in Perſian poetry, after having firſt done it in proſe; and another elogium [9] on Mahomet, to whom he gives very pompous titles. This is all too full of figures, and of a very great length. In fine, in this part of the work, which is a ſort of preface of the hiſtorian, M. de la Croix has retrench'd what appear'd too allegorical and foreign, that he might come to the eſſential part of the diſcourſe, and enter as ſoon as poſſible upon the principal ſubject.

THESE are the reaſons which have engag'd our tranſlator to follow in his verſion the method we have mention'd: which reaſons are all taken out of his own papers. It is not to be thought that they who are fondeſt of the literal tranſlation of an author, wou'd have done otherwiſe, if they had had a like piece to tranſlate.

IV. The Mogul epocha.

IN the ſame papers we find ſome ſhort notes, as to the epocha of the Moguls. As it is neceſſary to the underſtanding of the different epochas in the life of Timur-Bec, we have inſerted them here, according to the deſign of M. Petis de la Croix.

---

[8] They call this falſe prophet the ſaint of ſaints, the ſtrong by way of eminence, the great apoſtle, the royal prophet, the legiſlator, &c.

[9] The author's preface likewiſe contains a figurative elogium on Timur-Bec; which ſignifys nothing more than that he is going to begin the hiſtory of his hero, whom he ſtyles the conqueror of the univerſe.

THE

THE Moguls divide their time by cycles of twelve years, to each of which years they give the name of an animal, always beginning to count and name them in the ſame manner, as will eaſily be underſtood by this ſmall table.

Mogul years.	Chriſtian years.	Mahometan years.
The Mouſe	1369	771
The Ox	1370	772
The Leopard	1371	773
The Hare	1372	774
The Crocodile	1373	775
The Serpent	1374	776
The Horſe	1375	777
The Sheep	1376	778
The Monkey	1377	779
The Hen	1378	780
The Dog	1379	781
The Hog	1380	782

THE Perſians to this preſent time make uſe of this epocha, eſpecially in their regiſters and public acts. Their copper-coins alſo bear the figure of the animal, which anſwers to the year they were ſtamp'd in. As to the origin of this epocha, call'd either Catayan, and Yugurian, or Turkiſh, Tartarian, and Mogul; we learn from Oulouc-Bec, ſon of Charoc, ſon of Timur-Bec, a learned prince, and the greateſt aſtrologer of his time, that the aſtronomers of China and Turkeſtan conſtituted a cycle of twelve animals, as well for their years, as for their days, and parts of days, to which they gave the names ſpecify'd in the table above: and he profeſſes that he is ignorant both of the origin and conſtitution of this epocha. M. de la Croix refers thoſe who

are

are deſirous to look farther into this matter, to Mr. John Greaves a learned Engliſhman, upon the moſt noted epochas handed down by Oulouc-Bec, printed at London in 1650.

V. Confirmation of ſome facts in the hiſtory of Timur-Bec by a Chriſtian writer.

AFTER M. Petis de la Croix had finiſh'd the tranſlation of this hiſtory of Timur-Bec, he had the ſight of a Spaniſh book printed at Sevil one hundred and thirty years before, which bears authentic teſtimony to ſome facts related by the Perſian hiſtorian. This book is the relation of a journy and embaſſy of Ruy Gonzales de Clavijo, who was ſent ambaſſador extraordinary to Timur-Bec by Henry III. king of Caſtile; of which embaſſy our Perſian hiſtorian makes mention. This ambaſſador in his relation gives an account of another embaſſy from the ſame king to the ſame Tartar emperor, which preceded his. In the firſt were two ambaſſadors, one nam'd Payo Gomez de Sotomayor, and the other Herman Sanchez de Palacuelos, both gentlemen of the king's houſhold. They had a very handſom reception from Timur-Bec, and were at the battel wherein the Ottoman emperor Bajazet was taken priſoner. Timur-Bec made 'em ſeveral preſents; and when he ſent 'em back, he order'd a great lord of his court, nam'd Mehemet Alcagi, to accompany 'em, in quality of his ambaſſador to the king of Caſtile, giving him a letter for this prince, with abundance of rich preſents. The letter contain'd compliments and marks of friendſhip, and gave advice of the victory lately obtain'd againſt Bajazet, and the cauſe of that war, appealing to the Caſtilian ambaſſadors as witneſſes of that great action. Among the preſents were two ladys of very great beauty, taken out of Bajazet's ſeraglio after his defeat; one of whom was daughter of count

John

John an Hungarian prince, and niece to the king of Hungary, nam'd Dona Angelina de Grecia; and the other was a Greek nam'd Dona Maria. Theſe ladys were reſpected at the court of Caſtile, and met with a fortune ſutable to their quality: Dona Angelina marry'd Diego Gonzales de Contreras, regidor of Segovia; and Dona Maria eſpous'd Payo Gomez de Sotomayor, one of the ambaſſadors. The tomb of the former is yet to be ſeen in the principal chappel of St. John of Segovia; the other is inter'd in a monaſtery three leagues from Pontevedra.

In the mean while the Tartar ambaſſador having acquitted himſelf of his commiſſion, the king of Caſtile ſent a ſecond embaſſy to Timur-Bec, the chief of which was this Ruy Gonzalez de Clavijo, a gentleman of his bed-chamber, author of the Spaniſh [1] book, we have mention'd, and from whom all theſe facts are taken. He departed from Madrid, accompany'd by two collegues and the Tartarian ambaſſador, the 21ſt of May 1403, and he return'd into Spain the 24th of March 1406. After having related his journy thro Natolia and Perſia, as far as Samarcand, he gives us the particulars of his firſt audience, and afterwards deſcribes the magnificent

[1] The title of it is, *Hiſtoria del gran Tamerlan, e itinerario y enarracion del viage, y relacion de la embaxada que Ruy Gonçalez de Clavijo le hizo per mandado del muy poderoſo ſennor rey don Henrique al tercero de Caſtilla, &c. En Sevilla* 1582.

In Engliſh,

The hiſtory of Tamerlain the great; and a journal or narration of a voyage, or relation of an embaſſy which Ruy Gonçalez de Clavijo perform'd by command of the moſt potent prince Henry III. king of Caſtile. At Sevil 1582.

feaſts

feaſts and banquets, which Timur-Bec gave on the marriage of his children, and to which theſe ambaſſadors were invited: which is entirely conformable to what the Perſian hiſtorian ſays upon that matter. The ſingle point, in which the Spaniſh relation varys from the Perſian hiſtory, is on the ſubject of the audience of leave. The Caſtilian ambaſſador aſſures us that he never had one, becauſe Timur-Bec, as he ſays, died in that city about this time: when according to our author, the ambaſſadors of Spain and Egypt had their audience of leave, and were ſent back with a great many rich preſents; and after their departure Timur-Bec ſet out himſelf for Samarcand to wage war in China, and did not die till ſix months after in the town of Otrar, beyond the Jaxartes, on the road to China. If we may ſuſpect the ambaſſador of a great king, of having baſe and ſelf-intereſted views, we may here ſay that the Spaniſh lord might perhaps have his reaſons for concealing from the king his maſter this laſt audience, and ſuppreſs it in his relation. However it be, this contradiction cannot eaſily be reconcil'd at this diſtance of time.

VI. The ſtudys and negotiations of M. Petis de la Croix, in the king's ſervice.

We have promis'd in the former part of this preface to give a ſhort account of the ſtudys of M. Petis de la Croix, and of his voyages and negotiations, wherein he was employ'd by the king. We will begin with his voyage to the Levant, which he undertook, only to make a progreſs in the learning of that country.

M. Petis de la Croix the father, who had been ſecretary and interpreter to the king from the year 1650, and had worthily executed the ſame for forty-five years, having learnt that M. Colbert, miniſter and ſecretary of ſtate, had a deſign to ſend into the Levant a young man

man, to gain a perfect knowledg of the language, manners, hiſtory, ſciences, arts, and religion of the Orientals, recommended his own ſon to him; who, beſides his great progreſs in the eaſtern languages, knew moſt of thoſe things which were neceſſary for a perſon who wou'd travel with advantage, as the mathematics, geography, aſtronomy, muſic, drawing, &c. The miniſter conſented; and ſent him, by the king's order, into Syria, Perſia and Turky. To this end he left Paris in the year 1670: and, tho not quite ſixteen years old, yet well furniſh'd by the wiſe counſels and learned inſtructions of his father, and a good meaſure of piety and virtue which he had always a regard to, he embark'd at Thoulon; and after a dangerous voyage landing at Alexandretta, he went from thence to Aleppo, where he ſtaid ſeveral years. He was afterwards at Iſpahan, the capital and reſidence of the kings of Perſia; and after that at Conſtantinople. We may naturally ſuppoſe that he made choice of theſe three citys for his reſidence; becauſe in them a perſon meets with all the helps, which can be deſir'd to advance his ſtudys. He there tranſlated into French ſeveral oriental pieces, and ſome French books into the oriental languages. The life of the French king as far as 1673, and his campain in 1672, which he publiſh'd in Arabic, made a great noiſe in thoſe countrys: every one was willing to have copys of 'em, and they were diſpers'd thro a great part of the eaſt. During his ſtay at Aleppo, the ſieur Dupont, French conſul in that city, made uſe of him in carrying on the king's affairs; as did afterwards meſſieurs de Nointel

and de Guilleragues, ambaſſadors from France to the Port.

AFTER ten years ſtay in the Levant, M. Colbert conſented to his return home: he arriv'd at Paris at the end of 1680, and gave that miniſter an exact account of his whole voyage, and the commiſſions ſent to him into the Levant from court. The king himſelf was pleas'd to hear him explain ſome of the oriental books (of which there are great numbers in the royal library) when his majeſty came to Paris to ſee it in 1681.

M. DE LA CROIX, after his return, deſign'd to apply himſelf more than ever to the oriental tongues, and clear the greateſt difficultys in 'em: but the king's affairs call'd him another way. In 1681 he tranſlated the treaty between France and the king of Morocco. In 1682 he was ſent to Morocco with the commiſſion of ſecretary and interpreter in the royal navy, and in quality of ſecretary to M. de Saint-Amand, ambaſſador from his majeſty to Moula Iſmael king of Morocco. He pronounc'd the ambaſſador's ſpeech in Arabic before that prince, in ſo elegant and polite a ſtyle, that both he and his whole court declar'd, that he underſtood and ſpoke their language with more purity and politeneſs than themſelves, tho in this kingdom it is ſpoke beſt. That prince had ſeveral converſations with him in the night, on the grandeur of the king and kingdom of France, and upon hiſtory, and religion.

THE two following years, meſſieurs du Queſne, de Tourville, and d' Amfreville, lieutenants-general of his majeſty's fleets, ſucceſſively beg'd of him to accompany 'em in the war againſt the republic of Algiers; with which generals he made

made ſeven voyages. He ſerv'd there in the negotiation for peace in 1684, and tranſlated the treaty into the Turkiſh language, which he read in a full Divan. He caus'd the title of Padiſcha, which ſignifys emperor, to be inſerted in the regiſters of Algiers, inſtead of Cral, which ſignifys a petty prince, the title they had given to the French king till that time. One of the conditions of the treaty was, that the republic of Algiers ſhou'd ſend a ſolemn embaſſy to beg his majeſty's pardon. M. de la Croix accompany'd this ambaſſador, nam'd Safar, into France, and explain'd to the king the famous harangue, wherein this ambaſſador, in the name of the Divan, did in effect beg pardon. It has been printed in many parts of Europe, and been the ſubject of a medal which was ſtruck upon it, with this motto, *Africa ſupplex.*

In 1685 he accompany'd another envoy of Algiers, nam'd Boudarba, into France, and pronounc'd his compliment to the king, when the ſaid ambaſſador preſented his majeſty with twenty-five beautiful Barbary horſes from the Dey Mezomorto.

The ſame year he embark'd in the ſquadron which the king ſent twice to Tunis, under the command of the marſhal d'Eſtrées. Theſe infidels deſir'd a peace, which was granted 'em. M. de la Croix tranſlated the conditions, and publiſh'd 'em in a full Divan, as he had done before at Algiers. We obtain'd by this treaty a reimburſement of three hundred thouſand livres to the king.

From Tunis the fleet was ſent againſt Tripoli in Barbary, where the fear of the king's arms had the ſame ſucceſs as at Tunis and Algiers. The Tripolitans ſued for a peace, and obtain'd

tain'd it. M. de la Croix having ſucceſsfully negotiated it, he tranſlated, read, and publiſh'd the articles in the Divan of Tripoli. By this treaty we obtain'd a reimburſement of ſix hundred thouſand livres. On this occaſion, as on many others, he gave a proof of his fidelity. He was offer'd a conſiderable ſum of money, to put in the treaty crowns of Tripoli, inſtead of crowns of France; which cou'd never have been known, but wou'd have produc'd the difference of more than one hundred thouſand livres. The marſhal d' Eſtrées gave an account of it to the king at his return; as the marquis de Seignelai did of a ſecret negotiation, carry'd on by M. de la Croix alone, with the Arabian princes of the country of Tripoli, to join their forces with the king's at the firſt ſignal, if his majeſty wou'd have permitted that city to be taken.

In 1687 he negotiated a treaty at Morocco, under the duke de Mortemart, with the Alcaid Ali chief miniſter for maritime affairs.

In fine, he manag'd, by the immediate orders of the miniſters and ſecretarys of ſtate, the affairs of the ambaſſadors and envoys of Morocco, Conſtantinople, Algiers, Tunis and Tripoli, who were ſent into France, and explain'd to the king their harangues, compliments, and letters, from 1680 to his death; except in ſome audiences, wherein his father perform'd the ordinary functions of his poſt in his majeſty's ſervice.

It is remarkable, that never any interpreter before M. de la Croix the ſon, tranſlated the anſwers out of French into Arabic, Turkiſh, or Perſian, in a ſtyle eſteem'd in the Levant and Africa, and ſutable to the dignity of our monarch.

narch. This he thought exceeding difficult, and always ſaid he never cou'd have acquir'd it without very great ſtudy.

In 1692, the chancellor having obtain'd for him of the king the Arabic profeſſorſhip in the royal college, and at the ſame time the reverſion of the antient poſt of interpreter to the king in Arabic, Turkiſh, and Perſian, which his father enjoy'd; he did not leave France any more, but entirely apply'd himſelf to the tranſlation of oriental authors. He has left many volumes tranſlated, the moſt conſiderable of which we ſhall mention in a liſt of his works. One of his beſt performances, by which he gain'd the greateſt applauſe, is the hiſtory of the king's medals, which he had orders to tranſlate from French into Perſian, and which was preſented in 1708 to the king of Perſia, by the ſieur Michel, envoy extraordinary from the king to that monarch, who ſhew'd the greateſt eſteem for the tranſlation which ſo fine a work can merit.

M. de la Croix join'd to his knowledg of the Arabic, Turkiſh, Perſian, and Tartar languages, that of the Ethiopian, and Armenian. The former he learnt on occaſion of a long letter from the king of Ethiopia to his majeſty. The king's affairs made him uſe his utmoſt efforts to learn the Armenian, in which he perfectly ſucceeded, but with prejudice to his health; for he died, as he was continuing to tranſlate all the Armenian books which fell into his hands. He certainly had the greateſt knowledg of this language of any man, as well of the learned part, as the vulgar.

THE liſt of his moſt valuable books is as follows.

1. The oriental library [a] of Hadgi-Calfa, Cadi of Conſtantinople, compos'd in Arabic in two volumes in folio; with two tables, one of the matters, and the other of the authors; which likewiſe make two volumes.

2. The hiſtory of all the Mahometan monarchys, by Huſſein Efendi Hezarſen, a modern Turk.

3. The hiſtory of the conqueſt of Syria by the Arabians in the ſeventh century: the author, who is an Arabian, is nam'd Ouakidi.

4. The hiſtory of the Arabians of Spain, from the ſeventh to the fourteenth century.

5. The hiſtory of Morocco, call'd Alcartas, in Arabic, from the ſeventh to the ſixteenth century.

6. The hiſtory of Tunis, from the eleventh to the fifteenth century.

7. A deſcription of the city of Aleppo, tranſlated from the Arabic.

8. A treatiſe of the religion of the Druſes, tranſlated from the Arabic; in two tomes.

9. The geography of Eakouzi an Arabian.

---

[a] This piece alone may undeceive ſeveral people, and even ſome learned men, who believe that the Turks and other Mahometans neglect the ſciences, being deceiv'd by travellers, who being ignorant of the languages, could not converſe with the learned men of the countrys they have gone thro. This library is very different from that which the late M. Herbelot has given under the name of the oriental library, in which there is no connection as to the diſpoſal of the words and matters. This is a true body of all the arts and ſciences in uſe among the Orientals.

10. The

10. The geography of Bin Rabya an Arabian.

11. The voyage of Mir Sidy Aly, admiral of the Ottoman fleet in the Eaſt-Indian ſeas, under the great Solyman; and his return by land to Conſtantinople; in Turkiſh and Tartarian.

12. An hiſtory of the animals of Demiri, in Arabic.

13. A deſcription of the city of Conſtantinople, in Turkiſh.

14. The hiſtory of Algiers, in Turkiſh and French.

15. The hiſtory of Tripoli in Barbary, in Turkiſh.

16. An Arabic grammar, with the vulgar practice, in two volumes.

17. A French and Arabic dictionary.

18. A French and Turkiſh dictionary.

19. A French and Perſian dictionary.

20. A French and Armenian dictionary; and another Armenian and French.

21. The hiſtory of Armenia, tranſlated from Armenian into French.

WE deſign to preſent the public with a journal of the voyages of the late M. Petis de la Croix, the tranſlator of this hiſtory; to which will be join'd a relation of thoſe of M. Petis de la Croix his ſon, who has been ſix years in the Levant by the king's order, and is at preſent ſecretary and interpreter to his majeſty.

WE might have added to this liſt ſeveral other works, ſome of which are wholly tranſlated, and others only in part: but it is ſufficient to have mention'd the principal and moſt important.

THE Author's Preface.

IN THE name of God, whoſe bounty and juſtice extend over all beings. He diſpoſes crowns according to his pleaſure, and grants victory to thoſe whom he judges moſt fit to accompliſh his eternal decrees: he defends and continually advances Mahometaniſm, for the increaſe of his glory: and it is certain that a fortune rais'd by his hand is immovable, and eaſily overcomes all the difficultys which tend to obſtruct it.

SUCH was the fortune of the great and invincible Timur, whoſe hiſtory we undertake. The reader will not be ſurpriz'd at the heroic actions which rais'd him to the ſupreme dignity of emperor of Tartary, and ſubjected all Aſia to him, from the frontiers of China to thoſe of Greece, that is, the countrys of Turky, Tartary, Perſia, India and Syria; when he ſhall be acquainted with the ſublime qualitys with which this prince was endow'd. He was a very pious and religious obſerver of the Mahometan law. He was ſo prudent, that he always govern'd the ſtate himſelf, without having recourſe to a prime miniſter; and he ſucceeded in all his enterprizes, wherein

wherein he had no other end than the glory of God, the increaſe of religion, and the good of the people. He was exceeding liberal and courteous to every one, excepting thoſe who refus'd to obey him, whom he puniſh'd with the utmoſt rigor. He was a great lover of juſtice; and none under his government ever exercis'd violence and tyranny unpuniſh'd. He eſteem'd learning and learned men: and 'twas his conſtant endeavour to render the arts flouriſhing thro-out his empire. He diſcover'd the greatneſs of his ſoul on ſo many occaſions, that it wou'd be needleſs to ſpeak of it here. As to his bravery, he never committed any action unworthy the quality of his anceſtors, who had been all kings or princes: and this hiſtory contains a ſeries of inconteſtable proofs of it. He was fearleſs and courageous, equally capable of forming a great deſign with wiſdom, and of executing it with vigor. He was very kind to his domeſtics; exceeding charitable to the poor and afflicted; and built a great number of hoſpitals, convents of derviſes, and moſques. In fine, one may juſtly ſay, that nothing was wanting in this prince to render him worthy of the glory, to which God was pleas'd to advance him.

TIMUR's father was the wiſe and virtuous prince Emir Tragai, and his mother the chaſte and beautiful Tekine Catun, the lawful wife[1] of the Emir Tragai. He was born in the town of Sebz, ſituate without the walls of the deli-

[1] One need not wonder to hear the author, ſpeaking of Timur's mother, ſay ſhe was the lawful wife of the Emir Tragai; the Mahometans being permitted by their law to have concubines, whoſe children are not accounted legitimate.

cious

cious city of Kech *, capital of the ſaid Emir's dominions, on tueſday-night the fifth of Chaban
An. Dom. of the year of the Hegira 736, which anſwers
1336. to that of the Mouſe in the Mogul calendar, under the reign of the Sultan Cazan, king of Tranſoxiana and Turkeſtan.

THIS prince's birth had been predicted to Cachouli Behader, one of his anceſtors, in a dream, wherein eight ſtars ſeem'd to ſhoot out of him, and the eighth caſt ſo great a ſplendor, that it enlighten'd the four quarters of the world; which Toumene Can, Cachouli's father, interpreted, that a prince of his race ſhou'd be born in the eighth generation who ſhou'd fill the world with the ſplendor of his virtues and conqueſts.

TIMUR's horoſcope, which was drawn at the moment of his nativity, predicted to him the crown and empire, with all manner of proſperity, and a numerous iſſue.

THIS prince from his childhood diſcover'd his excellent diſpoſitions to the accompliſhment of the predictions of his horoſcope: for as ſoon as he attain'd to the age of reaſon, ſomething might be ſeen in all his actions, which ſhew'd an air of ſovereignty: he wou'd talk of nothing but thrones and crowns; his favorite diverſions repreſented the military art, in which he diſpos'd of the youth who attended him, as a prince diſpoſes of his ſubjects, raiſing to the higheſt dignitys thoſe who appear'd moſt deſerving, and giving to others the bare title of ſoldiers; he made figures of canes to repreſent the army of an enemy, and then attack'd 'em with

* A town of Tranſoxiana; long. 99. 30. lat. 38. 38.

his

his troops, among whom he obſerv'd a military diſcipline.

When he was more advanc'd in age, and capable of applying himſelf to the exerciſes of the body, far from chuſing thoſe pleaſures which moſt young perſons fall into, as dancing and the like, which rather effeminate than ennoble the mind, he gave himſelf up to the ſcience of arms. His chief diverſions were riding, racing, fencing, and the like. He was likewiſe often at the chace, the only recreation he took after his continual fatigues.

In theſe noble exerciſes Timur paſs'd that part of his life which preceded his great and wonderful actions, that is, from his tenth year till the twenty-fifth or thereabouts; for at that age ambition having got poſſeſſion of his heart, he began to deſpiſe dangers, to gain victorys, and acquire the name of a great conqueror and intrepid hero. In the midſt of all his glory, he had an admirable conduct over himſelf, and made juſtice the rule of all his actions: he never us'd the privilege which conquerors claim, of treating thoſe ill whom fortune has made their ſlaves; except when his honor was concern'd, or he was oblig'd to it to preſerve his conqueſts.

If Timur was ſo great and noble during the whole courſe of his life, the Mirzas [5] his children did not in the leaſt degenerate from him; eſpecially the great and invincible Charoc his eldeſt * ſon, and ſince his ſucceſſor in the empire, who tho as powerful as Solomon, always made ſuch uſe of his authority, as not to

[5] Mirza ſignifys the ſon of a prince.

* This ſeems to be a miſtake; for by the laſt chapter of the following work, it appears he was Timur's youngeſt ſon.

give

give the leaſt matter of complaint to any of his ſubjects. This prince never addicted himſelf to plays and pleaſures, with which he was conſtantly ſurrounded. His only employment was to take care of the affairs of ſtate, and to render juſtice to his people: and if he was oblig'd to recreate himſelf for ſome hours, he employ'd his time in contemplation, and reading uſeful books; ſo that one may ſay he liv'd the moſt ſolitary life, and free from all manner of vanitys, in the midſt of the tumults of a court. I can't here pretend to give a detail of all the virtues of the great Charoc, and of his ſon the invincible Ibrahim Sultan, who excell'd as well in letters as in arms, and was an admirable writer: wherefore I refer the reader to the ſecond and third parts of this work, where I have related all their great and noble actions *.

To return to our hiſtory: I may venture to ſay it is preferable to all which have been yet written, even of the moſt renown'd conquerors; and that for three reaſons.

The firſt is the knowledg every one may draw from thence, as it will inſtruct 'em in the chronology, geography, and hiſtory of Aſia, and in thoſe virtues, which are proper for the imitation of the greateſt princes. This hiſtory is like a theatre, where fortune is repreſented deriding the policy of men, ſometimes baffling their deſigns at her pleaſure, at other times favoring 'em; ſometimes ſuffering her ſelf to be govern'd by it, at other times deſtroying all the artifices it

* The ſecond and third parts of this work, which the author ſpeaks of, have not been tranſlated; and I believe there are no copys of 'em in France.

makes

makes uſe of, to avoid the dangers to which it is expos'd. In this work we ſee Timur laying the foundations of a monarchy, which at firſt appear'd chimerical in the eyes of the wiſeſt men: yet by degrees he raiſes himſelf above his equals. Sometimes we ſee him in a manner ſeeking his fortune as a private ſoldier; at other times commanding armys and dethroning kings: ſometimes he is oblig'd to quit his conqueſts, and wander about abandon'd by every one; till at length he deprives emperors of their crowns, and is ſettled in the empire of Aſia by the conqueſt of Tartary, India, Perſia, Arabia, Egypt, Natolia, and other kingdoms; all which part of the world became ſubject to his laws. And after theſe noble actions we ſee him quit terreſtrial crowns for immortality, which was his principal aim, and the glorious end to which all theſe enterprizes tended, leaving his empire in a happy and profound peace.

THE ſecond reaſon which may make this work deſerve approbation, is the exactneſs with which the actions of Timur are related, a quality ſeldom to be met with in the hiſtorys of great princes; all his exploits being related even with the minuteſt circumſtances. The author of Timur's life in Turkiſh verſe tells us, that this prince wou'd not permit him to inſert ſome particular facts in his work, fearing they ſhou'd appear fabulous in verſe, and reſerving 'em (as Timur himſelf often ſaid) for this preſent hiſtory.

THE third reaſon why this work ſhou'd be eſteem'd, is, that truth appears in all the facts herein related, and that not the leaſt exaggeration has been us'd. To convince the reader of this, I need only inform him of the method

us'd

us'd in compiling it. Timur had always Tartar and Perſian ſecretarys to attend him, who were ſome of the moſt learned men of his empire, whom he order'd to write down all his actions and diſcourſes, with every circumſtance which might any way relate either to religion, the public, or his miniſters; and all this without the leaſt addition, either to embelliſh the ſtyle, or to ſet off the glory of any of his ſoldiers or generals, by leſſening that of the enemy. And thus this hiſtory, as well as that in Turkiſh verſe, has been compos'd.

Besides, as ſeveral officers and great lords of the court had caus'd ſome particular facts to be wrote down, of which themſelves were eye-witneſſes, having had a conſiderable ſhare in 'em; this prince order'd all theſe fragments to be collected, and had the patience to range 'em in order himſelf, after which he caus'd 'em to be compar'd and examin'd in the following manner. A perſon read over one of theſe papers, and when he was come to ſome remarkable action, the witneſſes verify'd the circumſtances of it, relating 'em exactly as they had ſeen 'em. Then the emperor himſelf examin'd the truth of the fact; and having confronted what the witneſſes ſaid with the contents of the memoirs, he dictated to the ſecretarys the manner in which they ſhou'd inſert the facts in the body of the work, and then order'd it to be read over to him again, to ſee if nothing cou'd be added or taken from it.

The reader will find by what I have ſaid, that this hiſtory has been written with all imaginable fidelity; and that the honor of its compoſition ought to be aſcrib'd to Timur himſelf, ſince he took the trouble of collecting and comparing all the parts of it. The author only

gave

gave the finiſhing ſtroke, adorning it with all the elegance and beautys of the Perſian language, to bring it to its utmoſt perfection.

WHAT is further remarkable in this work, is the exactneſs with which the chronology, and the day and hour of the event, are obſerv'd: all the encampments and roads are alſo remark'd, with the diſtance of one place from another.

LASTLY, as the events are all link'd together, and naturally follow each other; we thought it adviſable to relate ſeveral facts, which preceded the time that Timur-Bec perform'd any thing ſo remarkable, as to deſerve the obſervation of the world, becauſe we ſuppos'd it neceſſary to a perfect knowledg of his hiſtory.

THE

A MAP OF
CAPCHAC,
Part of the Kingdom
of GETE, GEORGIA,
TRANSOXIANA,
MOSCOVY &c.
Scales
Leagues 20 to a Degree
Horary Leagues
Days Journeys
SIBERIA
MUSCOVY
POLAND
LITTLE TARTARY
CIRCASSIA
BLACK SEA
CONSTANTINOPLE
ROUM OR NATOLIA
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
ARMENIA
CURDESTAN
CASPIAN SEA
ASTRACAN
Moscow
Bulgar
Samara
Bashgorod
Tobol
Oby R.
Irtich R.
GETE
TRANSOXIANA
SAMARCAND
COUTHESTAN
ARRAN
Tauris
Trebizond
Herat
Balk
Mt. Turnac

LIBRARY OF THE ROMAN ... OF THE ... ASIATIC

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR-BEC.

BOOK I.

Several events which preceded Timur-Bec's ascending the throne of Zagatai.

CHAP. I.

Of Sultan Cazan, grand Can of Zagatai; his defeat and death. Mir [1] Cazagan, a Turkish Prince, takes upon him the government of the empire, and establishes a grand Can. The war of Mir Cazagan against Malek Hussein, prince of Herat.

IN the year of the Hegira 733, Sultan Cazan [2], the son of Isour Aglen, who sprang from Genghiz Can, ascended the throne of the Cans of Zagatai, (*that is, of the country that was given to Zagatai Can, the son of Gen-*

Chap. I. An. Dom. 1332. Mog. The Hen.

[1] Mir is a contraction of Emir, which among the Eastern nations signifys a chief prince or commander.

[2] He was the 21st of the successors of Zagatai Can.

Book I. *ghiz Can, as his ſhare*[a].) But this Prince being naturally inclin'd to tyranny, carry'd his violence and injuſtice to ſo great a pitch, that the people were reduc'd to deſpair.

His tyranny had ſo far intimidated every one, that when he ſent his orders to the Princes his dependents to come to any place, and particularly to the aſſemblies of the ſtates, which he held, they had ſo little thoughts of returning with their lives, that they commonly made their wills before they went.

This general diſcontent was at length the cauſe that Mir Cazagan, who was one of the moſt conſiderable princes of his time, and of the tribe of Tabit, revolted and join'd ſome other princes of the country to make war on the grand Can; they rais'd troops in [b] Saliſerai, and brought a great army into the field.

The Can had no ſooner receiv'd advice of their march, than he prepar'd to reſiſt them; and when he had got thro a narrow paſſage nam'd Coluga, or the iron gate, the two armys met, and fought in a plain of the village call'd Derry Zenghi, in the year of the Hegira 746.

An. Dom. 1345. Mog. The Dog. The battel was unfortunate to the confederate princes: for Mir Cazagan their leader was wounded by an arrow in his right eye, by Cazan himſelf; and he not only loſt that eye, but was a long time wholly blind.

---

[a] The country given to Zagatai Can, was Tranſoxiana, the country of the Yugures, the great city of Caſchgar near Tebet, the kingdom of Bedakchan, and the city of Balc, which in the opinion of learned men, was the antient Bactria.

[b] A town ſituate on the river Gihon, that is to ſay Oxus.

After

After this expedition Cazan return'd to Carſchi [4], at which place it was ſo very cold this winter, that the greateſt part of the cattel and horſes of the army periſh'd. Mir Cazagan, when he heard of it, loſt no time, but got together his beſt troops, and march'd to attack him even in Carſchi; and was no ſooner arriv'd in the plain belonging to this city, than Cazan began the fight: the grand Can was unfortunately conquer'd, and dy'd in the field of battel, in the year of the Hegira 747 [5], after he had reign'd in Tranſoxiana and Turkeſtan fourteen ſolar years [6]. Chap. I. An. Dom. 1346. Mog. The Hog.

After his death, Mir Cazagan, the chief of the confederates, diſpos'd of the kingdom, and ſet upon the throne a prince of the race of Octai Caan, ſon of Genghiz Can, call'd Dachmendge Aglen [7]; but ſoon after he put him to death, and at laſt advanced to the dignity of grand Can, Beyan Couli Aglen, the ſon of Sorgadou ſon of Dava

---

[4] A city of Tranſoxiana, long. 99. lat. 39. whoſe antient name was Neſef, and alſo Nacſcheb. The name of Carſchi was given it becauſe of the palace which Kepek built there, Carſchi in the Mogul language ſignifying palace. In this place was a well, wherein one might ſee a moon, which the country people believed to be perform'd by magic; tho it was only a porringer of quick-ſilver, which the cunning Ibnel Macaffa had plac'd at the bottom of the well.

[5] We muſt not confound this Cazan Can, who deſcended from Zagatai, with the great Gazan Can, the ſon of Abaca, who ſprang from Hulacou Can, ſecond ſon of Tuli, ſon of Genghiz Can; which Gazan was King of Perſia, and died An. Dom. 1303. Heg. 703.

[6] The Perſians count by ſolar years as well as lunar.

[7] Hezarfen, a modern Turkiſh author, calls him Daneſchmendge Can, the ſon of Iſour Aglen.

Book I. Can [a], who was alſo of the race of Genghiz Can.

This new Can render'd himſelf ſo much the more agreeable to all the people, by his juſtice and liberality, during the ſix years he reign'd, in that they had not yet forgot the tyranny of Sultan Cazan, and had great expectations from the conduct of Mir Cazagan, who had taken upon him the government of the kingdom; which he acquitted with ſo much prudence and equity, in remedying the public diſorders, that his name deſerves to be immortaliz'd in hiſtory.

The moſt remarkable things which happen'd in his time, are, that having brought his army into the field at [b] Arhenk-Serai, he came even unto the gates of Herat [c]. But the better to underſtand the reaſon of this expedition, it is requiſite one ſhou'd know, that from the death of the emperor Abouſaid [d], there had not ſet upon the throne of the empire of Perſia any abſolute prince of the race of Genghiz Can; and that the princes of the Turks, Moguls and Tartars, had no longer the ſovereign authority in Coraſſana; beſides that in the country of Zagatai, at that time, Sultan Cazan, thro the exceſs of his tyranny, had drawn upon him the averſion of the people, as before mention'd.

Battle of Herat.

During this time Malek Huſſein, ſirnam'd Moazeddin, the ſon of Malek Cayaſeddin then

---

[a] Dava Can was the ninth ſucceſſor of Zagatai, and was the ſon of Berrac Can, who died An. Dom. 1260.

[b] A city of the province of Tocareſtan, upon the river Gihon, long. 102. lat. 37.

[c] Capital city of Coraſſana, long. 94. lat. 34.

[d] Abouſaid Can was the eighth ſucceſſor of Hulacou Can, ſecond ſon of Tuli the ſon of Genghiz Can, who reign'd in Perſia, and died An. Dom. 1335.

prince

prince of Herat, whoſe genealogy we have given at length in our *book of preliminaries*, daily ſo far increas'd his authority, that he oblig'd Cheik Haſſan Youry, and the prince Maſſoud, ſirnam'd Vedgidin, king of the Serbedals[1], to march from the fortreſs of Sebzuar with forces to attack him. He prepar'd to give him a warm reception, inſomuch that on the thirteenth of the month Sefer, in the year 743, the two armys met in the territory of Zave[2], where they had a furious battel, in which the army of Malek Huſſein was defeated, and a great number of his ſoldiers kill'd. But this prince got upon an eminence, and made a ſign for the ſtandard to be diſplay'd, and the drum to be beat: at which order only three hundred horſe got together near his perſon. He renew'd their courage by his ſpeeches, and perſuaded 'em to attack the enemys, who were buſy'd in plundering. They obey'd him, and Maſſoud, who deſcry'd 'em, fell preſently upon 'em; Cheik Haſſan follow'd him, but he was kill'd by an arrow ſhot into his ſide by one of his own men, of which he dy'd upon the ſpot. He was an old captain, in whom the young prince Maſſoud very much confided, and had order'd him to retire, leſt by chance he ſhou'd be kill'd in the fight; which misfortune accordingly happen'd. Maſſoud fled, and ſo the army of Malek became victorious, after having been conquer'd; they put all the Serbedals to the ſword, and made a total plunder of their camp. This victory render'd Malek Huſſein ſo proud, that Chap. 1.

[1] The Serbedals were petty kings of Sebzuar in Coraſſana, who had revolted at the death of Sultan Abouſaid, and had form'd a ſmall kingdom.

[2] A Town in Coraſſana between Herat and Sebzuar.

Book I. tho he knew his anceſtors had never enjoy'd any thing in Herat but by the particular favor and protection of the kings and princes of the race of Genghiz Can, yet he acted the part of a ſovereign, and affected thoſe diſtinctions which belong to kings, ſuch as having the kettle-drums beat five times a day, and ſetting up the imperial ſtandard upon his tent. Nay, he further ſhew'd his raſhneſs; for he many times brought his troops into the field, and made inroads as far as the frontiers of Andecoud and Cheburgan [5].

Theſe outrages oblig'd even his relations, who were very much diſcontented with him, to complain to the prince Mir Cazagan, who by his good conduct, moderation and virtue, reſtored the empire of Zagatai to its former ſplendor. The princes of Erlat and Aperdi, with whom Malek Huſſein had made war, failed not to join their complaints with the others; they in a lively manner repreſented to Cazagan the pride of this prince. "What! ſaid they, "is the race of Genghiz Can extinguiſh'd? "is there no further notice taken of the royal "majeſty? This upſtart of Gour [6] does not "know himſelf, and believes there is no one "above him."

Mir Cazagan gave attention to theſe complaints, and enquir'd into the truth of 'em; he then ſpake to 'em in theſe terms: "Shall a "private man ſet himſelf up for king, and throw "off the allegiance due to emperors? We will "diſpute with the ſword the pride of this au-

[5] Citys of Coraſſana near Balc, long. 100 ½. lat. 36 ½.
[6] A little kingdom, N. of Siſtan, S. of Raver, E. of Herat, and W. of Bamian. Its capital is Zouf, long. 99. lat. 33.

"dacious

" dacious perſon; and after having ruin'd his Chap. 1.
" towns and fortreſſes, we will make a river
" as big as the Gihon, with the blood of his
" ſcoundrel ſoldiers."

For this purpoſe he ſent orders into all the provinces for the troops to croſs over the river Gihon, and march to the appointed rendezvous; after which he went to join the grand Can Beyan Couli and the princes of the empire [7], at the head of whom he march'd towards Herat.

This news coming to the ears of Malek Huſſein, he ſent an Emir with three hundred horſe to know the truth of it, ordering him to advance as far as he cou'd for that purpoſe, but to return immediately if he found the army of Zagatai had paſs'd the river Gihon. This Emir had no ſooner croſs'd over the river Morgab, than he found that the Tartar army had paſs'd the Gihon; for which reaſon he ſoon return'd to give notice of it to Malek, and thus addreſs'd himſelf to him: " Cazagan
" the general of the Turks [8], is upon his arrival;
" he hath brought his army from Tartary into
" Perſia; the vaſt number of arms and the inſtru-
" ments of war he has with him, have rais'd the
" duſt up to heaven; and the people ſay, when
" they ſee the glittering of his ſoldiers armour,
" that he has uſed all his power to furniſh the
" empire of Tartary with iron." On this ad-

[7] The names of the chief princes of the empire of Zagatai are, Emir Beyan Selduz, Mehemed Coja Aperdi, Setilmich, Oladgia Itou Aperdi, Abdalla ſon of Taifou, and the kings of Bedakchan.

[8] The names of the Turks, Tartars, Moguls and Zagataians, are here uſed promiſcuouſly.

Book I. vice Malek having ſummon'd his council, which conſiſted of the princes, the generals of the army, and the principal lords of his kingdom, made this ſpeech: "There hath march'd "from the country of the Tartars into Perſia "ſo numerous an army, that even the ſun is "obſcur'd by the duſt they have rais'd; it is "compos'd of men who in an aſſault are as "firm as rocks, and when they ſee their ene-"mys give way, they reſemble the torrents "which ſwiftly fall from the tops of mountains. "Theſe undaunted perſons put not on their "helmets, before they have reſolv'd to ſacrifice "their lives to the honor of a victory."

Hereupon each perſon deliver'd his ſentiments: and becauſe the Tartar army was not only more numerous than that of Herat, which conſiſted of only four thouſand horſe, with about fifteen thouſand foot, but alſo more accuſtom'd to war, and more dextrous at fighting a pitch'd battel; Malek Huſſein thought it not adviſable that his army ſhou'd remain in the city, nor under covert of the citadel, nor in the ſtreets and gardens of the ſuburbs, leſt they ſhould diſcover fear. The more to ſurprize their enemies, it was reſolv'd to bring 'em into the field, to meet the Tartars, and firſt engage with 'em, if poſſible; and that in the mean time they ſhou'd build a wall to the eaſt of the city, which ſhou'd be fortify'd with large ditches from Paymorc to Kedeſtan. Immediately every one prepar'd himſelf to execute theſe reſolutions, and the arms and all things neceſſary for the battel were remov'd out of the city.

The army got ready; and Malek Huſſein fail'd not to harangue his ſoldiers, and excite them to fight like brave men, when they ſhou'd be call'd to it. He told them it was not the

great

great number of ſoldiers which render'd armys victorious, but courage and conduct; and if they were poſſeſt of thoſe two qualitys, they might aſſure themſelves that their enemys would ſoon find the world it-ſelf too little for their ſecurity. Chap. 1.

In the mean time Mir Cazagan paſſed the narrow paſſage of Pachnan, and came down to Kedeſtan with his army, which conſiſted of valiant ſoldiers; and the next morning he took horſe with the Can, and the princes Oladgia Itou, Setilmich, and others: they went near the camp of the enemy, got upon a riſing ground, and ſtrictly view'd the army of Malek Huſſein. After that Mir Cazagan ſaid, "This novice underſtands not the rules of mi-"litary art; and the place which he hath cho-"ſen to encamp in, will ſoon be the cauſe of "the defeat of his army, for two reaſons: one "is, that in the battel his men will be oblig'd "to aſcend to meet us, while we ſhall deſcend: "and the other is, that when the ſun ſhall "appear, they will have the rays in their eyes, "and will not be able to ſee thoſe who come "againſt 'em." Mir Cazagan, and the other lords, came down from the eminence, almoſt aſſur'd of the victory. The next day they rang'd their army in form of a half-moon; and after the prince had harangu'd his ſoldiers, they march'd towards the city, and at length arriv'd in the field of battel which Malek Huſſein had pitch'd on. Then Mir Cazagan aſcended another eminence, from whence he openly ſaw the two armys, and immediately order'd his ſoldiers to advance towards the enemy.

The Tartars inſtantly fell upon the army of Malek Huſſein; but the attack was ſuſtained vigo-

Book I. vigorouſly, and the fight was bloody: they cry'd out, *Sela!* in both the armys; that is, let no quarter be given. Every one ſhew'd his valor and ſtrength, and the field was ſoon cover'd with blood, bucklers, helmets, and lances, mix'd with the dead, who every moment fell from their horſes. At length the army of Malek Huſſein, after a long and vain defence, was put to flight: and as that prince had drawn together a large quantity of water behind his camp, to hinder his men from running away, a great many periſh'd in the mire; and the reſt were purſu'd by the Tartars, who made a horrible ſlaughter of 'em.

Malek Huſſein retreated with great difficulty into the city of Herat, attended only by his guards, who made themſelves maſters of the by-ſtreets and gardens which join'd the city; while Mir Cazagan, flush'd with the victory he had obtain'd, return'd to his camp with the Tartar princes.

From this time the army of Herat did not once ſally out of the city; and the next day Mir Cazagan approach'd it, and began to beſiege it in form: his brave ſoldiers had skirmiſhes every day with the beſieg'd; and even in the night they aſſaulted it on all ſides by the light of fires.

The ſiege laſted forty days; the place was briskly attack'd, and vigorouſly defended: but at length Malek Huſſein, weary with delaying, and conſidering the city as his priſon; aſſembled the princes and lords of his council, to conſult about obtaining a peace. He told 'em he did it to ſerve 'em; and for that reaſon he wou'd go the following year to caſt himſelf with confidence at the feet of the grand Can and Mir Cazagan, to ask pardon of them for what he had done.

All

All the lords approv'd his propoſal: he then ſent preſents of horſes ſumptuouſly harneſs'd, curious ſtuffs, and rich carpets, with a great quantity of ſilver-money; and promiſed, that when Mir Cazagan ſhou'd return to the place of his reſidence, he wou'd not fail to go there in perſon to pay him his reſpects, and make all the ſubmiſſion he ſhou'd require. His promiſe was accompany'd, according to cuſtom, with a ſolemn oath. Chap. 1.

Mir Cazagan, who was an equitable prince, and of a ſweet and merciful temper, granted whatever Malek Huſſein deſir'd, in conſideration of the troubles and hardſhips the people ſuffer'd from that war; for he doubted not but the country wou'd be entirely ruin'd if they continu'd the ſiege.

He then conſented to the peace, on the conditions Malek himſelf had offer'd; for which reaſon he took the road of Tranſoxiana, with the grand Can, at the head of his army, in the year of the Hegira 752.

From this time the affairs of Malek Huſſein were daily upon the decline, and the eſteem conceiv'd of his perſon began to diminiſh: this caus'd the captains of his army, who, for the moſt part, were of the country of Gour, to become ſo proud and inſolent, that they conſpir'd together to depoſe him, and to ſettle Malek Baker, his brother, in his place. An. Dom. 1351. Mog. The Hare.

Malek Huſſein had advice of it, but he was not in a condition to prevent it: all he cou'd do, was to be upon his guard. The captains of Gour had reſolv'd to ſeize him as he took horſe: and one day as he came out of a pleaſure-houſe, he diſcover'd, when he was about to get on horſeback, that theſe men had ſome deſign againſt him, and were in a readineſs to fall

Book I. fall on him: for which reaſon, as he perceiv'd a company of jockeys, who came from the city of Badghiz, and were then employ'd in ſelling horſes which they had brought with 'em; Malek Huſſein cry'd out to the Gouris, "Children, do you ſee thoſe fine horſes of Badghiz? "I give 'em you if you can take 'em." The greedy Gouris ruſh'd on 'em, and while they were buſy'd at the pillage, Huſſein fled away full ſpeed into the fortreſs of Eskildge, which his anceſtors had built in the meadow of the town of Herat, between the ſouth and weſt, and which was full of treaſure and ammunition of all ſorts.

An. Dom. 1352. Mog. The Crocodile.

In the year of the Hegira 733, Malek Huſſein, according to promiſe, went from Eskildge to Tranſoxiana, to pay his homage and reſpects to Mir Cazagan and the Can: Mir Cazagan order'd him a magnificent entry; and not only gave him a favorable reception, but was alſo ſerviceable to him in regaining Herat, which the Gouris had put into the hands of his Brother, Malek Baker; the property of which he reſign'd to him.

Notwithſtanding the careſſes of Mir Cazagan, the princes of the empire form'd deſigns againſt Malek Huſſein; for which reaſon they beſought Mir Cazagan to order him to be ſeiz'd; but they could not obtain their deſires, whatever inſtances they made: for which reaſon they reſolv'd on the aſſaſſination of Malek Huſſein, on condition, that after his death, none among 'em ſhou'd demand vengeance for his blood.

Mir Cazagan no ſooner heard of this deſign, than he call'd Malek Huſſein, to tell him what theſe princes had contriv'd againſt him; and he adviſ'd him to depart that very evening for

for Herat, ſince he cou'd not anſwer for the conſequences of his ſtay. Chap. 1.

Malek, having return'd his thanks to the prince for ſuch great favors, took his leave of him: he departed as ſoon as night approach'd, and made ſuch haſte, that he arriv'd at Herat before any one knew of it, which he enter'd with his troops without reſiſtance. He got poſſeſſion of the throne in the citadel; and at the ſame time ſent guards to ſeize on Malek Baker, and to put him in priſon.

During theſe tranſactions, Mirza Abdalla, ſon of Mir Cazagan, departed from Samarcand with a great army for the conqueſt of Carizme[1], of which he made himſelf maſter.

In the mean while Mir Cazagan, who commonly had his winter-quarters in the camp of Saliſerai, paſs'd the ſpring at Caranver, becauſe that country was agreeable, and very full of flowers at that ſeaſon; and in the ſummer and autumn he dwelt in the city of Mounec, ſituate in a country proper for hunting, which was an exerciſe this prince delighted in.

One day he took horſe to follow this diverſion, and parted unarm'd from Saliſerai, attended by fifteen perſons only, not fearing any ſurprize: he croſs'd the Gihon, with a deſign to hunt in the country of Arhenk; and while he was at the chaſe, he was ſurpriz'd by Cotluc Timur, his ſon-in-law, the ſon of Bourouldai, of the tribe of Ournat, who had reſolv'd to revenge himſelf of this prince for an affront he

[1] A kingdom ſituate on the ſhore of the Caſpian ſea, near the mouth of the Gihon, whoſe capital was Corcange, otherwiſe call'd Jorjiana.

had

Book I. had receiv'd from him. He fell upon him with a company of robbers, who immediately wounded him with an arrow; and at length theſe villains aſſaſſinated this great prince, ſo famous for his virtue and juſtice. Some officers of Mir Cazagan purſu'd the aſſaſſins with ſo much ſpeed, that they over-took Cotluc Timur near Condoz [a]: they ſhew'd the affection they bore their maſter; for they bath'd their ſwords in the aſſaſſins blood. After this revenge, they carry'd the body of Mir Cazagan to Saliſerai, where they bury'd him in the year of the Hegira 759.

Mir Cazagan aſſaſſinated.

An. Dom. 1357. Mog. The Dog.

CHAP. II.

Of the government of the Mirza Abdalla, the ſon of Cazagan; and of the difference which happen'd between the princes of Zagatai.

AFTER the unfortunate death of Mir Cazagan, his ſon, the Mirza Abdalla, ſucceeded him; for which reaſon he departed from Samarcand, and came to Saliſerai, where all the princes unanimouſly paid him that homage which declar'd a perfect obedience.

As ſoon as he had the ſovereign authority in his hands, he confirm'd Beyan Couli upon the throne of the Cans, with the ſame authority as before. But having, during the life of Mir Cazagan, his father, dwelt ſome time at

[a] A city of Tocareſtan near Kulm, long. 101 ½, lat. 37.

Samar-

Samarcand, he was ſo taken with the pleaſures of that country, that he cou'd not keep from it: for which reaſon he wou'd make it the capital of his kingdom, and the place of his reſidence; and accordingly he return'd to Samarcand with the grand Can, Beyan Couli. Chap. 2.

The Emir Coutcou, the other princes, and the lords of his father's court, merely from their affection to him, repreſented, that it was falſe policy thus to abandon Saliſerai, the antient and ordinary reſidence of the Cans; but all their advices had no effect upon the mind of Abdalla: the poet ſays, *He who won't hear the counſel of his friends, will one day bite his fingers in token of repentance.*

The ſame year this young prince became in love with the empreſs, wife of the grand Can; and his paſſion carry'd him ſo far, that he got the Can aſſaſſinated in the city of Samarcand: he afterwards plac'd upon the throne Timur Chah Aglen, ſon of Biſun Timur Can: then he order'd the body of Beyan Couli to be carry'd to Bocara, where he was bury'd near the venerable doctor Cheik Seifeddin Bakreſy, to the great regret of all the People.

The death of the grand Can was unfortunate to Abdalla; for the prince Beyan Selduz rais'd an army to revenge it, with which he departed from the fortreſs of Chaduman for Samarcand: when he was arriv'd on the frontiers of Kech, the prince Hadgi Berlas[2], who was prince Timur's uncle, join'd him with all his troops; and they came in a body to attack Abdalla, who after having defended himſelf

Army brought into the field by Beyan Selduz.

[2] The ſon of Bourlaki, ſon of Nemoule, ſon of Iſoumenga, ſon of Caratchar Nevian.

ſome

Book I. ſome time was routed, and fled; and they put his brothers to death, as alſo Timur Chah Aglen, whom he had rais'd to the dignity of grand Can of Zagatai.

The defeat of Abdalla.

Thus Mirza Abdalla was ſoon puniſh'd for his crime, and oblig'd to abandon the country: he croſs'd the river Gihon, took the road above Bacalan, and went to Anderab, a city of the little kingdom of Bedakchan, where he ſpent the remainder of his days.

All the friends of the late prince, Mir Cazagan, were diſpers'd; and the princes Beyan Selduz and Hadgi Berlas, who at that time had great reputation and authority, made themſelves maſters of the country, and took upon 'em the government.

The prince Beyan Selduz was of a good-natur'd pleaſant diſpoſition, and never inclin'd to miſchief; but he extremely lov'd wine, and ſcarce paſs'd eight days without ſome debauch of that kind, which caus'd great confuſion in his kingdom; for each prince attempted to make himſelf ſovereign, and even thoſe who wou'd otherwiſe never have had ſuch a deſign, ſeeing the empire, in a manner, without a chief, thought themſelves oblig'd, for their own ſafety, to do as others did.

The city of Kech, with its dependences, remain'd in the poſſeſſion of the princes Timur and Hadgi Berlas, as it had always belong'd to their anceſtors, till the time of Caratchar Nevian; no one having made any oppoſition to it: the country of Gogende was poſſeſs'd by prince Bajazet Gelair; and Mir Huſſein, the ſon of Muſella, ſon of Mir Cazagan, made himſelf maſter of Cabul, and ſeveral other lordſhips, and maintain'd himſelf as long as he was able in the dignity of his grandfather, with

the

the officers of his court: Oladgia Bogai Selduz with his party, made himſelf ſovereign of Balc; and Mehemed Coja Aperdi, prince of the tribe of the Naimans, took poſſeſſion of Cheburgan; the kings of Bedakchan had fortify'd themſelves in their mountains, that they might be independent; and Kei Coſru, and Oladgia Itou Aperdi, made themſelves maſters of Catlan and Arhenk; and Keder Jeſouri, prince of the tribes of Serpol and Tacun, caus'd himſelf to be declar'd king thro his own power. Chap. 2.

All theſe princes, who were at enmity with one another, were continually at war; ſome of 'em were ſlain in battel, and among the reſt Mehemed Coja Aperdi, in the following manner.

Prince Setilmich, lord of Couheſtan, fatigu'd with the war he had carry'd on againſt Malek Huſſein, prince of Herat, which we have already mention'd, had join'd himſelf with Mehemed Coja after his return from Tranſoxiana, and contracted a ſtrong friendſhip with him.

They took up a reſolution vigorouſly to attack Huſſein, and for that end rais'd an army, with which they went to aſſault Herat: Huſſein alſo brought his army into the field to withſtand em.

Mehemed and Setilmich, having a great opinion of their own valor, ſwore they wou'd not turn back befor they had cut off Huſſein's head.

Malek Huſſein croſs'd the river Morgab, and the two armys met on the plain of Yapaghou: as ſoon as the two princes, animated by the ſight of their enemy, had put themſelves in a condition to execute their reſolutions, they went from the army, and advanc'd full ſpeed with ſword in hand againſt Malek; but, thro a fatal deſtiny, they were ſhot by two arrows from the army of the enemy; ſo that they fell from their horſes, and expir'd that very hour.

Book I. This accident put the army of the princes in confuſion; and notwithſtanding it was ſo numerous and formidable, it fled, and left the field of battel to the conquerors.

All theſe diſorders, and the wars of the princes of the empire of Zagatai, ſerv'd to augment the miſery of the country; tumult and ſedition ſpread themſelves every where; and nothing was heard and ſeen among the people but groans and marks of deſpair.

CHAP. III.

Togluc Timur Can [1], *king of the Getes, marches into Tranſoxiana. The flight of Hadgi Berlas.*

AS the country of Tranſoxiana was in confuſion, and almoſt entirely ruin'd, Togluc Timur, king of Gete, the ſon of Aimel Coja, ſon of Dava Can, who deſcended from Zagatai Can, to whom the crown of this country belong'd, had a deſign to make himſelf maſter of it; and after having call'd his officers and courtiers to him, he rais'd an army, and in the month of March, in the year of the Hegira 761, march'd to the conqueſt of Tranſoxiana. It is remarkable, that in the ſpace of thirty three years, from the death of Turmeſchirin [2] Can, there reign'd eight Cans in the empire of Zagatai.

An. Dom. 1359.

Mog. The Mouſe.

[1] The 25th ſucceſſor to the crown of Zagatai: he was the ſon of Aimel Coja, ſon of Dava Can; he dy'd in 1372.

[2] The 16th ſucceſſor of Zagatai Can; he dy'd in 1336.

As

As ſoon as Togluc Timur arriv'd at the foun- Chap. 3.
tain Chanak Boulak, near the Sihon [6], in the fields of Tachkunt, formerly call'd Alchaſch, he ſent Oluc Tocatmur, prince of the hord [7] of Kerait, Hadgi Bei of the hord of Arkenut, and Bikidgek of the hord of Cangouli, for his ſcouts. Theſe three princes us'd all poſſible diligence; and when they had croſs'd the Sihon at Cogende, Bayazid Gelair, a very prudent prince, thinking it wou'd be for his advantage to keep a correſpondence with 'em, join'd his troops with theirs, and march'd towards the city of Sebz.

Prince Hadgi Berlas, uncle of Timur, rais'd as many troops as he was able in the citys of Kech and Carſchi, and other neighbouring provinces, to withſtand 'em; but he at laſt chang'd his reſolution, and before the two armys met, march'd to Coraſſana.

CHAP. IV.

The riſe of Mir Huſſein, grandſon of Mir Cazagan: he is aſſiſted by Timur-Bec.

The firſt mention of Timur-Bec.

POLICY is preferable to valor; but when theſe two virtues are united in a general, they never fail to form a great man.

Good counſel defeats armys; with the arms of policy, a ſingle man may deſtroy a hundred; and an arrow well aim'd, never fails to find a place in the heart of the enemy.

[6] Otherwiſe, the Jaxartes, which ſeparates Tranſoxiana from the country of Gete.

[7] Theſe are the antient Mogul hords, mention'd in the hiſtory of Genghiz Can.

Book I. This is plainly to be ſeen in the affair we are going to relate: for when the prince Hadgi Berlas, on advice of the march of the troops of Gete, had abandon'd his own country, and all his effects, to retire into Coraſſana, and had croſs'd the river Gihon; Timur-Bec, his nephew, who was a prince of a diſcerning ſpirit, well knew, that if he kept a long time from action, his country and principality wou'd not fail of being ravag'd and deſtroy'd, ſince his father Tragai dy'd the ſame year, and his uncle Hadgi Berlas was fled: he believ'd there was no other prince than himſelf who cou'd put a ſtop to the ruin or inſult a foreign army was about to bring on his country; he had to do with a mighty enemy, who had already brought the empire into great danger; he ſaw the evil which was about to fall on his people, and that the ſtorm was approaching. This young prince, who had ſcarce arriv'd at his 25th year, and by conſequence had not yet obtain'd ſufficient experience, fail'd not to undertake an affair ſo full of difficultys; he repair'd to the banks of the Gihon, and gave his advice to prince Hadgi Seifeddin Berlas, concerning the great dangers a country is expos'd to in the abſence of a prince, and the violence the enemys were about to offer his people if he did not prevent 'em. "As a "kingdom without a leader, ſays he, reſembles "a body without a ſoul, I think it proper, ſince "you deſign to go into Coraſſana, that I ſhou'd "return to Kech; and after I have given freſh "encouragement to the inhabitants of that "country, I ſhou'd go thence to throw my-ſelf "at the feet of the grand Can, and offer him "my ſervice: I will gain acquaintance with "the princes and lords of his court, and laſtly "endeavor, by all ways imaginable, to divert "the

Timur-Bec firſt ſhews his wiſdom at the age of 25.

" the tempeſt that threatens our country: by Chap. 4.
" which means I will ſave from inevitable ruin
" the poor people whom God hath put under
" our care; an account of which he will one
" day require of us."

Hadgi Berlas was perſuaded, that Timur in theſe diſcourſes was inſpir'd from heaven; wherefore he approv'd his advice, and this young prince departed. When he was arriv'd at Cuzar, he met Hadgi Mahmud Chah Yeſouri, who was order'd to conduct the ſcouts of the army of Gete, and in hopes of a large booty had made great haſte, having a deſign to ſpare nothing. He behav'd himſelf ſo handſomly towards this general, that he promis'd to commit no hoſtility againſt him before he had had a conference with the princes, and made a truce with 'em: the ſoldiers, notwithſtanding the deſire they had to commit diſorders, ſtay'd at this place. Timur-Bec departed for Kech, where he found the three princes of Gete already arriv'd; he had a conference with 'em after a handſom reception. They ſhew'd the pleaſure they had in his ſubmitting to the grand Can of Gete, and gave him the command of ten thouſand men, who were formerly under prince Caratchar Nevian, his grandfather's great grandfather; as likewiſe the principality of Kech, with all its dependences. Thus, by the good conduct of this prince, the torrent of misfortunes, which were about to over-run this country, was ſtopp'd, and the people again enjoy'd peace, of which they had utterly deſpair'd; for which reaſon, it was ſaid, that at the ſight of him alone, ſorrow was chang'd into joy, and mortality into immortality. Thoſe who had the leaſt inſight into things, imagin'd that this good ſucceſs, how ſmall ſoever, won'd be of conſe-

Timur made prince of Kech.

Book I. quence to Timur-Bec; but they did not foreſee that this was nothing in compariſon of the vaſt grandeur which he muſt attain to.

Timur-Bec, after this conference with the princes of Gete, took his leave of 'em, and apply'd himſelf in a particular manner to the care of his country: he gave orders for troops to be rais'd between the country of Sebz and the river Gihon, and got together a good army, with which he march'd to join Keſer Yeſouri. In the mean time there aroſe a diſſenſion between the princes of Gete, for which reaſon they caus'd all their troops to march out of this country to attend Togluc Timur Can; and at that time Bayazid Gelair join'd our prince with all his friends.

CHAP. V.

Several intrigues between Timur and Hadgi Berlas; as alſo between the other princes.

THE Emir Huſſein, grandſon of Mir Cazagan, at that time departed from Cabul, with intention to make war on Beyan Selduz; for which reaſon he ſent an ambaſſador to Timur-Bec, Bayazid, and Keſer Yeſouri, to beg their aſſiſtance, whilſt he rais'd an army. Our princes held a council, wherein it was reſolv'd, that Timur-Bec and Keſer ſhou'd go in perſon to aſſiſt the Emir Huſſein, and that Bayazid ſhou'd repair to Togluc Timur Can, to remove all occaſions of blaming 'em from the princes of the court of Gete, and to be preſent and able to anſwer the objections made againſt the aſſiſtance given to Huſſein.

Bayazid

Bayazid immediately departed to execute this deſign: but when he learnt at his arrival at Cogende that Togluc Timur Can was return'd with his army, he waited till his men were join'd on the bank of the Sihon; after which he chang'd his reſolution, and went no farther. On the other hand, the princes Timur-Bec and Keſer march'd with their troops in order of battel; for the ſoldiers were ſo well inſtructed in the military art, that they never broke their ranks either upon their march or during action. Chap. 5.

When they had paſs'd the iron gate, which we have already mention'd, they join'd the Emir Huſſein, and march'd with him towards the fortreſs of Chaduman, where Beyan Selduz was: but this prince, who did not think himſelf in a condition to reſiſt 'em, reſolv'd to retire to Bedakchan, whither they purſu'd him; ſo that Chah Behaddin, who was king of that country, was alſo oblig'd to fly, and to abandon that city, which caus'd the whole country to fall into the hands of the Emir Huſſein, who there made laws at his pleaſure, and aſſur'd himſelf of the government of it: after which he put to death Kei Cobad, brother of Kei Coſru, prince of Catlan. When the Emir Huſſein, contented with what had been done, by the aſſiſtance of Timur-Bec and Keſer Yeſouri, ſaw himſelf in poſſeſſion of the greateſt honors, he thank'd 'em; and they immediately departed for their own country. And as it was requiſite, to arrive at that of the Emir Keſer, for 'em to paſs over the territorys of Timur-Bec, this prince, who was generous, and lov'd to appear magnificent, fail'd not to give him a good reception on this occaſion; for when the Emir was arriv'd at Kechem, on the frontiers of Bedakchan, Timur went before him with ſo much haſte, that in four days

Book I. and four nights he arriv'd at the city of Sebz, fifteen days journey on horſeback from thence; and at nine in the morning at Oluc Meidan, a pleaſure-houſe belonging to Kech, where he generally paſs'd the ſummer. He preſently gave orders for a magnificent feaſt; and when Keſer was near the place, Timur-Bec went to meet him, and receiv'd him with all the reſpect due to his birth and quality. The moſt delicious meats, the moſt excellent liquors, and the choiceſt fruits and perfumes, were at this banquet. The gueſts were no leſs pleas'd with the ball which follow'd, and the conſorts of muſick with which they were entertain'd.

After the feaſt prince Keſer departed for his own country, and the noble Timur ſtay'd in his uſual place of reſidence. His clemency extended equally to the poor as well as the rich; all the country felt the effects of his juſtice; the people enjoy'd a conſtant pleaſure under his happy government; and the ſtate became more flouriſhing than it had ever been.

Mir Huſſein begs aſſiſtance of Timur a ſecond time.

Soon after, Togluc Selduz committed ſeveral acts of hoſtility againſt Mir Huſſein, who having been formerly protected by Timur-Bec, ſent an expreſs to let him know that prince Togluc had violated the peace: he alſo ſent the like advice to Bayazid and Keſer Yeſouri.

Timur, according to his wonted generoſity, caus'd troops to be levy'd, to aſſiſt Mir Huſſein a ſecond time: he march'd at their head; and having met Emir Keſer at the iron gate, who came to join his troops with him, they went together to the Emir Huſſein, who was at Hiſſar, otherwiſe call'd the fortreſs of Chaduman.

The enemy no ſooner had advice of their approach than he fled. The Emir Huſſein, who was thus deliver'd from him without drawing a ſword,

fail'd

fail'd not to go and meet his protectors: he ac- Chap. 5.
knowledg'd his obligations; and having magni-
ficently treated 'em, he waited on each of 'em
back.

When Timur had paſs'd the iron gate, he learnt, that Hadgi Berlas, his uncle, who, whilſt the troops of Gete came to attack his country, was retir'd into Coraſſana, was now upon his return to Kech; that he had had a conference with Mir Bayazid; that they had both reſolv'd to join their troops to make war on prince Keſer Yeſouri; and that Hadgi Berlas had already began to put the army in order which he was to command. This news being ſoon confirm'd, Timur paſs'd with his troops by the frontiers of the province of Kech, and join'd prince Keſer, with whom he departed for the city of Kech.

Hadgi Berlas no ſooner had advice of their march, than he put himſelf in a poſture of defence; and when he was near Kech, the two armys came in view at a place call'd Akiar. They gave the ſignal for battel by the ſound of kettle-drums, and preſently there were heard on all ſides the cries of ſoldiers who were encourag'd to ſmite their enemys: there was ſo great a duſt, that one cou'd not ſee a perſon at four paces diſtance; yet the ſoldiers of both armys did not mix together: blood flow'd from all ſides, and every one gave the beſt proofs of his valor. The fight was ſo bloody, that the authors, who have mention'd the battels of Rouſtem and Eſfendiar, have deſcrib'd them leſs terrible than theſe. At length the victory fell on the ſide of the brave Timur, by the death of the principal officers of the army of Berlas, who was oblig'd to fly to Samarcand to join Mir Bayazid.

Timur's victory over his uncle.

Timur,

Book I. Timur[a] with the army of Sebz, and Keſer with his, reſolv'd to purſue him as far as Samarcand; but fate had otherwiſe order'd it: all the troops of Kech, I know not by what motive, abandon'd Timur in the midſt of his march, and came over to Hadgi Berlas, inſomuch that there remain'd with Timur only prince Yakou[b].

This deſertion of the troops of Kech had ſo ſad an effect on the mind of Keſer Yeſouri, that he began to grow jealous of Timur; and had ſo bad an opinion of him, that he could not forbear giving marks of it both by his words and actions; for this reaſon Timur at length quitted him, and return'd to his own country with prince Yakou, who was willing to accompany him.

Hadgi Berlas gave Timur a friendly reception, and conducted him to Mir Bayazid; they ſhew'd abundance of joy at his return, and in appearance entertain'd him as handſomly as he cou'd expect.

The rupture of the friendſhip between Timur and Keſer Yeſouri.

Timur the more reſented this action of Keſer, in that he had always behav'd himſelf in a friendly manner towards him, and had never omitted ſhewing marks of his ſincerity and perfect friendſhip; he was ſo ſenſible of the affront, that he thought himſelf obliged in honor to reſent the injuſtice done him, for which cauſe he willingly conſented to the reſolution that Mir Bayazid and Hadgi Berlas had taken to make war on Keſer; whereupon they got together an army, and march'd towards his country. Timur, animated

---

[a] Timur-Bec is ſometimes call'd Timur only, becauſe Timur is his name, Bec being a title that ſignifys lord of a province.

[b] The ſon of Mobarek, ſon of Dogan, ſon of Cadan, ſon of Caratchar Nevian.

by his deſire of revenging himſelf on Keſer, Chap. 5.
march'd at the head of the vanguard. After having paſt the mountain of Kech, they met the enemy's army in a place nam'd Surouch. Keſer then reflected, but too late, on the fault he had committed: he thought repentance wou'd be uſeleſs, and thereupon gaining freſh vigor, he with great difficulty ranged his army in order for battel; the ſoldiers mix'd together with frightful cries, and the field of battel was in a moment red with their blood. Prince Keſer, after a long and vain reſiſtance, was oblig'd to yield to the valor of the enemy, and fly.

This victory ſecur'd prince Bayazid in the throne, and put Hadgi Berlas in peaceable poſſeſſion of his own country; but the unlucky ſtar of Bayazid did not permit him to foreſee in what manner he ought to behave himſelf to preſerve his good fortune; the next day he had an intrigue with Hadgi Berlas to the diſadvantage of Timur: this prince, thro his foreſight, diſcover'd it in the council, and being then perſuaded that he did not act ſincerely with him, pretended that his noſe bled, and went out, and as ſoon as he got home, took his quiver and other arms, mounted his horſe and went into the field, confiding in the aſſiſtance of heaven, which had never abandon'd him: and ſo he ſav'd himſelf from the ſnare prepar'd for him.

As ſoon as Hadgi Berlas knew of the departure of Timur, he ſent after him to let him know, that he had juſt receiv'd advice that Abdalla the ſon of Taifou, and Zende Hacham ſon of Mehemed Aperdi, had raiſed troops to make war on them: for which reaſon he deſir'd him not to paſs the River, but to get together the troops of the deſart; that for his part he wou'd

ſend

Book I. ſend forces under the conduct of prince Chougam, to oppoſe them, and to hinder the ſad accidents that might happen. As ſoon as Timur was advertis'd of what was paſt, he aſſembled the troops of the deſart, and without waiting the arrival of Chougam, he march'd back, and Mir Bayazid departed at the ſame time from Kech to return to Cogende. Timur was no ſooner arriv'd near Termed, than doctor Ali Gurguri, leaving the ſtudy of the ſciences, took on him a command in the army; he came to meet this prince with his troops to give him battel in a place named Encar. The meeting and defeat of the warlike doctor were the ſame thing to Timur, ſince he routed him at the firſt charge; and purſuing him as far as the old city of Termed, he diſpers'd his troops, did what he thought fit in the country, and even encamp'd in that city.

CHAP. VI.

The king of the Getes returns to Tranſoxiana with a great army. The death of Hadgi Berlas. The Can confirms Timur in the poſſeſſion of his country of Kech, and of a Toman of ten thouſand men.

An. Dom. 1360. Heg. 762. Mog. The Ox. THE ambition of governing in Tranſoxiana was rekindled in the mind of Togluc Timur Can, which caus'd his bringing into the field a great army, with which he fell upon that kingdom. As ſoon as he was arriv'd at Cogende, Mir Bayazid, who was prince of that place, paid him his reſpects according to cuſtom. Beyan Selduz went to meet this Can with abundance

dance of ceremony as far as Samarcand; and Hadgi Berlas, far from oppoſing him as he had before done, truſted in providence, and went likewiſe to meet him. Chap. 6.

During theſe tranſactions, the Can ſeiz'd on Mir Bayazid, and put him to death, which made Hadgi Berlas afraid leſt he ſhou'd be ſerv'd ſo too; he therefore fled into his country of Kech, whence he brought ſome troops, with which he croſs'd over the river Gihon; they were overtaken by the regiment of Cachmir belonging to the army of Gete, who follow'd their track. The Cachmirians immediately attack'd 'em, and there was a bloody battel, in which Chougam Berlas was kill'd. Hadgi Berlas retir'd into Coraſſana; when being at one of the villages of Jouvin named Corache, which is dependent of Sebzuar, he was ſurpriz'd by a company of robbers, who aſſaſſinated him and his brother Idekou. Coraſſana was ſoon after conquer'd by the army of Gete; and one may truly ſay, that Timur was wholly reveng'd by the hands of the Getes for all the unjuſt and traiterous actions of the princes of that country: for after he had ſlain the aſſaſſins of his uncle, he join'd by the Can's permiſſion the village of Corache to the hereditary countrys of Hadgi Berlas; the ſoil of which is fruitful thro the induſtry of the people.

Death of Hadgi Berlas, uncle of Timur.

Juſtice done by Togluc Timur Can to Hadgi Berlas.

There was at that time at the court of Gete a prince whoſe name was Mir Hamid, of the tribe of Kurlukut, who highly diſtinguiſh'd himſelf among the other lords of the court by his fine genius, prudence, and policy, which obtain'd him the favor of the grand Can; inſomuch that whatever he propos'd was approv'd of, and he was never refus'd any thing he requeſted. As he was a friend to Timur, he laid hold

on

Book I. on every opportunity to repreſent to the Can the good qualitys and extraordinary valor of that prince, in ſo enticing a manner, that the Can took pleaſure in hearing him: he begg'd of him the countrys which belong'd to Timur by right of ſucceſſion; the Can granted 'em, and at the ſame time ſent an expreſs to our prince to come before him: he gave him the handſomeſt reception imaginable, and confirm'd him in the ſovereignty of all the province of Kech, and of a Toman, which deſcended to him by the death of Hadgi Berlas, with all its dependences.

A body of ten thouſand men.

In the winter of this year the Can reſolv'd to make war on Mir Huſſein, and he brought an army into the field for that purpoſe; Mir Huſſein alſo rais'd troops, and march'd as far as the river Vakech, where he encamp'd to wait the army of the Can, which arriv'd there after having paſs'd the iron gate of Coluga.

When the two armys came in view, they were rang'd in order of battel. Kei Coſru prince of Catlan, whoſe brother, Kei Kobad, Mir Huſſein had put to death, abandon'd with his troops Mir Huſſein, and came over to the army of Gete. This deſertion obliged Mir Huſſein to fly; the victorious Can purſu'd him, croſs'd the Gihon, and came as far as Condoz. His troops plunder'd all the people of that country even to the mountain of Hendoukech, and the army encamp'd the following ſpring and ſummer in thoſe parts.

Return of Togluc Timur to Samarcand.

At the beginning of autumn the Can return'd to Samarcand, and in his way put to death the prince Beyan Selduz and others, who he ſuſpected were inclin'd to revolt from him: at the ſame time he behav'd himſelf obligingly to thoſe who, as he was aſſur'd, remain'd firm,

in his intereſt: and having made the empire of Tranſoxiania ſubmit to his authority, and conſtrain'd all the princes, ſome by his ſweet temper, others by force, to take an oath of fidelity to him; he gave the government of the conquer'd countrys to his own ſon Elias Coja Aglen, and order'd ſeveral lords and captains of his court to attend on the perſon of the prince under the command of Bikidgek. Prince Timur had in charge the principal adminiſtration of affairs of ſtate under that prince, becauſe of his wiſdom. At length the Can departed for the place of his ordinary reſidence. Chap. 7.

CHAP. VII.

Timur-Bec marches in ſearch of Emir Huſſein.

WE always find that adverſity ſucceeds proſperity; Joſeph did not arrive to the higheſt pitch of grandeur, till he had ſuffer'd the utmoſt diſgrace: the ſame happen'd in a manner to prince Timur; for after Togluc Timur Can had departed from Tranſoxiana to return to Gete, Bikidgek, to whom he had given the ſuperiority over all the lords of Gete, of whom conſiſted the court of his ſon Elias, was not obedient to the orders of the Can; for beſides his not rendring juſtice to others, he was even ſo inſolent as to commit acts of hoſtility againſt the Can himſelf. Timur, who foreſaw the great diſorders this contempt of the Can's commands wou'd cauſe in the kingdom, thought it not adviſable to ſtay there, and therefore went to ſeek Mir Huſſein; he underwent many difficultys to join this prince, who he knew

was

Book I. was in the deſarts, becauſe they had receiv'd no intelligence of him: but at laſt he met him in the deſarts of Kivac, near the well of Saghedg.

Theſe two malecontent princes went to find out Tekil governor of Kivac; but he had a villanous deſign to ſeize 'em: his malice was diſcover'd, and they parted from him, accompany'd by no more than ſixty men, and went towards Layab. Tekil purſu'd them with a thouſand horſe well arm'd, and overtook them: they immediately prepar'd themſelves to give him battel, notwithſtanding their ſmall number: the fight was bloody, and it was carry'd on with an admirable intrepidity and prudence. Tagi Bouga Berlas, and Seifeddin diſtinguiſh'd themſelves among the reſt; tho their horſes were kill'd, they fail'd not to fight on foot in the ſand, as did Eltchi Behader, who had his horſe ſhot under him, yet nevertheleſs fought with extreme valor, with his bow in his hand. Timur, who was willing to partake of the glory, and had a particular regard to the ſafety of ſo great a man, ſnatch'd the bow out of his hand, and broke the ſtring, leſt his intrepidity ſhou'd cauſe his death. They fought with ſo much vigor, that there remain'd only fifty horſe of the thouſand which Tekil had brought into the field, who were not kill'd or wounded; and of the ſixty whom our princes had with 'em, there remain'd but ſeven. Huſſein, if one may ſo ſay, collected all his ſtrength into his arm, and ruſh'd full ſpeed upon Tekil; he ſplit in two the enemy's ſtandard, and ſtruck terror into the moſt courageous. In the mean time Tekil's men ſurrounded Huſſein, and had ſlain him, if Timur with ſword in hand had not made his way thro the midſt of 'em, and diſ-

perſ'd

pers'd 'em, to facilitate the means for Mir Huſ- Chap. 7.
ſein to diſengage himſelf. They preſently ral-
ly'd, and return'd to the charge; Huſſein's horſe
being wounded with an arrow, fell under him,
and this Prince had continu'd fighting on foot,
if the princeſs Dilſchadaga his wife had not got
off her horſe to give it him. Timur, whoſe
valor and good fortune had never let him miſs
an opportunity of acquiring glory, turn'd about
in the perilous condition he found himſelf in,
and with an invincible courage ruſh'd into the
midſt of the enemy's troops, with his ſword in
one hand, and his bow in the other. He
aim'd an arrow ſo ſucceſsfully, that he ſhot
Tekil the general of this unfortunate army in
the face; who fell from his horſe, and Timur
with a half-pike, which he took from off the
ground, gave him ſo violent a blow, that he
join'd his body to the earth. And thus ended
the battel with the ambition of the perfidious
Tekil.

Timur made Huſſein mount his horſe; they re-entred the deſart, tho they had but ſeven ſoldiers, and at laſt were abandon'd by three of this ſmall number, who were of Coraſſana. Timur was not more ſurpriz'd at this misfortune than at any other; for this prince had as much reſolution in adverſity, as he had moderation in proſperity: he comforted the companions of his troubles, and encourag'd 'em by his diſcourſes. At laſt it was reſolv'd, they ſhou'd ſeparate, that they might not be known in the deſart; he went before with the princeſs Turcan Aga his wife, the ſiſter of Huſſein, accompany'd only by one faithful ſervant. He paſs'd the deſart, and arriv'd at Jourſei, where he met a hord of Turcomans: theſe brutiſh men gave the alarm to their com-

Book I. panions, and they ſurrounded him. Timur hid his princeſs in a ſort of pit, recommended himſelf to God, and then march'd towards 'em ſword in hand; but a Turcoman nam'd Hadgi Mehemed knew him, and prevented their attacking him: the Turcomans made him ſatisfaction, and endeavour'd by their ſervices, and an entertainment which laſted all night, to make reparation for the want of reſpect which they had ſhewn to his perſon. The next day prince Timur gave 'em marks of his liberality; preſenting 'em with a ruby of great price, and two embroider'd ſuits of armor cover'd with pearls of ineſtimable value. Hadgi Mehemed made choice of three horſes, which he preſented to Timur, with all things neceſſary for his journy; and gave him a ſervant nam'd Sareg Coulangi to ſerve him as a guide: in this condition he went to join Emir Huſſein, who had taken another road; and after their meeting they came to a place call'd Mahmoudi, and got off their horſes near a well in the deſart, where they ſtaid about twelve days.

Mir Huſſein and Timur betray'd by Ali Bei.

In the mean while, Ali Bei the ſon of Argonchah had advice of their arrival at Mahmoudi; his ill fortune prompted him to march againſt them with ſixty arm'd horſe: our princes were ſurpriz'd, and led to Macan, where Ali Bei for their priſon order'd 'em a dark chamber, the furniture of which was very mean; and it was ſo very naſty, that there was no living there.

Mehemed the brother of Ali Bei, having advice of the injurious manner in which his brother treated theſe lords, foreſaw that this affair wou'd one day be of ill conſequence to him: he therefore ſent from the frontiers of Tous preſents to Timur and Mir Huſſein; and wrote to

his

his brother in terms which reproach'd his indiſcretion, and expreſly adviſ'd him to give the princes their liberty, and to ask pardon of 'em for the ill treatment he had uſ'd towards 'em, and to comfort them as much as poſſible. But the malice of Ali Bei wou'd not let him take this advice. He ſeiz'd on his brother's preſents, and did not free them from their priſon till the end of ſixty two days: and he was of ſo ungenerous a temper, that when he granted them their liberty, he gave them but one poor lean horſe, and an old camel. They were in this diſtreſs, when Mobarekchah prince of Sandger, and a friend to Timur, had advice of their misfortune; he went to ſeek them with his children, and having teſtify'd his ſorrow for their affliction, preſented Timur with ſeveral fine horſes, and gave him all the aſſiſtance he was able. Timur receiv'd them with joy, and, according to his wonted generoſity, gave the horſes to Mir Huſſein. Chap. 7.

Then theſe two princes conſulted what they ſhou'd do in their preſent condition: and they came to a reſolution that Mir Huſſein ſhou'd go to Hirmen, a place proper to paſs the winter in; and that Timur ſhou'd return into his own country, that he might be able at length to rejoin Mir Huſſein at Hirmen, with Toumen, prince of the tribe of Mikouzeri.

They departed according to this reſolution; the Emir Huſſein towards Hirmen, and Timur towards Kech. After he had croſs'd the river, and arriv'd at Bocar-Zendan, a village of Bocara, he there left the princeſs Olagiai Turcan one of his wives, becauſe his affairs oblig'd him to that precaution, that he might not be diſcover'd in his journey: he departed ſecretly, and paſs'd without being diſcover'd thro his

Book I. own country of Kech. In the mean while Temouke Coutchin knew of his arrival, and came to meet him with about fifteen men. Timur order'd him to follow him, and they went to the mountain Cuzar, which they paſs'd over next morning; and in the evening arriv'd at Acoubi, where they croſs'd the Gihon, and enter'd the deſart: but becauſe the weather was exceeding hot, they were oblig'd to ſtay a whole month on the bank of the river, under the ſhade of a little wood, during which time the litter * of the princeſs Turcan, which was departed from Bocar-Zendan, and mov'd but ſlowly, arriv'd there. And perceiving at ſome diſtance a duſt rais'd by a great number of horſemen, they thought it convenient to croſs the river; Timur went on horſeback into the water, whilſt the horſe that carry'd the princeſs's litter follow'd him: this oblig'd all the company to do the ſame, notwithſtanding the rapidity of this great river, which they all ſafely croſs'd. From thence they enter'd into the deſart, where they ſtaid ſome days, during which time Timur learnt that the people were gone out of their Ilak, that is, a place proper to paſs the ſummer in: And this news made him deſirous to go thither, and enjoy the cool ſeaſon; he repair'd thither with his company, and having paſs'd a month there, they march'd towards Samarcand. Timur went down to the princeſs Cotluc Turcan, his eldeſt ſiſter, and ſtaid with her forty eight days; but as ſoon as he learnt that the people knew him, he took horſe and went to the meadow of

Timur ſwims over the Gihon.

* By the word litter is to be underſtood a four-corner'd nich, adorn'd with brocade within, and cover'd on the outſide with red Indian linen, in which the ladys in the Levant are carry'd. This nich is convey'd by a horſe, camel, or mule.

Kech,

Kech, where he lodg'd in a village call'd Achi- Chap. 8.
ghi forty eight days longer: after this he de-
parted along the banks of the Gihon, where he
met Timur Coja Aglen, and Behram Gelair,
with whom he went to Candahar, as he had
promis'd Mir Huſſein. God favor'd their de-
ſign; for when they were arriv'd at Hirmen,
which was the place of rendezvous, they found
Mir Huſſein with Toumen: and here Behram
Gelair parted from them, and fled into India.

CHAP. VIII.

Several warlike exploits of Timur and Huſſein.

ABout this time the prince of Siſtan was en- Mir Huſ-
gag'd in war; but being too weak to ſein and
defend himſelf againſt his enemy, he was oblig'd Timur de-
to beg aſſiſtance of our princes, to whom he part for
made known the danger he was in. Upon this Siſtan.
they march'd to join him with a thouſand good
ſoldiers well equipp'd: the prince went to re-
ceive them with great ceremony, and promis'd
that if thro their aſſiſtance he ſhou'd be de-
liver'd from his enemy, and regain his former
proſperity, he wou'd in return preſent them
with a great many precious ſtones, and ac-
knowledg the obligation as long as he liv'd.
Theſe princes forthwith march'd againſt his ene-
my, attack'd and defeated him; but the prince
of Siſtan not being in a condition to perform
his promiſes, only return'd 'em thanks for what
they had done. When our princes were departed
from Siſtan, they met a great company of Segh-

Book I. zians [a], who waited their coming, with deſign to fight 'em. The arrows and darts flew from both ſides, and particularly from Timur's, who being got into the midſt of his enemys, let fly his arrows againſt 'em, and alſo ruſh'd with ſword in hand upon the moſt valiant men, ſeveral of whom he ſlew outright; his war-club and lance alſo render'd him as formidable to all thoſe whom fortune plac'd in his way. The ſlaughter which he ſoon made, oblig'd the enemys to employ all their ſtrength againſt him alone; they oppreſs'd him with their arrows, and tho he always made a vigorous defence, he was dangerouſly wounded in the hand: nevertheleſs the Seghzians being over-power'd by our brave men, were put to the rout, and at length entirely defeated.

Timur wounded in the hand: Hezarfen ſays that he became paralytic, and lame by that wound.

After this victory, our princes return'd to Kichlac. Timur ſtaid at the camp of Toumen to be heal'd of his wound, and Huſſein march'd towards Bacalan with ninety men: he met Ajouni younger brother of Bikidgek, who oppos'd his paſſage with his troops. Huſſein was neceſſitated to fight; but his ſolders, over-power'd by the great number of the enemys, were vanquiſh'd; and Huſſein troubled at this diſgrace, fled to Cheberto, accompany'd by twelve men only.

Timur recovers of his wound, and marches towards Arſef.

Timur was no ſooner heal'd of his wound, than he march'd towards Arſef with Timur Coja Aglen, and twenty four others. When he was arriv'd at Kehmerdi, he learnt news of the defeat and flight of Huſſein; and ſent one of his

[a] A people inhabiting the country of Seghze, near Segeſtan or Siſtan. [b] Winter-quarters.

[c] Saddic Berlas, deſcended from Ilder, ſon of Carachar Nevian.

ſaten

men to let him know of his recovery, and to invite him to come to Arſef. Timur continu'd his road, and met Saddic Berlas[a], who with a deſign to ſerve under him, had paſs'd the deſart with fifteen of his domeſticks to ſeek him. Timur receiv'd him handſomly, and immediately ſent to Huſſein, to let him know that the ſooner he came to join him the better. In the mean time, Timur on the road perceiving a hundred horſe, ſent a foot-ſoldier to know who they were; who brought him word that their chief was Cazanchi the ſon of Haſan, who upon the news of Mir Huſſein's arrival in the country of Bacalan, came to ſeek him. In ſhort, Timur found theſe men were friends, becauſe their leader had wheel'd his horſe about on an eminence in token of joy: he then join'd them, and they went together towards Arſef, from whence he ſent ſpys, who brought him word the next day that they perceiv'd at ſome diſtance a body of horſe. Timur immediately mounted, and advanc'd to join them: he ask'd them who they were; they anſwer'd, we are officers of the invincible Timur: he ſpur'd his horſe into the middle of them, and found Tocluc Coja Berlas, prince Seifeddin, Aiche and Tutuk, accompany'd by ſeventy choſen ſoldiers. Theſe brave men, from the eſteem they had for the valor of Timur, had voluntarily engag'd in his ſervice: when they had found what they ſought for, they alighted off their horſes, and kiſſed the ground on which he ſtood, a ceremony uſed towards the greateſt princes. Timur return'd home, and the next day they Chap. 8.

[a] Saddic Berlas, deſcended from Ilder, ſon of Caratchar Nevian.

Book I. deſcry'd another body of horſe who came from Kehmerdi; they found that it was Chir Behram, who after having ſtaid at the camp of Toumen, whilſt Timur departed thence, came to find him, repenting of what he had done. He learnt that Mir Huſſein was alſo coming to meet Timur, being informed of his cure by Saddic and his ſervant Sevendge.

Ouloum Couli with a hundred and thirty horſe, and Mamut Keli with a hundred and fifty foot, alſo offer'd their ſervice to our prince in Arſef: he receiv'd 'em willingly, and they had the ſatisfaction to learn from his own mouth the adventures which had happen'd to him during his abſence.

They alſo having advice that Mengheli Bouga Selduz, their ſworn enemy, had fortify'd himſelf in Olatchou, immediately march'd towards this citadel to force it; but Chir Behram, Mengheli's friend, warded off this blow by deſiring Timur to let him go to him, under pretence of perſuading him to relent by his remonſtrances, and even to bring him before him. The prince conſented to it, but Mengheli prefer'd flight to all other advice.

About the ſame time three hundred men of Doulan Jaoun, dependent of Culm, who formerly were in the ſervice of Timur's relations, came to offer him their ſervice.

Theſe troops very much ſtrengthen'd the two princes; they departed from Arſef for Souf, which is a defile of mountains, where Amles ſon of Toumen was at the head of two hundred men, to favor the march of the cavalry of Balc: and this captain, being inform'd of the good condition Timur and Huſſein were in, join'd thoſe princes.

In

In the mean while Temouke was ſent with three perſons to the iron gate to gain intelligence; he arriv'd there after having paſs'd the river Termed, and learnt that the army of Gete was retir'd from thence, having firſt ravag'd all the country. Temouke at this place met his relations, who, after a thouſand careſſes, told him that his wife and children were encamp'd in the neighbourhood, and they beſought him very much to go and ſee them: but the generous Temouke refus'd to do ſo, and bravely anſwer'd, that when the maſter was driven from his houſe, it was not decent that the ſervant ſhou'd enter his. Chap. 8.

Timur and Huſſein departed from Souf with their little army, paſs'd the ſtraits of Ghez, and came into the plain of Oliai Bouga. They there learnt that the princes Soliman Berlas, Emir Mouſa, Yakou Berlas, Hendouke Berlas, and many others with their troops, hearing of the ſucceſs of their affairs, had broke the peace with the Getes, in order to join them, and that they were already arriv'd at Termed; but to be more particularly inform'd, they haſten'd Toulan Bouga towards the Gihon, with order to march all night, and even to croſs the river, to learn news, and to return forthwith. For their part, they departed from Oliai Bouga, and enter'd into the country of Balc: here three princes their enemys, viz. Abouſaid, ſon of Taifou; Mengheli Bouga Seldus, who had fled from the citadel of Olatchou to Abouſaid his ſon-in-law; and Haider Andkoudi, were united, after having got together ſix thouſand men, with whom they deſign'd to attack our princes. In ſhort, they no ſooner heard of the arrival of the two princes, than excited by hate and ambition, they march'd with their troops

Book I. troops towards their camp, ſtopp'd on the banks of the river Abyſiah, which ſeparated the two camps, and laid ambuſcades in all the paſſages of that river.

Timur, who was well skill'd in the art of conquering, came to the bank of the river to put a ſtop to the firſt onſet of the enemy, and to wait the arrival of his friends: he inſenſibly gain'd what time he had need of; and behav'd himſelf ſo circumſpectly, with regard to the march of each, that the enemy's army was oblig'd a great while to move along the bank of the river near the ſtraits of Ghez to find a place fordable, with deſign to come to blows; which, thro' Timur's prudence, they were not able to do till they came in ſight of the city of Balc.

Then the two parties rang'd their troops in ſuch manner, that the main body was between the right and left wing; and the brook nam'd Abdalla lay between the two armys. During theſe preparations, the princes, who we ſaid before were near Termed, join'd our party: Temouke arriv'd alſo, and gave advice of every thing he had obſerv'd beyond the Gihon, as well in relation to the army of the Getes, as concerning other particulars.

Mir Huſſein and Timur fight Abouſaid, Mengheli Bouga, and Haider.

The combat began about noon, and laſted till night: Temouke was dangerouſly wounded: guards and centinels were fix'd in all places convenient for 'em. As ſoon as day-light appear'd, the ſoldiers of both armys, on the ſound of the kettle-drums, gave a great ſhout, excited by a deſire for fighting. Timur, with his wonted intrepidity, paſs'd the bridge, and fell upon the enemy, tho their army was much more numerous than his, and wholly compos'd of valiant ſoldiers. This boldneſs ſtruck fear into all the enemys,

enemys, who cou'd not withſtand the bravery of our prince, but fled with great confuſion. Chap. 8.

After this victory Huſſein and Timur review'd their ſoldiers, and found only two thouſand horſe: Timur reſerv'd one part to himſelf, and with 'em went before towards the Gihon, which he croſs'd at Termed in a bark; and after having encamp'd on the bank of the river, he ſent ſcouts to the iron gate of Coluga, who being fatigu'd, fell aſleep, inſomuch that Ajouni, younger brother of Bikidgek, unexpectedly came upon 'em with his troops. Timur, who rely'd on his ſcouts, was afraid of nothing; and his ſoldiers were reſting themſelves in their tents, when, on a ſudden, both the ſcouts and enemy arriv'd at their camp.

Our men had not time to rally, nor fix themſelves in order of battel to oppoſe the enemy: all they cou'd do, after abandoning their tents, was to embark for repaſſing the river; whilſt our hero maintain'd his ground with a handful of brave men, and ſtaid in an iſle, where he ſuſtain'd the enemys attack with more than human valor; ſo that he gave time to his troops to croſs the river, and he himſelf ſoon follow'd.

The two parties remain'd a whole month in ſight of each other, on each ſide the river; and Timur having caus'd the barks to be burnt, departed at length for Culm, on the frontiers of Balc, where he join'd Huſſein with the reſt of the army.

Huſſein and Timur make peace with the kings of Taikan and Bedakchan.

The two princes march'd to Condoz, where they got together the troops of the tribe of Boroldai, with which they turn'd towards Bedakchan. At their arrival at Taikan, they made peace with the kings of Bedakchan. They then return'd to Arhenk, and after having croſs'd the river near Saliſerai, went to Catlan, paſs'd the deſart,

Book I. ſart, and encamp'd in a place nam'd Ghilec. Here Huſſein openly complain'd of Chir Behram, even before his face, and before Poulad Bouga, in that he wou'd return to his province: he told him he did not act with honor, in abandoning them when they were near the enemy, and had ſo great occaſion for ſoldiers. Timur gave him his advice, and us'd him very kindly, that he might oblige him to ſtay with 'em; but he wou'd not: and tho his humorſom temper was enough to provoke Huſſein, yet he diſſembled his reſentment; and Chir Behram parted for Belgevan[*].

CHAP. IX.

The rencounter of the army of Gete, and its defeat, caus'd by the policy of Timur-Bec; with the reduction of the city of Kech.

IN the mean while the news was confirm'd, that Tocluc Selduz, Kei Coſru, and ſeveral other princes of Gete, were come at the head of an army of that kingdom; and that moreover Timur, ſon of Bubecan Saric Chancoum, Tocluc Coja Berlas, Hadgi Bei, Couch Timur, ſon of Bikidgek, and other princes of tribes, with their troops, had encamp'd with twenty thouſand men between Giala and the bridge Sengliin; and beſides all this, above ſix thouſand men had deſerted our princes, ſo that their forces were much inferior in number to thoſe of the Getes: but Timur, who truſted in God, and

[*] A town in the province of Catlan, long. 104 ½. lat. 39.

inceſſantly

inceſſantly beſought his aſſiſtance, frequently repeated this paſſage of the Alcoran; *How often has a ſmall number of troops, by the permiſſion of God, conquer'd an infinite number of ſoldiers?* And he was not ignorant, that if God was for him he had nothing to fear. In this diſpoſition of mind, he march'd with two thouſand men towards this great army; and meeting 'em at the foot of the bridge of Senghin, he boldly diſputed their paſſage; he fought with extraordinary courage from nine in the morning till night, which gave his Soldiers an opportunity of taking breath. In the mean time Timur reflected upon the great inequality of the forces, and perceiv'd he ſhou'd not be able to ſucceed in his deſigns if his valor was not ſeconded by policy; he therefore had recourſe to this ſtratagem: he order'd the princes Mouſa, Muvaid, Erlat, and Ouſcara Behader, to poſt themſelves at the foot of the bridge with five hundred of the braveſt ſoldiers, whom he wou'd leave with 'em, whilſt he ſwam over the Gihon with the reſt between the plain of Iſſan and Raſſan Kech, and poſted himſelf on the mountains. Chap. 9.

Timur croſſes the river at the bridge Senghin.

The next day the enemys ſcouts knew, by the marks of the horſes feet, that troops had paſs'd the river in the night. This report made the leaders of the enemys army look about 'em, and hinder'd their fighting that day. When night came, Timur order'd his men to approach 'em, and to light fires on the tops of the hills round their army. This caſt fear into the ſoldiers of Gete, who imagin'd they were ſurrounded by a numerous army; they therefore fled that night in diſorder without fighting: they dar'd not fly towards the bridge becauſe of the five hundred men poſted there, and whom they believ'd to be a much greater number, altho the Getes were more

Flight of the army of the Getes.

Book I. more than ten to one. It may be truly ſaid, that the fires kindled on the mountains broke the general's meaſures, and put a ſtop to the ſoldiers valor, ſince the diſorders began among 'em from that time. As ſoon as Timur perceiv'd the effect of his ſtratagem, he came down from the mountain like a torrent, and fell upon the enemy ſword in hand; they ſlew ſo many of 'em, that there were nothing ſeen thro-out the field but dead bodys: he purſu'd 'em as far as the plain of Hedgerat; and Mir Huſſein, who arriv'd with the reſt of the army, continu'd to make a terrible ſlaughter of 'em. This defeat wonderfully encourag'd the ſoldiers of Timur and Huſſein, who encamp'd in that plain, while the renown of this victory ſpread it-ſelf on every ſide, and gain'd Timur great reputation.

He then decamp'd, and march'd with two thouſand men to the iron gate, where he met the inhabitants of Kech, and of the neighbouring places, who had fled from the army of the Getes, and came in multitudes to ſeek him, and implore his protection. Here Timur choſe three hundred men to guard his perſon, and order'd the others to ſtay there. He then ſent the Emirs Soliman Berlas, Yakou Berlas, Behram Gelair, Gelaleddin Berlas, Seifeddin and Yoltimur, with two hundred of his guards towards Kech; ordering 'em to form four ſquadrons, and to faſten on each ſide their horſes two long branches of trees well furniſh'd with leaves, that in drawing 'em along they might raiſe a great duſt. They punctually executed this order, which had its deſir'd effect; for the governor of Kech, who ſaw ſo much duſt upon the plain, believ'd there was a great army: this ſtruck a terror into him, and made him abandon the city; which Timur's men enter'd without oppoſition, and there eſtabliſh'd officers

officers of juſtice, and all things neceſſary. Thus fortune, which was always favorable to Timur, caus'd him to triumph over an army by fire, and to conquer a city by duſt. Chap. 10.

CHAP. X.

The death of Togluc Timur Can, king of the Getes; and the defeat of his army by the princes Timur-Bec and Huſſein.

ABOUT this time the Can Togluc Timur dy'd; and when Elias Coja, his ſon, receiv'd the news of it, he was encamp'd at Tach Arighi, four leagues from Kech: he had with him the princes and lords of his court, with a numerous army of horſe and foot. The princes who brought him this news, were Oluc Tocatmur, and Mir Hamid, who came principally to conduct him into his country of Gete, where he was to take poſſeſſion of the imperial throne of his father. Death of Togluc Timur Can, in 1372.

Timur, with his hundred horſe, march'd all night to arrive at Cuzar: a vaſt concourſe of people came the next day to proſtrate themſelves before him: he rais'd ſome troops out of 'em, which he join'd to thoſe of Kech, and order'd that Coja Selaberi ſhou'd command the rear of the army, with which he wou'd encamp at Chekedalic; to which place the Cheik Mehemed came to join Timur with ſeven regiments. They remain'd ſeven days encampt at Chekedalic; during which time Mir Huſſein arriv'd with his troops, and thoſe Timur had left at the iron gate. Chir Behram, who parted from 'em in the plain of Ghulec, and was gone to ſee his family,

Book I. family, return'd alſo to join 'em with his troops after forty three days abſence. They march'd in a body towards Cuzar, under the command of Huſſein and Timur; and when they were arriv'd there, they viſited the tomb of the illuſtrious Coja Reſmes. After having pray'd to this great Santon to intercede with God for the proſperity of their army, they embrac'd one another, contracted an indiſſoluble union, and confirm'd the alliance by ſolemn oaths, taking the Santon to witneſs the ſincerity of their promiſes.

It is remarkable in hiſtory, that great men have often a ſort of fore-knowledg of the events which will happen to 'em: the coming of Joſeph's father and brothers was reveal'd to him; as was the conqueſt of Mecca to Mahomet.

Timur's dream, which he imagin'd a good omen; and on it undertakes the battel againſt Elias Coja.

As Timur was one day conſidering in what manner he ſhou'd attack the great army of Elias with the few troops he had, he fell aſleep, and in a dream heard a voice, which ſaid to him diſtinctly, *Fear nothing, for the moſt high God will graciouſly give thee the victory.* He awak'd on this; and the more to confirm himſelf that the revelation was true, he ask'd if any one had ſpoken while he ſlept; they anſwer'd him in the negative: he therefore no longer doubted that the voice came from heaven. This inſpir'd him with ſo much vigor and reſolution, that he immediately went to ſeek Huſſein; he told his dream to to him, and afterwards to all the army, who were very much encourag'd by this omen, and only ſought an opportunity to fight. This happy news chang'd the prince's inquietude into pleaſantry and good humor; and the ſoldiers, whom the preſent danger had render'd fearful, grew dauntleſs as ſoon as it was made known to 'em.

The

The princes pray'd to God for the proſperity of their arms, and at length took horſe, and made all neceſſary preparations for the battel; ranging their army in order, and dividing it into two bodys. Emir Huſſein put himſelf at the head of the right wing, and Timur commanded the left: and in this order they march'd againſt Elias. Chap. 10.

This new emperor, being encamp'd at Tach Arighi, alſo divided his army into two bodys: he commanded in perſon the left wing, and made Mir Hamid his lieutenant-general; and the Emir Tocatmur, and the prince Bikidgek, put themſelves at the head of the right.

As ſoon as the two armys were in ſight, they rang'd themſelves in form of a half-moon; and the ſoldiers, animated by their general's ſpeeches, were even mad to engage: a great cry was immediately heard in both armys, and the combatants erected their lances in token of reſolution.

The battel began in a place call'd Cabamitan, by the enemys skirmiſhes, who truſted in the great number of their ſoldiers, which far ſurpaſs'd that of the army of Timur: but theſe men did not long continue in this diſpoſition; for Timur, without ſtirring from his poſt, let fly his arrows againſt the enemys with ſuch skill, that there was not one who advanc'd that return'd. Fight at Cabamitan.

Timur's horſe at length began the general fight with ſuch a terrible cloud of arrows, that they darken'd the sky, and ſlew the moſt forward of the enemys.

Then Timur, follow'd by his ſoldiers ſword in hand, broke thro the oppoſite wing of the enemy with ſo much vigor, that he did not give 'em time to make the firſt diſcharge of their arrows; the fury with which he ruſh'd into the

Book I. middle of the ſquadrons, ſtruck ſuch a terror into 'em, that they were ſoon put into diſorder: and as on the other hand Huſſein was fighting at the head of his men with Bikidgek, never was a battel fought with ſo much fury, nor ſo bravely ſuſtain'd. The ſlaughter of ſo many men exceedingly fatigu'd our warriors, but at the ſame time very much heighten'd their courage in exciting their revenge. If Timur charg'd the enemys with ſo much fury at the beginning of the fight, in the end he behav'd himſelf with greater bravery; for being ſeconded by his ſoldiers, who were animated by his example, he ruſh'd on the enemys on each ſide, bearing down all before him: he at length drove the firſt rank upon the ſecond, which cou'd not ſuſtain the ſtrength of our men, encourag'd by the indefatigable valor of Timur.

At the ſame time this prince made a great cry to excite his ſoldiers againſt thoſe who fled; they purſu'd 'em with their lances, deſtroying all who fell into their hands: they wou'd never have been weary of ſlaughter, if Timur had not commanded 'em to deſiſt, and to advance to the right, to charge the rear of the troops commanded by Bikidgek and Tocatmur: theſe princes fought with extraordinary intrepidity, and by their valor render'd the iſſue of the battel doubful; but when they were attack'd on both ſides, how bravely ſoever they behav'd themſelves, and notwithſtanding the number of their troops, they cou'd not withſtand the courage of Timur, their ſoldiers being conſtrain'd to give way to his ſtrength, and follow the example of their companions, eſpecially when they ſaw the braveſt of their leaders expire; as Doumſa, colonel of the regiment of Behrin; Tchanpo,

Tchanpo, a favorite of the grand Can, whom the ſoldiers regarded as the only ſupport of their valor. The general Tocatmur caus'd no leſs conſternation in the army by his death; as well as Biki, brother of the great general Bikidgek. Dolet Chah, and two other princes of the blood, encreas'd by their death the affliction of the ſoldiers. Thus at length this army, ſo formidable for its number, was entirely defeated by a handful of men, if compar'd with the great number of the enemy. Chap. 10.

The emperor Elias Coja Can, the princes Bikidgek, *Eskender Aglen, Mir Hamid, Joſef and Coja Joſef, were made priſoners: but the natural generoſity of the Turks was of ſervice to the emperor of the Getes; for he was known by ſome ſoldiers of Timur's army who had taken him; they got off their horſes, and without acquainting their commanders with it, ſet Elias and Bikidgek on 'em, who fled, and alone ſav'd themſelves.

Timur march'd all night thro by-ways to the river Yam, to hinder the retreat of thoſe that fled, of whom there were at that place ſo great a number ſlain, that the water of the river was red with their blood; and in the mean time he ſent the Emirs Yakou and Seifeddin towards Samarcand, to make themſelves maſters of it, which they did without any reſiſtance. This famous battel happen'd in the year of the Hegira 765. An. Dom. 1363. Mog. The Crocodile.

Timur immediately held a council with Mir Huſſein and Chir Behran; after which they departed with all haſte to overtake the reſt of the enemys that were fled, and eſpecially the grand Can and Bikidgek: they paſs'd the Sihon at Cogende, and went to encamp before the city of

Book I. Tachkunt [6]. Here God mix'd bitterneſs with their proſperity: theſe princes fell ſick, but their ſickneſs did not endure long, for they were cur'd at the arrival of the illuſtrious princeſs Olijai Turcan, who came from a Kichlac, or winter-quarters.

Timur then reſolv'd to return home, and repaſs the river at Cogende. Having a deſire to hunt, he had a vaſt tract of land encompaſs'd by men; the Emir Huſſein did the ſame in the plain of Dizac: they follow'd this diverſion for many days, and then return'd to Samarcand, which they enter'd in a magnificent manner; which was very agreeable to the people, who expected from theſe princes a milder government than they had enjoy'd under the Getes.

CHAP. XI.

The aſſembly of the princes convened by Timur and the Emir Huſſein, in which they elevated Cabulchah Aglen to the dignity of grand Can.

AFTER the famous victory over the Getes, Tranſoxiana and Turkeſtan were deliver'd from tyranny: but our princes were in great danger from the ſmall deference the lords paid 'em; for all thoſe who had had any hand in the defeat of the Getes, wou'd have ſet themſelves up for ſovereigns, and been independent in their provinces: and they flatter'd themſelves

[6] The ſame as Alchah, a town upon the Sihon, long. 99. lat. 42 ½.

the

the more in this deſign, in that they imagin'd they had ſufficient ſtrength to do it. This diſorder oblig'd Timur and Huſſein, who had the greateſt authority, to convene a general aſſembly, to conſider thorowly of the affairs of ſtate; and what appear'd of moſt conſequence, was the choice of a grand Can. The two princes repreſented to 'em the indiſpenſable neceſſity of an empire's having a head; and ſhew'd, that without one it wou'd be impoſſible to protect themſelves againſt their enemys, and to preſerve peace; becauſe if many princes had an abſolute command, every one wou'd ſtrive to get the better of the others, and by this means there wou'd be continual wars, which wou'd entirely ruin the people who were under their protection. And that no one might refuſe to ſubmit to this chief, they reſolv'd to chuſe one of the race of Genghiz Can, to preſerve the antient cuſtom of the kingdom: they therefore propos'd Cabulchah Aglen [1], who, that he might not incur the diſgraces which commonly happen to princes in great revolutions, had choſen a ſolitary life, and taken on him the habit of a Derviſe, which they ſtripp'd him of, and put on him the royal mantle. Publick rejoicings were then order'd to be made throout all the city of Samarcand; the people were feaſted at the expence of the court, the grandees endeavor'd to appear magnificent by diſtributing gold and ſilver; every one dreſs'd himſelf in his beſt clothes; and the moſt precious furniture, and richeſt ſtuffs were hung out; conſorts of muſick were heard every where, and nothing was ſpar'd to make this feaſt magnificent.

Chap. II.

1 The ſon of Dourgi, ſon of Ilchi Cadai, ſon of Dava Can.

Book I. The princes made Cabulchah Aglen aſcend the throne, and preſented him with the royal cup, according to the cuſtom of the Turkiſh kings: at length all the princes in their turns bow'd nine times before him, as the chief of each tribe is oblig'd to do to the Can.

After this ceremony they committed Haider prince of Andcoud, who was in irons, into the hands of Zende Hacham, to put him to death; which was accordingly executed the ſame night, to puniſh him for the hoſtilitys he had committed againſt our princes.

Timur continu'd the feaſt by a noble banquet, with which he entertain'd Mir Huſſein; and he thought himſelf the more oblig'd, in that the place of the aſſembly was in his own country, and that of his anceſtors, and the other lords were ſtrangers.

Title of Saheb-Caran, i. e. Hero of the age, given to Timur.

After this banquet Timur made conſiderable preſents to Huſſein, as horſes, ſwords, helmets, and the fineſt belts; and to render the joy compleat, Timur, to whom was given the ſirname of great, and Saheb-Caran, that is, the hero of the age, propos'd to Mir Huſſein, and prince Oladgia Itou Aperdi, an old man of great experience, to deliver out of priſon Emir Hamid, the lieutenant-general of the enemys, whoſe father had always been his friend; as alſo prince Eskender his companion, who had been taken in the war. Huſſein conſented to it in complaiſance to Timur, againſt the proverb, which ſays, *When the enemy falls into your hands, put it out of his power to hurt you another time, leſt you repent of it.* When Mir Huſſein had departed for his hord and antient reſidence at Saliſerai, Timur ſent the Emirs David and Seifeddin to releaſe Hamid and Eskender Aglen from their confinement, with order to pay

'em

'em all the civilitys imaginable, and to bring them back; but Bayazid and Aimen, in whoſe hands the priſoners were, had no ſooner perceiv'd the two meſſengers at a diſtance, than they imagin'd that they came with orders to put Hamid to death; but to ſave them the trouble, one gave him a great blow with a club on his head, and the other cut it off: thus died the Emir Hamid lieutenant-general of the Getes. When the Emir Huſſein had advice of it, he ſaid that the action of the ſervant was greater than that of the maſter; and ſent an ambaſſador to demand Eskender Aglen his private enemy, who was ſent to him, and put to death. Chap. 12.

Our princes ſtaid at their reſpective habitations all the winter: their affairs were in ſo good a condition, that they could not at that time deſire more proſperity than they enjoy'd.

CHAP. XII.

The battel of Lai, or of the ſloughs.

THIS proſperity did not continue long; for at the beginning of the ſpring news was brought that the Getes had rais'd another army, and that they were marching towards Tranſoxiana. Timur ſent advice of it to the Emir Huſſein, who order'd Poulad Bouga, Zendehachem, and Malek Behader, to put themſelves at the head of their troops, and to march forthwith to Timur, who had already rais'd an army. Immediately after their arrival he departed; and when they were got to the plain of Akiar, they review'd the troops, and

Book I. ſtaid ſome time to refreſh the cavalry. They then departed to meet the enemy, and after having paſs'd the Sihon at Cogende, they encamp'd on its banks between Tachkunt and Tchinaz. Timur commanded his captains to fortify their quarters; and the enemy's ſcouts advanc'd when the Emir Huſſein arriv'd with his army. He paſs'd the Sihon, and encamp'd in a place which was mark'd out for his troops.

The enemy's army encamp'd alſo on the bank of the river at Ezam; for which reaſon our princes quitted their camp, and advanc'd towards the Getes. The ſcouts of the two armys were no ſooner in ſight, than they rang'd themſelves in order of battel. The Emir Huſſein commanded the right wing; his rear being led by Petlandgi Erlat, and his vanguard by Oladgia Itou Aperdi, and other brave men. Timur, who was the ſoul of the army, put himſelf at the head of the left wing; he gave the command of the rear to prince Sar Bouga, with the troops of Capchac, and of the vanguard to Timur Coja Aglen; he kept the princes Yakou, Seifeddin, Mourad Berlas, and many other valiant men near his perſon. They march'd in this poſture to attack the enemy's army, commanded by the emperor Elias Coja Can. Timur's ſoldiers were full of preſumption and vanity, becauſe they had not only once before conquer'd this very enemy, tho he was ſuperior to 'em, and better provided, but becauſe they themſelves were now poſſeſt of thoſe advantages. But for this their pride they were puniſh'd, that the obſervation might be verify'd, *The day will be unfortunate to the army which depends upon the multitude of its ſoldiers.* God permitted the Getes, who in the battel of Cabamitan were defeated, notwithſtanding their great number,

Each wing had its vanguard and rear.

Aglen was of the royal houſe of Genghiz Can.

number, to get the advantage in this, tho they had by far the fewer troops. They us'd for this purpoſe a ſtratagem which is ſaid to have been taught 'em by a famous magician. Chap. 12.

It is commonly believ'd, that the ſtone call'd Gedi ſteep'd in water at a certain hour, has a power to change the air, to produce wind, rain and thunder, and terrible hurricanes; to which ſtone the Getes, being ſatisfy'd of their weakneſs, had recourſe. However that be, ſo great a tempeſt was rais'd, that the world ſeem'd ready to fall into its original chaos: it rain'd ſo exceſſively, that it look'd like the deluge; many thunderbolts fell, and the lightning and the noiſe of the thunder aſtoniſh'd the moſt fearleſs: the earth cou'd no longer be diſtinguiſh'd from the ſea; horſes and oxen ſwam in the water; the feet of the horſes of our army, which were the beſt in Aſia, were ſtuck ſo far in the mire, that the skin of their bellies was peel'd off; this exceſſive moiſture caus'd at length an Eſterca, a cruel diſtemper, which ſlackens the nerves, renders the limbs paralytic, and corrupting the fleſh, dries it up, that in a manner nothing appears but the bones and nerves.

Virtue of the ſtone Gedi.

Eſterca, a diſeaſe belonging to horſes.

The enemys, to prevent the ill effects their ſtone wou'd produce, had provided themſelves with good felts, with which they cover'd their camp, perſons and horſes; and they had prepared canals to carry the water off: whilſt ours were reduc'd to a miſerable condition; their clothes becoming extremely heavy, and the horſe being more embaraſs'd than the foot.

When the rain was over, their bad condition did not hinder their advancing, and they attack'd the enemy with an heroic valor; but the Getes, whom the rain and tempeſt had ſcarce diſor-

Book I. diſorder'd, mounted on freſh horſes, and well-arm'd, receiv'd our army with a briskneſs ſo much greater than that of our men, that our ſoldiers were oblig'd to fly; and there were terrible cries in both armys. Then Timur, who ſaw he muſt either die ſhamefully or fight, turn'd himſelf about, and crying out to his ſoldiers to come to him, found himſelf inſenſibly in the middle of the enemy's right wing. As his men were ſurrounded by 'em, there was the moſt terrible ſlaughter that was ever known; blood flow'd in little rivers, and the dead bodys of both ſides fell promiſcuouſly over one another, both friends and enemys, without knowing who were conquerors. The rules of war were not obſerv'd; every thing was in confuſion, and every one of the ſoldiers had been ſlain in the heat of the battel, if by an unexpected accident, Chem Coun Nevian, brother of the Emir Hamid, who commanded the right wing of the enemy, had not been ſlain: for Timur being about to give him a blow with his ax, this prince, who was one of the moſt valiant of the Getes, fenc'd off the blow with his buckler, but as he was riſing up to ſtrike Timur with his ſabre, he was pierc'd with a lance by prince Yakou Berlas.

The emperor Elias Coja Can had no ſooner heard of the misfortune which happen'd to his general, than he retreated; and his ſoldiers who ſaw him fly, deſpairing of the victory, fled after him: but Timur and his men purſu'd them, and did not ceaſe the ſlaughter till their horſes fell under them, not able any longer to bear the fatigue; whilſt the enemy's horſes, which had not ſuffer'd thro the tempeſt and ſloughs, were ſwifter and fled. But if we had the victory on one ſide, we were beaten on the other; for the left

left wing of the enemy fell ſo briskly on Petland- Chap. 12.
gi and Zendehachem who commanded the van of our right wing, that they approached the Emir Huſſein, whoſe guards being ſurpriz'd, fled in diſorder, notwithſtanding the courage of Chir Behram and Poulad Bouga, who on this occaſion gave marks of the greateſt valor. Hadgi Bei loſt no ground, but briskly attack'd the captains Ferhad and Oronc Timur with their regiments, who began to give way; but prince Chamſeddin unexpectedly came to their aſſiſtance with a great ſquadron, which not only prevented their flight, but beat back Hadgi Bei: the fight was bloody, and the enemys were triumphing, when Timur, who perceiv'd the diſorder, arriv'd with ſeventeen companys, and fell upon Chamſeddin, who was not able to ſuſtain the attack, but loſt ground and fled. Theſe advantages gave the Emir Huſſein an opportunity to rally his guards. Timur ſent Behader his aide-de-camp to him, to deſire him to advance, and to tell him that if they briskly attack'd the enemy, he wou'd no longer be able to reſiſt: but this prince, either thro jealouſy of the great actions of our hero, or thro preſumption, reſented the meſſage of Behader, abus'd him, and beat him off his horſe. Timur who perceiv'd they had ſo good an opportunity of overcoming, diſſembled his reſentment, and ſent to him a ſecond time Hamdi and Malek who belong'd to him; but he treated them as he had Behader. "Have I fled? ſaid he to "them; why then doth he preſs me to ad- "vance? Whatſoever happens, whether we "conquer or are conquer'd, none of you ſhall "ſave himſelf from my hand." Malek and Hamdi return'd in a great paſſion, and Timur vex'd that the moſt favorable opportunity ſhou'd

be

Book I. be loſt thro the caprice of the Emir Huſſein, reſolv'd to be reveng'd: he ceas'd from attacking the enemy; and as the two wings of both armys had been reciprocally routed, and had taken each others place, they encamp'd where they were at that time, with deſign to give ſome refreſhment to the ſoldiers during the night, after the exceſſive fatigue of the day. In the mean while the Emir Huſſein recover'd from his ill humor, ſent ſeveral meſſages to Timur, to intreat him to come and ſee him; but this prince, weary with his manner of acting, refus'd to go.

The ſound of the trumpet Kerrena [1] waking the ſoldiers before morning, every one prepar'd himſelf to continue the fight. The two parties fell upon one another with great cries, mix'd with a confus'd noiſe of drums and trumpets, and the victory was not long in ſuſpence: the army of the Getes fled, and Timur and his men purſu'd 'em, and in the purſuit perceiv'd the ſtandard of prince Chamſeddin, who was ſeparated from the reſt, and came with a great number; ſo our men abandon'd the fugitives, and turn'd towards the white ſtandard: but the enemys, as ſoon as they perceiv'd the enſign, rally'd and return'd to the charge. The combat was bloody, and at length our men were vanquiſh'd; the Getes had the victory, and oblig'd us to turn our backs. Fear caus'd a great number of our men to periſh in the ſloughs and marſhes. The enemys in the purſuit of the reſt kill'd a great many, and there remain'd ſlain in the field of battel more than

[1] Kerrena is a large trumpet of braſs, eight foot long, which ſerves to wake the ſoldiers, and ſound a retreat.

ten

ten thouſand of our men. This famous battel of Lai, that is to ſay, of the ſloughs, happen'd on the firſt of Ramadan, in the year of the Hegira 766. Aſtrologers remark, that the tenth of the trine celeſtial conjunctions was in Scorpio, about the time of this fatal defeat: I mention this circumſtance only for the perfection of this hiſtory, and not to infer that accidents are caus'd by the influences of the heavenly bodies: on the contrary, I believe there are no influences nor accidents in nature, of which God is not the diſpoſer and primary author. Chap. 13. An. Dom. 1364. Mog. The Serpent.

CHAP. XIII.

The Retreat of Timur-Bec and Huſſein. Samarcand beſieg'd by the Getes.

AFter this great defeat, the princes arriv'd at Kech, where they did not think themſelves ſufficiently ſecur'd againſt the Getes, who yet purſu'd them; they therefore reſolv'd to paſs the Gihon, every one with the troops of his hord: the Emir Huſſein told Timur that it was proper he ſhou'd do the ſame with his family and troops; but this prince anſwer'd him, that the other princes might do what they pleas'd, but that he was not of that mind, and that his temper wou'd not ſuffer him to abandon his country to the tyranny of barbarians; that he wou'd rally as many troops as he was able, and march againſt the enemys; and if fortune oppos'd him, he ſhou'd nevertheleſs have the glory of dying in defence of his ſubjects.

The

Book I. The Emir Huſſein went to Saliſerai, where he made his men croſs the Gihon, and retir'd with 'em by by-ways to Cheberto; from whence he ſent ſpys to the places round about to learn news of the Getes, that he might fly into India on the firſt advice of their approach.

As ſoon as the Emir Huſſein was departed from Kech, Timur neglected no opportunity of levying troops; his good conduct, and the affection of the people towards him, was the reaſon that he rais'd ſeventeen companys: he ſent Timur Coja Aglen to command the half of theſe troops, and order'd Chaourchi and Abbas Behader to carry forage to Samarcand, and raiſe other troops there. But Chaourchi ſtaid in the way to drink hard of ſome of the beſt wines: this liquor, which makes many men courageous and generous, diſpirited him even to exceſs; he told David Coja and Hindoucha; that Timur had a deſign to ſeize 'em, and to ſend 'em to the Emir Huſſein to be put to death. Upon this theſe two captains were afraid, and fled in haſte to the Getes, which was a great loſs to Timur; the others continu'd their road, and met at Kukeng a party of the army of the Getes, commanded by Kepec Timur, ſon of Oluk Tocatmur, and by the captains Chiraoul and Inkirſac ſon of Hadgi Bei; ours were ſurpriz'd and entirely defeated, with the four or five companys who remain'd with 'em.

Timur ſoon receiv'd advice of this freſh loſs; he well knew that his proſperity muſt be at a ſtand for ſome time, and that there was no more likelihood of defending his country, to whatſoever hazard he expos'd his life: for this reaſon he croſs'd the Gihon, and went for Balc, where he rally'd the troops of his Toman, and the

the other troops of his country who had fled thither. He alſo got together the Tomans of Kepec Can and Olaja Bouga Selduz, part of whom he ſent to the river Gihon to guard the paſſages, and to get information of what happen'd there. Timur Coja Aglen arriv'd at this time, and he was puniſh'd for his bad conduct by a fine impos'd on him. Chap. 13.

In the mean while the army of the Getes arriv'd at Samarcand, which at that time was without a citadel. Moulana Zade Samarcandi, Moula Cardec Imam of Bocara, and Aboubeker Kelevi, men whoſe probity and knowledg had acquir'd them an authority and power over the people, and who imagin'd the tyrannick government of the Getes wou'd cauſe an entire deſolation of this city, undertook to defend it againſt theſe barbarians. They repreſented to the inhabitants by their pathetic ſpeeches the miſerys which this inſupportable tyranny had brought on them; that what was to come wou'd be much worſe, becauſe of the particular affection the Getes imagin'd they bore to the princes of Tranſoxiana; that in this condition they ought to take arms to defend themſelves from the cruelty of theſe tyrants, till it ſhou'd pleaſe God to grant the princes ſufficient ſtrength to reſiſt them. The inhabitants of Samarcand, who had a great veneration for their Imams, and love for their princes, being deſirous to take arms, were eaſily perſuaded to do ſo: and without the princes at their head, they undertook to diſpute with the Getes their entrance into the city: they fix'd chains croſs each ſtreet, and every one arm'd himſelf, even from children of twelve years of age, to the oldeſt men. The enemys ſtrove ſeveral times to ſurprize the city; they enter'd into the

Siege of Samarcand by the Getes.

Book I. the ſuburbs; but they were always repuls'd with loſs; and even the citizens made ſuch vigorous ſallys, that they beat back the Getes into their tents, chas'd them entirely out of the ſuburbs, and kill'd a great number of them. But as this city was well peopled, and the inhabitants were not accuſtom'd to the fatigues of war, victuals became very dear; the artiſan work'd no longer, and every one began to be tir'd with the ſiege; inſomuch that being reduc'd to the laſt extremitys, they had been conſtrain'd to ſurrender, if God had not deliver'd them on a ſudden from the evil which threaten'd them. There was a mortality among the horſes of the Getes, of which there periſh'd three fourths, ſo that they were at a loſs to get horſes for the couriers. This misfortune ruin'd their army, and diſabled them from continuing the ſiege, ſo that they were oblig'd to return home in a miſerable condition, almoſt all of 'em on foot, with their quivers tied to their backs, and their ſwords on their ſhoulders. The principal men of the city were fill'd with pride, becauſe the Getes were retir'd; and attributed to themſelves the glory of ſuſtaining the attack of ſo great an army, and even of having repuls'd it. Moreover, they wou'd have reſpect paid 'em, and claim'd a ſort of ſuperiority over the reſt: they at length form'd great partys, ſpilt the people's blood, and caus'd ſtrange diſorders in the city, to maintain themſelves in their uſurpation.

On the other hand, Abbas Behader, whom Timur had ſent to the iron gate, to obſerve the motions of the army of the Getes, return'd in all haſte to that prince. He gave him an account of the miſerable condition the enemys were in, and repreſented to him at the ſame time

time the ſtate of the inhabitants of Samarcand, who ſuffer'd a great deal under the tyranny of the uſurpers. When Timur was inform'd of theſe things, he ſent in haſte to the Emir Huſſein, to give him advice of them, and to invite him at the ſame time to march thither with his troops. Huſſein was extremely well pleas'd with the news, and departed forthwith from Cheberto to Saliſerai. Timur order'd all his family to croſs the Gihon, and ſent 'em to Kech, his antient reſidence. Chap. 13.

This prince then took horſe to meet Huſſein, which he did at the entry of the meadow of Bacalan. They embrac'd each other, and having renew'd their friendſhip, they promis'd to be more cloſely united than ever. They had a long conference on what had already paſs'd, and what they had to do; and they concluded to be at Samarcand the beginning of the ſpring: Timur return'd, croſs'd the Gihon, and encamp'd at Carſchi. The name of Carſchi was given to this city becauſe of the palace Kepec built two leagues and a half from Nakcheb *, in the mogul language Carſchi, ſignifying a palace. Timur paſs'd the winter there; during which time he built the citadel, which was finiſh'd before the end of that ſeaſon.

* Nakcheb, Neſef, and Carſchi, are the ſame place.

CHAP. XIV.

Departure of the princes for Samarcand, and the diſſenſion which happen'd between 'em.

THE princes departed in the ſpring for Samarcand; and as ſoon as they were arriv'd at this capital of Tranſoxiana, they agreed on what was of moſt importance; to wit, the puniſhment of the inſolence of the Serbedals, who pretended to take upon 'em the higheſt poſts, and had entirely confounded both the ſtate and religion by the violences they had exercis'd. It was reſolv'd that they ſhou'd ſeize on all thoſe petty tyrants; which was accordingly done. The Emir Huſſein, after having reproach'd 'em for the horrid crimes they had committed, order'd their heads to be cut off, after their trial at Canighul, where the army encamp'd; inſomuch, that there remain'd only Moulana Zade, whom Timur ſav'd thro a motive of piety.

After the princes had regulated the civil government of this city, reſtor'd the laws and the ordinary courſe of juſtice among the inhabitants whom the Serbedals had ſeduc'd, Huſſein made known his reigning paſſions. He ſaw himſelf at the height of his deſires; and at the ſame time diſcover'd an inſatiable avarice and meanneſs of ſpirit, which did not in the leaſt ſhew him to be the grandſon of the great Emir Cazagan. He employ'd all his care and authority to heap up riches; and avarice had ſo vaſt a poſſeſſion of his ſoul, that he had no regard to honor or equity: and without conſidering that Timur had as much or a greater ſhare in the good

good or ill ſucceſs of the wars they had been engag'd in, he even ventur'd to tax the domeſticks of Timur: he exacted immenſe ſums from the princes Yakou, Seifeddin, Acbouga, Eltchi, Behader, and Dolet Cha Balki. The battel of the ſloughs, where theſe princes loſt their treaſure, and moſt part of their baggage, had put 'em out of a condition to ſatisfy him immediately. All they cou'd recover thro their induſtry, was not ſufficient to aſſuage his thirſt after riches: but Timur furniſh'd 'em with enough to make up the great ſum they were tax'd at; and as this prince had not a ſufficient quantity of ready-money, he gave 'em even the necklaces and ear-rings of the princeſs Olajai Turcan his wife. Huſſein receiv'd all they brought him; he ſaw, among the reſt, his ſiſter's jewels; and he had a ſoul baſe enough to forget the duty of a brother, and not to refuſe 'em. After having fix'd a price on 'em, he examin'd whether they had intirely paid the tax, and found there yet remain'd three thouſand dinars [1] unpaid: this ungenerous prince demanded 'em, and Timur gave his own horſes to ſatisfy him. Huſſein wou'd not accept 'em; but he ſaid he wou'd go to Saliſerai, from whence he muſt ſend a ſum of money to Carezem, there to demand in marriage the daughter of Huſſein Sofi, and that he wou'd wait for the remainder of what was due. He was no ſooner departed, than Timur rais'd the ſum at Kech, which he ſent him. Chap. 14.

Theſe actions gave the Emir Huſſein a bad reputation; but the fear the people were in, becauſe of the union between him and Timur, made 'em diſſemble it: nevertheleſs, the aver-

[1] A ducat of gold, or a ſequin.

ſion

Book I. ſion which the principal lords bore to him was ſo great, that they reſolv'd to uſe all their efforts to diſunite 'em; and after having humbled the haughtineſs of Huſſein, they propos'd to themſelves to give the abſolute power to Timur, who was of a ſweet temper, had a generous ſoul, noble paſſions, and, in fine, every virtue that was neceſſary to the forming of a great prince. But as the ſun never ſhews itſelf till the ſtars have diſappear'd, Timur cou'd not arrive at that pitch of greatneſs deſtin'd for him, without the ruin of Huſſein. The Emir Mouſſa Ali Dervis, ſon of Bajazet Gelair, who was his wife's brother, and Ferhad, to break the union of the princes, made uſe of an artifice, firſt thought of by Ourda Catoun, a princeſs belonging to the ſeraglio of Turme-chirin Can, whoſe daughter, the mother of Ali Dervis, was ally'd to the Emir Huſſein: they wrote a letter to him full of falſhoods; the particulars of which were, that Timur, offended at the grand Can and him, had ſought means to revenge himſelf by an open war; and that he was ſo far reſolv'd on it, that he had already began to make preparations, which wou'd no ſooner be finiſh'd, than he will make known his deſigns by divers hoſtilitys. This letter was given to Huſſein, who read it, and at the ſame time ſhew'd it to Can Cabulchah Aglen. They immediately ſent men to Timur to be inform'd of the truth from himſelf, and to deſire him to come to Samarcand to Ourda Catoun, with thoſe who had given him advice of it, that being brought face to face the truth of the things aſſerted might more eaſily be brought to light. Timur, who not ſo much as thought of what he was accus'd of, took horſe without fear, or uſing any precautions, and went to Samarcand; but

but the Emir Mouſſa and Ali Dervis having notice of his arrival, abandon'd the intrigue, and fled to Cogende, for fear of coming to diſhonour. This was enough to perſuade Huſſein, and the reſt, that Timur had no hand in the conſpiracy: but it had a very different effect with regard to Huſſein. Timur, who by his long familiarity with him, knew what his heart was capable of, and how jealous he was, ſince he believ'd what was contain'd in this falſe letter, did not doubt his having a conſtant ſuſpicion of him, and that there wou'd be continual quarrels between 'em; he therefore thought it prudent for him alſo to be miſtruſtful of the Emir Huſſein, to avoid the dangers which might happen. He ſeriouſly conſider'd how he ſhou'd for the future deal with a prince whoſe proceedings were ſo unaccountable, and who had ſhewn ſo much baſeneſs and avarice. The Emirs on the other hand were extremely diſcontented with Huſſein, becauſe of the tax he had impos'd on 'em, and were continually endeavouring to deliver themſelves from ſlavery. Chap. 14.

One day, in a conference with 'em, this prince open'd his heart to 'em; and after having teſtify'd his reſentment of the tyrannical actions of Huſſein, he declar'd his intention to remedy this evil. Chir Behram and Behram Gelair, who, for fear of diſpleaſing Timur, never dar'd to diſcover the mortal hatred they bore to Huſſein, becauſe of the firm alliance between theſe two princes, then took off the maſk, and acquainted Timur with the unanimous deſign of all the princes; which was founded on their aſſurance that Huſſein did not act faithfully with any of 'em. They declar'd to him they were all reſolv'd to break off with him, and to treat him for the future as an enemy; that he had

Book I. diſſembled in every thing; and if they did not ſoon bring an army into the field to give him battel, he wou'd begin firſt with 'em. Theſe princes were ſo warm on this deſign, and by their diſcourſes ſo heighten'd Timur's diſcontent againſt Huſſein, that they brought him to a reſolution to make war upon him. They enter'd into a treaty, and confirm'd it by an oath; which imported that Chir Behram ſhou'd go to his principality of Catlan, and there raiſe troops, while Timur regulated the affairs of the army. Chir Behram carry'd with him an officer of Timur's, nam'd Adel, and left one of his own, call'd Tacoja; ſo that when Adel came, Tacoja departed, and ſo the two armys kept a conſtant correſpondence. Chir Behram arriv'd at Catlan; and as ſoon as he had rais'd troops, he led 'em to a mountain ſituated behind Terac, where he began many hoſtilitys againſt Huſſein. But this politick prince by his artifices gain'd over to his intereſt Chir Behram: he brought him from the mountain, on conditions ſomewhat advantageous to this faithleſs prince. Timur, when he had advice of it, wrote a letter to Chir Behram, to reproach him for his baſeneſs and inconſtancy: at the end of which he had theſe words; "I pray God you may ſoon re-"ceive from Huſſein the puniſhment of your "faithleſſneſs, when repentance will avail you "nothing."

Timur fail'd not to purſue his enterprize: he aſſign'd troops to Behram Gelair, prince Yakou, and Abbas Behader; and ſent 'em to Cogende to make themſelves maſters of the hord of Gelair, and to ſeize on the Emir Mouſa, and Ali Dervis the ſon of Bajazet, whoſe malice had been the firſt cauſe of this diſorder: but theſe ſeditious men had notice of it, and fled. Behram

ram got together the hord of Gelair, and eſta- Chap. 14.
bliſh'd himſelf in his principality.

After this expedition, Timur being apprehenſive how difficult it was to extricate himſelf out of this troubleſom affair of attacking the Can and the Emir Huſſein at the ſame time, took horſe with thoſe who were of his ſide; and after having put to death the men belonging to Ali Dervis, he march'd with his houſhold and troops towards Gete.

Whilſt Timur was gone to Samarçand to raiſe troops, the Emirs Soliman and Chaourchi, who were acceſſary to the diſcord between the two princes, came over from Huſſein to him; and prince Kéſer Yeſouri being dead, Ali his brother, Elias, and Hadgi Mamut Chah, came with the troops of the hord of Yeſouri to ſubmit themſelves to Timur. This prince made Cara Hendouke Berlas governor of Samarcand during his abſence; after which he took horſe to return. But Hendouke prov'd faithleſs to him, and went over to Huſſein, whilſt Cara Jolu, who found himſelf not in a capacity to govern, ſeem'd to have loſt all his courage.

Whilſt Timur was gone from his palace to recruit his troops, the princeſs Olajai Turcan Aga, his wife, dy'd. He was very much afflicted at this loſs, and on this occaſion diſtributed great alms among the poor of the country. The Emir Huſſein was the more touch'd at this misfortune, in that it was doubly fatal to him, ſince, in loſing his ſiſter, Timur was diſingag'd from his alliance, and the regard and friendſhip which that princeſs had kept up betwixt 'em, was now diſolv'd. Death of Timur's wife.

CHAP. XV.

Timur-Bec brings an army into the field againſt Emir Huſſein.

An. Dom. 1365. Mog. The Horſe.

IN the autumn of the year of the Hegira 767, Timur having rais'd an army, conſiſting of the moſt valiant men of the empire, in order to oppoſe the Emir Huſſein, gave the command of the vanguard to prince Seifeddin, and directed him to march without interruption. Huſſein, whoſe artifices had ſucceeded ſo well with regard to Chir Behram, as to bring him over to his obedience, imagin'd he cou'd do the ſame by Timur; on which account he ſent to him Malek Behader and Abdalla Pirau with a treaty ready drawn up, after the moſt enticing manner. He put Timur in mind that he had always deſir'd to cultivate a good underſtanding with him; that they had been concern'd together in the moſt dangerous affairs of the empire; that their union had been the cauſe of their ſucceſs; that they were now lifted up above their equals; and that it was time they ſhou'd both enjoy their grandeur: in fine, he beſought him entirely to confide in this treaty, and not to ſuffer jealouſy to take poſſeſſion of his heart. Malek and Abdalla arriv'd at Iſoun, where the army of Timur was encamp'd, after having paſs'd the iron gate; who having firſt paid their reſpects to him, they preſented him with the treaty of the Emir Huſſein, and then ſu'd for peace. But Timur, whoſe fortune ſeem'd to be in the diſpoſal of providence, told 'em he ought to give no more credit to the words of Huſſein than to the eaſt-

wind,

wind, and he wou'd not regard what his ambaſſadors ſaid. However, this overture of peace was of ill conſequence to Timur; for the Yeſourians had ſo little thoughts of ſucceeding, that their uneaſineſs made them reſolve to deſert Timur. Chap. 15.

At this time the princes Abbas and Yakou went to Cogende with Behram Gelair. Being arriv'd, a council was held upon the affair of the Yeſourians; and it was unanimouſly reſolv'd to ſecure the chiefs of that people, who had enter'd into a conſpiracy to change their maſter: but Timur oppos'd it, and told 'em, that in ſo happy a conjuncture violence and indignation ſhou'd have no part in his actions, and that it wou'd be an injury to his glory and reputation, becauſe when the reſt of the people ſhall hear of the ill treatment us'd towards theſe men, they wou'd no longer continue under his protection; that it was neceſſary that moderation ſhou'd be the baſis of a riſing monarchy, and that his throne ſhou'd be eſtabliſh'd on the pillars of juſtice and goodneſs.

After this diſcourſe, which gain'd the hearts of all the captains, he order'd that they ſhou'd behave themſelves courteouſly towards the Yeſourians; whom having permitted to return home, he went to encamp at Carſchi.

Huſſein, who had rais'd the beſt troops he was able, march'd with Chir Behram, and brought with him the princes Mobarekchah and Mehemed Beyân Selduz, who had a great friendſhip for Timur: but as the army of Huſſein had join'd 'em, they were oblig'd to go with him.

Huſſein, not being content with having a great army, wou'd again make uſe of artifice and impoſture to bring over Timur. He ſent to him his treaſurer Keſer with an alcoran, and

Huſſein by a trick ſends to beg peace of Timur.

Book I. a letter, wherein he told him he had taken an oath on that book to give him a full account of the truth in his letter; the contents whereof were as follow.

" The miſunderſtanding between us will in-
" fallibly end in the ruin of the ſtate, and the
" miſery of the people. I know you are a prince
" of a ſweet temper; that you have excellent
" diſpoſitions; that you love the muſſulmans;
" ſhew a great deal of goodneſs to your ſubjects;
" and by conſequence ought not to approve of
" what is doing. For my part, I think it ad-
" viſable that my army ſhou'd ſtay at Gegana;
" and yours at Cazana; and that we have a con-
" ference together, accompany'd by a hundred
" men only, in Chekitchec, where we will
" renew our friendſhip, and confirm our former
" union by ſolemn oaths; ſo that hereafter in-
" cendarys ſhall not be able to find means of
" ſowing diſſenſion among us: for the nation
" can never enjoy reſt till there is a hearty
" agreement between us."

When Timur had read the letter, he preſently knew it was a trick of Huſſein, and look'd upon his promiſe only as an artifice: but as all the princes thought it better to have peace than war, provided Huſſein acted with ſincerity, he conſented to what was propos'd; and leaving the army at Cuzar, he took only three hundred men for his guard, who were the braveſt he cou'd chuſe, and who had always ſhewn themſelves faithful to him, deſigning to leave two hundred of 'em at Dehno for fear of a ſurprize, and then to march with one hundred only to Chekitchec, the place of interview.

In the mean while the Emir Huſſein put to death Chir Behram in Nevendac, according to the

the prediction of Timur; for the words of great men are often the oracles of fate. Chap. 15.

The Emir Huſſein did not fail in preparing to put his artifice in execution; and without regard to his oaths, or the veneration due to the alcoran, on which he had ſworn, he diſpatch'd with great expedition three thouſand choſen men to ſurprize Timur. A peaſant, who had formerly been a domeſtick of this prince, fled from the reſt of the troops, and came with all haſte to give Timur advice of it, whom he found already arriv'd at Dehno. An officer nam'd Behram, who had no talent in politicks, was by ill luck plac'd as a centinel at the gate of the palace, to whom the peaſant immediately addreſs'd himſelf; but this ſilly fellow wou'd give no credit to what he ſaid, and imagin'd this news wou'd diſpleaſe the prince, becauſe a peace was actually on the anvil: he even beat the peaſant, and ſent him away without mentioning to Timur what had been told him. In the mean while Huſſein's horſe, who made great haſte, arriv'd very ſoon in the morning at that quarter; and Timur had already taken horſe with his hundred men to go to the place of rendezvous. He was very near it, when he had advice of the treachery of Huſſein, and the arrival of this troop: nevertheleſs he advanc'd; and when he had got into the middle of the ſtraits of Haram, he plac'd his men in ambuſcade, to render the paſſage the more difficult to the enemy, and to oppoſe 'em with advantage. The enemy arriv'd, and there were great crys on both ſides; the arrows fell like hail, and the fight was bloody. Huſſein's men finding themſelves in a place which was narrow, and ill-diſpos'd for fighting, ſtop'd, to give Timur an opportunity to draw off; then they purſu'd him, and all he cou'd do was to retreat fighting

Book I. fighting as far as to Catlich, they not being able to purſue him any farther, where the two branches of the river of Chekedalic join.

In the mean while the news of Huſſein's artifice was brought to Cuzar; and the army, who imagin'd all hopes were loſt, diſpers'd themſelves. Timur, with the few men he had left, went to Cuzar, where he learnt this ſad news; at which turn of fortune he was not daunted. But having return'd thanks to God, he came to Carſchi, where he held a council with the princes; in which it was reſolv'd to ſend the ladys to Macan, and thence to the confines of the country of Senger, the people whereof had always been faithful to Timur; to their care he truſted the princeſſes, and was very well contented they ſhou'd be ſent away, that he might the better carry on the war. The princes alſo reſolv'd that they ſhou'd rendezvous with their troops at Iſaac's well, in the neighbourhood of Bourdalic. Every one departed at the ſame time for his own country, where he levy'd troops, and made all neceſſary preparations, while the ladys went to Macan.

The next day the army of Huſſein arriv'd at Carſchi, and the Emirs Mouſſa and Hindouchah made themſelves maſters of the fortreſs which Timur had built there. Timur came to Iſaac's well, where he waited for his friends and officers, who arriv'd there one after another; and when they were all got together, they departed for Macan, croſs'd the Gihon, and enter'd the deſart. Timur ſent to all the lords of Herat, and to Mehemed Youn Garbani, to know the ſtate of their affairs. He encamp'd near the well of Chourab till the return of theſe meſſengers, which was two months after their ſetting out: he alſo ſtop'd all the caravans which came from Coraſſa-

na

na to Tranſoxiana. When all the envoys were return'd, by his orders it was rumour'd that the people of Herat had ſent for him, and that theſe envoys were ambaſſadors of that country: upon which he gave leave to the caravans to depart. He then took the road to Herat in their preſence with all his men. The merchants arriv'd at Carſchi, and fail'd not to give out that they had ſeen Timur depart for Herat; which news the Emir Mouſſa believ'd, it being told by perſons diſintereſted, and who had ſeen him depart: for which reaſon he went out of the fortreſs of Carſchi; and after having got together his troops, he march'd with ſeven thouſand horſe to encamp at Bimrac, with deſign to go to Uzkunt. Malek Behader, who commanded the five thouſand horſe Huſſein had ſent, went to Cuzar, and ſtop'd at the hill of Carcachun, and at Gonbedluli. Chap. 16.

CHAP. XVI.

Several exploits of Timur, and intrigues of the princes. The march of Timur to Carſchi.

WHEN Timur knew that the caravans were at ſome diſtance, he return'd immediately to the place he came from, where he ſtaid as long as was needful for the caravans to get to Carſchi; and then he reſolv'd to revenge himſelf on his enemys, tho he had not above two hundred men. With this ſmall number he took the road to Carſchi; in the neighbourhood of which city were 12000 horſe, with many princes and lords, whom the deſire of fighting had brought thither: which renders the action of Timur the more remarkable,

who

Book I. who expos'd himſelf to ſo great a danger with an unheard of intrepidity. Theſe are events which man can no ways comprehend, and which are only known to the divine being.

Raſh action of Timur, which prov'd ſucceſsful.

Timur march'd all night; and when he was come to the bank of the Gihon, he firſt made his own horſe go into the water, and then was follow'd by forty more, who ſwam over. They left the village Kuſtar, that no one might give notice of their arrival; and there procur'd barks, which they ſent to the other ſide of the river, that the reſt of the troops might croſs over.

Princes who accompany'd Timur.

The prince Siorgatmich Aglen, the prince Daoud, chief of the hord of Douglat, and huſband of Cotluc Turcan Aga, eldeſt ſiſter of Timur; the Emir Yakou Berlas; the Emir Muaid Erlat, who eſpous'd another of Timur's ſiſters; the Emir Sar Bouga Gelair; Huſſein Behader; the Emir Seifeddin Nekur; the valiant Abbas of Capchac; Acbouga Behader of the country of the Naimans; and Mamutchah of Bocara; were of the number of thoſe men who accompany'd Timur.

All thoſe lords departed together, and arriv'd at Bourdalic; at which place were the ambaſſadors of the Emir Mouſſa, whom they ſeiz'd: they enter'd into Bourdalic, where they ſtay'd till the next evening, when they continu'd their march, and in the night went down to old Fezed. The next day they block'd up the paſſages, and lay in ambuſcade: they ſtop'd all thoſe who came to draw water, but ſoon after let 'em go. In the night they took horſe for Chirkunt. The Emir Yakou told 'em he thought it adviſable to fall upon the Emir Mouſſa during the night; believing that if they cou'd ſeize his perſon, they might make themſelves maſters of the reſt, and do whatever they pleas'd. But Timur

mur answer'd him, "We are but a small num- Chap. 16.
"ber; and if unhappily any accident befal us,
"we shall be reduc'd to great extremitys: it is
"better therefore to do nothing inconsiderately.
"Let every one stay here, while I alone go to
"Carschi, where I will use such precautions
"that I may not be surpriz'd. I shall by this
"learn where one may best enter the city, and
"observe what machines will be necessary to
"make our-selves masters of a town of this
"importance." Thus Timur would do every thing himself, without depending on the conduct of his generals. He immediately, with Mobacher and Abdalla, took horse for Carschi, and came down to the bank of the ditch surrounding the citadel. As this ditch had much water, he gave the horses to Moubacher to take care of, and enter'd up to the knees in the aqueduct Ternavi, which passes over the ditch, and conveys water into the citadel. He cross'd this current with Abdalla, who follow'd him every where; and when they were arriv'd at the gate which looks towards Cuzar, Timur knock'd at it, but they found it wall'd up. They went round the walls with great precaution, for fear of being discover'd, and in order to find out a part lower than the rest. Timur perceiv'd a place, which he shew'd Abdalla, and which he thought proper to fix the ladder against. After this discovery Timur return'd by the same aqueduct, took horse, and rode with all speed to his troops, with whom he march'd immediately for the taking of Carschi. He left forty three men to guard the horses, and sent a hundred to the walls with their ladders, which they had brought from Bourdalic; who also pass'd by the aqueduct we mention'd, being conducted by Abdalla, whilst Timur remain'd with a hundred soldiers

at

Book I. at the gate, to watch the time when it ſhou'd be open'd in the morning, that he might enter the city.

Timur ſurprizes Carſchi.

Thoſe brave men who, according to Timur's order, went to the foot of the walls, fix'd their ladders at the place agreed on; and ſcaling the walls, ran ſword in hand to the gate, where finding the guards drunk and aſleep in their miſtreſſes arms, they put 'em all to the ſword. The Derviſe Buke broke the lock of the gate with his battel-ax, and made way for Timur and his company to enter; who order'd the trumpets to ſound, and the ſoldiers at the ſame time to run to the caſtle, which they did with great crys. This ſtruck terror into every one; and the inhabitants, who ſuſpected nothing, being awak'd by the noiſe of the trumpets, thought there was an earthquake, or that the day of judgment was come. Timur, by his good conduct, made himſelf maſter of the city, while the troops ſeiz'd on the caſtle, where they took the ſon of the Emir Mouſſa priſoner with all his domeſticks, whom they bound, and caſt into priſons and pits. Mehemed Bei, ſon of the Emir Mouſſa, who afterwards was a confederate with Timur, being then very young, directions were given for concealing him, in order to his eſcape; that when he ſhou'd get to his father, his army might be intimidated, and diſperſe. He went that ſame night to his father; but the army did not diſperſe, as was expected, becauſe the Emir Mouſſa ſent immediately to Malek Behader, to give him notice of the city's being ſurpriz'd. Theſe two princes join'd their troops, and about noon beſieg'd the city with 12000 horſe. The Emir Mouſſa, who was of the houſe of Taidgut, poſted himſelf before the gate of the city, and Malek Behader encamp'd with the troops of

the

the Coronas over-againſt the gate which looks towards Cuzar. Timur himſelf reſolv'd to guard the gate of the city, and had for his lieutenant the Emir Mouſſa Bouga: he order'd the Emirs David and Muaid to defend the gate of Cuzar; and aſſign'd to the Emirs Siorgatmich Aglen, Abbas, Huſſein Behader, Acbouga and others, the care of the towers and walls. Chap. 16.

The Emir Muaid Erlat made a ſally, in which he was the thirtieth man, and fell furiouſly upon the beſiegers ſword in hand. In this rencounter he fought with ſo great valor, that, in a manner, he eclips'd the great exploits of Rouſtem and Eſfendiar*: he took ſixty horſes from the enemy, after having kill'd the riders, and brought 'em into the city, fighting all his way back.

In the mean while Durke Behader, who left the enemy, following the example of fortune, who had turn'd her back upon 'em, came into the city, and ſubmitted to Timur.

This prince had reſolv'd the ſame day to ſally out, and to make his enemys feel the ſtrength of his arms; but the Emir Seifeddin, who was skill'd in aſtrology, and predicted ſtrange things by geomancy, repreſented to him that it was not adviſable to undertake any thing that day, becauſe the hour of nine the next morning wou'd be more fortunate: his advice was taken, and the ſally was put off till next morning. On the beſiegers ſide Tizektchi Behader approach'd the gate with two hundred men, who erected their lances and bucklers in token of defiance; for which reaſon they kept watch all night in that poſt: but in the morning Eltchi Bouga and Akitmur let down the bridge, ſally'd out with fifty men, and ſword in hand fell upon the beſiegers, of whom they made a terrible ſlaughter.

* Two famous heroes in the Perſian romances, to whom are attributed actions altogether incredible.

Book I. Timur order'd Alichah and Dervichec Bergougi, with twenty horſe, to relieve theſe foot, who then oppos'd as many horſe. They went accordingly, and gave great proofs of their valor and good fortune.

On the enemys ſide Tagi Bouga came to the attack with ſword in hand; but Akitmur ſtop'd his paſſage, and unhors'd him.

Among the cavalry of the Emir Mouſſa there was a young Uzbec, exceedingly courageous, or rather raſh, who already imagin'd himſelf a conſiderable perſon: he prepar'd for the battel, took in his hand a great war-club, and advanc'd to ſignalize himſelf by ſome eminent action. Cazan Bouga boldly oppos'd him, and fell ſo dexterouſly upon the young man, that he was not able to defend himſelf, whilſt Benghi cut him croſs the body with his ſword.

The Emir Sar Bouga and Eltchi Behader fought briskly near the gate: they continually let fly a ſhower of arrows on the enemys, and ſo terribly gaul'd 'em, that victory declar'd herſelf for the beſieg'd. Fear got poſſeſſion of the enemys hearts, who, to eſcape the more expeditiouſly, flung away their large bucklers, call'd Toura; and covering their heads with their little ſhields, retir'd into the retrenchments they had made: but our men purſu'd 'em, and drove 'em beyond their ſtandards, that they cou'd not ſave themſelves; and ſo they fled as well as they were able into the ſuburbs.

A body of a hundred men of the enemy, commanded by Toukel, aſſaulted the city on the other ſide; and their foot ply'd their arrows with ſo much dexterity, that they conſtrain'd our ſoldiers to retire: but Timur ſally'd out with fifteen horſe only, and inſpir'd freſh courage into his men. Eltchi Bouga and Behram return'd

return'd to attack Toukel, who was fix'd behind a skirt of the wall, where he fought: Eltchi Bouga got upon the wall, and ſtruck at him with his ſword; but he avoided the blow, and fled. Chap. 16.

Death of Schah Behram.

It happen'd about this time that one of our ſoldiers of the regiment of Coraſſana with his ſword wounded Schah Behram, of which he died ſome time after. The good fortune of Timur, join'd with the fear of the enemys, caus'd the Emir Mouſſa, who was the principal author of this war, entirely to forfeit his reputation by flying with the ſeven thouſand horſe he commanded, tho he was reſiſted only by an handful of men, but who indeed were the moſt valiant in all Aſia. His ſoldiers were routed and diſpers'd; ſo that there remain'd only Malek Behader, who ſtood his ground before the gate of Cuzar with five thouſand men of the militia of the Coronas. Wherefore Timur march'd againſt him; but Malek no ſooner perceiv'd him than being ſeiz'd with fear, he caſt away his buckler, and fled into the camp at Gonbedluli. Timur purſu'd him; and Malek obſerving at a diſtance the cavalry of this prince, loſt all his courage, and fled again from that place, while his troops diſpers'd. One can ſcarcely believe a man capable of ſuch intrepidity as to attack twelve thouſand horſe, inur'd to war, and excited by a deſire of revenge, with only two hundred forty three ſoldiers: it is true indeed, the latter fought only to attain glory. Thus Timur, thro the aſſiſtance of heaven, took a city and a fortreſs in two days and two nights only, made ſlaves of part of his enemys, pillag'd their goods, and intirely defeated 'em.

The ſoldiers of Timur enrich'd themſelves with the ſpoils of the enemys, whom they purſu'd to a great diſtance. Timur order'd the prin-

Book I. ces Yakou and Seifeddin to follow 'em as far as the defile in the mountain of Chikidgek, and to ſeize all the fugitives they ſhou'd overtake. Then this prince, concern'd at ſeeing his orders ſo remiſly executed, purſu'd 'em himſelf, the Emir Daoud marching before him. A hundred of the enemys horſe, who belong'd to the rear of the army, perceiving 'em, divided themſelves into two bodys. The left fell upon Eltchi Bouga, and made him turn his back, whilſt the right attack'd Timur, who not only ſuſtain'd the firſt onſet, but even ruſh'd on 'em with ſo much vigor, that they gave way and fled; the body on the left, which had fallen upon Bouga, ſeeing the defeat of the other, fled alſo; and there remain'd many led-horſes, which were join'd to the other ſpoils the victorious ſoldiers had taken from the enemys.

Timur then perceiv'd Arzou Mulc Aga, ſiſter of Bayazid Gelair, and wife of the Emir Mouſſa, who fled with Malek Behader; he purſu'd her, and call'd to Malek to abandon her, and told him he wou'd ſave his life, tho he deſerv'd to loſe it. Malek laid hold on the promiſe of the prince, abandon'd the lady, and fled before: nevertheleſs the ladys fled full ſpeed, and Timur, who alone purſu'd 'em, had overtaken 'em, if a valet nam'd Achiktar, who had a bow and arrows in his hand, had not hinder'd him, feigning as if he wou'd let fly at him as ſoon as he ſhou'd ſee him advance. This man was an ill archer; but Timur, who had neither buckler nor arrows, took him for a good one, and was not willing to be blam'd for having expos'd his life for a woman; ſo he took care of himſelf, while his horſe, thro a caprice, ſtopt ſhort, which accident gave time to Doletchah Bacchi to join him, who holding his buckler before his head,

head, purſu'd the ladys, and the valet was oblig'd to let fly at him: but he ſhew'd his unskilfulneſs, ceas'd defending himſelf, and fled as faſt as the ladys; ſo that Doletchah was not able to come up with 'em. Chap. 16.

Arzou Mulc had then gone with child nine months, and was ſoon after deliver'd of a princeſs, who was nam'd Touman Aga. Without doubt the good fortune of this child was the only cauſe that her enemys cou'd not overtake her: the perſon deſign'd for happineſs, is happy even from its mother's womb. Touman Aga had afterwards the honor to enter the marriage-bed of Timur.

This prince return'd from Acoubi, which is near Kezilcac, which occaſion'd joy thro the whole camp; but the Emirs Yakou and Seifeddin were aſham'd, and repented for having ſhewn ſo much ſlackneſs in obeying Timur's orders: his diſpleaſure encourag'd 'em; they immediately departed to make reparation for their fault, and purſu'd their enemys: they march'd along the river Chekedalic, and came to the narroweſt paſſage of the mountain Chekidgek, where they met the troops of Gelair, and others who had fled; they brought 'em back, and by this means made amends for the fault they had committed.

Timur ſtaid all the winter at Carſchi, contented and glorying in his victorys; and gave the people of this country marks of his clemency and liberality, in relieving poor familys, whoſe ruin the war had caus'd. His chief care was that the arts ſhou'd flouriſh in this great city: and he order'd that the grounds round about ſhou'd be cultivated, that there might be plenty.

Book I. He gave the government of Bocara to Mamutcha, and commanded him to reduce entirely to obedience the inhabitants of that city, to render the country flouriſhing, and to remit yearly the tribute and revenues to his treaſury.

He ſent orders to Nikepeicha, who was wandring about Coraſſana, to come to him; and he gave him the government of Amouye and its dependences, of which he had formerly been the natural prince. Ali Yeſouri, who was without any employment at the head of the Yeſourians, went to Bocara to find Mamutcha his ſon-in-law, and with his Yeſourians ſubmitted to Timur, whom they had formerly refuſ'd to obey, tho he had ſeveral times ſummon'd 'em ſo to do. The Emir Muaid ſent Chirin Bei Aga his wife to Macan, and the ſecretary Turmegi's wife accompany'd her; but they miſs'd their way, which caus'd the loſs of many horſes and beaſts of carriage; but a guide was ſent 'em, who conducted 'em to Macan, where Timur kept a ſeraglio.

CHAP. XVII.

Mir Huſſein brings an army into the field to oppoſe Timur.

WHEN the Emir Mouſſa had ſav'd himſelf from the fury of our ſoldiers, he fled with the ruins of his troops to the Emir Huſſein, who, on the recital of what had paſs'd, was very much aſtoniſh'd. But the fear and inquietude which ſeiz'd him did not hinder his recruiting his army, and parting immediately

diately from Saliſerai, with deſign to give Timur battel. He ſent before him the Emirs Oladgia Itou Aperdi, Gehancha ſon of Taifou, and Poulad Bouga, with ten thouſand men of the Coronas, under the conduct of the Emir Mouſſa. They paſs'd the iron gate, and encamp'd in the narroweſt place of the mountain of Chekidgec, where they prepar'd for battel.

Timur, on advice of theſe motions, departed with reſolution to attack 'em at night. He took the road to Ilgouz Bagh, a mountain ſituate in the plain of Veragh; and that he might not be perceiv'd by the enemys, he went thro the deepeſt ſnow. He ſent ſome men by the road which leads to the top of the mountain to get intelligence. They there ſeiz'd on twenty of the enemys, who inform'd 'em of the ſtate of their army; and told 'em they had paſs'd, during the night, by the narroweſt part of the mountain Chekidgek; and were encamp'd at Chekedalic. Timur, for the greater ſecurity, ſent ſpys there, who confirm'd this advice; and aſſur'd him that the Emirs Mouſſa, Oladgia Itou, and others, had ten thouſand horſe, and that they were rang'd by ſquadrons on the mountain Accaya, where they were encamp'd. Timur had then but two hundred men, whom he put in order, and march'd againſt the enemys, alway ſecuring the advantage of the ground.

When the two armys were in view, they rais'd hideous cries; but Timur being aſſur'd of the great inequality of their forces, thought it proper to delay the time, that he might not expoſe himſelf to an apparent defeat, which would have tarniſh'd the glory of the famous victory he had already gain'd.

He thought himſelf the rather neceſſitated to do thus, in that it was the beginning of his

Book I. riſe; and that in loſing this battel, he ſhould loſe all hopes.

The enemy well knew our army was not numerous enough to attack them during the night; but Timur, who was better ſatisfy'd of it, prefer'd his retreat to ſo raſh an enterprize; and returning by the way of Courdenc, without being purſu'd by the enemy, he got to Carſchi, and then to Bocara, whence Ali Yeſouri and Mamutcha came to meet him, and pay him their reſpects: and afterwards he made his entry into the city.

The Emir Yakou had formerly been ill uſed by Mamutcha; this governor had caus'd him to be ty'd to a horſe's tail, beaten with a ſtick both before and behind, and made to run in that condition: but as he was always jealous of him, and hated him, he counſell'd Timur to go into Coraſſana on pretence that his affairs requir'd it; nevertheleſs Timur would not conſent to it, whatſoever inſtances he made him. The Emir went thither without taking leave of him, accompany'd with Seifeddin and Abbas Behader, and they arriv'd at Macan. Some days after, the news was brought to Bocara, that Mouſſa and Oladgia Itou, the ſcouts of the Emir Huſſein, were approaching with a great army. Timur told Ali Yeſouri and Mamutcha, that there needed only reſolution and valor to preſerve the country, and that they ſhou'd lead the troops out of the city, and attack the enemy by night. But theſe captains, who had not courage enough to undertake ſo raſh an action, refus'd to do it, and made appear to Timur, that it was better to defend the place, and ſtand firm againſt the attacks of the enemy, than to expoſe themſelves to the loſs of a battel.

As

As Timur perceiv'd their cowardice by their diſcourſes, he doubted their reſolution to defend the place; and as his affairs requir'd his preſence in Coraſſana, he went thither. When he was arriv'd at the Gihon, he met ten barks going down; he order'd 'em to be ſtopp'd, and they ſerv'd him and his men to croſs the river: thence entring into the deſart, he march'd to Merou, and went to join his illuſtrious family at Macan, a town of Coraſſana. Chap. 18.

CHAP. XVIII.

The ſiege and taking of Bocara by the army of Huſſein. Timur defeats the army of the Coronas.

THE Emir Huſſein beſieg'd Bocara, which was at firſt vigorouſly defended by Ali and Mamutcha; who, after having caus'd the troops that were in the ſuburbs to enter the city, gave marks of their valor in a ſally from the gate of Kelabad, where they briskly repuls'd the beſiegers, who, that they might ſurprize 'em, pretended to fly as far as the tomb of the Santon Seifeddin Bacrezi. Theſe men not being skill'd in the art of war, and imagining the enemy fled in earneſt, purſu'd 'em with their ſlings, axes, and other arms; but as they advanc'd, Huſſein rally'd his troops, who drove them back as far as the gates of the city, killing a great number, whilſt the reſt with difficulty eſcap'd, and flinging away their bows and arrows, hid themſelves in holes and granaries. Ali and Mamutcha wou'd have rally'd

Book I. ſome ſoldiers to defend the city; but they cou'd not do it. Wherefore being oblig'd to fly during the night, they took the road to Macan, very much troubled at their not being able to obey Timur's orders, which wou'd have been much more to their credit.

The Emir Huſſein ſent men in purſuit of 'em, as far as the Gihon, who ſlew almoſt all of 'em, and took poſſeſſion of their baggage. With great difficulty Ali and Mamutcha ſafely paſs'd the Gihon with ſome of their ſervants: they went thro the deſart to Merou, and at length had the honor to ſee Timur at Macan, of whom they begg'd pardon for their fault. Timur gave them horſes and furniture, and took 'em again into his ſervice.

Thus the Emir Huſſein made himſelf maſter of Bocara, where he ſtaid ſome time; then leaving the Emir Calil with ſome other Emirs and good troops to guard the city, he return'd to Saliſerai.

Timur paſſes the Gihon, and ſeizes Nikepeicha.

In the mean while, Timur learnt that Nikepeicha, to whom he had given the government of Amouye with its dependences, had behav'd himſelf as an enemy, and not only ungratefully ſeiz'd all the ſoldiers who wou'd have liſted themſelves in his ſervice, but had even ſtopp'd his domeſticks. This news put Timur in a paſſion; wherefore he departed that night by the road of Tourtghul with ſix hundred men, and arriv'd at the Gihon, when the river was overflown and extremely rapid. He himſelf look'd out for a paſſage, and at length choſe that which is at the foot of the mountain of Bourdalic, and order'd the Emirs to go down lower on the banks of the river with four hundred horſe. This prince, follow'd by twenty men, enter'd into the river at nine a-clock in the

the morning, and ſwam till half an hour paſt twelve before they got to the other bank; they then march'd all night, and next morning found themſelves at the town of Amouye, where Nikepeicha was. This governor being valiant, a good horſeman, and dexterous at the bow, put himſelf in a poſture of defence: but his ingratitude was fatal to him, for on his ſhooting his firſt arrow, the ſtring of his bow broke, and the arrow ſtuck in the buckler of Catai Behader, who, with Durke, fell immediately on him, and bound his hands behind his back: wherefore one may well ſay, that his treaſon had ſpun the cord with which he was bound. Timur order'd barks to be brought from the other ſide the river, in which the princes croſs'd with the four hundred men. Chap. 18.

About the ſame time Timur had advice that the army of the Coronas was encamp'd in the neighbourhood of Bocara: whereupon this prince being reſolv'd to attack them, departed thence, march'd all night, and met 'em in a place call'd Birmas: the two armys fought with extreme vigor: till at laſt the advantage fell on our ſide; for the Emir Calil general of the Coronas was at length vanquiſh'd.

After this expedition the victorious Timur paſs'd the Gihon, and encamp'd a whole month in a place nam'd the hill of Caraoul, where are wells and ciſterns; from thence he went to Macan, where, ſoon after his arrival, he puniſh'd Nikepeicha for his ingratitude.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

Timur ſends an ambaſſador to Malek Huſſein at Herat.

TIMUR at his arriv alatMacan, ſent the Emir Yakou in quality of ambaſſador to Malek Huſſein prince of Herat; who gave him a handſom reception, and ſpar'd nothing to convince him of the union he deſir'd with his maſter, telling him he wou'd go expreſs to Seracs, and if Timur wou'd give himſelf the trouble to come to that place, they wou'd enter into a ſtrict alliance, which ſhou'd be confirm'd by ſolemn oaths. The Emir Yakou gave Timur an account of this negotiation; but our prince having been formerly in this country with Hadgi Berlas, his uncle, he remember'd all the bad actions the race of Malek was accus'd of.

When the Emir Norouz ſon of Argoun Aga had all the power in the country of Coraſſana in the reign of Cazan Can, Malek Facreddin, uncle to Malek Huſſein, had been ſhut up by his father Chamſeddin Kert in the citadel of Kuſtar in the country of Gour. Norouz having obtain'd his freedom of his father, gave him in marriage the daughter of his own brother the Emir Hadgi, with the government of Herat; which was the cauſe of his riſe. But when Cazan Can's inclination towards the Emir Norouz, was chang'd thro the calumny of ſome ſlanderers, and the Can had put to death his brothers and relations in Media, and ſent the Emirs Cotluccha and Mankegut to take Norouz himſelf, this prince confiding

ding in the obligations Facreddin ow'd him, and the alliance they had contracted, fled to Herat for ſuccor, where he ſtaid the more willingly, in that Facreddin gave him a handſom reception, and renew'd his proteſtations of friendſhip, which he confirm'd by an oath. Nevertheleſs the Emir Cotluccha was no ſooner arriv'd at the gates of Herat, than the traitor Facreddin committed the moſt vile action in delivering up his benefactor the Emir Norouz into the hands of his enemies, who preſently put him to death. Cayaſeddin, brother of Facreddin, and father of Malek Huſſein, behav'd himſelf in the ſame manner in the reign of the Sultan-Abouſaid towards prince Chouban Selduz his benefactor, unjuſtly putting him and his ſon Chelaocan to death, who fled from Sultan Abouſaid to him for refuge, becauſe he had promis'd and ſworn to protect them. Tho the Emir Chouban had always blam'd the conduct of the Emir Norouz, in flying for refuge to ſuch traitors, ſaying, It was wrong to prefer the priſon of a citadel to the liberty which might be procur'd by flight: yet he did the ſame, and the like misfortune happen'd to him. As the fact is related at length in my *book of preliminarys*, I have but ſlightly mention'd it here, to ſhew that Timur's foreſight did not permit him to rely on this prince's promiſes; tho on the other hand his generous temper pointed out to him that it wou'd be unhandſom, if in requital for the good entertainment Malek Huſſein gave his ambaſſador, he ſhou'd behave himſelf with incivility and ſcorn: wherefore he ſent to him his own ſon prince Gehanghir, who was the eldeſt and deareſt of his children, accompany'd by Mobarekcha Sendgeri. And becauſe we are oblig'd Chap. 19.

to

Book I. to return greater civility than we have receiv'd. Timur order'd him to tell him in anſwer to his obliging expreſſions, that for a proof that he confided entirely in him, he had ſent his ſon, and left in his kingdom his family, and all that belong'd to him, becauſe he deſign'd to return to his native country: he added, that he did not doubt but Malek Huſſein wou'd follow the generous ſentiments which kings ought to have, in being faithful in what is entruſted to them, and that he ſhou'd be well pleas'd with what he did, becauſe from great men ought to proceed only great actions.

CHAP. XX.

Timur defeats the army of the Emir Huſſein in Tranſoxiana.

AS providence had deſign'd the crown for Timur, this prince was not permitted to taſte the pleaſures of Coraſſana, whilſt he cou'd acquire glory; he was excited therefore to depart out of that country to ſeek laurels elſewhere, tho the ſecurity he was in, and the good order of his affairs were powerful motives for him to ſtay there.

At this time almoſt all Tranſoxiana was in ſubjection to his enemys, who had every where troops in gariſon; yet he departed with ſix hundred men only for that country, croſs'd the Gihon, and having march'd all night, arriv'd next morning at Neyeſtan, that is to ſay, the field of reeds; where he ſtaid all that day in a garden to refreſh his horſes, and at length paſs'd

paſs'd by Jouibari; he march'd all night, and arriv'd at Carſchi on that ſide of it which looks towards Cuzar, and he inveſted it with his troops. Chap. 20.

He met many of the domeſticks of the Emir Mouſſa, whom he ſeiz'd and bound; the relations of Caiſer Anandgic, Coudeh and Ourdu-chah fled with their men; Dourke and Ali Behader fought ſome merchants whom they took to be enemys, and after having us'd them ill, took from them ſome bales of brocade, which they brought to Timur; who order'd all to be reſtor'd to the merchants, without reſerving the leaſt part.

There were at this time five hundred men of the Coronas at Couzimondac, whom the Emir Soliman Yeſouri join'd, as alſo Barat Coja and Hendoucha, with their troops: Anandgic and Coudec paſs'd by Cuzar, with a deſign alſo to join 'em.

Timur, ignorant of what had happen'd, departed from Carſchi at ſun-ſet, and arriv'd at midnight at Neugat, where he learnt news of the Coronas, and of the troops which had join'd them; this oblig'd him to be upon his guard, ſo that he went out of Neugat the ſooner, and ſtaid all night in the plain of that town.

The next day he decamp'd, and in their march Emir Yakou fell from his horſe, and was ſo dangerouſly wounded that his health was very much impair'd; wherefore Timur ſent him to Macan accompany'd by thirty men, and then march'd vigorouſly againſt the Coronas. All the brave men thought it beſt to give 'em battel, except Ali Yeſouri, whoſe relations told Timur of it, who compell'd him to take horſe. Ali Behader and Acbouga were ſent before with ſixty troopers for the forlorn-hope; and on the

enemys

Book I. enemys ſide Hendoucha was at the head of three hundred horſe. Theſe ſcouts ſoon came to blows; there enſu'd a bloody fight, in which the braveſt warriors loſt their lives. Tho Timur's ſoldiers were fewer than their enemies, yet they defeated 'em, and beat 'em back as far as the body of their army. After this expedition Timur gave time to the cavalry to reſt, and did not take horſe himſelf till noon: then he divided the ſoldiers into ſeven bodys; and becauſe the enemys were by far more numerous than they, he made the following ſpeech to encourage his men: "This day, brave ſoldiers, is a day of dancing for warriors; the dancing-room of the heroes is the field of battel; the crys of war are the ſongs ſung and danc'd to; and the wine which is drank is the blood of the enemy."

Military diſcourſe, according to the genius of the Tartars.

Timur left the Emirs Daoud, Sar Bouga, Huſſein Berlas, Seifeddin, Abbas, Acbouga, Hindou, Eltchi Bouga, Dourke, and Ali Behader, each in his own poſt; advanc'd himſelf to view the enemys, and at their approach divided his troops into two wings, commanding in perſon the main body.

When they were in view, the Cheik Bedreddin and his ſon fled, Ali Yeſouri and the two horſemen who accompany'd him did the ſame; but this did not hinder Timur's ruſhing upon the enemys like a lion. The battel did not laſt above an hour, victory declaring for Timur, who intirely routed this vaſt multitude. Our victorious ſoldiers purſu'd 'em, and drove 'em as far as Chekedalic; taking their principal officers priſoners, with much cattle and baggage, and enriching themſelves with the booty. Among the priſoners, were Oladgia Itou, Taycani and Poulad, who had once been

been of the number of Timur's beſt friends; wherefore our ſoldiers put them to the ſword; and laid their heads at the feet of the great Timur, who cou'd not ſee theſe illuſtrious men lie dead without grief: he order'd that their bodys ſhou'd be carry'd to the city of Kech, that the Imams might pray for 'em, and funeral obſequys might be perform'd in a ſumptuous manner, tho they had us'd hoſtilitys againſt him. Chap. 20.

After this defeat he wou'd not give the enemys time to recover their loſs, nor to levy freſh troops; but reſolv'd to purſue 'em as far as the fortreſs of Chaduman, and to put his army in order, to march directly againſt the Emir Huſſein: but the princes refus'd to follow him, repreſenting to him, that their opinion was, that he ought to abandon this enterprize, and return to Samarcand; to which he conſented.

Timur having got together the troops of Kech and the neighbouring places, departed for Samarcand, leaving Termagiuc Aigouri and Taghichah at Kech, to take care of his revenues, without over-taxing the people. At his arrival in the neighbourhood of Samarcand, Ouchcara Behader, governor of that city, ſally'd out with the troops of the Emir Mouſſa, and ſtopp'd at the bank of the rivulet Rahmet. Timur divided his ſoldiers into two bodys, and at the firſt onſet routed his enemys. Akitmur Behader purſu'd Ouchcara, and ſtriking at him with his ſword, broke his quiver and arrows; but Ouchcara turning himſelf upon his ſaddle, anſwer'd him with another blow of his ſword, with which he ſmote the head of Akitmur's horſe, which fell under him: ſo that Ouchcara fled, and enter'd into the city. Timur encamp'd in a place call'd Retin, while Ouchcara got together fifteen hundred men, whom

Timur returns to Samarcand.

Book I. whom he equipp'd to advantage, and made a ſecond ſally. The ſoldiers of Timur march'd againſt 'em like roaring lions, and ſo affrighted theſe new troops, that they fled without fighting; and re-entring the city, block'd up the ſtreets to hinder the cavalry from paſſing. Their fears were ſo great, that they got in their horſes all ſaddled with the greateſt expedition, their ſaddles being much bruis'd, ſo that they were but badly equipp'd; the ſoldiers likewiſe being reduc'd to ſo great miſery, that they hid themſelves in the filthieſt places.

Timur ſtaid ſome days in the delicious country of Sogd, where he choſe for his pleaſure-houſes Ferinkunt and Sagruge, two very agreeable villages.

In the mean time he had advice that Oladgia Itou and Poulad Bouga were advancing with a great body of the Coronas. Taghichah alſo arriv'd, and confirm'd this news, adding that a troop of ſoldiers had fallen upon Termagiuc unawares, and put him to death.

Timur departed from Sogd, to encamp with his army on the bank of the rivulet Yam; to which place Argounſchah, native of Bourdalic, whom Timur had ſent to gain intelligence, brought with him a ſoldier, who told Timur that Oladgia Itou and Poulad Bouga were encamp'd on the rivulet Toum, and that the Emir Huſſein was arriv'd at Carſchi with a great army. On this Timur imagin'd it beſt to wait a more favorable opportunity to revenge himſelf on his enemys.

He disbanded the army he had rais'd at Kech and the neighbouring places; and with the ſix hundred men who were with him before his paſſing the Gihon, march'd towards the lowermoſt part or baſon of the river of Samarcand.

The Emir Huſſein had already given orders to the Emir Mouſſa and Ouchcara Behader, to oppoſe Timur in his paſſage; for which reaſon they were marching to encamp with their troops at Kukelder Atchighi, to give him battel. Chap. 20.

Timur arriv'd there, and attacking them firſt; they fled, and ſav'd themſelves with great difficulty in the city of Samarcand.

Timur came to Sagruge in the night; and having given time to his cavalry to reſt themſelves, he departed in the morning, and arriv'd in the evening at Caradgic: he ſet out next morning, and came down to a place call'd the camel's neck; he went thence in the evening, and marching all night, arriv'd at Kukenc; he croſs'd the Sihon at Cogende, where he ſtaid one night. And as Kei Coſru and Behram Gelair, who ſided with the Can of Gete, had brought thence ſeven thouſand Getes commanded by Coutchoun Timur and Chiraoul, and had ſtopp'd at Tachkunt, Timur went towards that part of the country, the Can having order'd that the army and the people of the country ſhou'd rendezvous under Behram Gelair, who by virtue of that order ought to be Emir or governor of that city. But Timur did not find in Behram that friendſhip he expected: for tho Behram had always pretended a great affection to him, after having ſworn to join with him againſt the Emir Huſſein, and by the aſſiſtance he had receiv'd from Timur's troops was eſtabliſh'd in his own inheritance, and had got the advantage over his enemys; yet when this prince requeſted him to ſerve him in the condition he was in, he had no regard to his promiſes and treatys, but forgot all the obligations he ow'd him, and refus'd to render

Book I. him the ſervice he was able, tho he might have done it with eaſe, ſince he had the diſpoſal of all the country, as collector of the revenues of the imperial treaſury.

Timur boldly reproach'd him for his ingratitude; telling him that the union he had contracted with him was the firſt cauſe of his rupture with the Can and the Emir Huſſein; that this union had been preſerv'd inviolably on his ſide; that he had deliver'd him out of miſery, and help'd him to recover the command of his Toman, which he cou'd never have done without his aſſiſtance; that after he had been beaten by his enemys, he had been the cauſe of his gaining the victory over 'em; and that when he ſaw him have troops ſufficient to aſſiſt him, he came to him: but becauſe after all theſe kindneſſes he had treated him with ſo much baſeneſs, he did not doubt that he ſhou'd one day ſee him at his gate in the ſame miſerable ſtate from whence he had before deliver'd him. All this in the end fell out exactly.

The Emir Kei Coſru did not treat Timur in the ſame manner; for after having teſtify'd to him the joy he felt at his arrival, he conducted him into his palace, where he treated him magnificently, and gave him all poſſible marks of his good-will, promiſing to join with him againſt every-one elſe.

The Emir Kei Coſru had the honor to be ſon-in-law to Toglue Timur Can king of Gete; and the prince Touman Cotluc afterwards gave him in marriage the daughter of his couſin Biſun Timur Can, ſon of Abuken; and he had by this princeſs a daughter nam'd Rakie Can. Timur demanded her in marriage for his ſon the Mir-

za Gehanghir; and they paſs'd a whole month in pleaſures and diverſions. Chap. 21.

CHAP. XXI.

The Emir Huſſein ſends an army againſt Timur, which is defeated.

THE Emir Huſſein went into the city of Sebz at the head of a great army of the Coronas, and encamp'd at Salar Boulac. He ſent before to attack Timur the moſt conſiderable Princes of his army, to wit, the Emir Mouſſa, the Cheik Mehemed ſon of Beyan Selduz, Oladgia Itou Aperdi, and others, with twenty thouſand men; who march'd by Samarcand to the river of Balangour. But the Emir Mouſſa and the other leaders of theſe troops, who had ſeveral times felt the effects of Timur's valor, were ſeiz'd with fear; which oblig'd 'em to detach from their army three great ſquadrons whom they ſent before, with orders that every one ſhou'd keep a particular way to wait Timur's paſſage. Malek Behader was poſted in the road to Suzangheran with three thouſand men; Gehanchah in Rebat-Mulc with fifteen hundred troopers; and Kherman with a thouſand men at Dizac to guard the paſſage of Biti Codac.

Timur, who was not diſturb'd at the great number of the enemys, being accompany'd with Kei Coſru, took with him two thouſand Getes to oppoſe 'em. He went before with fifteen hundred men from a place call'd Cavas; he croſs'd the Sihon at Cogende, and in the night attack'd Gehanchah, whoſe troops he

37695

Book I. diſpers'd: the next day he went to Dizac, where he attack'd Kherman and beat him; and permitted his ſoldiers to pillage his baggage. He ſtaid at Dizac to give his cavalry time to reſt themſelves, and left there three hundred Getes to guard the ſpoils of the enemy. He then departed with two hundred horſe only, to attack Malek Behader: he ſent before him thirty of his braveſt and moſt experienc'd ſoldiers; four ſcouts went alſo to the right and left to make diſcoverys, and he follow'd 'em himſelf with a hundred and ſixty ſix men.

When the enemys ſaw theſe thirty men ſo well equipt advancing towards 'em with great boldneſs, they were ſurpriz'd, and thought it was the vanguard of the Moguls army, that is to ſay, of the Getes, and that the main body was behind. This thought, join'd with the ſecret fear they had of Timur, caus'd the troops of Malek to fly. Our men purſu'd 'em, and kill'd a great number: theſe cowards, who were fill'd with the fear which Timur had caus'd in them, approaching the Emirs Mouſſa and Oladgia Itou, alſo ſtruck terror into them; and tho they had twenty thouſand men complete, they decamp'd the ſame night, and fled in ſo great diſorder, that no one ſtaid for his comrade, becauſe every one being under apprehenſion of death, fled full ſpeed to rejoin Huſſein.

The prince Kei Coſru ſent to inform Timur that the army of the Getes had plunder'd the Muſſulmans; that after having made many ſlaves, they had return'd by the way of Dizac; and that he expected Timur with a hundred men in Rebat-Mulc. This news griev'd Timur, who preſently went to Kei Coſru, to acquaint him, that

that it was not right to leave the Muſſulmans in the hands of the *infidels* [2]. Chap. 21.

Upon this they held a council, wherein it was reſolv'd that ſixty choſen men ſhou'd be ſent in ſearch of the Getes in the mountain, to moleſt 'em, and perhaps put 'em to flight; in which caſe it wou'd not be difficult to deliver the ſlaves from the hands of the barbarians. In ſhort, theſe ſixty men had no ſooner rais'd a duſt on the mountain, than the Getes were afraid and fled, abandoning the ſlaves and booty, of which our ſoldiers eaſily made themſelves maſters.

After this expedition they return'd, and Timur croſs'd the Gihon, and went down to Comrac.

When the Emirs and ſoldiers of Huſſein, aſham'd, poor, and miſerable, were come to him, he fell into a great paſſion, and after a ſharp reproof, told 'em they too well deſerv'd the misfortune which had befallen 'em. He departed with the Can very wroth; and when he was at the white mountain [3], he choſe ten thouſand of his beſt ſoldiers, encourag'd 'em by his diſcourſes, and ſent them away as ſcouts, with order to croſs the Sihon at Cogende, and to march with all expedition to give the enemy battel.

About the ſame time that Timur receiv'd the news of the march of Huſſein, there fell a terrible ſhower of hail throughout the country; and tho this happen'd during the night, and the darkneſs was extraordinary, yet he mounted his horſe immediately, and the Emir Kei Coſru aſſiſted him with his forces. They departed to-

[2] The Getes were idolaters. [3] Ac Kutel, or Accaya.

Book I. gether at the head of fifteen hundred men, and at midnight arriv'd at the paſſage of Barſin: they ſeiz'd it, and order'd the trumpets to be ſounded, the noiſe of which, join'd to the fear the enemys were in, caus'd this army, ſo formidable and numerous in compariſon to that of Timur, to be ſeiz'd with a panick. It croſs'd the river, and march'd all night to find Huſſein: the ſoldiers appear'd before their general with ſhame, and the general was afflicted at his bad fortune. During theſe tranſactions, Behram Gelair, without following the advice of Timur or Kei Coſru, departed from Tachkunt with the army of Gete, to return home, and took the road to Seiram. As the furniture belonging to Timur and Kei Coſru were with Behram, theſe princes were conſtrain'd to follow him; and when they were arriv'd at Seiram, they found 'em left in the village of Tchemikunt, from whence Behram was already departed.

Flight of the army of Emir Huſſein for fear of Timur, and the return of Huſſein.

Timur ſent Sar Bouga and Acbouga Behader to Gete to the Emirs Chamſeddin and Hadgi Bei, to get their aſſiſtance; and then he conſulted with Kei Coſru concerning the place where they ſhou'd take up their winter-quarters, and it was reſolv'd that Kei Coſru ſhou'd go to Otrar, and that Timur with his ſix hundred men, on whom he very much rely'd, ſhou'd return to Tachkunt.

The Can and the Emir Huſſein conſider'd, that the winter approach'd, and that with all their efforts they wou'd be able to gain no advantage over Timur, becauſe this prince by his wiſe conduct had defeated all their enterprizes, notwithſtanding the numerous armys they had got together: they therefore left at Samarcand Poulad Bouga with a troop of their braveſt ſoldiers

ſoldiers to guard that city, and return'd to Arhenkſerai to paſs the winter there. Chap. 22.

CHAP. XXII.

The Emir Huſſein again ſeeks to make peace with Timur.

AFter the winter, Sar Bouga and Acbouga Behader, whom Timur had ſent to Gete, return'd, and brought advice that a great army of the Getes were marching to his aſſiſtance; and becauſe this prince uſually ſucceeded in his undertakings, and defeated the greateſt armys with few ſoldiers, the Emir Huſſein reſolv'd to make peace with him; and he the more earneſtly deſir'd it, in that he learnt that the army of Gete intended to come over to this prince in the ſpring. He imagin'd he ſhou'd not be able to reſiſt him when at the head of a great army, ſince with a handful of men he had ruin'd all his troops, and if he continu'd the war, he muſt expect the fatal conſequences of it: for this reaſon he thought it proper to apply himſelf to the doctors of Cogende and Tachkunt, and beſeech them to prevail with Timur by ſentiments of piety, and to inſpire in him, thro their wiſe counſels, a ſpirit of union and peace, inſtead of that of diſcord and war. Theſe doctors did not fail to come and ſeek him: after having made vows for his proſperity, they told him that being perſuaded of the reſpect he bore to men of their character, they were ſo bold as to ask a thing which concern'd both religion and the ſtate. "You "know, ſaid they, the war between you is

"the

Book I. " the cauſe of the ruin of the kingdom, and of
" the miſery of the people; and that at preſent
" a ſtrange army is on the point of coming in-
" to this country: the infidels will plunder the
" goods of the Muſſulmans, and bathe their
" hands in their blood; and if they are conque-
" rors, which God forbid, they will not ſpare
" even you; the hatred between you will cauſe
" ſtrange effects, and ruin all the antient fami-
" lys of the empire. We hope that, following
" the inſpirations of him who has always given
" you the victory, you will change this hatred
" into friendſhip and peace, that the affairs of
" the empire may be reſtor'd to their former
" ſtate, for the good and ſecurity of the peo-
" ple."

Theſe remonſtrances were follow'd by a dream of Timur, which at length caus'd in him a reſolution to make peace. This prince dreamt that the Sihon was overflown, and that he was ſet on a plank of wood on the water; that he fell down on his face, and pray'd without intermiſſion to be deliver'd from the danger he was in: that his ſurprize made him ſwoon away, and that when he was return'd from his ſwoon, he found himſelf on the bank of the river towards Samarcand, from whence, looking behind him, he perceiv'd a boiſterous ſea. When he awak'd, he interpreted the dream after this manner: he imagin'd the ſea ſignify'd an army, and that the deliverance he found in getting on the bank of the river towards Samarcand, ſignify'd that his deſires wou'd be accompliſh'd in that very place.

All theſe reaſons oblig'd him to change his reſolutions, and to deſpiſe the aſſiſtance he expected from Gete: he was entirely reſolv'd on a peace; but he thought that if he made uſe of

a mediator in it, it wou'd take up too much time to canvaſs the reaſons on both ſides, and to keep up the right of each; that the buſineſs wou'd be long in hand; and it was better he ſhou'd go himſelf to find the Emir Huſſein; that it wou'd be more convenient to have a conference together in relation to the difference between 'em, becauſe they wou'd ſooner agree on the articles of peace. For that purpoſe he ſent to Huſſein an officer whom he cou'd confide in, call'd Pentchenbe, to let him know his deſign; and at length our prince departed in perſon to regulate his affairs himſelf according to his cuſtom. In the mean while the Emir Mouſſa and Oladgia Itou came to meet Timur on the part of Huſſein, to ask pardon for all that had paſt: they renew'd their antient friendſhip, and Timur did Emir Mouſſa the honor to embrace him. Chap. 22.

After the preliminarys were ſettled, the peace was concluded, and theſe princes disbanded their army. They regal'd each other with ſeveral diverſions, and then they return'd home. Timur took the road to Kech, and arriv'd at that agreeable country, where all the grandees came to kiſs his feet, and receiv'd him with all imaginable civilitys. He found at Kech all ſorts of ſatisfaction and happineſs, and the people of this kingdom were extremely over-joy'd to poſſeſs in peace a prince ſo dear and valuable to 'em.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

The Emir Huſſein brings an army into the field from Bedakchan.

THE Can and the Emir Huſſein, on the news of the kings of Bedakchan having revolted, fail'd not to prepare an army for reducing them; and as theſe rebellious princes had alſo rais'd troops, they went to meet 'em, and the two armys were ſoon in view.

Malek Huſſein, prince of Herat, ſent ſome good troops from Balc, with orders to ravage the provinces thereabouts which were ſubject to the Emir Huſſein; and Timur had no ſooner advice of this enterprize than he departed for Kech with his forces to repulſe Malek Huſſein, in conſequence of the peace and union which had been renew'd between him and the Emir Huſſein.

When the troops of Malek heard of Timur's march, they return'd back, after having pillag'd Cheburgan and Balc, and all the country as far as Culm. Timur croſs'd the river at Termed; but as the Coraſſanians retir'd, he advanc'd no farther, but went in ſearch of the Can and the Emir Huſſein, who on notice of his coming, made a truce with the kings of Bedakchan, and immediately return'd. Theſe princes met at Condoz, embrac'd each other, and put an end to the averſion they had a long time bore to one another. They made entertainments which laſted ſeveral days, went together to the cold country of Iſcamich; and Timur ſent orders to prince Gehanghir his ſon, who was at Macan,

Macan, to come immediately with his family and retinue to the agreeable territory of Kech; which he did accordingly. Chap. 23.

Timur and Huſſein march'd with an army to Cabuleſtan.

Poulad Bouga and Acbouga alſo revolted, fortify'd themſelves in the citadel of Cabul, and committed many acts of hoſtility. The Emir Huſſein accompany'd by Timur, march'd with an army to that place to reduce 'em, paſs'd by the mountain of Hendoukech, and arriv'd before Cabul. Poulad and Acbouga made preparations to defend themſelves with bravery, and fortify'd the citadel.

Our army attack'd the place on every ſide, and gave many aſſaults; the beſieg'd vigorouſly defended themſelves from the top of their wells, caſting great quantitys of ſtones, and ſhooting arrows on the beſiegers.

Timur employ'd all his courage in ſubduing the enemy, which he ſo effectually perform'd, that he took from 'em all hopes of ſafety: but thro his own and his ſoldiers courage a great many of his brave officers were ſlain. Catai Behader, Cheik Ali Behader, and ſome others were wounded in the attack; but the preſence of Timur inſpir'd 'em with ſo much reſolution that they at length became victorious: our army enter'd the place ſword in hand, ſeiz'd on Poulad and Acbouga, and bound their hands; and after the taking of the place, the princes return'd home laden with glory.

The Emir Huſſein ask'd Timur's advice in relation to the deſign he had to make his ordinary reſidence in the city of Balc; and for this end to rebuild the citadel of Hendouan, formerly noted for the height of the walls, the depth of the ditches, and the largeneſs of the towers: but Timur attempted to diſſuade him from this thought, and for that reaſon told him the

Book I. the tragical hiſtory of the Mirza Abdalla his uncle, who after the unfortunate death of his father Mir Cazagan, wou'd reſide at Samarcand, notwithſtanding the counſel of the Emirs who were attach'd to his intereſt both by duty and inclination, and who cou'd not but repreſent, to him, that thus to abandon his native country, and live amongſt ſtrangers, was thro want of prudence, becauſe one cou'd not confide in the ſervice or aſſiſtance of ſtrangers: but this young prince wou'd not hearken to the counſel given him; and at length what had been predicted happen'd to him.

Timur told the Emir Huſſein that he took the ſame road as his uncle, and that a prince of ſo great a ſoul as himſelf ſhou'd not be guilty of a like fault, after ſuch an example had been given him.

Tho the Emir Huſſein approv'd of Timur's counſel as very fit to be taken, and as given him thro pure friendſhip, yet he did not follow it, but was reſolv'd to put his deſign in execution. He departed for Balc, at which place his misfortunes began; and tho it was reſolv'd, that at their return from Cabul, Timur ſhou'd depart for Kech, yet he deſir'd him to accompany him to Balc, which he did. Huſſein was no ſooner arriv'd there, than he began to build the citadel of Hendouan, and to dig the ditches: he gave orders for the men to work there with diligence, made all the inhabitants of Balc come into the citadel, and the city remain'd like a deſart; which happen'd in the year of the Hegira 769.

An. Dom. 1367.

Mog. The Monkey.

In the mean while advice was brought that the army of the Getes was again upon its march thither. The Emir Huſſein, who foreſaw that he was not able by himſelf to get over ſo intricate

tricate an affair as this, beſought Timur to do it himſelf, and to march into Tranſoxiana to repulſe this army, telling him all wou'd be loſt, if the troops had not for their general the moſt valiant prince in the world. Chap. 24.

CHAP. XXIV.

Timur marches at the head of an army to repulſe the Getes.

WHen the news of the march of the Getes was confirm'd, Timur departed for Tranſoxiana accompany'd by the Emir Mouſſa. They prepar'd themſelves warmly to oppoſe the enemys, who were arriv'd at Tachkunt, where they encamp'd to paſs the winter.

Timur and the Emir Mouſſa march'd to Samarcand, and encamp'd at Cara Kichlac. The Emir Huſſein follow'd 'em with the reſt of the army, and encamp'd in the plain of Kech.

There very fortunately aroſe a diviſion among the lords of Gète: for Camareddin of the hord of Ouglat, Kepec Timur, and Chiraoul were united with ſome troops againſt Hadgi Arkenout, who reſolv'd to give 'em battel. They took horſe with this deſign; but when they were in view, they made peace, and Arkenout return'd home: but Camareddin and Kepec Timur deceiv'd him, and retreated with their troops inſtead of following him; and then Hadgi Bei ſon of Chiraoul cut off Arkenout's head, and by that means put the army of the Getes in diſorder, and oblig'd it to march back again. Timur, who was well skill'd in the art of war, wou'd not attack 'em, but

Book I. but ſaid, that when there was a miſunderſtanding between the generals of the enemys army, it was requiſite that the ſword ſhou'd be left in the ſcabbard.

Timur and Mouſſa ſent meſſengers to tell the Can and the Emir Huſſein, that ſince the Getes were return'd in diſorder, it was proper to purſue 'em: but becauſe the kings of Bedakchan had made ſeveral irruptions during the winter on their dominions, and had pillag'd the city of Condoz, the Emir Huſſein thought it more adviſable to march into Bedakchan, and put a ſtop to the deſigns of thoſe princes.

Since thro the valor of Timur there was no further danger to be apprehended from the troops of Gete, the princes Huſſein and Timur rais'd freſh ſoldiers, with whom they march'd to Bedakchan; and when they had croſs'd the Gihon, and regulated the march of the army, they went to Taican and Keaoughan, and encamp'd at Kechem, a place dependent on Bedakchan. Timur, who lov'd to be firſt in every expedition, departed poſt, being accompany'd by Gehanmulc, ſon of the Emir Huſſein; and this laſt prince ſtaid with the Can in Kechem.

On the other hand, the army of Bedakchan march'd towards the borders of the mountain Kerkes, where they ſtopp'd; their commander imagining that not a bird cou'd paſs without their permiſſion: but when they perceiv'd Timur's horſe, they fled. Nevertheleſs, when they were arriv'd at the defile of Gerem, they were reſolv'd again to ſtand their ground; but as ſoon as Timur's ſtandard approach'd, all the troops fled beyond the mountain, croſs'd the river Gerem, ruin'd all the country, and ſeiz'd on all the paſſes of the river. Timur croſs'd it, and conceal'd a part of his men. And when the enemy

enemy had advice that the army had paſs'd it, they retir'd by the upper ſide of Bedakchan, encamp'd in a narrow paſs of the mountains nam'd Ortohdge, where two great rivers meet: but having advice that our troops were marching thither, they turn'd their backs, and abandon'd it again. They went towards Conghoralenk, and croſs'd at the utmoſt part of the Gihon; ſeiz'd on the other paſſes of the river which were on this ſide, and encamp'd there. The ſcouts of our army purſu'd 'em; but the enemy having prepar'd themſelves to give battel, beat and routed 'em: they even made prince Cheik Ali, king of Bedakchan, priſoner. Theſe vagrant princes afterwards preſented Timur with the horſes and all the flocks of their king. Timur, on advice that a troop of the enemy which had fled was retir'd into a defile, ſent againſt 'em Gehanmulc, ſon of the Emir Huſſein, with troops. He vanquiſh'd 'em, and took from 'em a great quantity of ſpoils: but at his return the troops of Bedakchan oppos'd his paſſage, took poſſeſſion of Tenknai, and gave him battel. Gehanmulc fled, and the victorious enemys recover'd all they had loſt. They kill'd a great many of our men, diſabled ſix hundred and thirty horſemen, and made themſelves maſters of their horſes and baggage. Balkhi rode poſt with this news to Timur. The prince immediately took horſe, and in a paſſion march'd to the top of the mountain; but his ſoldiers being fearful, wou'd not follow him; ſo he was forc'd to content himſelf with thirteen horſe, with whom he ſeiz'd on a narrow paſs, thro which the enemys were oblig'd to march: he fell furiouſly upon 'em, and beat 'em, reſcu'd his ſoldiers from their hands; and Timur proteſted that of all the battles he had been in, he had not yet met with Chap. 24.

Book I. ſo rough a one. In the mean while fifty of the enemys infantry, cover'd with their bucklers, boldly march'd againſt Timur; and being within ſhot of him, let fly a great cloud of arrows. At the ſame time two hundred men came up to their aſſiſtance: but, thro the good fortune of Timur, Eltchi Bouga ran to 'em, being alone, and on foot. He careſs'd 'em, and for that reaſon touch'd 'em ſeveral times upon the neck, ſpeaking to 'em in a kind and ſubtle manner. "The perſon you ſee, *ſays he*, is the great Ti-"mur: he will reſtore you your ſlaves: why "do you then fight to no purpoſe? You know "that if you are kill'd or made priſoners, you "will bear the blame of having your ſlaves "taken." When the ſoldiers heard the name of that prince, the reſpect they bore him hinder'd 'em from fighting. They confeſs'd their weakneſs, kiſs'd the earth in token of ſubmiſſion; and two of 'em came to him, in a humble manner, to beg pardon. Timur order'd 'em to bring the next morning all the horſes and bucklers they had taken from our men; and he promis'd to deliver 'em back their ſlaves. They conſented to every thing he requir'd; and ſaid to him, "We are your ſervants; whatever "you command, we muſt obey." They then return'd home, after having wiſh'd him all manner of proſperity. Timur return'd to his camp. The men of Bedakchan got together all they cou'd find belonging to us, beſides ſeveral preſents [1] of horſes and other things: next day they laid 'em at the feet of Timur, who kindly accepted of 'em, and order'd their ſlaves to be reſtor'd. At length this great prince, by his prudence, valor, and good conduct, with thirteen men only, deliver'd ſix hun-

[1] The Tartars preſents always conſiſt of 9 pieces of each ſort.

dred

dred and thirty horſemen who had been made ſlaves, and recover'd what an army had ſhamefully loſt; having moreover preſents made him by the enemys. He at length return'd ſafe to Bedakchan, where, as ſoon as he arriv'd, Tizekchi Gelair, and the troops which had fled, at leaſt thoſe which were come into that city, were ſharply reprimanded. The Emirs beſought him that he wou'd defer the proceſs againſt 'em till the end of the campaign; but Timur's zeal wou'd not permit it. He order'd 'em to be brought that inſtant before a court-martial; and after having examin'd 'em, they were all puniſh'd with the baſtinado according to their ſentence. Chap. 25.

During Timur's ſtay at Bedakchan, the Emir Huſſein ſent to tell him, that the Cheik Mehemed Selduz and Kei Coſru, after having got together all their friends and ſome troops, were upon their march, with their enſigns diſplay'd; that nothing but his invincible ſword was able to quench the fire of this rebellion: and he beſought him to come with expedition, to ſettle affairs there, according to his uſual good conduct. After having diſpatch'd this advice, the Emir Huſſein return'd with the Can to Saliſerai.

CHAP. XXV.

Timur returns from Bedakchan.

WHEN Timur had advice that the Cheik Mehemed Beyan Selduz and Kei Coſru were ſo raſh as to make war on Huſſein, he took horſe and departed from Bedakchan: and as every one foreſaw that victory always accompany'd the ſtandard of that prince, the rebels wrote him a letter, in which they repreſented the

Book I. cauſe of their diſcontent, and beg'd aſſiſtance of him. This letter was intercepted by the Emir Huſſein, of which Timur had advice. When he was arriv'd at Arhenk, he had a conference on the bank of the river with the Emir Huſſein, who teſtify'd his joy on ſeeing him, and obſerv'd on his ſide all the ceremonys which were tokens of a kind reception. Timur, becauſe of the friendſhip they had renew'd and confirm'd by oaths, expected that the Emir Huſſein wou'd ſhew him the letter of the princes, and not conceal his deſign; becauſe the diſcovery of a ſecret is a token of ſincerity: but Huſſein did not anſwer his expectation, which made him jealous. He was no ſooner got to his palace, than three perſons came to him, who told him that the Emir Huſſein had reſolv'd to ſurprize and ſeize on him. All this was confirm'd by a private perſon, to whom the Can Adel Sultan had writ, that the Emir Huſſein had order'd the Emir Mouſſa to watch an opportunity to ſeize on Timur; which letter he brought with him. Tho theſe circumſtances increas'd his jealouſy, yet he had ſo great a ſoul, that he took no notice of 'em, and acted as he had done before.

All theſe marks of Huſſein's baſeneſs, confirm'd by ſo many circumſtances, did not aſtoniſh Timur: he conceal'd this letter, imagining that if Huſſein had any deſign to betray him, he wou'd have done it at their firſt interview. "Is the "Emir Mouſſa, *ſays he*, able to ſeize me? And "can a fox make a lion his prey?"

After he had baniſh'd from his mind all thoſe thoughts which might give him any diſcontent, he took horſe, and went to find Huſſein, to know of him the truth of theſe rumors. He met him on horſeback on the bank of the Gihon: and as he was about to ſpeak to him, there came a bark

bark from the other ſide of the water, out of which there ſuddenly ſtept forth a man, who whiſper'd to Huſſein, "The enemy is near, "the army muſt be got ready." Huſſein, upon hearing this news, thought the beſt way to overcome the enemy wou'd be to ſend Timur againſt 'em. He told him of it, and inſtantly beſought him to croſs the river with his troops. Chap. 26.

Timur did as he deſir'd; and when he had overtaken the ſcouts, he put the army in order of battel: but the enemys had no ſooner heard of the arrival of the great Timur, than they turn'd their backs and fled. Kei Coſru took the road to Cair Tekin, and thence to Alai, whither he was purſu'd by Zeudehacham; and the Cheik Mehemed Beyan Selduz fled to Zizi, towards Cogende, to which place Timur purſu'd him: but the Cheik croſs'd the Sihon, and fled towards Tachkunt and Otrar: wherefore Timur, full of glory, immediately return'd to Kech, where he ordinarily reſided; whilſt every place echo'd forth the rumor of his victory.

When Huſſein had provided againſt the inſults of his enemys, he departed from Arhenk to Balc, where he choſe the caſtle of Hendouan for his reſidence.

CHAP. XXVI.

A ſecond rupture between Timur and Huſſein.

WHEN God deſigns a thing, he diſpoſes the cauſes, that whatever he hath reſolv'd on may come to paſs: thus he deſtin'd the empire of Aſia to Timur and his poſterity, becauſe he foreſaw the mildneſs of his govern-

Book I. ment, which wou'd be the means of making his people happy. The leaſt accident in the courſe of this prince's fortune hath been ſo extraordinary, that the wiſeſt and moſt learned men were never able to fathom it: every thing fell out according to his deſire, thro the aſſiſtance of the divine providence, which had reſolv'd to ſettle the crown on his head. And as ſovereignty, according to Mahomet, is the ſhadow of God, who is one, it cannot be divided, no more than there cou'd have been two moons in the ſame heaven; ſo, to fulfil this truth, God deſtroys thoſe who oppoſe him whom providence wou'd fix upon the throne.

Among all the princes who had the title of ſovereigns when the riſe of Timur began, there was none of greater power than the Emir Huſſein: but his wicked inclinations ſoon caus'd his ruin, and his avarice made him deſpiſe all ſentiments of honor and virtue; on the other hand, his ſelf-conceitedneſs, and the ſmall regard he ſhew'd to others, join'd to paſſion and imprudence in his ſpeeches, render'd his government inſupportable, and drew on him ſo great an averſion from the people, that they loſt all the eſteem and affection they had had for him. The good intelligence he kept with Timur-Bec had ſo firmly ſupported his authority, that ſcarce any one refus'd whatſoever he demanded; and he who declar'd himſelf his enemy, was not ſafe from the vengeance of Timur, but by flight. In all his affairs, both proſperous and unſucceſsful, Timur aſſiſted him as far as he was able, with an admirable courage and intrepidity: he even purſu'd the Can Adel Sultan, who was jealous of Huſſein, tho he had rais'd him to the throne: this prince fled from his court, and paſs'd thro the country of Koch; but

but Timur ſeiz'd him after ſome reſiſtance, and ſent him to Huſſein. Moreover, the friendſhip of theſe two princes was kept up by their alliance in marriage, Timur having eſpous'd the ſiſter of Huſſein: Nevertheleſs the latter had always deſign'd to deceive Timur; for tho he had in appearance repented of the enmity he had conceiv'd againſt him, and had obtain'd a peace with ſo much difficulty, and tho their agreement was confirm'd by oaths, yet he left not off his former evaſions; his unconſtant humor, join'd with the malice of his relation Poulad Bouga, and of the Emir Calil, caus'd him to break thro all his oaths, and the treaty he had made with Timur. He ſent men to Kech, to make all Timur's ſubjects depart out of that city, and to bring 'em to Balc. And becauſe the Emir Muaid had in a drunken fit beaten and kill'd the ſon of Chaourtchi, and fled for it, Huſſein ſent meſſengers to bring away to Balc the wife of this Emir, call'd Chirin Bei Aga, the ſiſter of Timur; he diſmiſs'd the prince Gehanghir, whom Timur his father had plac'd near him, and order'd him to ſend him forthwith the Emir Mouſſa with the troops he commanded. Timur had every day new cauſes of jealouſy, advice being brought him that a deſign was form'd to ſeize his perſon: on the other hand, the ſecret which Huſſein had made of the letter of Kei Coſru, join'd with the aſſurance Mehemed Beyan had given him that all theſe advices were well grounded, as in effect they were; and the reflections he made on the preſent motions and former treaſons of Huſſein: all this, I ſay, convinc'd Timur of the evil intention of that prince, whom it was unſafe not to ſuſpect. In the mean while he held a council with the Emir Mouſſa and the princes he Chap. 26.

Book I. cou'd moſt confide in; in which he told 'em the Emir Huſſein had deſigns againſt his perſon, and that it was prudent for him to prevent their being put in execution.

When the Emir Mouſſa, the other Emirs, and the principal courtiers of Timur, as the Emirs Daoud, Sar Bouga, Muaid, Huſſein Behader, Acbouga, Eltchi Behader, the Cheik Ali Behader, and Doletchah ſecretary of ſtate, had heard his diſcourſe, they unanimouſly agreed that he ought no longer to confide in the treaty of oaths of Huſſein, ſince he always had deſign'd to deceive him. "God "forbid, ſaid they, that we ſhou'd let ſlip "this opportunity of putting ourſelves in a "condition not to fear him; for if we do, "we ſhall never be able to recover it, and "then repentance will avail nothing; we ought "to prepare to oppoſe him, and employ all our "care to carry on ſucceſsfully ſo important an "affair, that he may no longer have the means "of hurting us." After having given thanks to God, according to the cuſtom of the council, they concluded thus: "Since the enemy has al-"ways evil deſigns in his heart, it will be bet-"ter to proclaim open war againſt him." Then addreſſing themſelves to Timur, they ſaid, "This perfidious prince deſigns to ruin you: "you ought therefore as a wiſe man to break "off all intelligence with him; by which you'll "put an end to his inſupportable tyranny, and "ſtop the tears and crys of the people, who "expect freedom from your hands."

The Emir Yakou and Doletchah preſs'd this home to Timur, who gave great attention to 'em. And after the Emir Mouſſa had renew'd with this prince a promiſe of friendſhip, they conceiv'd a perfect enmity againſt Huſſein; and excited

excited by the opportunity this conjuncture afforded 'em, they began the rupture by the death of Ali brother of Keſer Yeſouri. Chap. 26.

On further aſſurance that the Emir Huſſein deſign'd to violate his oaths, and had already prepar'd to execute his artifices, Timur reſolv'd on the ruin of this enemy. But as his great ſoul wou'd not permit him to make uſe of tricks which are ſuggeſted by weakneſs or neceſſity, he boldly declar'd war againſt him, giving out his orders for troops to be rais'd, and ſending Hindoui Corcora native of Capchac, with order to oblige the Cheik Mehemed Beyan to return, who had fled, and croſs'd the Sihon for Otrar.

LIBRARY OF THE BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE ASIATIC

When the troops were come to the place where Timur was, this prince gave his orders among the ſcouts and guards; he kept with him the Emir Mouſſa to command the rear, and departed from Kech in perſon, after having, according to cuſtom, conſulted the aſtrologers, and taken the happy moment in which he ſhou'd decamp. He ſet out before the reſt with a great number of brave men, full of zeal, ambition, and hope. As ſoon as he arriv'd at Cuzar, the Emir Mouſſa was ſurpriz'd with a panick fear, as uſual, went back from his promiſe, fled, and return'd to Samarcand. Timur ſeem'd to take no notice of this action; but ſent Siorgatmich Aglen, with the Emir Muaid and Huſſein Berlas, before the reſt, as ſcouts; while himſelf commanded the guards, and continu'd his march. When theſe ſcouts had paſs'd the iron gate, and were arriv'd at Termed, the ſcouts of the army of Huſſein, commanded by Hindouchah and Calil, perceiv'd 'em, but they ſoon fled back to Balc.

When Timur was arriv'd at Boya, three leagues from Termed, he met the illuſtrious and

Book I. and pious Santon Seid Bereke, one of the moſt conſiderable Cheriſs (that is, relations of Mahomet) of the venerable Mecca. This famous Cherif, who had acquir'd a great reputation for his piety and learning, came by chance to this place: he preſented Timur with a drum and a ſtandard, which are the ordinary marks of ſovereignty; and at length, as if inſpir'd, he ſung an hymn, which predicted Timur's future happineſs.

Timur gave Seid Bereke a very magnificent reception, he being one of the moſt illuſtrious lords of the houſe of the prophet. He then join'd with him in an indiſſoluble friendſhip; and this great Cherif reſolv'd to ſpend all his days with a prince whoſe greatneſs he had foretold: and Timur order'd that after his death they ſhou'd be both laid in the ſame tomb, and that his face ſhou'd be turn'd ſideways, that at the day of judgment, when every one ſhou'd lift up their hands to heaven to implore aſſiſtance of ſome interceſſor, he might lay hold on the robe of this child of the prophet Mahomet.

The great confidence Timur always plac'd in this Cherif, who was the chief of all the other relations of Mahomet, is too well known to need proofs of it. Their ſtrict friendſhip was of great advantage to the Mahometan religion, and on that account ſeveral people abandon'd their error and idolatry to embrace it. This union hath continu'd to this day among their illuſtrious poſterity; and it is hop'd, that having begun ſo well, it will remain among their deſcendents to the end of time.

Timur departed from Boya for Jagana on the river Jagantouc, where he order'd the Emir Yakou to aſſemble the troops which were in the neighbourhood. Yakou accordingly got together

ther the horſe of thoſe countrys, as well of the hord of Selduz as others, and ſent 'em to the camp; he afterwards went to Catlan to levy the troops of that country. Chap. 26.

When the ſtandard of the great Timur was arriv'd at the paſſage of Oubadge, the Cheik Mehemed Beyan and Hindoui Corcora join'd the army. This Cheik had the honor to ſalute Timur, who croſs'd the Gihon, and went to encamp at Culm, the troops of which place join'd ours. The Emir Oladgia Itou, whom the Emir Huſſein had plac'd in Condoz, and the Cheik Mehemed king of Bedakchan, whom Timur had invited to come and join him, ariv'd alſo with their troops, and receiv'd particular favors from Timur; and as they all hated Huſſein, not being ſafe againſt his inſults, they were over-joy'd at the march of Timur, and the war he had declar'd. They gave ſeveral entertainments to teſtify their ſatisfaction, and loaded this prince with praiſes: "All the king-"dom, ſaid they, is oppreſs'd by your enemy; "advance like an hero to dethrone him, and "you will make this monarchy flouriſh." The Emir Kei Coſru, who had fled from his country of Catlan to Alai for fear of the Emir Huſſein, came alſo to join this army; and the Emir Yakou arriv'd at the ſame time with the troops of Catlan. In ſhort, according to Timur's orders, there came from every province of the empire of Zagatai a general with his troops to the camp, which was ſo fill'd that there was no room for any more.

All the Emirs and princes of this great kingdom promis'd obedience to Timur, and gave publick teſtimonys of their fidelity in his ſervice, ſo that nothing cou'd be a finer ſight than the camp of this conqueror. Timur ſent out a great number

Book I. number of brave men for ſcouts; which the Emir Huſſein had alſo done. The Cheik Ali Behader, who was of prodigious ſtrength, had no ſooner perceiv'd the ſcouts of Huſſein, than he ruſh'd on 'em like a lion ſword in hand. The encounter was terrible, nothing being heard in the two Mangalai [1] but frightful crys, while the ſoldiers fell on each ſide. Catai Behader attack'd 'em in another place, and oblig'd the enemy to fly: and the Cheik Ali Behader took Chouban Serbedal priſoner. Afterwards this great army, being divided into two bodys, march'd by the foot of the mountain: the ſoldiers, who were always deſirous to fight in his ſervice, were fill'd with joy, and made the air echo; LONG LIVE THE GREAT TIMUR.

The army encamp'd on the banks of a river, which runs from the narrow paſſage of Ghez, near the citadel of Orboz. Here Timur-Bec gave Siorgatmich Aglen the title of Can; and after he had regulated his army, departed for Balc. He met Zendehacham the ſon of Mehemed Coja, leader of the vanguard, who came from Cheburgan with the troops of the hord of Aperdi, and join'd him.

This army, conſiſting of a prodigious number of valiant men, block'd up the city of Balc on all ſides, and beſieg'd the citadel call'd Hendouan. There was a hideous cry among the Tartar troops; nevertheleſs a great many horſe and foot ſally'd out of the city to repulſe our ſoldiers; and the two armys fought with unparallel'd courage till night, when both partys

[1] A conſiderable body of ſoldiers who are a kind of vanguard, always commanded by a prince.

drew

drew off. In this battel, prince Omar Cheik, Chap. 26.
the ſon of Timur, who was no more than fifteen years old, having given great proofs of his valor, was wounded with an arrow which pierced thro his foot: and tho the ſurgeons drew a hot iron thro the wound, this brave young prince bore it with invincible patience. The next day the ſun had no ſooner ſhone on the fort of Hendouan, than the two partys prepar'd for battel. Timur's army march'd at the ſound of kettle-drums and trumpets; and a party of Huſſein's men ſallying out of the citadel to ſhew their valor, they began the fight, which was very bloody. Huſſein, who at a diſtance beheld this terrible encounter, conceiv'd his affairs to be deſperate, and that he ſhou'd never be able to re-eſtabliſh 'em: he therefore reſolv'd to ſhut up the gate of the citadel, and to abandon his fortune and all his grandeur.

Timur defeats Huſſein.

The victorious Timur ſent to acquaint him, that if he deſir'd his life, he muſt ſubmit, and deliver up the fort. Huſſein being now reduc'd to the laſt extremity, at this time acted with prudence; he ſent his eldeſt ſon to Timur, with the Can whom he had ſet up: they ſubmitted to him, beſought him to ſpare their lives, and told him they ſhou'd account themſelves happy in being ſubject to him. Huſſein then ſent his other ſon, and order'd him to tell Timur in the moſt ſubmiſſive manner, that ſince fortune had forſaken him, he foreſaw that the kingdom wou'd be Timur's lot, and poverty his; that therefore he wou'd reſign his crown, renounce the riches, grandeur, and other pleaſures of this world, being reſolv'd to lead a private life overwhelm'd with griefs and misfortunes, and to requeſt nothing of him but a free paſſage out of the citadel, in order to go a

pilgrimage

Book I. pilgrimage to Mecca. Timur granted his requeſt, and order'd that no one ſhou'd moleſt him, but that he might depart in freedom at the time he propos'd, and retire whither he pleas'd.

The Emir Huſſein ſent again to ſatisfy Timur that he wou'd go out the next day; and requeſted he wou'd promiſe him that no one ſhou'd undertake any thing againſt his life. Timur granted it; but Huſſein was ſo accuſtom'd to break his word, and therefore jealous that Timur wou'd not keep his promiſe, that he went out of the citadel the ſame night with two ſervants. His affliction indeed had ſo overwhelm'd him, and he was ſo full of jealouſy, and under ſo much ſurprize, that he had forgot the place he was to go to; neither had he a ſoul devout enough to perform the pilgrimage he promis'd. After wandring for ſome time he arriv'd at the old city of Balc; and when morning was come, his fear of death, which he was conſcious he had deſerv'd, made him get upon the minaret * of the principal moſque, where he hid himſelf. By this were fulfill'd the words of Gelaleddin Roumi in his poems, "That a camel which got upon a minaret, cry'd out, "*I am hid here, pray don't diſcover the place I am* "*in.*"

As the time fix'd by fate for the death of Huſſein was come, the concern he was in to hide himſelf was in vain. A ſoldier, who had by chance loſt his horſe, and been every where to ſeek it, was adviſ'd to get upon the minaret to try if he cou'd not perceive it from

* A high ſteeple built near the moſques in Turkey, where the cryers with a loud voice proclaim the times of prayer.

thence

thence. He went up, and ſaw the Emir Huſ- Chap. 26.
ſein, whom he knew. This prince, who in his proſperity had never ſhewn the leaſt generoſity to a ſoldier, flung down before the man a handful of pearls, and promis'd if he wou'd ſave him from the danger he was in, he wou'd not fail to requite him according to his power; he beſought him with the greateſt importunity, and made him ſwear he wou'd not diſcover him. The ſoldier promis'd he wou'd not, and went down the minaret; but immediately ran to Timur, to whom he told the adventure, not forgetting the circumſtance of the pearls, nor the intreatys Huſſein had made: he ask'd pardon of Timur for the action, and told him, that becauſe he had the honor to belong to him, he cou'd not keep it ſecret, but was oblig'd to give him this important advice.

The Emirs and ſoldiers had no ſooner heard of this, than they ran to the moſque. Huſſein, who ſaw 'em from the top of the minaret, deſpair'd of his life: he came down very much afflicted, and hid himſelf in a hole: but by chance the tip of his garment was ſeen; ſo that he was diſcover'd, and brought to Timur with his hands bound. This prince wou'd not break his promiſe, but ſaid to the Emirs who were near him, "I renounce the right I have of taking "away his life, and eraze the ſentence of his "death, by which I might revenge my ſelf."

When he had diſmiſs'd him from his preſence, Kei Coſru prince of Catlan complain'd of the wrong which had been done him, in that Huſſein had put to death his brother Kei Cobad; he therefore beſought Timur to deliver him into his hands, that juſtice might be done for the crime he had committed in taking away his brother's life. Timur, to appeaſe Kei Coſ-

ru,

Book I. ru, told him he ought to abandon this proſecution, for that his brother's blood wou'd be reveng'd without his having a hand in it; and on that occaſion he cited a verſe of the poet: *Leave him who hath offended you in the hands of time, for time and fortune will avenge you.*

Death of Emir Huſſein.

Nevertheleſs the remembrance of the antient familiarity, as well as the alliance between Timur and Huſſein by the marriage of the illuſtrious princeſs Turcan Aga, caus'd ſo great a ſorrow in Timur's mind, that he melted into tears. Upon which the Emir Oladgia Itou, a man of years and great experience, imagin'd that as Timur bore ſo great affection towards Huſſein, he might eſcape from the danger he was in, and when an opportunity was once loſt, they wou'd repent of it: he therefore made ſigns to prince Kei Coſru, and the Emir Muaid, to go out of the aſſembly; which they did without asking leave of Timur, and taking horſe, they follow'd the Emir Huſſein, ſoon overtook him and ſlew him: which puniſhment being due to him according to the ſtrict rules of juſtice, the protection of Timur avail'd him nothing.

An. Dom. 1369. Heg. 771. Mog. The Dog.

The body of this prince was laid in the tomb of Santon Coja Ucache.

At length the army made themſelves maſters of the fortreſs of Hendouan; the two ſons of Huſſein, Conſaid and Norouz Sultan, paid for their father's faithleſſneſs, for they were burnt, and their aſhes caſt into the air; his two other ſons, Gehan Mulc and Calil Sultan, fled into India, where they periſh'd. The Can whom Huſſein had ſet up was alſo put to death. They brought to Timur the ladys and domeſticks of Huſſein, as alſo all the treaſure and riches he had amaſs'd with ſo much ſollicitude and

and avarice. Among the ladys of this prince's ſeraglio, Timur kept for himſelf the princeſs Serai Mulc Canum, daughter of Cazan Sultan Can, Qlous Aga daughter of Beyan Selduz, Iſlam Aga daughter of Keſer Yeſouri, and Togi Turcan Catun. He gave to Behram Gelair the great queen, Sevendg Cotluc Aga daughter of Turmechirin Can, Huſſein's firſt wife; he gave Dilchadaga to Zende Hacham, and the princeſs Adel Mulc, daughter of Kei Cobad prince of Catlan, to the Emir Yakou Berlas: he diſtributed the other ladys of Huſſein's palace in the ſame manner, and gave the daughter of this prince to Eltchi Bouga brother of Taban Behader. Chap. 26.

Timur order'd that the inhabitants of the city of Balc, who had ſhut themſelves up in the citadel of Hendouan with Huſſein, ſhould return to the old city, and rebuild it for their dwelling-place. The citadel, after it had been pillaged, as well as the palaces of Emir Huſſein, were all raz'd even to the very foundations; and every thing that belong'd to him was ſo entirely deſtroy'd, that there might remain no footſteps of him.

The end of the firſt book.

BOOK II.

The advancement of Timur-Bec to the throne of the empire of Zagatai. The marriage and death of Mirza Gehanghir his eldeſt ſon. Seven famous expeditions againſt the Getes. The conqueſt of the kingdoms of Carezem and Coraſſana; of the empire of Capchac, and grand Ruſſia. The eſtabliſhment of Tocatmich Can on the throne of Capchac. The birth of Mirza Charoc ſon of Timur. The conqueſts of this emperor in Mazendran, Azerbijana, the country of Fars, which is the true Perſia, and in Irac Agemi.

CHAP. I.

The eſtabliſhment of Timur on the throne of the empire of Zagatai.

AFTER the taking of the city of Balc, all the Emirs, princes and generals of the army of the empire of Zagatai, the Cans of Termed, and the prince of the Cherifs, Seid Bereke, (who, as we have related in the former book,

book, had predicted Timur's advancement to the throne) aſſembled in this city, and with unanimons conſent choſe Timur to fill the imperial ſeat of Zagatai. Nevertheleſs they waited for the proper ſeaſon to perform the ceremonys of his coronation; and as ſoon as that time came on, Timur aſcended the throne, plac'd the crown of gold on his head, and girded himſelf with the imperial belt in preſence of the princes of the royal blood and the Emirs, who all kneel'd down before him, and having wiſh'd him proſperity, made him ſumptuous preſents, ſprinkled handfuls of gold and precious ſtones upon his head, according to cuſtom *, and gave him the title of Saheb Caran, which words ſignify the emperor of the age and conqueror of the world; and from that time all the country was ſubject to his laws. Chap. 1.

This prince was then thirty four years old, being born in the year 736; this great action happening in the year of the Dog, one of the twelve years of the Mogul calendar, anſwering to the year of the Heg. 771. in the month of Ramadan, in which month the alcoran came down from heaven, according to the opinion of all our doctors. An. Dom. 1335. Mog. The Mouſe. An. Dom. 1369.

This prince was at firſt named Timur by his father the Emir Tragai; which name ſignifying Iron, was given him becauſe of his extraordinary ſtrength; but he was afterwards called the Lion and Conqueror.

In ſhort he hath almoſt always been invincible, and thoſe who have hated him, or made war on him, have been only the inſtruments of aggrandizing the honor of his throne, and the glory of his triumphs.

* This cuſtom continues to this day, not only at the coronation of princes, but alſo at the marriages of private perſons.

Book II. He began his warlike actions in the city of Balc, which had belong'd to the Emir Huſſein; the inhabitants of which place he treated with the utmoſt rigor, binding ſome in chains, and beheading others; he deſtroy'd their houſes, and either rooted up or burnt the reſt of the country; ſeiz'd on their riches, which he diſtributed among his officers, and made their wives and children ſlaves.

Thus there remain'd no more rebels in that country; the people enjoy'd peace; and there was nothing to be fear'd but from luxury and effeminacy.

As ſoon as Timur was upon the throne, he open'd the rich treaſures of the Emir Huſſein, which have been already mention'd, and was very liberal; he particularly diſtinguiſh'd himſelf by his civilitys towards the governors of towns, the generals of the army, the Emirs and principal men of the ſtate; enlarging their commiſſions and honors: at length he diſmiſs'd 'em all, ordering 'em to the places of their reſidence, that they might adminiſter juſtice to their ſubjects.

CHAP. II.

Timur returns from the city of Balc to Samarcand: the building of the caſtle and fortreſs of that metropolis.

AFTER the taking of Balc, Timur made prince Mourad, ſon of Tchougam Berlas, governor of it; and having a deſign to return home, he march'd towards Kech, after having built a bridge of boats over the Gihon *, which

* Oxus.

is

is but eight leagues diſtant from Balc; and which having happily croſs'd, he arriv'd in the delicious reſidence of the country of Kech, and encamp'd in the plain of Couchmich, on the banks of the fine river of Cochca. This prince, as he us'd all his authority to encreaſe the joy and pleaſure of the great lords of this country, ſo he procur'd to the enemys of the kingdom all the diſquietude and trouble he poſſibly cou'd, during the two months he ſtaid in theſe delicious countrys. He there order'd carpets to be ſpread, and feaſts prepar'd; giving himſelf up to pleaſures, and ſitting upon the throne in his native country, the city of Kech. Chap. 2.

The country being deliver'd from the ſcourge of war, the favorites and officers of the houſe of Timur, and all thoſe who were attach'd to his intereſt, were loaded with gifts, and rais'd to conſiderable poſts and honors. In ſhort, this prince careſs'd the army, and particularly the generals; theſe he cloth'd with robes of honor, after having enrich'd them, and confirm'd the princes in their Tomans, and the commanders of a thouſand men in their Hezares *.

The Emir Daoud was of this number, and to him was committed the poſt of Deroga, that is, governor of the city of Samarcand, and chief of the council, whom we commonly call Olave Imaret Divan, or chief of the Emirs of the Divan. The Emirs Yakou, Seifeddin, Abbas, Eskender, Alemcheik, Alafe Coutchin, Ardechir Coutchin, Comari Einac brother of Temouke Coutchin, had conſiderable commands aſſign'd 'em in the army, being made Tavatchis †,

* Lands which furniſh a thouſand men.

† Tavatchis among the Tartars are lieutenant-generals.

Book II. which are the firſt poſts under the crown among the Turks *.

He made Sar Bouga, Huſſein Berlas, Acbouga, Hadgi Mahmoudcha, Eltchi Behader, and Doletcha Behader, Emirs of the Divan, that is, counſellors of ſtate.

He appointed the following brave men, Catai Behader, Cheik Ali Behader, Caban Behader, Decne, Bactichah, Carahinc, Cuctuc, Apachi Kelte, Cazan Bouga Arſlan, and Doura Behader, to be * captains and lieutenants in his army; and he conſtituted theſe illuſtrious perſons, Catai, Cheik Ali, and Akitmur, to be chiefs over the others, making them alſo his † lieutenants. And in this manner he fix'd every one of his courtiers in the employment which beſt ſuited him, and even the meaneſt officers had great eſtates, and were advanc'd to high dignitys.

* Mocaddem Sipah.

† Kelanter.

He then departed for the city of Samarcand, which for its charming ſituation, the freſhneſs of its gardens, the ſtrength and neatneſs of its buildings, and its delightful rivers, makes the fineſt citys in the world jealous of its beauty. This he made the ſeat of his empire, and the place of his reſidence.

Samarcand made the ſeat of the empire.

He caus'd the walls of the city to be repair'd, and a fortreſs to be erected; he built ſtately palaces and neat publick edifices, aſſigning the care of this great city to the Emirs of his court.

He appointed the Emir Acbouga ſuperintendant of the buildings; and while the publick affairs went on in a regular courſe, Timur

* The author calls thoſe Turks in this book which we in Europe call Tartars.

us'd

us'd all his care and application entirely to purge the empire from the diſorders which had crept into it; inſomuch that plenty ſoon flow'd in this city, and all the earth was charm'd with the juſtice of Timur's government. In ſhort, the favors and immunitys he granted to the inhabitants, and the moderation and equity with which he govern'd 'em, caus'd ſo vaſt a number of people to ſettle there, that even Grand Cairo and Bagdad envy'd its proſperity and glory. Chap. 2.

The Emir Mouſſa, who thro diſcontent had left the court, at the time when Timur departed for Balc, and was return'd to his own country, having learnt that this city was conquer'd by our hero, fled to Turkeſtan *. Timur being inform'd of it, diſpatch'd Genghi Coutchin in purſuit of him; and when this general was come up to him, he fought and overcame him, and oblig'd him to retire into the mountains. He there remain'd a vagabond, till the Emir Carlogach, brother of Huſſein, having purſued him, conſtrain'd him to alter his road, and to return to the ſouthern countrys, whither being follow'd, he at length reſolv'd to croſs the Gihon with his two wives, and to fly for refuge to the prince Zende Hacham at Cheburgan [s], in order to excite him to revolt. This unfortunate man liſten'd to the rebel Mouſſa, which prov'd of ill conſequence to him, for he ſoon after loſt his life, and his principality of Cheburgan fell into the hands of another.

* The eaſtern Tartary.

[s] A city of Coraſſana, near the Gihon and Balc; long. 100. lat. 36. 45.

CHAP. III.

The Couroultai, that is, the diet or aſſembly of the ſtates, conven'd by Timur's orders.

IN the month of June, the ſame year, the emperor gave inſtructions for the Couroultai to be held. The Emirs of the Tomans and Hezares came before the throne, according to the orders they had receiv'd.

The princes and kings came alſo; Zende Hacham, ſon of Mehemed Coja Aperdi *, was the only perſon who did not obey the orders. Timur, by an expreſs, threaten'd him with puniſhment if he did not come to the Couroultai. As ſoon as the envoy met him, he ſaid, "You muſt come before the emperor's throne, if you wou'd teſtify your "fidelity." Zende Hacham was deceitful on this occaſion, pretended ſubmiſſion, and anſwer'd him, "I glory in obeying the orders "of the emperor: whereſoever he requires "my preſence, I ſhall be ever ready with "my buckler and ſword in my hand; and if "he wou'd put me to death, his will be "done."

* Aperdi, a hord or tribe among the Zagataian Tartars.

He honor'd and careſs'd the envoy, and promis'd immediately to follow him: but he did not keep his word; and a perſon who came from thence made appear to the emperor, that Zende Hacham was not obedient to him, by the following relation: The Emir Bairamcha Erlat †, and his ſon Yetlandgi had formerly ſided with the Emir Huſſein againſt Timur; but being ſenſible of their errors, they were pleas'd with the

† Erlat, a famous hord of Tartars.

the ſucceſs of this prince; and having learnt the news of his victorys and coronation, were ſo over-joy'd that they departed immediately from Coraſſana[7], to render him their ſervices. Chap. 3.

Zende Hacham having advice of it went to meet them; and having carry'd them to a place agreeable for its coolneſs call'd Dalbeiailac, he regal'd them magnificently; and when the fumes of the wine had got into their heads, ſeiz'd on both father and ſon, and binding their feet with irons, committed 'em to the care of his brother Pir Mehemed, whom he order'd in the preſence of a great many perſons to lay them at the foot of the throne of the emperor Timur, tho at the ſame time he had privately charg'd him to put them to death. Pir Mehemed carry'd them half a day's journy from the place where they had been entertained; and having murder'd them, return'd the ſame night to his brother Zende Hacham.

As ſoon as the emperor heard of theſe violences, he order'd the Emir Oladgia Itou, a relation of Hacham, to endeavor by his good counſel to bring him to his duty, threatning him elſe with a war, which might bring inevitable ruin upon him.

But as this old man had great experience in all affairs, and knew perfectly the humor of the princes of his blood, he remonſtrated to the emperor that it would be in vain to give advice to this rebel, and that he cou'd not do it without being expos'd to an open affront, if his counſel ſhou'd be deſpis'd by a raſh young man, who ow'd reſpect to his age: but if his majeſty approv'd of it, he wou'd give the commiſſion to

[7] A province E. of Perſia, and S. E. of the Gihon.

his

Book II. his ſon Coja Youſef. The emperor was ſatisfy'd with his excuſe, and ſent Taban Behader with Coja Youſef to Zende Hacham, to perſuade him to return to his duty, and to bring him to court. But being arriv'd at Cheburgan, this preſumptuous and proud prince, without conſidering the conſequences of his proceedings, ſeiz'd and bound them in chains.

CHAP. IV.

Timur marches to Cheburgan at the head of an army.

TIMUR having advice of the imprudence and violence of Zende Hacham, was ſo enrag'd that he immediately caus'd the horſe's tail, and imperial ſtandard to be erected, and departed from Kech with an army to reduce him to obedience.

When he had croſs'd the Gihon, Zende Hacham, who had fortify'd himſelf in a caſtle in thoſe quarters named Sefiddez, that is, the white fort, thought at firſt to have continued his rebellion; but the army having inveſted him in that place, the ſound of the Courke [a], the noiſe of the kettle-drums, and the great trumpet Kerrena, join'd with the horrid cries of the ſoldiers, terrify'd him ſo much, that he cou'd find no other remedy, than ſupplications and groans. He therefore addreſs'd himſelf to his relation, the Emir Oladgia Itou, and beſought him to intercede for him. The Emir Oladgia

[a] A kettle-drum which is beat at the beginning of the fight.

Itou

Itou diſcover'd ſo much goodneſs and humanity, as to preſent himſelf before the imperial throne; where after having groan'd and wept, he meekly told the emperor, that Zende Hacham, ſincerely repenting of his evil action, intreated him to pardon his crime; and he join'd his entreatys with thoſe of that prince, that it might pleaſe the emperor to decamp and disband his army, ſo that Hacham being recover'd from his ſurprize, might come before the throne with a ſword and handkerchief [9] in his hand, to be receiv'd into the number of Timur's ſervants. Chap. 4.

Timur remembring the ſaying of Mahomet, that bleſſing always attends the words of old men, was pleas'd with the interceſſion of Oladgia Itou; he granted what he ask'd, and abſtain'd from the blood of Zende Hacham, who came out of the citadel, deliver'd up the Emir Mouſſa, the author of this confuſion, to the ſervants of the king, and ſent Iſlam his younger brother to ſerve Timur.

After this happy ſucceſs, the Emperor took horſe to return home, he disbanded his troops, and return'd to the city of Sebz [1], the place of his birth, where he not only pardon'd Mouſſa his faults, but alſo loaded him with favors; and to comfort him for the grief he ſeem'd to have for his fault, gave him a ſumptuous banquet, and diſtinguiſh'd him from many others, by honoring him with magnificent veſts, and the command of a hord and province.

---

[9] It was a cuſtom among the Tartars to carry in their hand a naked ſword and a handkerchief, when they appear'd before their prince, to ſignify that they were ready to fight in his defence, and to lay down their life if he requir'd it.

[1] Sebz is the ſame place as Kech.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Timur ſends an army to Balc and Termed.

AS Zende Hacham was deſtin'd to a miſerable end, the exceſs of his imprudence and pride prevented his reaping the benefit of the emperor's goodneſs towards him; inſomuch that ſlighting his friendſhip, he relaps'd into diſloyalty and rebellion. He drew over to his ſide the prince Aboul Moali, tho all his friends, and even policy itſelf, counſell'd him not to be ſeduc'd: and theſe two princes concerted together how they ſhou'd pillage the countrys of Balc and Termed [2].

When Timur had notice of it, he diſpach'd Catai Behader, and Argoun Chah, native of Bourdalic [3], with an army of valiant men, all greedy of honor, and foremoſt in the moſt dangerous actions, and whoſe leaders had help'd to advance Timur to the throne.

When the Emirs were arrived at Termed with the army, they found a bridge of boats built by the inhabitants of the country over the river Amouye [4]: but ſome of the enemys, having croſs'd it in order to get away, had demoliſh'd one end of it during the night; ſo that the other rebels, who were diſmay'd at the ſight of the imperial troops, and fled with precipitation,

---

[2] A city in Tranſoxiana between the Gihon and the river of Saganian; long. 100½. lat. 37.

[3] A town of Tranſoxiana upon the bank of the Gihon, at the foot of a mountain of the ſame name, towards Carſchi.

[4] Amouye is the Gihon or Oxus, which takes this name while it paſſes to Amou.

being

being ignorant of the condition of the bridge, were overtaken by the troops who purſu'd them, and diſcharg'd a great number of arrows upon them: hereby the greateſt part of theſe unfortunate rebels, threatned both before and behind with death, periſh'd by the ſword and waters. Nevertheleſs, as ſome were got over to the other ſide with Zende Hacham, this prince was accompany'd in his flight; and he gain'd entrance into Cheburgan, with deſign to defend himſelf in that fortreſs till the laſt extremity. Chap. 6.

CHAP. VI.

Timur ſends the Emir Yakou to beſiege Cheburgan.

TIMUR having learnt that Zende Hacham had fortify'd himſelf in the citadel of Cheburgan, order'd the Emir Yakou to march and beſiege it, which this general, having croſs'd the Gihon with the army, did in form; he there paſſed the winter, and Zende Hacham dar'd not appear till ſpring; but then he came to himſelf again, and having had recourſe to his friendſhip with the Emir Yakou, he went out of the fortreſs upon his promiſe of being civilly us'd; begg'd his protection, and ask'd pardon for his fault. His excuſes made the Emir treat him handſomly, and promiſe to uſe all his intereſt with the emperor in his favor: he brought him to court, where the Emirs received him with all manner of civility. The Emir Yakou agreed with the princes to carry him to ſalute the emperor, and kiſs the borders of the imperial carpet; they deſir'd no other interceſſor for the pardon of his crime than the love and clemency

Book II. mency which emperors uſually have for their ſubjects.

The generous Timur vouchſaf'd him the honor to ſpeak to him, and told him that he had forgotten his faults, and granted him his life; but it was his own province to preſerve it, and not to deſire what it was impoſſible for him to attain; becauſe the crown which he had ſought after is an honor which God grants out of his rich treaſure to whomſoever he pleaſes; which is an effect of his bountiful mercy, and not to be attain'd by care or anxiety.

After Timur had aſſur'd Zende Hacham of his protection, he honor'd him with his counſel; careſs'd him, and made him a preſent of many curious pieces, as belts of gold, Arabian horſes, camels, ſets of mules, and an infinite number of cattle; and even encreas'd his former dignity. Then Zende Hacham wholly devoted himſelf to the ſervice of Timur, and was liſted among the officers of the court.

CHAP. VII.

Timur marches an army into the country of the Getes.

TIMUR propoſed to march into the country of the Getes[s], and in the year of the Hog, which anſwers to the year of the Hegira 772, and of Jeſus Chriſt 1380, he departed at the head of his army.

[s] Gete a kingdom, which has on the Eaſt Turkeſtan, on the South the river Sihon; on the Weſt Capchac, and on the North part of Turkeſtan. It fell to Zagatai Can the ſon of Genghiz Can, as his ſhare.

As

Chap. 7.

As ſoon as he had croſs'd the Sihon, the Emirs Comze and Orenkitmur ſubmitted to him, ſo that their hords and countrys were entirely at the diſpoſal of this Prince, who gave the government of them to Kepec Timur, and return'd victorious to his capital city.

Some time after he had advice that Kepec Timur, full of ingratitude and pride, had revolted from him: wherefore as Behram Gelair *, after what had happen'd at Tachkunt, and his being check'd by this prince, became obedient to him, and had been enroll'd in the liſt of the officers of the imperial throne; he was order'd, as well as the Emir Abbas, Katai Behader, and the Cheik Ali Behader, to make war on Kepec Timur, and by the ſword to put an end to this rebellion.

* Gelair, a hord of Tartars.

All the Emirs and other brave warriors readily obey'd this order, and march'd with great reſolution. When the armys were in view, the ſoldiers of the Toman of Behram Gelair, with the conſent of their captain Beterkedgi, an old enemy of Behram, conſpir'd to betray him, and ſeize on his Perſon; but the Emir having advice of it, kept in the middle of his corps-du-garde, and hinder'd the execution of their deſign. In the mean while Catai Behader, having made ſome uſeful propoſitions with regard to the fight to Cheik Ali Behader, which he thought not fit to hearken to, imagin'd the Cheik diſlik'd his propoſal merely thro want of courage; he therefore in a paſſion drew his ſword, and having croſs'd the river Aiche Caden, alone attack'd the enemy's ranks, of whom he routed ſome; but as their number was very great, they had entirely defeated him, if the Cheik Ali Behader had not follow'd him, and ſav'd him from the danger he was in; after which he reproach'd him

Book II. him for his raſh action, and they join'd one another again. Theſe actions deſerve the greateſt admiration, as they cou'd never have happen'd but thro the good fortune of the invincible Timur, under whoſe conduct they carry'd on the war.

The Emirs made peace with the enemys on the bank of the ſame river, and then return'd home. They ſeverly puniſh'd the ſoldiers of Gelair, who had form'd a deſign to betray Behram. But when they had the happineſs to ſalute Timur, he was diſpleas'd at their return, and blam'd them for having made peace.

CHAP. VIII.

A ſecond expedition of Timur againſt the Getes.

TIMUR, who was never pleas'd till he had finiſh'd what he had begun, was troubled at the Emirs making a peace with the enemy, by which they had loſt the advantage of a battle.

To repair this fault, he reſolv'd to go in perſon to the country of the Getes; for which reaſon he ſent orders every where to levy a great number of ſoldiers; when that was done, he join'd them to the old troops, and all rendezvous'd near Samarcand. The emperor had ſcarce march'd by Seiram [1] and Penki, with his numerous and formidable army, but in leſs than a month he became

[1] At own on the frontiers of Gete, North of the Sihon, long. 99. 25. lat. 44. 45.

vic-

victorious; for the army of the enemys fled at the firſt rumor of his march. This prince went as far as Senghizi Agadge, leaving with his ſoldiers a vaſt number of ſlaves and great booty; and at length arriv'd at Adoun Couzi with the ſpoils he had gain'd. Chap. 8.

In the mean time the following accident happen'd. The Emir Mouſſa and Zende Hacham, notwithſtanding the favors Timur had a thouſand times beſtow'd on 'em, form'd a freſh conſpiracy againſt him with Abou Iſhac, and ſwore upon the Alcoran, that as ſoon as they arriv'd at Cara Suman, they wou'd ſeize on him while he was hunting. Every thing ſeem'd to ſmile on 'em, and when they were pleaſing themſelves with the ridiculous thoughts of their ſhameful project, they did not reflect on the conſequences of it.

The prince Aboulmoali, ſon of the Can of Termed, and Cheik Aboulleit Samarcandi, who had alſo conſpir'd againſt Timur, were no ſooner come into their meaſures, than a perſon who was privy to the deſign, preſented a memorial of it to the emperor.

As ſoon as he had read it, he order'd the conſpirators to appear before him: when they came, they were try'd and convicted of the crimes of treaſon and rebellion.

But becauſe the queen Serai Mulc Canum [a] was the ſiſter of the Emir Mouſſa, and the princeſs Akke Beghi [b] was betroth'd to one of his ſons, the emperor ſaid to him, "The crime "thou haſt committed is great; but becauſe we "are related, I pardon you, and will not re-

[a] Daughter of Gazan Sultan Can, and mother of Charoc: ſhe was the great queen.

[b] Daughter of Timur.

Book II. "venge my ſelf: and thus you may ſay, it was "your alliance with me, and extreme old age "which ſaved your life; for had it not been for "that, I ſhou'd have order'd your head, which "intended evil againſt me, to have been ſepa-"rated from your body."

He alſo told prince Aboulmoali, that no harm ſhou'd come to him notwithſtanding his follys, becauſe he had the honor to be of the family of Mahomet; but it was neceſſary he ſhould be baniſh'd this country. He alſo commanded Cheik Aboulleit to retire to Heudjaz [a]. But as to the ſon of Keder, as he was brother to the wife of Hadgi Seifeddin Berlas, this lord had recourſe to the emperor's clemency, interceded for him, and ſav'd him from all harm. After this Timur order'd that Zende Hacham ſhou'd be bound, and carry'd to Samarcand, where he was kept cloſe priſoner in a dungeon.

At length Timur return'd to Samarcand, the capital of his empire; and he had no ſooner diſmounted his horſe, than he gave the government of Cheburgan, and the places Zende Hacham poſſeſſed, to Beyan Timur ſon of Acbouga.

[a] Arabia Petrea, in which Mecca is ſituated.

CHAP. IX.

The embaſſy from Timur to Huſſein Soſi, king of Carezem[a].

AS ſoon as Timur had deliver'd the empire of Zagatai from rebellion and tyranny, he employ'd his time in governing it according to juſtice; but having learnt that Huſſein Soſi, ſon of Yanghadai of the Hord of Gonkegrat, had made himſelf maſter of the countrys of Cat and Kivac, he turn'd his thoughts to the ſettling of that affair: to which end he ſent Alaſe Tavatchi with a handſom retinue to this prince, in quality of ambaſſador, to acquaint him that Cat and Kivac belong'd to the empire of Zagatai; that he did not act fairly in ſeizing on 'em, as he had done for theſe laſt five years, becauſe they were without a prince; and that he muſt deliver 'em up with all their dependences into the hands of the officers and commiſſioners of the ſtate, that union and peace might be kept up between the two crowns, and he enjoy Timur's protection.

When the ambaſſador arriv'd at Carezem, he faithfully acquitted himſelf of his commiſſion to Huſſein, which he urg'd with the moſt forcible arguments: but this prince perſiſted in his reſolution, and without conſidering the valor of the ſodiers of Zagatai, the conſequences of which he ought to have fear'd, he anſwer'd, That he had conquer'd theſe countrys with his ſword,

[a] A kingdom on the eaſt ſhore of the Caſpian ſea.

Book II. and that Timur might recover 'em the ſame way, if he cou'd.

The ambaſſador upon his return reported this anſwer to Timur, which appear'd ſo unreaſonable, that he was exaſperated, and at the ſame time reſolv'd to march at the head of an army againſt Huſſein Sofi. But the pious and learned Moulla Gelaleddin, native of Kech, who was Mufti [6] to our great prince, did not like that the vanity of a ſingle man ſhou'd be the cauſe of a great empire's ruin; and thereupon having made his ſubmiſſion to Timur, he beſought him to let him go to Huſſein Sofi, to advertize him of his imprudent carriage, and to admoniſh him to ſpare the lives and fortunes of the muſſulmans.

The emperor granted the petition of Moula, and gave him leave to go to Carezem, to ſettle this affair. As ſoon as he arriv'd there, he began to give thoſe general advices, which experienc'd and learned perſons, the Imams, and other wiſe men, ordinarily uſe to appeaſe ſeditions, and quench the fire of war; and he accompany'd 'em not only with arguments, but even with citations out of the Alcoran, and the ſayings of Mahomet: yet all his eloquence, how ſublime ſoever, did not ſucceed.

Huſſein Sofi ſlighted his counſels, and had the boldneſs to impriſon this virtuous Mufti in the citadel; upon which Timur order'd his troops immediately to rendezvous before Samarcand.

---

[6] Mufti is the chief prieſt, who decides the affairs of the law.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Timur departs from Samarcand, to make war on the king of Carezem.

IN the ſpring of the year of the Hegira 773, which anſwers to that of the Mouſe, the emperor aſſembled his army, diſtributed his treaſures, and made preſents worthy of the greateſt kings. Having done this, he departed from Samarcand, hunted in the plain of Carſchi, and encamp'd at Cabamitan [7]. Malek Cayaſeddin Pir Ali, ſon of Malek Azeddin Huſſein, who, after the death of his father, in the month of Zilcade in the year 771. was proclaim'd prince of Herat, of the kingdom of Gour, Couheſtan [8], and their dependences, ſent hither Hadgi Vezir in quality of ambaſſador to Timur, with many preſents of Arabian horſes, carriage-mules, and other mules for riding, a great many ſtuffs, belts and garments. Among the preſents was a fine horſe ſpotted like a tiger, call'd Conc Aglen, with a ſaddle of gold. An. Dom. 1371.

Hadgi Vezir, on his arrival, having had the honor to kiſs the royal carpet, did in a very humble manner inform Timur with how much ſincerity and affection Malek his maſter had always been attach'd to his intereſt. Timur was intirely ſatisfy'd with this declaration; and having preſented the envoy with a veſt and other

[7] A country famous for a victory Timur formerly had obtain'd over the Getes.

[8] A province in the middle of Perſia.

Book II. things becoming his grandeur, he wrote a letter to Malek full of kindneſs and good-nature, ſending with it a veſt of honor, as a mark of the great truſt he repos'd in the prince of Herat: after this expedition he order'd the Emir Yakou Berlas to ſet out for Condoz, Bacalan [1], Cabul [2], and the neighbouring places, to govern all that country; he gave him the hord of Bouroulday, and appointed troops to conduct him thither.

The Emir Seifeddin Berlas was left with the government of Samarcand, and the direction of the affairs of that country. Then Timur march'd at the head of his army for Carezem, being excited to it, not only from a deſire of acquiring glory by his arms, and diſpenſing juſtice to the people, but alſo by a verſe of the Alcoran [3], which gave him hopes of ſucceeding.

When the ſtandard had paſs'd by Bocara [4], and was come to a place nam'd Sepaye, ſituated on the bank of the Oxus, they met the enemys ſcouts, whom they attack'd and vanquiſh'd: having bound their hands, they brought them to the camp, as the firſt fruits of the victory they wou'd probably obtain this campaign; and there they were all beheaded.

* Yeſaoul ſignifys exempt.

† Deroga.

The troops continu'd their march, and arriv'd at the town of Cat. Behram Yeſaoul * and the Cheik Muaid were at this place under Huſſein Sofi; the one in quality of † governor, and the

[1] A mountain near the Gihon, in the kingdom of Bedakchan.

[2] A frontier town, N. E. of India, long. 105. lat. 34 ½.

[3] The cuſtom of the Mahometans, on undertaking any conſiderable affair, is to open the Alcoran, and read the firſt verſe of the firſt page they meet with, whence they foretel their good or bad ſucceſs: which uſage is among them call'd Iſtiçara. The verſe which Timur met with was, *The victory is certain.*

[4] A town in Tranſoxiana, long. 97 ½. lat. 37.

other

other of † judge. They order'd the gates to be ſhut up and barricado'd, and having prepar'd the machines of war, they put themſelves in the beſt poſture of defence they were able. Chap. 10. † Cadi.

The imperial troops having inveſted the town, aſſaulted it with their utmoſt vigor. And as the attacks were going forward, and both ſides were hot, there was no time for treating of peace; arrows and ſtones fell from the town upon our army like rain, while we had not ſo much as one engineer in the camp. In the mean time Timur ſaid it wou'd not be to his honor that the ſiege ſhou'd be rais'd without making himſelf maſter of the ſlaves[5] of Huſſein Sofi, who was commander of the town: he therefore immediately order'd the troops to fill up the ditch with faggots and other wood, and wou'd be preſent at this work himſelf. He commanded Coutchei Malek to go down into the ditch; but fear ſeizing him, Timur gave the ſame orders to the Chaoux[6] Comari, who immediately perform'd 'em.

Mubacher and Tacoja follow'd the Chaoux, and the ſoldiers did the ſame, advancing towards the breaſt-work. Cheik Ali Behader was the firſt who laid his hand on the ſaid work, and wou'd have mounted it; but Mubacher envying him that honor, took hold on his foot, and both of 'em fell to the earth. However, Cheik Ali return'd, and had ſucceſs: on which one of the enemy's came with his lance in his hand to repulſe him; but this

[5] By this ſlave he means Behram Yeſaoul, all the ſubjects of Aſiatick princes, being called ſlaves.

[6] Chaoux ſignifys an aide-de-camp.

Book II. brave man ſnatching it from him broke it, and ſtruck him upon the head with his ſword. Then the ſoldiers having forc'd a paſſage on all ſides, enter'd the town, ſeiz'd the governor and principal inhabitants; and put the greateſt part of thoſe who defended it to the ſword, as alſo of the inhabitants, whoſe wives and children they carry'd away for ſlaves, after having pillag'd whatſoever they cou'd find.

The next day Timur taking compaſſion on the ſlaves, order'd 'em to be ſet at liberty. He then departed from the camp to Carezem. As he remembred the cowardice of Coutchei Malek, who was afraid to enter the ditch, he commanded him to be baſtinado'd, according to the law of Genghiz Can, call'd Yaſac [6]. He was then ty'd to the tail of an aſs, and ſent to Samarcand.

Cayaſeddin Tercan [7], of the race of Cachlic, (who had been made a Tercan by the emperor Genghiz Can) was made a Mangalai by Timur, as alſo was Coja Youſef Oladgia Itou. The Mangalai are thoſe who command the vanguard. Timur ſent 'em before with ſome other brave men; and when they were arriv'd at Dgioui Corlan, they found Mangheli Coja and Calec with a troop of the enemys

Our valiant men began the fight, and cary'd the victory as uſual: they put the enemys to

---

[6] Theſe laws are ſet down at length in *The hiſtory of Genghiz Can*. page 79.

[7] A Tercan is a perſon who for his good ſervices is ſo highly advanc'd in the emperor's friendſhip, that whatſoever fault he commits, the emperor takes no notice of it; that is, he is permitted to do any thing the emperor does. Thoſe only are made Tercans whoſe virtue has been approved, and their ſervices great. See *The hiſtory of Genghiz Can*, p. 49.

Tercan is alſo the name of a hord in the country of Zagatai.

the

the rout, and purſu'd 'em with ſo much vigor, that they kill'd the greateſt part of thoſe who fled. At length the emperor commanded his army to decamp with expedition, and to make inroads on all ſides; which was obey'd ſo punctually, that all the provinces of the kingdom of Carezem were ruin'd. Chap. 10.

Huſſein Sofi not being in a condition to defend himſelf, thought only of ſecuring his perſon; wherefore he enter'd into the city of Carezem, from whence he ſent an expreſs to demand quarter, and to beg pardon for himſelf. The envoy ſaid it was a ſenſe of his fault that had excited Huſſein his maſter to try by all means to gain the friendſhip of the officers of the emperor, that ſo the fire of war might be quench'd. But the traiterous Kei Coſru Catlani ſent a private meſſenger to Huſſein, adviſing him to truſt no body, nor make any propoſitions of peace, but to prepare his army for battel, and march out of the town, becauſe he wou'd join him with his Toman, and abandon Timur. Huſſein rely'd on the perfidious Kei Coſru; he march'd out of the city with his troops, follow'd by a great many of the inhabitants in arms; and after having beat the kettle-drums, they rais'd a great cry, call'd Souroun, which is the ſignal for the battel to begin.

The army was rang'd in order on the banks of the river Caoun, two leagues from the capital of the kingdom. As the greateſt part of Timur's troops were gone out in partys to plunder the provinces, there remain'd but few near this prince. Nevertheleſs he drew up as many as he had in order of battel; and having commanded 'em to beat the kettle-drums and ſound the trumpets, he march'd againſt the enemy.

When

Book II. When he came within ſight of 'em, he encamp'd on the bank of the Caoun, which ſeparated the two armys. When they were ready to fight, Apatchikelte, Pechai, and Socar Dgiorgatou ruſh'd with their horſes into the water, and croſs'd the river, and the enemys attack'd 'em briskly. Cheik Ali Behader, with five others, alſo croſs'd the river: he fell furiouſly upon Coja Cheikzade, whom he put to flight. Catai Behader and Akitmur Behader did the ſame; and Eltchi Behader had follow'd their example, if he had not been drown'd in croſſing the water.

Selduz, a famous hord of Tartars.

The invincible Timur wou'd alſo have paſs'd the river, if the Cheik Mehemed Beyan Selduz had not oppos'd it, and ſpoke to him as follows: "Prince, it is now our buſineſs to "fight; your place is the throne, and it is "fit you ſhou'd take your reſt." Immediately the Cheik ſpurr'd his horſe into the water, from whence he got out again unhurt. The prince Aboulmoali, ſon of the Can of Termed, follow'd him; and theſe brave men who were skill'd in conquering, attack'd the enemy in ſeveral places, and repuls'd 'em even to the gate of the city, which they were conſtrain'd to enter. This oblig'd the victorious army to encamp round the walls; while the troops who had been making of inroads, return'd laden with ſpoils. Then the ſiege was reſolv'd to be carry'd on in form, and all the paſſages of the town were block'd up againſt the enemy.

Huſſein Sofi remain'd ſome time in the fortreſs, ſo full of remorſe and chagrin, that finding no remedy for his ill fortune, he dy'd thro deſpair.

After his death his brother Yſouph Sofi was eſtabliſh'd in his place.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Timur makes peace with Yſouph Soſi, who ſucceeded Huſſein; and demands in marriage the princeſs Canzade for the prince Gehanghir his eldeſt ſon.

YSOUPH Soſi, not having committed thoſe inſolences which his brother Huſſein had on the ſubjects of our prince, found the means of approaching him by ſupplication and obedience. His brother Ac Soſi, ſon of Yenghadai, had a daughter by his wife Chukur Bei, the daughter of an Usbec Can. The name of the young princeſs was Sevin Bei; but ſhe was commonly call'd Canzade, that is, the daughter of a ſovereign. The poets ſay, that ſince the time of Adam, there has not been born of the race of the Cans a virgin of ſo great a beauty, and that ſhe had the genius of an angel, and the body of a fairy.

The great Timur believ'd ſo fine a lady the fitteſt match for his ſon Gehanghir *, and that this marriage wou'd be a certain omen of his future elevation to the ſovereign power. This made him receive with pleaſure thoſe tokens of reſpect and ſubmiſſion which Yſouph Soſi gave him by his envoys.

Timur conſented to the peace, on condition of the marriage. This Can eſteem'd him-

The ſame as Joſeph. * That is, conqueror of the world.

ſelf

Book II. ſelf fortunate; and as he accepted it with all imaginable ſatisfaction, he deſir'd the emperor to prepare an equipage ſuitable to the grandeur of this princeſs, and told him he wou'd ſend her to his court as ſoon as the imperial orders ſhou'd be deliver'd him.

The affair being concluded in this manner, hatred and diſcord were chang'd into peace and perfect friendſhip. The imperial army march'd home out of the country of Yſouph Sofi; and as ſoon as Timur arriv'd at the place of his reſidence, he immediately order'd that Kei Coſru Catlani ſhou'd be apprehended, and brought before the tribunal of criminals, and that the Emirs ſhou'd demand his proſecution.

This order was executed, his crimes were proved, and his intrigues with Huſſein Sofi examin'd into; and being convicted, he was carry'd bound to Samarcand, and deliver'd into the hands of the officers of the Emir Huſſein, who put him to death, to revenge the murder of that prince: and the emperor gave the Toman of the province of Catlan[3] to Mehemed Mireke, ſon of Chir Behram, a relation of Kei Coſru.

Timur paſs'd the winter in the enjoyment of honors and pleaſures; and he particularly employ'd his time in rendring juſtice, and doing good to his ſubjects.

[3] Between the Gihon and the kingdom of Bedakchan. It has a city of the ſame name.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Timur marches a ſecond time into the kingdom of Carezem.

WE read in the laſt chapter of the Alcoran, call'd Souret Ennas, that we ought to beſeech God to keep us from the converſation of malicious men, as much as from the temptation of the devil; becauſe the company of wicked perſons is the principal cauſe of the corruption of the world, as we ſee in the following relation.

When Kei Coſru Catlani was apprehended, his ſon Sultan Mahmoud departed from the court with Abou Iſhac, ſon of Keder Yeſouri *, and Mahmoucha Bocari; and retir'd to Yſouph Sofi at Carezem. They ſpoke publickly in an aſſembly where he was to promote ſedition, corrupt this prince, and make him break the union he had contracted with Timur, which they did with ſo much cunning, that Yſouph dar'd to violate the treaty he had enter'd into.

* Yeſouri a hord of Tartars.

In autumn he made inroads into the country of Cat, which he laid waſte, and diſpers'd the greateſt part of the inhabitants; but he did not conſider the crime of which he was guilty, *viz.* breaking treatys ſo ſoon.

When the winter was over, in the month of Ramadan of the year 774. which anſwers to the year of the Ox, the emperor aſſembled all the troops of the countrys of Nakcheb, Kech, and without the city of Carſchi [4]; and when An. Dom. 1372,

[4] Carſchi is a city, and Nakcheb is its country; which are often taken for one another; as is alſo Neſef.

they

Book II. they were ready, he march'd towards Carezem; and as ſoon as he had paſs'd the ſandy deſart, Yſouph Sofi was overcome by his fear of Timur's approach. He then repented of the fault he had been guilty of, and ſought all means imaginable to obtain pardon. He made uſe of interceſſors to Timur; and at length, after having renew'd the treaty, conſented to prepare a pompous and magnificent equipage, ſuitable to the grandeur of the princeſs Canzade, who had not the leaſt hand in her uncle's crime, and promis'd to ſend her forthwith.

Timur, who was of a merciful temper, diſpatch'd letters of pardon, and at the ſame time disbanded his army, and return'd to the city of Samarcand, which was the reſidence of the imperial throne. After which he gave orders that preparations ſhou'd be made for the marriage.

CHAP. XIII.

The famous embaſſy from Timur to the king of Carezem, to demand the princeſs Canzade.

An. Dom. 1373. IN the month of Chawal in the year 775, which anſwers to the year of the Leopard, ſpring being come, Timur ſent to Carezem the illuſtrious prince Yadghiar Berlas his relation, and who ſprang from Lala ſon of Caratchar Nevian, and the Emirs Daoud and Ozoun Oladgia Itou. Theſe princes departed with preſents worthy of their emperor, to demand the illuſtrious princeſs Canzade, and to conduct her to Samarcand.

Yſouph

Yſouph Sofi, at their arrival, gave 'em a magnificent reception, and paid 'em all imaginable civilitys; their entry was pompous, and he neglected nothing which might ſhew the reſpect he bore to 'em. Chap. 13.

They behav'd themſelves in like manner towards him, with all the kindneſs which cou'd be expected from 'em: they offer'd the preſents they had brought, which where gold mony, rubys, musk, amber, velvet, gold and ſilver brocades, ſilk, China ſatins, and other curious ſtuffs; veſſels of the gold of Catai, adorn'd with precious ſtones, magnificent habits, women ſlaves, and the fineſt horſes.

Yſouph Sofi, after having made a magnificent feaſt, and treated the ambaſſadors like emperors, accompany'd Canzade a great part of the way, and ſent her to Timur with an attendance worthy the greateſt princeſs. He preſented her for her portion a very rich crown, and a throne of gold, bracelets, ear-rings, necklaces, girdles of gold, precious ſtones, ſeveral rings, boxes and coffers full of emeralds, rubys, pearls, clothes and furniture in boxes, with locks of gold; beſides ſeveral magnificent beds, canopys, pavilions, tents with one and many pillars; and alſo with furniture of ſeveral ſorts, ſufficient to fill many caravans.

The ambaſſador ſent an expreſs poſt to Samarcand, to let the emperor know they were at ſome diſtance from the capital; who being inform'd of it, reſolv'd to give a magnificent reception to Canzade. For this reaſon he order'd Cortica Catoun, wife of Caidu Can, and all the other ladys, as well as the princes and Emirs, to receive her with all the honors uſual on the like occaſion, and particularly to wait on her at her entry.

On

Book II. On this order all the great lords went to meet her, and ſhew'd an extraordinary joy, ſprinkling on her head abundance of gold and precious ſtones.

The air was fill'd with the moſt odoriferous ſmells, and the ways cover'd with carpets and brocades. The Cherifs, Cadis, doctors or Moullas, and the Imams, with all the principal officers of the empire, went to pay their devoirs to her, while every one pray'd to God for her proſperity. Then they made their compliments, according to the orders given 'em; and every day there were ſumptuous feaſts and freſh marks of magnificence.

She was every where entertain'd with plays, and had preſents made her of perfumes: the ground was cover'd with the moſt beautiful flowers; and as the people were fill'd with pleaſure, becauſe of the peace and ſecurity they enjoy'd from the juſtice and clemency of the emperor, all imaginable grandeur and magnificence appear'd among 'em in token of the joy they receiv'd from the preſence of ſo glorious a princeſs. But this ſcene of pleaſures and grandeur ſhone with brighter luſtre in Samarcand than in any other place, this imperial city being adorn'd with all imaginable pomp; in ſo much that every thing there was ſurprizing, and melancholy was entirely baniſh'd thence, as well as from all the other parts of the empire.

Plays and diverſions reign'd thro all the city; every place partook of theſe pleaſures, and muſick charm'd the ears of all.

The princeſs's bed, as beautiful as that of Caidafa [6], the queen of the Amazons, was en-

[6] She reſided at Berdaa, capital of the kingdom of Aran, ſixty two leagues diſtant from Teflis, capital of Georgia.

rich'd

rich'd with celeſtial graces and bleſſings. In fine, the magnificence of this happy entry rais'd the city to ſo great a pitch of glory, that it caus'd a jealouſy where the queen Balkize [6] had reign'd. Chap. 13.

The marriage of the prince Gehanghir with the princeſs Sevin Bei, ſirnam'd Canzade.

THE officers of the emperor's houſhold began to make all neceſſary preparations for ſolemnizing the nuptials. An infinite number of canopys, tents, pavilions, curtains, carpets, magnificent beds were got ready; a particular pavilion was erected for the emperor, the favorites and great lords, the cieling of which, in form of a cupola, appear'd like a heaven full of ſhining ſtars; the outſide ſeem'd cover'd with gold, and the inſide was enrich'd with precious ſtones: the ring and ball at top were made of amber, and ſurrounded with leſſer balls of the ſame; and the room wherein the marriage was to be conſummated, was parted by a curtain of gold brocade.

The emperor ſat on a rich throne, plac'd in the imperial tent, and was ſo magnificently dreſt that he reſembled the ſun. Several kings, princes, and Emirs of the army came to the porte [7], to partake of the general joy; and every one indulg'd himſelf in pleaſures.

The emperor Timur appear'd further magnificent by his great liberality. He had order'd

[7] Porte in the oriental language ſignifys court.

[6] The name of the queen of Saba, who came to viſit Solomon.

Book II. many apartments to be fill'd with curious pieces of gold, precious ſtones, veſts, and other apparel: he made ſo great preſents to all the court, that there was every day one of theſe apartments empty'd.

In the midſt of all this pomp and pleaſure the emperor commanded the moſt learned aſtrologers and expert philoſophers to aſſemble together, and examine the ſtate of the heavens. They punctually executed this order; and after having obſerv'd all the circumſtances, and made choice of the happy moment, in a private apartment in preſence of the great lords of the kingdom, they ty'd the nuptial knot *, and got ready the contract of marriage between the princeſs and the Mirza Gehanghir, according to the cuſtom of the Mahometans; then they ſaluted the marry'd couple, and ſprinkled over their heads abundance of pearls and precious ſtones: and when night was come, which reſembled the night of Cadre [a], and which was the moſt conſiderable and glorious that had happen'd for an hundred years before; the prince and princeſs retir'd into the ſecret chamber, where the marriage was happily conſummated. This great feaſt was celebrated in the year of the Hegira 775.

* Nekiah.

An. Dom. 1373. Mog. The Leopard.

[a] The night of Cadre is that in which (as the Mahometans imagine) God ſent to Mahomet the firſt chapter of the Alcoran by the angel Gabriel.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

Timur marches a third time into the country of the Getes.

ON the firſt day of the month of Chaban, in the year of the Hegira 776, Timur march'd at the head of his army for Gete. When he was encamp'd at Rebat Catan, it was exceedingly cold; the ſun diſappear'd, and ſo much rain and ſnow fell, that the tempeſtuous weather made the ſoldiers unfit for ſervice, ſo that they cou'd take no care of their horſes, their own lives being in danger. This occaſion'd the death of many of the men, as well as of the horſes. An. Dom. 1374. Mog. The Hare.

Timur ſenſibly afflicted at this misfortune, order'd his army to decamp from Rebat, and return to Samarcand, where he ſtaid two months, till the violence of the cold was abated.

In the month of Chawal, which was the beginning of the year of the Hare, he reſolv'd to bring his army into the field, and march againſt the Getes.

He ſent his ſon Mirza Gehanghir at the head of the vanguard, accompany'd by the Cheik Mehemed Beyan Selduz, who commanded the ſquadron of the prince's guard, and by Adelchah ſon of Behram Gelair, to whom he had given the hord of Gelair after his father's death.

When they had got beyond Seiram, and were arriv'd at Jaroun[1], they ſeiz'd on a man whom

[1] A town of Gete.

Book II. they ſent to Timur to be examin'd. They ask'd him where Camareddin, the prince of the hord of Ouglat, was. He told 'em he had rais'd an army, and was encamp'd in a place nam'd Gheuk Toupa, or the blue hill, where he waited for Hadgi Bei, not at all expecting Timur's army. Upon which the prince immediately order'd the vanguard to haſten their march thither, reſolving himſelf to follow with all expedition.

Camareddin, on advice of it, retir'd with his troops into an inacceſſible place, thinking himſelf not ſafe where he was encamp'd. The place he had retir'd to was call'd Birkei Gourian*, where are three defiles of mountains extremely ſteep, and three great rapid rivers. Camareddin croſs'd two of the defiles with his army, and encamp'd in the third, after having made entrenchments and barricadoes in the way.

* The baſon of the Gouris.

But the prince Gehanghir, having an army compos'd of men who underſtood the art of war, reſolutely march'd at their head, and at the ſound of kettle-drums attack'd the enemy. When a great many of theſe unfortunate men were ſlain with arrows, they fell upon the reſt ſword in hand, till night came on, when they fled. The next morning our brave men not finding any of the Getes in the camp, vigorouſly purſu'd 'em; and at ſun-riſe Timur coming up with the reſt of the army, ſent the Emirs Daoud, Huſſein, and Outchcara Behader, to endeavor to overtake 'em. Theſe captains ſwam along the ſtream of the river Abeile; but Huſſein fell into the water, and was drown'd. When the others were got upon the enemys lands, they pillag'd their goods, par-

don'd

don'd the cantons which ſubmitted, took away their arms, and ſent them to Samarcand. Chap. 14.

Timur went to Baitac, with deſign to deſtroy the enemys, and ſent the Mirza his ſon with a great army to give Camareddin battel, and ſeize on his perſon. The prince departed, according to order, at the head of his troops, and ruin'd the cantons of the Getes which were in Outch Ferman. They found Camareddin in the mountains, purſu'd him, drove him out of his country, and made him abandon his troops; they ravag'd all thoſe parts, raz'd his palaces, and among other ladys, ſeiz'd on the wife of prince Chamſeddin [a], nam'd Bouian Aga, and on his daughter Dilchadaga. Gehanghir ſent an expreſs to inform the emperor his father of it, who had ſtaid fifty three days at Baitac.

LIBRARY OF THE BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE ASIATIC

When he receiv'd this news, he departed from the camp, and aſcended a mountain call'd Cara Caſmac, where Gehanghir, at his arrival, kiſs'd the emperor's feet, and preſented him with carpets, horſes, and a great quantity of other booty; after which he procur'd for the princeſs Dilchadaga the honor of ſaluting the emperor.

Timur quitted this camp, went to Atbachi, and thence to the country of Arpaiazi, where he ſtaid ſome days to refreſh himſelf. Mobarekchah Mecrit [b], who commanded a thouſand men in this country, and was one of Timur's oldeſt friends, teſtify'd his reſpect ſo much by diverſions and feaſts, that he entirely gain'd

[a] Or rather Camareddin, king of the Getes or Moguls.

[b] Mecrit was one of the moſt antient nations of the Moguls in Genghiz Can's time.

Book II. the heart of this prince; and ſo truly attach'd himſelf to Timur's intereſt, that he gave to his ſon Codadad, as a particular favor, the government of Salar Aglen and of Huſſein, who dy'd this campaign.

CHAP. XV.

Timur's marriage with the princeſs Dilchadaga, daughter of Camareddin king of the Getes. Timur is in danger of loſing his life by a conſpiracy which he narrowly eſcap'd.

TIMUR, excited by a verſe of the Alcoran, wherein God permits men to marry four wives, reſolv'd to eſpouſe the princeſs Dilchadaga.

The officers of the court prepar'd entertainments and other diverſions, that nothing might be wanting in the feaſt. Wine, concerts of muſick, and whatever might contribute to the heightning the pleaſure of ſo ſignal and happy an action, according to the exact obſervation of aſtrologers, were in abundance at the camp. There was a numerous aſſembly; and at length this great monarch, following the cuſtom of his anceſtors, took for his wife this charming and virtuous princeſs.

The time of rejoicing being ended, he decamp'd; having march'd by Yaſſi Daban, he went to encamp at Uzkunt, whither the princeſs Cotluc Turcan Aga, Timur's eldeſt ſiſter, came. She departed from Samarcand, accompany'd by the princes, Emirs and officers of her houſhold: ſhe had the honor to ſalute the em-

emperor, and make her preſents to him: and then ſhe partook of the diverſions of the court. Chap. 15.

Adelchah ſon of Behram Gelair, pretending himſelf a faithful ſervant to the prince, gave him a ſplendid entertainment, preſented him with ſome fine horſes, and render'd him all imaginable civilitys. But theſe were only teſtimonys of a feign'd friendſhip; for he had another deſign in his heart, which was to have ſurpriz'd Timur during the ſolemnity of the feaſt: but this prince, who was under the divine protection, having obſerv'd many marks of his ill-will, found out the treaſon by the motions of the conſpirators. The ſtrong conjectures he had of it, caus'd him to leave the aſſembly, and take horſe to return to the camp.

Mehemed Beyan Selduz [e], Adelchah Gelair, and Turcan Erlat, had reſolved to ſeize on his perſon; but as they cou'd find no opportunity of doing it, his good fortune turn'd the hate they bore him into grief and deſpair: and this monarch, by God's aſſiſtance, return'd in perfect health to his capital city.

Then he gave leave to the troops to retire to their quarters; and paſs'd the winter at Zendgir Serai [f], two leagues weſt from Carſchi.

During this winter, Adelchah and the other conſpirators having a ſenſe of their fault, came to court, and confeſs'd their crime. Timur having learnt the circumſtances, politickly pretended to have known nothing of it, and at the ſame time highly careſs'd Adelchah.

---

[e] The familys of Selduz, Gelair, and Erlat, were the chief among the Moguls in Genghiz Can's time.

[f] A caſtle and pleaſure-houſe.

Book II. Winter being paſt, the troops were commanded to get together, in order, as was pretended, to make war on Carezem. The princes and Emirs readily march'd out of all the provinces; and as ſoon as they were arriv'd at the imperial city, Timur order'd that the Cheik Mehemed Beyan Selduz ſhou'd be apprehended and proſecuted. And as at his examination his crime was fully prov'd, he was put into the hands of Herimulc Selduz his relation, whoſe brother he had unjuſtly ſlain; and this man reveng'd himſelf upon him, by putting him to death.

Death of Mehemed Beyan Selduz.

Ali Dervich and Mehemed Dervich, being equally guilty, were alſo put do death; and Timur gave the government of the Toman of Selduz, to the brave Akitmur Behader.

CHAP. XVI.

Timur marches a third time to Carezem, and returns on the revolt of Sar Bouga and Adelchah.

An. Dom. 1375. IN the beginning of the ſpring of the year of the Hegira 777, which anſwers to that of the crocodile, Timur's good fortune, and his wiſe conduct in foreſeeing the ſucceſs of affairs, caus'd him to reſolve on a journey to Carezem, his valor making him to prefer the fatigues of war before quiet and repoſe. He left the Emir Acbouga governor of Samarcand, and ſent into the country of Gete the Emirs Sar Bouga, Adelchah Gelair, Catai Behader, Eltchi Bouga, and other commanders of thouſands, with thirty thouſand horſe; and enjoin'd them to uſe all their efforts and care in ſearch of Camareddin, with

with orders to put him to death wherever they ſhou'd find him. Chap. 16.

On the other hand, he march'd with the imperial ſtandard and a great army towards Carezem: being in a place call'd Sepaye, ſituate on the bank of the Gihon, he ſaw Turcan Erlat, who came from the other ſide of this river at the head of his troops, and ſeem'd willing to join our camp; but having ſome apprehenſion and foreſight of his death, he immediately return'd to his hord near Corzouan. Timur order'd a captain nam'd Poulad to purſue him with ſome troops, and to march day and night; who having paſs'd by Andcoud, overtook him at Fariab [1] on the bank of the Sihon. Turcan and his brother Turmich wou'd not give ground, but reſiſted 'em. Our men receiv'd 'em with bravery, and both ſides fought like lions; but at length the enemys gave way, were defeated, and conſtrain'd to fly. The victorious army purſu'd 'em; Poulad alone overtook Turcan, who finding his horſe tir'd, got off, and ſtruck down that of his enemy with the but-end of an arrow, and let fly another before Poulad was able to get up, but it went thro his cap without wounding him. Poulad ruſh'd on him with violence, ſo that they ſtruggled a long time, till at length Poulad having flung Turcan on the ground, cut off his head, crying out, *Long live Timur*; and he return'd with great joy. Aman Serbedal, who had been ſent after Turmich the brother of Turcan, alſo ſeiz'd on him and ſlew him: So the heads of theſe two brothers were laid at the foot of the throne.

[1] The ſame town as Otrar.

Among

Book II. Among the Emirs whom Timur had ſent to Gete, Sar Bouga and Adelchah, finding the country not in a condition to reſiſt them, form'd a deſign to revolt, and conſpir'd with Catai Behader, Eltchi Bouga, and Hamdi, whom Timur had left governor of Andecan [a]. They got together their hords of Gelair and Capchac, and march'd towards Samarcand, which they beſieg'd; but the inhabitants defended themſelves ſo valiantly with their arrows and darts, that they were oblig'd to raiſe the ſiege. Acbouga governor of the place wrote to Timur, who had already march'd by the town of Cat, concerning the ſiege: tho he was arriv'd at Khas when he receiv'd the news, he immediately return'd, and having given the command of the vanguard to his ſon the Mirza Gehanghir, whom he order'd to march'd with all expedition, he follow'd him with the reſt of the army.

As ſoon as he was come to Bocara, he rang'd all the troops in order of battel, and went to encamp at Rebat Malek. Mirza Gehanghir overtook the enemy in a place call'd Kermina: each party put their troops in order, kettle-drums were heard on all ſides, and the fight began. After a brave engagement the prince was victorious; the enemy run away in diſorder: the confederates retir'd into the deſarts of Capchac, and fled for refuge to [b] Ourous Can; and the officers who eſcap'd out of the battel liſted themſelves in his ſervice.

Timur after this victory return'd to Samarcand, and divided the hord of Gelair, with his lands

[a] A town of Zagatai on the frontiers of Turkeſtan, long. 103. lat. 43.

[b] Emperor of Capchac, deſcended from Touſchi Can, ſon of Genghiz Can.

and

and demeſns, among the princes who remain'd faithful to him; and made the prince Omar Cheik his ſecond ſon governor of Andecan. Chap. 17.

Sar Bouga and Adelchah remain'd in the ſervice of Ourous Can; but the ſpirit of rebellion again excited 'em. They laid hold on an opportunity, while Ourous Can was gone to a pleaſure-houſe, to fly from his court: and thro their natural ingratitude, ſlew Ourchibi lieutenant of this Can, and then came to the country of Gete to Camareddin, whom they perſuaded to join 'em in making war upon Timur.

CHAP. XVII.

Timur's fourth expedition to the kingdom of the Getes.

WHEN Sar Bouga and Adelchah had met with Camareddin, they did not ceaſe to inflame him againſt Timur: And, having perſuaded him to join 'em, he brought an army into the field, and march'd to the country of Andecan, where the Hezare of Coudac abandon'd prince Omar Cheik, and came over to the enemy. Omar Cheik fortify'd himſelf in the mountains, and ſent a man nam'd Dachmend to the emperor, to inform him that the enemy with a great army had entirely ruin'd Andecan; and moreover he gave him an account of all that had happen'd. This news ſo incens'd Timur, that he immediately march'd towards Gote; of which Camareddin having advice, retir'd from the place he was in, and commanded his houſhold and hord to leave Atbachi, whilſt he remain'd in ambuſcade with four thouſand horſe.

Timur

Book II. Timur coming to that place, ignorant of the ſnare Camareddin had laid, ſent his Emirs with all the army in purſuit of the enemys. Five thouſand of the moſt valiant men were conducted by the Emirs Muaid, Catai Behader, and Cheik Ali Behader, who conſulted how they ſhou'd proceed in the deſtruction of the enemys, and concluded only to perform actions of bravery. Upon which they march'd; and ſo there remain'd no more than two hundred men with the emperor.

Camareddin being inform'd of this, laid hold on the opportunity, and briskly ſally'd out of the ambuſcade with his four thouſand men ſword in hand, and fell upon Timur; but Timur remembring the paſſage of the Alcoran, *How often have few troops vanquiſh'd great armies thro the aſſiſtance of God?* was neither troubled nor afraid; but on the contrary encourag'd his ſoldiers by this ſhort ſpeech: "Victory is the gift of God, "and a multitude of ſoldiers don't always gain "the advantage: my friends, we muſt fight like "brave men; the leaſt cowardice on our ſide "will make us loſe the day, for in the preſent "conjuncture we are oblig'd to riſque every "thing."

He had no ſooner ended his ſpeech, than he ſpur'd his horſe againſt the enemys; he enter'd into the field of battel, and on every ſide laid about him with his ſword and battle-ax, turning himſelf wherever occaſion preſented; every attack he overthrew thoſe who oppos'd him, and ſpilt abundance of blood: he penetrated even into the heart of the army. Thus this valiant emperor, with his lance, war-club, ſabre and net, defeated many of the enemys, and led captive their generals.

In

In ſhort, this prince, being oblig'd to expoſe his perſon, behav'd himſelf with ſo much bravery, that nothing but the divine aſſiſtance cou'd excite ſuch courage in any man. His ſoldiers bravely ſeconded him, and in that battel did all that cou'd be expected from the conſummate valor of the moſt dauntleſs heroes: in fine, notwithſtanding their ſmall number, they defeated four thouſand valiant men, who were fill'd with a deſire of revenge; which cou'd not have been accompliſh'd by human ſtrength alone, but by God himſelf, who was pleas'd to give the victory to this great prince. Chap. 17.

Timur imagin'd one night in a dream he ſaw the face of Cheik Burhaneddin Clitch, in one of thoſe viſions which are eſteem'd prophetic, and are of forty ſix kinds. He dreamt, that being in the preſence of this holy man, with great reſpect he humbly beg'd of him to pray to God for his dear ſon the Mirza Gehanghir, whom he had left ſick: and the Cheik anſwer'd him, *Be with God*; but ſpake nothing to him concerning his ſon. When he awoke he knew that the prince was not ſo well as he wiſh'd; wherefore he was ſo diſquieted that he order'd his ſecretary of ſtate, nam'd Poul Cotluc to depart with all haſte from Senceghul to bring him word how he was. When this man was departed, Timur had another ſtrange dream relating to his ſon, which very much encreas'd his melancholy: he therefore ſaid to the Emirs and officers, "I believe I "muſt be entirely parted from my ſon, hide "not from me the condition he is in." They all fell on their knees, and ſwore they knew nothing concerning him. Prophetic viſions of 46 ſorts, according to the Mahometans.

In the mean time he decamp'd, and met Camareddin at Senghezigadge; gave him battel, and the latter was again defeated and conſtrain'd

Book II. ſtrain'd to fly. The Emir Outchcara purſu'd him cloſely, and after a long purſuit oblig'd him to return immediately with eight men only. Being ſurrounded by many of our ſoldiers, his horſe was kill'd by their arrows, and himſelf wounded in divers places, inſomuch that he cou'd ſcarcely get away on foot. Poulad alſo in the fight had an arrow ſhot into his hand; and as in their return a place was by chance ſet on fire, this lord fatigu'd himſelf ſo much in endeavouring to extinguiſh it, that the ſickneſs occaſion'd by his wound encreaſing, procur'd his death.

CHAP. XVIII.

The death of Mirza Gehanghir, Timur's eldeſt ſon.

TIMUR, being return'd from Aracom, and having croſs'd the Sihon, that is, the Jaxartes, arriv'd at his imperial city of Samarcand, where all the great lords of the empire, the Cheriffs and others, were cloth'd in black and blue garments; they wept bitterly, cover'd their heads with duſt in token of ſorrow, beat their breaſts, and rent themſelves according to cuſtom, and then went to meet the emperor in great haſte.

All the inhabitants with their heads uncover'd, and with ſackcloth and black felt about their necks, and their eyes bedew'd with tears, came out of the city, filling the air with crys and lamentations. "What a pity is it, ſay they, "that the pious and juſt conqueror Gehanghir, "appear'd only as a roſe, which is blown away "by the wind! What pity is it that death hath

"thus caſt into the grave this prince, who Chap. 18.
"cou'd ſo eaſily bring his deſigns to perfec-
"tion!"

As ſoon as Timur arriv'd, and obſerv'd the general conſternation, he no longer doubted of the death of his ſon, which his imagination had already repreſented to him.

Every thing then became melancholy and diſagreeable to him, and his cheeks were almoſt always bath'd in tears; he cloth'd himſelf with mourning, and his life became uneaſy to him. The whole kingdom, which us'd to be overjoy'd at the arrival of this great emperor, was turn'd into a place of ſorrow and weeping.

All the army, cloth'd in black and blue, ſat down in token of their grief; the greateſt lords cover'd their heads with duſt, their eyes flow'd, if one may ſo ſay, with tears of blood, and their hearts were pierc'd with the deepeſt grief.

Tho the emperor was affected in an extraordinary manner with the loſs of his ſon; yet while he knew that the deſtruction of all beings was a neceſſary evil, that there was no man of eternal duration, and that every thing which belong'd to God muſt return to him again, he found ſome conſolation in his grief, and at the ſame time perform'd ſeveral acts of piety for the repoſe of his ſon's ſoul, as endowments and publick works: he prepar'd, as uſual, funeral repaſts and banquets, in which the poor were treated; and he diſtributed other alms among 'em.

The body of the deceas'd prince was carry'd to Kech, where he was bury'd, and a magnificent mauſoleum erected for him. He lived twenty years, and left two ſons, one of whom was call'd the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, born

of

Book II. of the princeſs Canzade; and the other, the Mirza Pir Mehemed ſon of the princeſs Baktimulki Aga, daughter of Elias Yeſouri, born forty days after the death of the prince Gehanghir, which happen'd in the year of the Hegira 777, which anſwers to the year of the Crocodile.

An. Dom. 1375.

Seifeddin Berlas had no ſooner heard of this misfortune, than he became averſe to all worldly things, and beſought the emperor to permit him to paſs the remainder of his life at Hudgeaz [a], in the ſacred place of Mecca.

CHAP. XIX.

Timur's fifth expedition againſt the Getes.

THE emperor was ſo afflicted at the death of his ſon, that he laid aſide all thoughts of public affairs; but the principal Emirs and princes of the blood aſſembled before the throne, and kiſs'd the ground. They repreſented to him, that as the wiſdom of God had made the good order of the world dependent on the abſolute power he had given to ſovereigns, to maintain their people in peace; ſo if his great heart was reſolv'd to pleaſe the Divine being, he cou'd think on no better means of doing it, than by rendring juſtice to his ſubjects; ſince the wiſeſt of men, Mahomet, hath ſaid, "That he prefer'd the fruits of one hour em-"ploy'd in rendring juſtice, to ſixty or ſeventy "years ſpent in divine worſhip."

[a] A province of Arabia.

Timur

Timur gave ſerious attention to what theſe princes ſaid, being fully perſuaded that it flow'd from a ſincere affection to him; he therefore began to apply himſelf to the affairs of the empire, and immediately order'd the army to get ready to march. Chap. 19.

At the ſame time advice was brought that Adelchah Gelair was in the mountains of Caratchuc, accompany'd with few perſons: which caus'd Timur to ſend Berat Coja Kukeltach, and Eltchi Bouga, with fifteen horſe only, to endeavor to find him. They departed from Samarcand in the evening, and continu'd their march every night till they arriv'd at the town of Otrar[1], where they chooſe the fitteſt men to go into the mountain in ſearch of this rebel, whom they found in a place nam'd Acſouma, where they ſeiz'd on him, and put him to death according to law. Death of Adelchah Gelair.

Acſouma is a tower built on the top of the mount Caradgic, a place deſign'd for a guard to the country, becauſe one may obſerve from thence what is done in the plains of Capchac.

Sar Bouga, who had alſo been diſobedient and revolted, repented of his faults, and return'd to court after two years abſence. The emperor pardon'd him, and gave him the government of his own people, that is, the hord of Gelair.

Soon after Mirza Omar Cheik, Emir Acbouga, Catai Behader, and the other Emirs receiv'd orders to march againſt Camareddin, and to uſe all their efforts to ſubdue him. Theſe Emirs departed from court, and made

[1] Formerly call'd Farab, upon the Sihon, long. 98 ½. lat. 44. a frontier town between Zagatai and Capchac.

Book II. ſuch haſte that they met him at the borders of the country of Couratou[6], where they gave him battel, and ſtruck ſuch terror into his troops, that they fled in diſorder, after the example of their general; and ſoon after the victorious army return'd laden with ſpoils and ſlaves, as uſual.

CHAP. XX.

Timur's fifth expedition to the country of the Getes againſt Camareddin. Tocalmich Aglen, deſcended from Touſchi, ſon of Genghiz Can, arrives at court, and puts himſelf under the protection of Timur.

THE troops were no ſooner upon their return, than Timur reſolv'd to march in perſon into that country[7], the ſame year; and for this purpoſe Mehemed Bei, ſon of the Emir Mouſſa, a confident of the emperor, gave the command of the vanguard of the army to the Emir Abbas and Akitmur Behader, and ſent 'em away according to the prince's orders.

Theſe captains march'd day and night, and were ſo fortunate as to come up with Camareddin at Bougam Aſigheul, where they put him to flight after a furious battel, and then ravag'd his country, and reduc'd his ſubjects to

[6] In the country of the Getes.

[7] Capchac, call'd by the Europeans the Grand Tartary, which contains all the country ſituate between leſſer or Crim Tartary and Turkeſtan. This empire was given to Touſchi Can, by his father Genghiz Can the conqueror of it, as his ſhare.

obe-

obedience, and Timur himſelf afterwards pur- Chap. 20.
ſu'd him as far as Coutchar.

At this place the emperor had advice that Tocatmich Aglen, jealous of Ourous Can, had withdrawn himſelf from under his protection, and was coming over to him. Timur gave orders to Toumen Timur Uzbec [8], to take care of the ceremonys of his entry, to go and meet him, and load him with all the honors and careſſes imaginable: which was punctually executed.

Timur then march'd towards Oinagou, in order to return home: from thence he came to Uzkunt [9]; and contina'd his march towards his capital, where at length he fortunately ariv'd.

Toumen Timur brought thither Tocatmich Aglen, who was preſented to Timur by the principal lords of his court. He ſhew'd abundance of joy at his return, and did not forget any of the ceremonys and honors which a prince of his merit and birth cou'd expect; for after having entertain'd him magnificently with all ſorts of diverſions, he gave him, as well as his officers, ſo many preſents, that it wou'd be difficult to number 'em. They conſiſted of gold, precious ſtones, arms, habits, magnificent belts, rich ſtuffs, and a great deal of furniture, horſes, camels, tents and pavilions, kettle-drums, ſtandards, mares and ſlaves; and then he did him the honor of calling him his ſon.

[8] Uzbec a hord of Tartars.

[9] A town on the Sihon, frontier between Turkeſtan and Zagatai, long. 102 ½. lat. 44. call'd in the Arabian of Nubia, Adarcand and Urkent.

CHAP. XXI.

Timur gives Tocatmich Aglen the principalitys of Otrar and Sabran; and aſſiſts him in making himſelf maſter of the empire of Capchac, which he claim'd as his right; tho Ourous Can[1]*, deſcended from Genghiz Can, was in poſſeſſion of it.*

THE generous emperor gave the government of Sabran, Otrar, and Saganac, Seiram, Serai, and other towns of the empire of Capchac, to prince Tocatmich, who was no ſooner eſtabliſh'd there than Cotluc Bouga, ſon of Ourous Can, emperor of that country, brought an army into the field againſt him. The deſire which theſe princes had for fighting, was the reaſon that the armys were not long before they came to blows, and fought as if they were reſolv'd to conquer or die.

Death of Cotluc Bouga. Defeat of Tocatmich Aglen.

Cotluc Bouga was kill'd by an arrow in the fight, nevertheleſs Tocatmich Aglen was defeated: the enemys plunder'd his country, and conſtrain'd him to quit his government, and to retire towards Timur, who receiv'd him with greater honor than at firſt, and after having order'd a new equipage to be made for him, and given him freſh troops, ſent him away.

When Toucta Caya, eldeſt ſon of Ourous Can, heard that this prince was on his return

[1] Ourous Can gave the name to all Ruſſia, of which he was ſovereign.

to

to Sabran, he join'd many other princes of the race of Touſchi * Can, ſon of Genghiz Can, as alſo Ali Bei, and ſeveral Emirs, who reſolv'd to revenge the death of Cotluc Bouga on Tocatmich Aglen: the army they brought into the field was very numerous, and compar'd to piſmires and graſhoppers. In ſhort, when Tocatmich Aglen had rang'd his army in order of battel in view of the enemy, the fight began, and the troops of this prince were put to flight: he himſelf fled to the banks of the river Sihon, where he threw himſelf into the water to ſave himſelf. He was purſu'd by Cazandgi Behader, who let fly an arrow wherewith he wounded his hand. When he had croſs'd the river, he alone enter'd into a wood naked and wounded, and caſt himſelf on the ground to get ſome reſt: but he was ſoon reliev'd by Aidecou Berlas, an old expert captain, whom Timur had ſent to give him his advice in the enterprize he was carrying on, and to inſtruct him how to govern his own country. Chap. 21. Tocatmich Aglen, a ſecond time defeated.

The night oblig'd this captain alſo to enter the wood: he there heard a doleful voice, which very much affected him: he ſought for the perſon who was lamenting; and at length found Tocatmich naked and wounded, who was recover'd from a ſwoon he had a little before fall'n into. After he had got off his horſe, he comforted him as well as he was able; told him how much he was concern'd for his misfortune, and gave him ſomewhat to eat and drink, as alſo a garment, ſuch a one as ſcouts commonly carry, to ſerve on occaſion in a jour-

* Some authors call him Dgioudgi.

Book II. ny: he then took all poſſible care of him, and conducted him to Timur, who was encamp'd without Bocara when they arriv'd.

When Timur knew the condition Tocatmich was reduc'd to, he receiv'd him with all the clemency which ſo great an emperor was capable of ſhewing: and order'd another equipage to be made for him, as magnificent as either of the former.

In the mean while an Emir of the country of Touchi, nam'd Aidecou, of the horde of Mangout, came from the court of Ourous Can to that of Timur, and brought advice that this prince had drawn his troops into the field, and was marching againſt the invincible emperor, and ſought every where for Tocatmich. About this time alſo Kepec Mangout and Touloudgian came to court in quality of ambaſſadors from Ourous Can, and made an harangue to the emperor, the ſubſtance whereof was as follows:

"Tocatmich has kill'd my ſon, and is fled "for refuge to you: you ought to deſiver up "this prince, who is my enemy; if you re- "fuſe to do it, I declare war againſt you, "and there remains nothing for us to do but "to meet in the field of battel."

Timur made this anſwer: "Tocatmich has "put himſelf under my protection, and I will "defend him. Return to Ourous Can, and tell "him, that I not only accept his challenge, but "my preparations are already begun, and my "valiant ſoldiers have no other employ than the "trade of war; they are lions, who inſtead "of living in foreſts, have their reſidence in "camps and armys."

CHAP.

CHAP. XXII.

Preparations for war. Timur brings an army into the field againſt Ourous Can, emperor of Capchac and Grand Ruſſia.

War between the empires of Touchi and Zagatai.

AS ſoon as the emperor Timur had diſmiſs'd the ambaſſadors of Ourous Can, he order'd the Emir Ali to make preparations for war, and to bring an army into the field; and the Emir Yakou to take care of the government of the royal city of Samarcand, during his abſence.

The troops of the empire of Zagatai were ſoon got together, and Timur at their head, march'd to attack Ourous Can, towards the end of the ſame year of the Crocodile. They croſs'd the Sihon, and encamp'd in the vaſt plain of Otrar.

Ourous Can having aſſembled all the troops of the empire of Touchi, march'd to Saganac, twenty four leagues diſtant from Otrar. Theſe vaſt armys being in ſight, were ready to make great havock, when a prodigious cloud overſhadow'd 'em, and ſhower'd down a prodigious quantity of rain and ſnow, which was follow'd with ſo exceſſive a cold, that the limbs of the men and beaſts loſt all motion. The weather continu'd thus almoſt three months, during which time the armys were in view, and neither capable of action.

Timur cou'd not quell the impetuoſity of his courage; he was deſirous to be in action, and commanded Catai Behader and Mehemed Sultan Chah, who were retir'd from the court

Book II. of the prince of Herat, and were attach'd to him, to march with all haſte to attack the enemy during the night. Following this order, they took five hundred men with 'em to make inroads. They met Timur Melik Aglen, ſon of Ourous Can, with about three thouſand horſe. This rencounter happen'd late at night; but morning approaching, the battel began. Fear and valor had each of 'em a great ſhare in this action, and the victory was a long time in ſuſpence; but at length the troops of Timur gain'd it, as they were accuſtom'd; and the enemy was put to the rout. Eltchi Bouga was wounded in the hand, and the prince Timur Melik Aglen in the foot by an arrow; and tho Yarek Timur and Catai Behader were both ſlain; the victorious troops return'd to the camp in triumph.

Defeat of the troops of Ourous Can.

Mehemed Sultan Chah had orders from the emperor to depart, that he might gain intelligence of the enemys, which he did, and brought to Timur a man whom he had ſeiz'd: the Emir Moubacher, who had receiv'd the like order, alſo brought another he had taken. Timur learnt from both of 'em, that the enemy had ſent two of their braveſt men, one nam'd Olough[1] Satkin, and the other Kutchuk[1] Satkin, with a hundred horſe, to learn news of the ſtate of our army. They were by chance met by Akitmur Behader and Alahdad, who came from Otrar, where they had diſtributed the victuals for the army. Akitmur, excited by the good fortune which never abandon'd the great Timur, march'd vigorouſly againſt 'em,

[1] Clough ſignifys eldeſt, and Kutchuk youngeſt; and

and in the mean while to deceive them, made uſe of a warlike ſtratagem: he pretended to fly; and this motion of our men gave freſh courage to the enemy, who were already advanc'd, but Akitmur ſoon after returning to the charge with his men, beat back their ſoldiers, who thought themſelves conquerors, and entirely broke their ranks. Thoſe who were not ſlain, fled, and hid themſelves in pits and caverns of water. Kepektchi Wtchi, Akitmur's nephew, kill'd the young Satkin; and Indouchah ſeiz'd the eldeſt, whom he brought to Timur, who, for his ſervices diſtinguiſh'd Indouchah from the other captains by particular favors. They had then advice that Ourous Can, deſpairing of his projects, was return'd home, and had left Karakeſel in his place; which oblig'd Timur to march in perſon againſt the enemy; but as he found that Karakeſel was alſo retir'd with his troops, he finiſh'd the campain, and return'd with his army to his camp near the city of Kech, where he ſtaid ſeven days. Chap. 23.

CHAP. XXIII.

Timur's irruption into the country of Ourous Can: Tocatmich Aglen plac'd on the throne of the empire of Capchac, otherwiſe call'd the empire of Touchi Can.

AS ſoon as the ſeaſon wou'd permit the army to be brought into the field, the invincible Timur took horſe to make war on Ourous Can. He gave the conduct of his vanguard to Tocatmich, who likewiſe ſerv'd as a guide, and march'd day and night with ſo much

diligence

Book II. dition, that in fifteen days and nights they arriv'd at Geiran Camich * a town of Capchac, the inhabitants of which he found aſleep, having no notice of the march of our army. The town was pillag'd, and the ſoldiers brought away a great number of horſes, camels, ſheep and ſlaves; and, what was a further mark of Timur's good fortune, before this action Ourous Can died, as ſoon after did Toucta Caya his eldeſt ſon.

* That is, the reeds for deers.

Death of Ourous Can, and his ſon Toucta Caya, in 1376.

Timur immediately furniſh'd Tocatmich Aglen with every thing requiſite for government; and eſtabliſh'd him ſovereign in Capchac and the reſt of the empire of Touchi: and after having prepar'd him an equipage worthy of an emperor, he left him in that kingdom. He alſo made him a preſent of the famous ſpotted horſe named Conc Aglen, a horſe of the fineſt metal and ſpirit, and which he greatly eſteem'd for his extraordinary ſwiftneſs. And on making this preſent, he thus addreſt him:

Elogium on Timur's favorite horſe.

"This horſe will ſerve you on ſeveral occa-
"ſions: for you may eaſily overtake the enemy
"when you purſue him; and no one will be
"able to overtake you if you are oblig'd to
"fly."

After this expedition, the emperor reſolv'd to return to Samarcand; whereupon he left Capchac, and fortunately arriv'd at the heart of his empire, in the beginning of the year of the Serpent, and of the Hegira 778.

An. Dom. 1376.

But the affairs of Capchac did not long continue ſo quiet as he had left 'em; for ſoon after his return, he receiv'd advice that Timur Melik Aglen, ſon of Ourous Can, having fix'd himſelf on the throne of Touchi, had brought a powerful army into the field to make war on Tocatmich: in ſhort, their armys came in view, and after ſeveral skirmiſhes, Tocatmich was

Timur Melik aſcends the throne of Touchi, and defeats Tocatmich.

again

again intirely vanquiſh'd. Nevertheleſs, he ſav'd himſelf from all dangers, by means of the horſe the emperor had preſented him; yet all his troops were diſpers'd, and he alone came to the court. Chap. 24.

Timur, thro his wonted goodneſs, again recruited his loſſes, and in the end of the year 778 ſent him back to Saganac, guarded by ſeveral great Emirs, among whom were Toumen Timur Uzbec, and his ſon Balti Coja, Ozunkitmur, Cayaſeddin Tercan, and Benki Coutchin, whom he order'd to re-eſtabliſh him on the throne of the Cans. An. Dom. 1376.

Theſe princes obey'd, and plac'd Tocatmich Aglen upon the throne in the city of Saganac, with all the ceremonys obſerv'd at the coronation of Cans; and according to cuſtom they ſprinkled upon him gold and precious ſtones.

CHAP. XXIV.

The birth of prince Charoc, ſon and heir to the emperor Timur.

IN the middle of the ſame year of the Serpent, when the government of Timur ſeem'd to have arriv'd at the ſummit of its felicity, many of his officers bearing the titles of kings and Cans, there were compos'd ſeveral poems and other pieces on his proſperity. Some obſerv'd that this conqueror had for his courtiers none but kings; while others related to what a high degree God had gratify'd his deſires, and how favorable fortune had been to him.

They

Book II. They cited ſeveral paſſages of the alcoran [4], which perfectly agreed with his good fortune; they thence foretold the birth of the ſon whom God wou'd give him, becauſe of his virtues, and the juſtice with which he govern'd his ſubjects.

This charming infant was born in the city of Samarcand, the ſeat of his empire, on thurſday the fourteenth of the month Rabilaker, in the year of the Hegira 779: and what moſt pleas'd the emperor was, that he ſaw in this beautiful and happy prince the continuation of his family, which ſhou'd remain in the poſſeſſion of the empire to the end of time.

An. Dom. 1377.

In ſhort, he diſcover'd an extraordinary joy at the moment Mehrebane [5] his mother brought him into the world; and when he was preſented to him, he knew by examining the features of his countenance, that the ſun of his good fortune had already caſt his rays upon this beloved infant.

He was brought up with great niceneſs and care by the ladys of the ſeraglio; his body by degrees became of a proper ſize: they adorn'd his clothes with the fineſt oriental ſtones, and he had always held over his head a canopy of rich embroider'd velvet.

There is a prayer in the Meſnevi [6], which was made uſe of to beſeech God that he wou'd be pleas'd to make the throne of Timur happy under the government of this young prince, that

---

[4] The Mahometans read the Alcoran as a book of prophecy, and pretend to find predictions in it.

[5] The ſirname of Serai Mulc, which ſignifies a well-doer.

[6] A celebrated book of Mahometan theology in verſe, compos'd by Moullei Roum, chief of the ſect of Derviſe Mevleviis, who always carry this book in their hands.

he

he wou'd render tributary to him the ſeven cli- Chap. 25.
mates of the univerſe, and that at length he might become emperor of the whole world.

The moſt learned aſtrologers, obſerving the ſituation of the heaven at the time of his birth, declar'd that this prince ſhou'd accompliſh all his deſires, and arrive without oppoſition to the higheſt pitch of grandeur and ſovereignty. They explain'd in his favor all that aſtrology was able to teach men upon the horoſcope and birth of a great prince: they reaſon'd on every thing which concern'd the planets and other ſtars, on their conſtellations and influences as far as they related to him; and in ſhort on the agreement between their predictions and thoſe of the Alcoran; the detail of which wou'd be too long and troubleſom to the reader. This chapter having been compos'd only as an account of the auguſt birth of the prince Charoc, we ſhall make no mention of his actions till the third book.

CHAP. XXV.

Timur ſends Tocatmich Can to attack Timur Melik Can, emperor of Capchac.

THE firſt time that Tocatmich Aglen, after having abandon'd Ourous Can, came to put himſelf under the protection of Timur, he was accompany'd by Orkitmur, to whom this emperor as a reward for his ſervices ſhew'd many favors, becauſe in his abſence Ourous Can had pillag'd all his goods, and given his revenue to another: and when Tocatmich was defeated by Timur Melik, Orkitmur was made priſoner of war, and carry'd to Timur Melik, who gave him

Book II. him his life, and even his liberty. But ſome time after, this captain being in miſery, caſt himſelf at the feet of Timur Melik, and beſought him to reſtore to him his lordſhip and troops, that he might be in a condition to ſerve him. Timur Melik refus'd it, and told him, he did not care whether he remain'd in his ſervice or not. Then Orkitmur fled, tho it was winter, and came to ſeek protection from the great Timur: he had the honor to kiſs the carpet of his throne at Samarcand, and to receive from him many peculiar favors; he gave him an account of Timur Melik's manner of living; that he ſpent both night and day in debauches; that he ſlept till ten a-clock in the morning, which is dinner-time, no one daring to wake him whatever affairs of importance requir'd it; that his ſubjects had no longer any hopes of obtaining favor or protection from him; and that all the people of the empire of Touchi Can were very deſirous of Tocatmich for their ſovereign. The emperor therefore ſent meſſengers to Tocatmich at Saganac, to adviſe him to march with all expedition to attack Timur Melik, who had paſs'd the winter at Caratal. Tocatmich, in obedience to this order, brought an army into the field, and march'd againſt the enemy.

As ſoon as he came near Caratal, the armys were rang'd in order of battel; they fought, and thro the uſual good fortune of our emperor, the Can Timur Melik was defeated, and Tocatmich Aglen at the ſame time took poſſeſſion of the throne of his anceſtors in the empire of Capchac, and immediately ſent Ourous Coja to carry the news of the victory to the great Timur.

This prince was ſo pleas'd at this news, that he ſpent many days in rejoycings: and to render the

the joy univerſal, he releas'd thoſe who were in chains. He honor'd Ourous Coja with a veſt and a gilt belt; and having made him a preſent of ſeveral jewels, ſent him back to Tocatmich, furniſhing him with horſes and mony for his journy. Chap. 26.

Tocatmich Can return'd to Saganac, where he ſtaid during winter, and as ſoon as the ſpring appear'd, rais'd a great army, and march'd towards the kingdom of Serai [1] and the country of Memac, which he again conquer'd.

His power encreas'd ſo conſiderably, that, thro the good conduct which Timur had inſpir'd in him, all the kingdom of Touchi Can was reduc'd to his obedience; and thus he follow'd this politick maxim, That he who is ambitious of greatneſs, ſhou'd aſſociate himſelf with fortunate men, becauſe proſperity is not to be acquir'd but from the ſtar of them who enjoy it.

CHAP. XXVI.

Embaſſy from the emperor Timur to Joſeph Sofi king of Carezem.

WHILST Timur paſt the winter at Otrar, to obſerve Ourous Can, Yſouph Sofi, king of Carazem, taking advantage of the abſence of this prince, ſent an army to Bocara, which ravag'd the country, and carry'd away all they cou'd find, without conſidering what might be the conſequences of this irruption. This action oblig'd Timur to ſend Dgelarem to

1. In Capchac, upon the Volga.

him

Book II. him in quality of ambaſſador, to acquaint him, that after having contracted an alliance with him, he thought it very ſtrange that he ſhou'd commit hoſtilitys in the country of Bocara without any cauſe given.

The ambaſſador acquitted himſelf of his commiſſion; but Yſouph Sofi gave orders that he ſhou'd be ſeiz'd, and put into priſon; of which Timur being inform'd, order'd one of his ſecretarys to write to him about it.

This officer inſtead of ink uſed freſh musk, to make the characters of the letter which was of ſilk, look more noble: he began with praiſing God, and with ſome conſiderations on the ordinary conduct of his providence with regard to princes; then he let him know the maxim of princes, which was, to eſteem the perſon of ambaſſadors ſacred; which was the reaſon they were always exempt from death, and even from priſon, if the ſovereign, to whom they were ſent, had any regard to the law of nations, and the ambaſſador had the prudence not to commit any conſiderable faults, and ſhou'd behave himſelf inoffenſively: moreover, that whoever ſhall have a contrary opinion, fails in judgment; ſince it is remark'd in the Alcoran, that ambaſſadors are ſacred, and only oblig'd to execute their maſters orders: in ſhort, that he ſhou'd rather have ſent back the ambaſſador without abuſing him; which if he did not, he wou'd ſoon be brought to repentance, and feel the effects of the moſt cruel vengeance ever mention'd in hiſtory.

When he had ſeal'd the letter, it was ſent to Yſouph Sofi, who without conſulting whether 'twas reaſonable, put the meſſenger in irons; and was again ſo imprudent as to endeavor to kindle the war; for he ſent Toui Bogai, ſirnam'd the robber, with a company of men of

his

his own ſtamp, to carry away the camels of the Turcomans, which he knew were then about Bocara. Chap. 26.

During this year of the horſe, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin Berlas return'd from his journy to Mecca, and had the honor to ſalute the emperor, to whom he repreſented the ſtate of the kingdoms of Iran [*], the governors of which had acted like abſolute ſovereigns.

In the ſame year alſo Timur was marry'd, according to the law of the prophet, to the princeſs Touman Aga, daughter of the Emir Mouſſa; and the ſincere love he had for her was the reaſon that at her deſire he adorn'd the city of Samarcand with many fine monuments; among the reſt he built a pleaſure-houſe without Samarcand towards the weſt; he alſo deſtroy'd the twelve gardens which were built in imitation of the twelve ſigns of the zodiac, in order to make them one. He order'd a magnificent pavilion, embelliſh'd with all poſſible ornaments, to be erected: inſomuch that thinking this the moſt pleaſant place imaginable, he knew of no name which wou'd ſuit it better than that of Baghi Behicht, the garden of paradiſe. Timur then went to paſs the winter at Zendgir Serai.

---

[*] All the country between the rivers Oxus and Tigris; i. e. Perſia and the neighbouring countrys.

CHAP. XXVII.

Timur's fourth war in Carezem: death of Joſeph Soſi: conqueſt of that kingdom.

JOSEPH, or Youſeph Soſi, Can of Carezem, excited by his pride, wou'd keep no correſpondence with Timur, but imprudently committed ſeveral raſh actions. This boldneſs gave cauſe to Timur to revenge himſelf, and get ready an army to make war on Carezem; which happen'd in the month of Chawal in the year of
An. Dom. the Hegira 780, which anſwers to the beginning
1376. of the year of the Sheep, when the ſun enters into Piſces. Thus having paſſed the winter in the quarters of Zendgir Serai, he began his march, and arriv'd at the frontiers of Carizme or Carezem.

His army inveſted the town of Eskiskuz. The general at the ſame time caus'd the kettle-drums to be beat, and the ſoldiers made the uſual cry which is call'd Souroun: they built a fortreſs over-againſt the town for greater ſecurity; made entrenchments on all ſides, and fortify'd 'em, and every morning fail'd not of making the great cry.

Partys went out, according to the orders given 'em, to pillage the territory of Carezem on every ſide, from whence they brought away all ſorts of booty: they raviſh'd the handſomeſt virgins in the country, made many ſlaves, and carry'd away all the horſes, camels and ſheep they cou'd meet with.

In the mean time Joſeph Soſi thought proper to write the following letter to the emperor:

"How

" How long ſhall the world ſuffer perſecution Chap. 27.
" and ruin for the ſake of two men only? and
" how many thouſands of Muſſulmans ſhall pe-
" riſh thro their quarrel? It wou'd be better
" that we meet alone in a particular field, and
" prove our valor; for then truſting in the di-
" vine aſſiſtance, we ſhall know in whoſe favor
" fortune and heaven will declare."

Timur was pleas'd in that Joſeph Sofi had ſent ſuch a letter to him; and ſaid it was what he moſt earneſtly deſir'd. He therefore order'd his armor immediately to be brought him; he put on his light cuiraſs which he us'd in duels, girded on his ſword, hung his buckler on his arm; and in this poſture, with the imperial helmet on his head, march'd towards the town. The princes and Emirs of the court caſt themſelves at his feet, and told him it was not reaſonable ſo great a monarch ſhou'd fight a duel; but he had no regard to their ſpeeches, and continu'd his way. Hadgi Seifeddin Berlas, full of affection to him, which tranſported him beyond all bounds, took hold of the horſe's bridle, to ſtrive to conquer the ſtubbornneſs of the emperor: he caſt himſelf at his knees, and told him he ought not to be guilty of expoſing his royal perſon, and fighting as a private man, when he had ſo many officers. " If the empe-
" ror, ſaid he, ſhou'd fight duels, what need is
" there of ſo many brave warriors?" Timur was wroth, reprimanded Seifeddin, and drew his ſword to ſtrike him: but the Emir quitted the bridle, and retir'd. The prince truſting entirely in God, went alone to the borders of the ditch of the city: he cried with a loud voice, that Joſeph Sofi might know he was come, to anſwer the challenge, and had kept his promiſe; and that he ought to meet him,

Book II. that he might ſee to whom God wou'd give the victory. Fear ſeized Joſeph Sofi, who repented, and was not as good as his word. Timur cried out again; and to excite Joſeph, told him that death rather than life was his due, who broke his word; he ſaid many other things to ſhame him, and oblige him to come into the field: but Joſeph prefer'd life before his honor, and was ſo abaſh'd that he cou'd make no anſwer. Timur waited a long time; but at length having no anſwer, return'd to his camp, where the braveſt admir'd his intrepidity.

About this time there were brought from Termed to Timur the firſt melons of the year: his natural goodneſs made him reſolve to ſend ſome of 'em to Joſeph Sofi, ſuppoſing it wou'd be thought uncivil if he did not let that prince partake of 'em, ſeeing he was ſo near him; wherefore he order'd ſome of 'em to be carry'd to him in a baſon of gold. The Emirs told him a baſon of wood might ſerve; but the emperor wou'd not ſuffer it, and they were carry'd in a baſon of gold to the borders of the ditch. They demanded from the wall what there was in the baſon; the bearer anſwer'd that there were ſome new melons which the emperor had ſent to Joſeph Sofi, and then he return'd: ſome of the beſieg'd took the baſon, and carry'd it to the Can, who thro his want of ſenſe, order'd the melons to be caſt into the ditch, and gave the baſon to the porter of the town.

After this action one of his generals nam'd Hadgi ſally'd out at the head of a good number of troops, who were of the braveſt warriors of Carezem; but the Mirza Omar, with his officers and ſoldiers, fell upon 'em with their ſwords drawn,

drawn, and ſwam over the water. This action kindled the war on all ſides: at length there was a general fight; all the field of battel was cover'd with dead bodies, and look'd like a mountain of ſlaughter'd men, as well on one ſide as the other, and the combat did not end till night: in it were perform'd actions of the utmoſt valor; but at length the army of Carezem tir'd with fighting, thought it adviſable to fly and enter the town. Chap. 27.

Eltchi Bouga, and Anoucherouân ſon of Acbouga, having diſtinguiſh'd themſelves by an extraordinary valor, were wounded; of whom the former was heal'd, and the latter died.

Timur gave orders for the ſiege to begin; the army was employ'd in placing the battering rams, and playing them againſt the walls; and the machines deſign'd to caſt millſtones and other ſtones, were made uſe of with ſuch ſucceſs, that the caſtle of Joſeph Sofi was nearly ruin'd: and fear ſeizing him he was oblig'd to go for ſhelter to ſome other place.

The ſiege continu'd three months and ſixteen days, during which time the marks of victory daily appear'd on Timur's ſide; and the diſtempers of the mind, which are aſtoniſhment, fear, inquietude, affliction, anger and envy, ſeiz'd on Joſeph Sofi with ſo great violence, that at length falling ſick, he loſt all courage and died, bewailing his misfortune.

This event was eſteem'd the moſt conſiderable of any that had happen'd to Timur, ſince the prediction was fulfill'd which he ſpake when he went alone to the walls of the town to invite the Can to the duel which he had propos'd, and afterwards refus'd to anſwer by not appearing; by which it was manifeſt that he deſerv'd

Book II. death rather than life, as the emperor had predicted [9].

At the ſame time they briskly attack'd the town on every ſide, and at length enter'd it by the breaches they made, notwithſtanding the brave reſiſtance of the beſieg'd, who defended themſelves to the laſt.

Taking of the capital of Carezem.

A treaſure of pearls and precious ſtones, which belong'd to the brave Erkendge, were taken away, tho not without oppoſition, by the ſoldiers whom Timur's good fortune aſſiſted: the other troops pillag'd all the riches of the town, and kill'd many of the inhabitants with their ſwords and arrows; and the publick edifices were ruin'd.

All the Cheriffs, doctors, and learned men were ſent to the city of Kech, as alſo the tradeſmen; together with a vaſt number of women and children.

This noted victory happen'd in the year of the Sheep, and of the Hegira 781; the fame whereof was diſpers'd thro all parts of the univerſe: The conqueror Timur, accompany'd with victory and triumph, return'd to the ſeat of his empire, and ſome time after went to paſs the winter at Zendgir Serai, where all ſorts of diverſions were prepar'd for him.

An. Dom. 1379.

[9] The author in ſeveral paſſages intimates as if Timur had the ſpirit of prophecy.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Foundation of the walls of Kech, the country of Timur: the building of the palace of Acſerai.

HISTORIANS report that the city of Kech was formerly the place where the moſt learned doctors of the Mahometan law aſſembled, and that three venerable Imams, celebrated by the ſects of which they were the chief, and for the new opinions they had introduc'd, dwelt in this country; one of 'em was Abou Mehemed Abdai, native of Kech; another was Abdalla, native of Samarcand; and the third Abou Abdalla Mehemed, of Bocara. Deſcription of Kech.

At the ſame time men of learning came from all parts to this city, for the improvement of their knowledg. About Huſſein Muſlem of Nichabour came according to the example of other virtuous men, and advanc'd his ſtudys under the famous Abdai. The learned Moullas came thither in great numbers; and as the ſtudy of the ſciences was then brought to perfection, they ſirnam'd this city Coubbet Elilmi Veledeb, that is, the dome of ſcience and virtue: it had alſo the name of Cheber Sebz, the green city, becauſe of the verdure and freſhneſs of its gardens, and a meadow famous for its rare and curious plants.

At the end of the year 781, which anſwers to that of the Monkey, the emperor charm'd with the beautys of this city, the purity of the air in its plains, the deliciouſneſs of its gardens, and the goodneſs of the waters, made it his ordinary An. Dom. 1379.

Book II. dinary reſidence in ſummer, and declar'd it the ſecond ſeat of his empire; wherefore he built there new walls, and a new palace which he nam'd Acſerai, becauſe the walls of it were exceeding white and very high. The foundation of theſe buildings was laid in an hour fitted for the moſt fortunate horoſcope; and the palace was built ſo exquiſitely fine and beautiful, that no other cou'd compare with it. Timur then divided the city among his Emirs, and the troops of his houſhold.

Building of the palace of Acſerai.

CHAP. XXIX.

The Emir Hadgi Seifeddin ſent ambaſſador to Herat, to Malek Cayaſeddin Pir Ali, king of Coraſſana.

THE emperor being in his winter-quarters, ſent a meſſenger to Malek Cayaſeddin Pir Ali, prince of Herat, to let him know that at the beginning of the ſpring, the Emirs and other princes of the empire were to be preſent at the Couroultai, or diet, to which he had ſummon'd 'em; and that his preſence there was alſo requir'd. The meſſenger at his arrival at He[illegible] was us'd with all imaginable civility and reſpect by the prince Pir Ali, who told him, that if the Emir Seifeddin wou'd do him the honor to come thither, he being a ſervant of the emperor, and friend to the Emir, wou'd confide in his protection, and the friendſhip between them, and depart with him immediately to teſtify his obedience. He ſpoke to the meſſenger after this manner, becauſe he ſtood in fear of Timur; but the emperor granted what he deſir'd, and

in

in the year 781. ſent Seifeddin Berlas to Herat; where he was receiv'd by Pir Ali with all imaginable honor. Pir Ali kept him a long time on pretence of putting in order the preſents he ſhou'd carry, and to make preparations for the journy; but his deſign was only to furniſh the city with victuals and other neceſſarys, and to finiſh the fortifications of Herat, which he had caus'd to be encompaſs'd the preceding year by a wall of two leagues circumference, and which conſequently enclos'd the ſuburbs and gardens without the wall of the old city. Pir Ali perſuaded himſelf, that thro the care and precaution he had taken he ſhou'd be ſecur'd againſt all events. The Emir knowing this prince's deſigns by his conduct, preſs'd him no more, but put himſelf in a condition to return to court; where as ſoon as he arriv'd, be repreſented to Timur what he was able to find out of the deſigns of Pir Ali by his manner of acting. Chap. 29. An. Dom. 1379. Mog. The Monkey.

At the ſame time Ali Bei, ſon of Argoun Chah Joun Garbani, return'd to his obedience, according to the orders he had receiv'd, and came to the foot of the throne. The emperor pardon'd all his paſt faults, gave him a handſom reception, and diſtinguiſh'd him from his equals by particular favors; he even conſented to the marriage of the daughter of this Bei with Mirza Mehemed Sultan [1]: he was entertain'd with feaſts, and had preſents made him of veſts and other things; and Timur had ſeveral conferences with him in relation to his deſign upon Herat.

It was concluded that Ali Bei ſhou'd be in readineſs to go thither in the beginning of the ſpring; which he gave aſſurance of by his pro-

[1] Son of Gehanghir, ſon of Timur.

miſes

Book II. miſes and oaths: after which the bountiful emperor, having again honor'd him with his kindneſſes, permitted him to return to the place of his reſidence.

CHAP. XXX.

Mirza Miran Chah, ſon of Timur, marches into Coraſſana, to make war on Malek Cayaſeddin Pir Ali, prince of Herat.

THAT it was Timur's ambition of univerſal monarchy, which caus'd him to undertake ſuch glorious actions, is unqueſtionable; and as he cou'd not find his equal in valor and conduct, among all the princes his contemporarys, he rais'd his empire to as high a degre of power and glory, as it was poſſible for any to attain to.

He has been often heard to ſay, what highly favor'd of this ambition, that it was neither agreable nor decent, that the habitable world ſhou'd be govern'd by two kings; acording to the words of the poet, *As there is but one God, there ought to be but one king; all the earth being very ſmall in compariſon of the ambition of a great prince.*

About this time many rebels had ſeiz'd on ſeveral provinces of Iran [*]; and every one ſetting up for monarch, had declar'd himſelf ſovereign of the country he poſſeſs'd, and fortify'd it, that he might become wholly independent. Theſe unaccountable enterprizes exceedingly diſpleas'd Timur, whoſe power viſibly encreas'd; and

[*] All the country between the Oxus and Tigris; that is, Perſia and the neighbouring countrys.

after

after having brought into subjection the countrys and kingdoms of Touran [1], which Genghiz Can had formerly divided betwixt his two sons, Touchi Can and Zagatai Can, he left 'em in the care of his lieutenants, and resolv'd to conquer the empire of Iran or Persia. Chap. 30.

In the autumn of the year of the Hen, and of the Hegira 782, he constituted governor of Corassana his dear son the Mirza Miran Chah, who was then but fourteen years of age: he gave him, to be near his royal person in quality of officers, the Emir Gehanghir brother of the Emir Hadgi Berlas, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, the Emir Acbouga, the Emir Osman Abbas, Mehemed Sultan Chah, Comari brother of Temouke, Taban Behader, Orous Bouga brother of Sarbouga, Pir Hussein Berlas, Hamza son of the Emir Mousa, Mehemed Cazagan, Sarac Eteke, and Muzaffer son of Ouchcara, and other Emirs, with fifty companys of horse, whom he chose out of his imperial army, and order'd to decamp for Corassana. An. Dom. 1380. Mirza Miran Chah made governor of Corassana.

The army cover'd with an extraordinary dust, which darken'd the air, arriv'd at the bank of the Gihon or Oxus; over which by order of the prince, a skilful engineer, who was in his train, built a regular bridge of boats.

The Tartar troops cross'd the bridge, and pass'd the autumn and greatest part of the winter at Balc and Cheburgan, where they rested themselves; but towards the end of the winter they took from Malek the town of Badghiz, where the soldiers had as a reward for their conquest a great many horses, furniture, and

[1] What is call'd the Grand Tartary from the Oxus, to Muscovy, Siberia and China.

other

Book II. other riches, which were pillag'd thro the valor of the young prince, inſomuch that the army became rich with the ſpoil of the enemy, equip'd it ſelf, and provided every thing neceſſary.

When the ſun was come to the middle of Piſces, Ali Bei ſent an expreſs to Timur, that if the victorious ſtandard ſhou'd march to Herat, he wou'd be ſo gracious as to permit him, his faithful ſervant, to attend him in quality of guide.

CHAP. XXXI.

Timur's army marches to make war in Perſia, and the reſt of the empire of Iran.

An. Dom. 1380. TOWARDS the end of the year of the Hegira 782, which was the beginning of that of the Dog, the emperor Timur perceiving the agreable ſeaſon of the ſpring drawing near, ſent orders to all parts to raiſe troops, that he might execute his deſign to paſs into Iran; and he departed from his camp in a happy moment, before all the army was got together.

The troops came one after another to the imperial army, which conſiſted of the brave Tartars of Touran, as well as the skilful Turks, and the choiceſt ſoldiers of the eaſt, Catlan, Termed, and Viſagherd; and Timur croſs'd the Gihon with all the army.

He order'd a bridge to be built over the river Dizac [*]; and all theſe motions, which were made with extraordinary diſpatch, caus'd an in-

[*] It falls into the Gihon or Oxus, and paſſes by Coraſſana.

expreſſible

expreſſible terror in Coraſſana; for the deſart and plains were entirely cover'd with tents, ſtandards, foot and horſe, arms and baggage. Chap. 31.

When Timur was arriv'd at Andecond, his devotion prompted him to viſit the illuſtrious Santon Babaſencou, who was of the number of thoſe Derviſes, who make profeſſion of folly [5]. This perſon, in an enthuſiaſtick fit, flung a breaſt of mutton at the emperor's head; who imagining this a good augury, ſaid, "I am aſſur'd that "God will grant me the conqueſt of Coraſſana, "becauſe this kingdom has always been call'd "the breaſt or middle of the habitable world." This prediction had its effect: the prince departed from Ancoud, accompany'd by good fortune and proſperity; and in the encamping and decamping of this vaſt army, the noiſe of kettle-drums, the ſound of the great trumpet Kerrena, of the cymbals and Gourca, and the din of bells, ſtruck ſuch terror into the inhabitants of this great country, that every one was in a conſternation [6].

Malek Mehemed, brother of Malek Cayaſeddin, was then in the fortreſs of Seracs; as ſoon as he had advice of the march of the army, he ſo much confided in the emperor's good nature, that he came before the throne, where he had the honor to kiſs the imperial carpet, and to re-

[5] The eaſt is full of this kind of Santons who are natural fools or blockheads, or at leaſt pretend to be ſo: the Mahometans have an extraordinary veneration for 'em, eſteeming 'em ſaints. They ſay that God loved 'em before their creation, and on that account did not endue 'em with reaſon, ſo that they are incapable of offending.

[6] The author ſays, this noiſe was ſo terrible, that it ſeem'd as if the day of judgment was come.

ceive

Book II. ceive many careſſes and preſents. When after a long march the army had paſs'd by Merveroud, commonly call'd Morgab [1], they at length encamp'd at Tchekedalic, eleven leagues from Herat.

The emperor ſent an expreſs to Ali Bei to deſire him to raiſe troops, and forthwith to join his army, according to the league made between 'em; but he refus'd to obey, and not only did not come, but by a ſhameful treaſon and pride, which prompted him to attempt what he was not able to perform, he caus'd the envoy to be ſeiz'd. As Malek Cayaſeddin Pir Ali had that day taken the town of Nichabour from the Serbedals, and had part of his army in that country, Timur march'd to Jam and Couſoupa, that the troops which were there might not be able to join Malek. When the emperor was at Couſoupa, Pehlevan Mehdi, the governor of it, went to meet him, and had the honor to kiſs the carpet; which was the reaſon the inhabitants of this province receiv'd no moleſtation from the army.

Timur, who always highly eſteem'd thoſe who profeſs'd the true religion in its purity, went to Taibad to viſit the learned and virtuous doctor Zeineddin Aboubekre Taibadi, who at that time was famous for the ſtrictneſs of his morality and great auſterity. The prince had a long converſation with this Moulla, who was the moſt pious man of his time: he receiv'd good advice relating to his conduct; and at length took leave of him, and march'd with the army to Herat.

[1] A town of Coraſſana. long. 97. lat. 36 ½.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXII.

Reduction of Fouchendge, a town of Coraſſana.

WHEN the imperial ſtandard arriv'd at Fouchendge [a], the troops had orders to beſiege this town; the ſoldiers accordingly inveſted it; and tho it had abundance of water in its ditches, they were not diſcourag'd, but ſpent three days in preparing their arms, and building the machines neceſſary for the ſiege. The fourth day in the morning, Timur order'd all the army to march towards this place, and vigorouſly to aſſault it, and ſtrive to reduce the enemy. The ſoldiers prepar'd themſelves for ſtrange actions, and as ſoon as the Gourghe [b] was ſounded, they made the terrible cry call'd Souroun, and every one regardleſs of his life obey'd the emperor's orders; they croſs'd the ditch upon planks and rafts, came to the foot of the wall, and diſcharg'd their arrows againſt the enemys, of whom they made a terrible ſlaughter.

Timur often march'd round the town without his cuiraſs, having only a veſt on, to excite the ſoldiers to fight, who at the ſight of the prince were recruited with freſh vigor.

Stones and arrows were ſhot from the top of the wall like rain, and Timur was ſtruck with two arrows.

[a] Long. 94. lat. 34.
[b] The ſame as Gourca.

Mirza

Book II. Mirza Ali, ſon of Emir Muaid Erlas, who reſembled Timur, Aicoutmur Belcout, Omar ſon of Abbas, Mubacher and other brave men, march'd with unparallel'd valor and intrepidity towards the ramparts, which they overturn'd; they got upon the wall, and the arrows and ſtones, which rain'd upon our ſoldiers, did not leſſen their courage.

The valiant Cheik Ali Behader, and his younger brother Coſru Buquet, with Mirek ſon of Eltchi, and other warriors, croſs'd the ditch, and aſſaulted the gate of the town; they came to blows with the enemy, and fought with ſo much vigor that they vanquiſh'd them, and found means to open the gate: on the other hand, the vaſt army, having made breaches on all ſides, enter'd the place, and put to the ſword all thoſe who had eſcap'd out of the hands of the others. Then they pillag'd the town, and carry'd away whatſoever was valuable.

This action gave extraordinary pleaſure to the officers of Timur; becauſe it was the firſt conqueſt they had made in Iran.

This town of Fouchendge was very much eſteem'd for its ſtrength, being ſurrounded with high walls and a good rampart; its other fortifications were ſo ſtrong, that no traveller had ever ſeen any citadel comparable to it: its outer parts were guarded with a deep ditch full of water: it was furniſh'd with a great many men arms, and machines, and had plenty of victuals. Yet notwithſtanding all theſe advantages, it was taken by our victorious ſoldiers at the firſt aſſault; which ſeem'd to foretel that all the kingdoms of the empire of Iran ſhou'd in a ſhort time be brought in ſubjection to the invincible Timur. But that this good fortune might not paſs unmixt with ſome adverſity, Elias and

ſeveral

ſeveral ſoldiers fell into the ditch, and were drown'd. Chap. 33.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Reduction of Herat, capital of Coraſſana.

WHEN Timur had taken Fouchendge, he march'd toward Herat, tho Malek Cayaſeddin in his pride, and by reaſon of the ſtrength of the walls which ſurrounded his capital, the many friends he had, and the ſuccors he expected, had prepar'd arms and all things neceſſary for his defence.

The victorious army was no ſooner arriv'd, than the troops began to ruin the gardens, after having beat down the walls: they then inveſted the city on all ſides; and as ſo on as the ſignal was given by the drums beating, and the ſoldiers had made the great cry Souroun, it was order'd for precaution that entrenchments ſhou'd be made over-againſt the walls of the city. This order was immediately obey'd, and Timur, accompany'd by his ordinary good fortune, mounted his horſe, and rode ſeveral times round the city, to examine the out-parts, and obſerve the ſtrongeſt and weakeſt walls.

The enemy, who were ready to fight, open'd their gate; and at the ſame the troop of Gouris, eſteem'd the ſtrongeſt and moſt valiant men of Iran, made a ſally upon our ſoldiers, but after a bloody conflict retir'd.

The inhabitants had no ſooner heard of this, than preferring the ſafety of their houſes, which were adorn'd with fine porcelane earth of Cachan [1], to the fatigues of war, they no longer

[1] A town N. of Iſpahan, and four days journy from this city.

Book II. defended themſelves, but thought only of ſaving their lives.

When Malek re-enter'd the city, he endeavor'd to change this reſolution of the inhabitants: he reſolv'd to make a ſecond ſally; and ſent the Dellals, that is, the public cryers, into all the quarters of Herat, to order all the inhabitants to repair forthwith to the breaſt-works of the walls, and to take particular care of the city; but notwithſtanding the crys they made in the markets and ſtreets, every one was deaf, and wou'd not obey 'em.

Malek ſeeing he had no other refuge to fly to than that of ſubmiſſion, ſent to the emperor the Sultana Catoun, daughter of Taghitmur Can his mother, with his eldeſt ſon the Emir Pir Mehemed, accompany'd by Eskender Cheiki, who was reported to have been of the race of Bigen *, to acquaint Timur with his ſubmiſſion, and to beg pardon.

The merciful prince receiv'd 'em handſomly: he preſented Malek's ſon with a robe of honor and a rich belt; and having comforted 'em, ſent back the mother and ſon, with order to tell Malek he muſt depart out of Herat; for if he ſhou'd be ſo preſumptuous as to defend himſelf, and the city ſhou'd be taken, he wou'd be the cauſe of the ruin of the kingdom, and the death of the inhabitants, and repent his ſo doing. Timur kept with him Eskender Cheiki, that he might inform himſelf of the affairs of the country, and of what had happen'd in the city; and at the ſame time this prince went to dwell in the

* A prince of the antient Perſians, the ſon of Kiou and of the ſiſter of Rouſtem.

Kiochc

Kiochc [3] of the garden call'd Bagzogoun, that is to ſay, the garden of the crows. Chap. 33.

Malek Cayaſeddin the next day made preparations for his departure; and the day after, having laid aſide his pride, he went out of the city to ſeek Timur: he kiſs'd the imperial carpet upon his knees, as a token of his ſincere ſubmiſſion, and beg'd pardon for his fault.

Timur pardon'd and careſs'd him; gave him a veſt of honor, and a belt ſet with precious ſtones, and then diſmiſs'd him.

The day after, the Cheriffs, antient Moullas and Imams, accompany'd with the greateſt lords of the kingdom, came out of the city: they had the honor to kiſs the carpet, and made the accuſtom'd vows for the emperor's proſperity.

This great conqueſt happen'd in the month of Muharrem, in the year of the Hegira 783, which was that of the Dog with the Moguls; and the victorious ſtandard was carry'd from the imperial camp to the meadow of Kehdeſtan, eaſt of Herat, where they ſtaid ſome days: during which time Timur order'd that the treaſures and other riches which the Gouris kings had amaſs'd for ſeveral years, ſhou'd be carry'd away. It is remarkable that there were in this city all ſorts of treaſures, as ſilver money, unpoliſh'd precious ſtones, the richeſt thrones, crowns of gold, ſilver veſſels, gold and ſilver brocades, and curioſitys of all kinds. The ſoldiers, according to the imperial order, carry'd away all theſe riches upon camels. An. Dom. 1381.

Timur then order'd the old walls of Herat to be raz'd, as alſo the new walls which Malek had built; which was accordingly executed.

[3] A pavillion in the gardens in form of a cupola, built of wood handſomly gilt, and ſometimes of marble.

Book II. A tax was laid on the inhabitants of the city, in conſideration of their being ſav'd, and in acknowledgment of the good treatment us'd towards 'em; which was paid in four days.

Moulla Cotbeddin, ſon of Moulla Nezameddin, who was chief of the Imams and doctors of this kingdom, had orders to quit Herat, and to dwell in the town of Sebz, with two hundred conſiderable old men: and Timur Tach, nephew of Acbouga, governor of Termed, was order'd to accompany and ſettle 'em there with their familys.

The gates of the city, which were cover'd with plates of iron, adorn'd with ſculptures and many learned inſcriptions, were carryd to Kech, where they remain to this day.

Malek had in poſſeſſion another place, which he thought impregnable; it was call'd Echkilge, and ſometimes Amancouh, the government of which he had given to Emir Gouri, the youngeſt of his ſons, who was accounted in Herat the braveſt, wiſeſt and moſt experienc'd lord of the kingdom. The emperor order'd Malek to bring him to court, and at the ſame time prohibited his entring into the citadel, and threaten'd to make him repent it if he did ſo. This prince went to the walls of Echkilge, as he was order'd; and having reſolv'd to comply with this difficult propoſal, he had recourſe to his prudence, and conducted himſelf ſo well in this affair, that by his fine ſpeeches he perſuaded his ſon to come out, and he brought him to court; where he had the honor to kiſs the imperial carpet. Timur gave him a handſom reception, highly favor'd him, and preſented him with a royal veſt.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIV.

The army marches to Tous and Kelat.

TIMUR being highly pleas'd with his ſucceſs at Herat, ſent Gehanchah Yakou with troops, to conquer the towns of Nichabour and Sebzuar; but as the affair of Ali Bei diſquieted him, he march'd in perſon to Kelat and Tous; and when he was arriv'd at the tomb of Abou Muſlem Merouzi *, he got off his horſe to make a viſit to it, according to the cuſtom of pious men, beſought God to aſſiſt him, and to give him ſtrength ſufficient to conquer his enemys.

The news of the emperor's march troubled Ali Bei: his heart was a long time divided between hope and fear; but at length, notwithſtanding the confuſion he was in, he reſolv'd to obey: he came with expedition to Timur's camp to ſubmit, and had the honor of kiſſing the carpet of the throne. Coja Ali Muaid a Serbedal, who was governor of Sebzuar, having advice of the army's march, came alſo immediately to court. The emperor receiv'd 'em with his ordinary clemency, and after having loaded 'em with favors, gave them a belt and ſword, as alſo a robe of honor: and thus theſe two princes were treated in a more obliging manner than they even dar'd to hope for.

* General of the armys of Aboul Abbas, firſt Caliph of the houſe of the Abaſſides, and to whom theſe princes ow'd their advancement to the Caliphate.

Book II. Timur at the ſame time took horſe to march to Eſferain [9], which was in the hands of the lieutenants of the Emir Veli, prince of Mazendran. As ſoon as he arriv'd there, he gave orders for diſpatching the ſiege of this town; the ſoldiers had no ſooner fix'd their ſtations in the camp where they deſign'd to prepare their machines of war, than hanging their bucklers upon their necks, they march'd forthwith to the walls, in which they made conſiderable breaches, and enter'd the town: they put to the ſword a great number of people, and deſtroy'd all their houſes, the moſt conſiderable as well as thoſe of leſs value; ſo that there remain'd to that great town only the name of Eſferain, which it cou'd not be depriv'd of.

Timur ſent an ambaſſador into Mazendran to the Emir Veli, to tell this prince, that if he came before him without reſiſtance and with expedition, to obtain the honor of kiſſing the carpet of his throne, he wou'd diſtinguiſh him from his equals by imperial favors, and raiſe him above 'em; but if, thro his ſtubborneſs, he ſhou'd refuſe to appear, he wou'd by that means become very unfortunate.

This prince treated the ambaſſador with all manner of civility, gave him a handſom reception, kiſs'd the letter which was preſented him, laid it upon his head, profeſs'd his ſubmiſſion, and promis'd to come to the throne in a ſhort time, and employ all his care in meriting to be of the number of the emperor's ſervants.

---

[9] Otherwiſe call'd Elmehredgan, a town in Coraſſana, between Nichabour and Jorjan, dependent on Nichabour; long. 91. 5. lat. 36. 44.

When

When the ambaſſador was upon his return, Timur went to a pleaſure-houſe nam'd Ogoul Yatou Yailac, an agreable place for the ſummer, where he ſtaid ſome days to give time to his ſoldiers to bring up their horſes, and to refreſh themſelves in a delicious meadow there, after the fatigue they had undergone. Chap. 35.

During theſe tranſactions they put to death the band of robbers, inhabitants of Courache, of whom we have before ſpoken, who were ſo bold as to kill the Emir Hadgi Berlas, and his brother Aidecou, very near relations of Timur. This emperor gave the principality of this country to Mehemed Dervich ſon of Aidecou, and to Ali Dervich grand-ſon of the Emir Hadgi; and at preſent it belongs to their family.

CHAP. XXXV.

Timur returns to Samarcand.

THE emperor having made ſeveral regulations as to the policy of the kingdom of Coraſſana, which he had reduc'd to obedience; he diſmiſs'd Malek Cayaſeddin prince of Herat, and the other princes and governors, each of whom he confirm'd in their reſpective governments. Emir Cheik Sebzuari, who before the conqueſt of Coraſſana had quitted Malek, and put himſelf under the protection of the emperor, having had the good fortune for ſome years to ſerve this prince, was honor'd with the higheſt poſt in the town of Sebzuar; and Taban Behader was made governor of that

Book II. country: after which the emperor happily returned to his capital city.

This monarch being on his return thither, went to paſs the winter in the proud city of Bocara, where loaded with grandeur and glory, he paſs'd his days in pleaſure; and the Mirza Miran Chah his ſon, who by his order was gone to Seracs, having ſeiz'd on Mehemed brother of Malek Cayaſeddin, ſent him to Samarcand, where he remain'd during winter.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Death of Akia Beghi, daughter of Timur, and wife of the Emir Bei, ſon of the Emir Mouſſa.

TO verify what is ſaid in the Alcoran, that there is no joy without ſorrow, nor marriage without mourning; Timur, in the midſt of his proſperity, was afflicted by the death of Tagi Can his daughter, alſo call'd Akia Beghi.

This princeſs was marry'd to Mehemed Bei, ſon of the Emir Mouſſa: ſhe had ſcarce her equal in beauty and virtue; her mind was adorn'd with the brighteſt graces, and her behavior attracted the love of all: in ſhort, ſhe was endu'd with ſuch charming qualitys, that the emperor her father lov'd her tenderly. Nevertheleſs her conſtitution decaying, ſhe was ſeized with a pining ſickneſs, by which ſhe waſted away; inſomuch that the fatal moment arriv'd, in which princes as well as peaſants, the powerful as well

well as the weak, are oblig'd to ſubmit to the decrees of fate: all the care that was taken to relieve her was uſeleſs, and ſhe gave up to the angel Iſrael [6] her life, which ſhe had only in truſt, leaving behind her a ſon nam'd Sultan Huſſein. Chap. 36.

The emperor Timur, who boaſted that he was able to withſtand the ſhock of misfortunes, was ſo afflicted at her death, that he forbad every one his preſence; ſo that grief having ſeiz'd the heart of the people, they rent their clothes, cover'd their heads with duſt, and tied black felt about their necks.

The funeral obſequys were perform'd according to the maxims of the Mahometan law; her body was waſh'd upon a table of gold, enrich'd with pearls and precious ſtones; they then laid her in a coffin of aloes-wood, and recommended her ſoul to God. The coffin was carry'd to the city of Kech, where it was laid in a magnificent tomb. The emperor, after this was over, having receiv'd the formal compliments of all the court, diſtributed victuals and alms among the poor in great abundance.

In the mean while advice was brought from Coraſſana, that Ali Bei, in conjunction with the Emir Veli, had brought his troops into the field againſt Ali Muaid, and beſieg'd him in the town of Sebzuar.

Timur, highly afflicted at the deceaſe of his deareſt daughter, had no regard to the affairs of this world, notwithſtanding the ambition he had formerly ſhewn; wherefore he took no notice of this advice, nor ſeem'd any way af-

[6] The Mahometans believe the angel Iſrael carrys away the ſouls of thoſe who die.

fected

Book II. fected with it; in ſhort, he continu'd in this mood, till the princeſs Cotluc Turcan Aga his ſiſter, who cou'd not bear the thoughts of his ſpending his time after this manner, came to him: ſhe profeſs'd how much ſhe ſympathiz'd with him in his grief; but at the ſame time ſhe gave him ſome agreeable advice, and told him, That ſince there was no remedy for the misfortune which caus'd his ſorrow, he ought not entirely to abandon the care of the affairs of the empire; that this neglect wou'd bring diſorder into his towns, and make the poor people deſpair; that it was better to free his mind from inquietude, which was prejudicial to him; and to ſhew that his zeal had no other aim than that of well-governing the empire, and remedying the neceſſitys of the ſtate.

"March, ſays ſhe, towards Mazendran [7] and "Kelat [8], to chaſtiſe thoſe proud rebels, who "have had the inſolence to depart from their "obedience: treat 'em in ſuch a manner, "that it may ſerve for an example to others; "ſpare not their lives; pillage their houſes; "and in ſhort, let 'em receive a puniſhment "adequate to their crimes, that the innocent "fall not into misfortune and trouble, by de-"parting from their duty at the inſtigation of "the wicked."

The words of this princeſs had the deſir'd effect on the emperor's mind, who knew they proceeded only from pure friendſhip; they rous'd and animated his virtue; and at the ſame time he reſolv'd on his march to Coraſſana and Mazendran.

---

[7] A province S. E. of the Caſpian ſea.
[8] A town S. of Mazendran, between Macan and Tous.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Timur's ſecond expedition into the kingdom of Iran or Perſia.

THE emperor order'd his troops to be got together, tho it was the middle of winter; and his army being in a readineſs, he march'd from Bocara towards Iran. He paſs'd the deſart, and arriv'd at Amouye upon the Sihon, where the engineers had no ſooner built a bridge of boats, than this conqueror croſs'd the river at the head of all his troops, entering a ſecond time upon the territorys of Iran or Perſia. It is ſaid, that at that time Aſia trembled from China even to the borders of Greece.

Having paſs'd by the country of Macan [a], the army encamp'd in the neighbourhood of Kelat. Mirza Miran Chah coming from Seracs [b], with his army join'd the imperial camp, and Malek Cayeſeddin alſo join'd it with the troops he brought from Herat. But Ali Bei, inſtead of following their example, got the ſtart of the army, and ſhut up all the inhabitants with his family and effects in the fortreſs of Kelat.

Yet the emperor was indulgent to him, and in conſideration of the alliance between 'em, wou'd not immediately take occaſion from his fault to be angry with him; but ſent a meſ-

[a] A town of Coraſſana, long. 95½. lat. 37½.
[b] A town of Coraſſana, long. 94½. lat. 36½.

ſenger

Book II. ſenger to him to know the cauſe of his fear, and to tell him he might come to court with full aſſurance that no act of hoſtility ſhou'd be us'd againſt him; but if he wou'd not obey, he muſt acknowledg himſelf the occaſion of all the misfortunes which ſhou'd happen to him; and that he ſhou'd be blameable for it. But as the time was come when the proſperity of Ali Bei muſt have an end, he did not conſult his reaſon, but deſpis'd the counſels with which the emperor, thro his clemency, honor'd him; and had recourſe to this paſſage of the Alcoran, *I will fly to a mountain, which will ſave me:* and thus relying on the mountain of Kelat, which he imagin'd inacceſſible, he did not come to the imperial camp to offer his ſervice to the emperor.

Timur decamp'd in the territorys of Kelat, and went down to Coran, which was dependent on Abiverd*, and order'd it to be proclaim'd in his army that he was about to march to Mazendran againſt Veli: notwithſtanding which he took a different road, and turn'd to Kelat, imitating in that king Behmen, whom the author of Chah Name † mentions in his verſes, who deſigning to march to the country of Zabul to conquer it, gave out that he ſhou'd go to the left hand, but at the ſame time went to the right.

Ali Bei and his men obtain'd freſh vigor, on advice that the imperial army wou'd march to Mazendran; whereupon he ſent out of the fortreſs into the meadows the horſes, flocks of

* A town formerly call'd Bayerd, N. of Coraſſana near Tous, in the deſart of Kivac; long. 93. lat. 37. 40.

† A general hiſtory of Perſia, written in antient Perſian;

ſheep,

ſheep, and other beaſts which had been ſhut up in it. Chap. 37.

But Timur, inſtead of going to Mazendran, return'd to Kelat with the army, which ravag'd all the country; and over-againſt the gate of Kelat, call'd the gate of the four villages, a dome was rais'd, under which was fix'd the emperor's throne, and the ſtandard was erected near it.

The army, almoſt aſſur'd of the conqueſt, inveſted Kelat on all ſides: the Mirza Miran Chah encamp'd over-againſt the gate of Dehia; the Mirza Ali, ſon of the Emir Muaid Erlat, in the paſſage of Lohra; the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin poſted himſelf in the defile of Argoun Chah; and the Mirza Omar Cheik planted his ſtandard at another gate. Fear ſeiz'd on Ali Bei, who being in an ill poſture of defence, was oblig'd to have recourſe again to the goodneſs of the emperor; to whom he repreſented by a ſubmiſſive letter, which he got to be laid before him, That being confounded at his bad actions, he dar'd not come to caſt himſelf at his feet, to implore his clemency, before he had beg'd pardon; but if thro his royal goodneſs he wou'd forgive him, and take the trouble to come to the gate of the town, accompany'd only by a few men, he wou'd come out as his ſlave, to caſt himſelf at his feet, and ask pardon for his faults. Timur granted the petition of Ali Bei, and having appointed a day to go to the gate of the town, he did not fail to be there with five horſemen only.

The walls of Kelat were built upon the brink of a high mountain, in which there was a narrow paſſage by the ſide of the walls among the rocks; which way was ſhut in by a gate, and join'd to that of the town.

Ali

Book II. Ali Bei having notice that Timur was come to the appointed place with but a few men, his malice, or rather his ill fortune, excited him to betray him, and to ſurprize him by ſome villains who lay in ambuſcade in the way, and whom he had order'd to kill the prince, if they ſhou'd have an opportunity.

In the mean while the traitor did not keep his word, not imagining that he whom God protects can receive no damage from any one, whatever artifice ſhou'd be made uſe of to deſtroy him. In ſhort, as if the villains had been blind, they cou'd not come out of their ambuſcade, nor even hold open the door of the place by which they muſt have put in execution the orders given 'em; ſo that Timur having ſtaid a long time at the place appointed, return'd to his camp without receiving any harm.

As ſoon as Timur was come down from the mountain, all the generals flock'd to ſalute him; and every one paid his compliments to him upon the danger he had eſcap'd.

When the treaſon and faithleſneſs of Ali Bei was fully known by his breach of promiſe, the emperor was enrag'd, and commanded a general aſſault to be given, and the braveſt men of the army to mount the walls of Kelat in thoſe places which ſhou'd be mark'd out for 'em. The troops advanc'd, and without fear of death, did all that cou'd be expected from courage and reſolution.

An. Dom. 1382. In the beginning of the month of Rabiulevel, Heg. 784. which anſwers to the year of the Hog, the emperor order'd that the ſoldiers of the * Eaſtern Tartars. troops of Mecrit * and Bedakchan, the moſt able men in the world to march over mountains, and ſurmount the difficultys of narrow paſſages, ſhou'd ſcale the walls. The ſame night

night they obey'd, and got on the top of the mountain, and at the ſound of kettle-drums and trumpets came to the gates of the town. Timur haſted thither alſo with a troop of his moſt valiant officers who march'd before him, among whom were the celebrated Akitmur Behader, and the brave Aicoutmur, who briskly repuls'd the enemys they met, and got upon the mountain. Omar Abbas and Mobacher, who were got up before the others, expected their comrades under a kind of vault, where the ſoldiers of the town attack'd 'em; but Timur immediately ſent thither a troop of the braveſt men of the army, who with their ſwords put 'em to the rout: the victorious troops, after having intirely beat the enemy, return'd from the mountain, and the vanquiſh'd demanded quarter. Chap. 37.

Ali Bei, reduc'd to the laſt extremity, ſent to Timur to beſeech him that the ſoldiers might give over the ſlaughter, on condition he ſhou'd come out the next day to make his ſubmiſſion, and aſſure him of his obedience. He promis'd this in an agreement which he ſign'd, and confirm'd by an oath; and as a ſecurity for his fidelity ſent Nicrouz and Mehemed Cheik Hadgi, who were the principal Emirs of the hord of Youn Garbani *, with his ſiſter Can Sultan, who had been promis'd in marriage to Mirza Mehemed Sultan.

Theſe envoys caſt themſelves at the feet of Timur with the greateſt humility, and interceded for Ali Bei: the emperor, thro his clemency, granted them what they deſir'd, and being willing to lay hold on the agreement of

* The ſame as the province of Youin, in Coraſſana, near Azadvar; mention'd by Abulfeda.

Ali

Book II. Ali Bei, and give credit to it, he at the ſame time ſent orders to his troops to ceaſe the ſlaughter, and to Nicrouz and Mehemed to follow him to his camp, which they obey'd.

The next morning, at ſun-riſing, Timur took horſe, and went to the gate of the town; Ali Bei was then conſtrain'd to come out and ſubmit: he confeſs'd his faults, and begg'd his life. Timur was again ſo generous as to pardon him, and even to grant him the favor he requeſted, which was to exempt him from coming to court that day, on his promiſing not to fail coming the next, to have the honor to kiſs the carpet of the throne.

But as the end of Pir Ali's good fortune was near, deſpair wou'd not permit him to act with reaſon, nor ſhew any honor in his conduct. This unfortunate prince again built caſtles in the air, and intended only baſe actions: he employ'd the night in fortifying and barricading the paſſage Lohra, and ſome other paſſages, by which the troops of Timur had ſcal'd the mountain; and he ſhut himſelf up in this incloſure of rocks, that he might avoid keeping his promiſe.

Timur departed fourteen days after, and went to the fortreſs of Cahcaha, between Baverd and Kelat; the emperor gave orders to rebuild it, and the ſoldiers ſo induſtriouſly apply'd themſelves to it, that in two days and nights it was entirely rebuilt: he gave the government of it to Hadgi Coja, and fortify'd it with a ſtrong gariſon. He ſent to the other ſide of the country Siorgatmich Can, Mirza Ali, and the brave Cheik Ali, with the troops of their Toman, to guard the road to Kelat, and to block up the paſſages with ſo much precaution, that this place ſhou'd be a

ſort

ſort of a priſon, from whence no one cou'd go in or come out to carry any refreſhment to the prince. Chap. 38.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Reduction of the town of Terchiz [a] *in Coraſſana.*

TIMUR, by his good conduct, having in effect render'd Kelat a ſepulchre to his enemys, took up a reſolution to reduce Terchiz, and in order thereunto march'd thither with his army; he paſs'd by Yaſſi Dapan, and arriv'd at Cabouchan [b], from whence he ſent to Samarcand the princeſs Dilchadaga, who was indiſpos'd. As ſoon as the conqueror was come to Terchiz, the troops rang'd themſelves round the place. This famous fortreſs being among mountains, was almoſt inacceſſible, and ſaid to have been impregnable, becauſe of the extraordinary height of its walls, and the exceſſive breadth and depth of its ditches.

The gariſon of Terchiz was at that time compos'd of Sedidians, ſo call'd, becauſe the Emir Cayafeddin had given the care of this place to the Emir Ali Sedidi, who had brought 'em in; and theſe Sedidians were for the moſt part Gouris, men famous for their valor and skill in defending places. This town, by their good conduct, was furniſh'd with all ſorts of arms and machines, great ſtore of victuals, and a

[a] Long. 92. lat. 35.
[b] A town dependent on Nichabour in Coraſſana.

Book II. brave number of ſoldiers, who were reſolv'd to defend themſelves to the laſt. When Timur had ſeen 'em in action, he complain'd to Malek Cayaſeddin of their reſiſtance; and told him, that theſe men whom he had put into this place, being under his command, he wonder'd they ſhou'd continue in rebellion, ſince himſelf had ſubmitted to his orders and obey'd him.

Cayaſeddin ſaid, they did it thro ignorance and want of good ſenſe, and therefore he wou'd go and confer with 'em: in ſhort, he went to the foot of the walls to command 'em to ſubmit; but notwithſtanding his injunctions and counſels, they wou'd neither obey him nor depart out of the place: ſo that the emperor was oblig'd to beſiege it in form. When he had ſent out his orders to the army, the officers caus'd it to be inveſted on all ſides; the Tomans and Hezares repair'd to their poſts, and fortify'd 'em, and at the ſame time began the attack.

Every day Timur rid round the place, and examin'd the out-parts: the engineers with all expedition rais'd battering rams and other machines neceſſary for the ſiege, and preſently got 'em in a readineſs: the miners and pioneers drain'd the ditch; and at length undermin'd the walls, while our warriors aſſaulted 'em on every ſide, and perform'd many glorious actions.

The beſieged bravely reſiſted 'em, and ſhew'd ſo much courage, that it is impoſſible to imagine ſuch fury in warriors. The attack and the defence were ſuſtain'd with equal reſolution; but at length our ſoldiers, receiving every day freſh ſuccours, ſo far ruin'd the walls and breaſt-works by the ſtones which were caſt, and by the battering rams and other machines, that the place was almoſt deſtroy'd.

And

And as the proſperity of Timur was the care of heaven, which humane ſtrength and the moſt heroic valor are not able to reſiſt, the Sedidians, being terrify'd by ſeeing their affairs reduc'd ſo low, loſt all courage, and begg'd for quarter. The ever-merciful emperor granted what they ask'd, and even us'd good words to encourage 'em; yet they went out of the town very much afraid, tho they had the honor to kiſs the imperial carpet: they were enroll'd in Timur's ſervice, and acquitted themſelves in a very becoming manner. Chap. 39.

This monarch knowing their valor, careſs'd 'em, gave 'em lordſhips, and made 'em governors of towns and other places on the frontiers of Turkeſtan. As ſoon as they were gone out of Terchiz, Mirza Miran Chah confer'd on Sarek Eteke the government of the place.

CHAP. XXXIX.

The arrival of an ambaſſador from Fars, or the true Perſia, at the court of Timur.

GElaleddin Chah Chuja was at this time ſovereign of the country of Fars, that is, of the province of Chiraz and Perſepolis. He was the flower and glory of the family of Mouzaffer, who us'd to be mediator in public treatys. This wiſe prince, thro the inſpiration of his good fortune, made haſte to teſtify his friendſhip to the officers of the emperor; and ſent to court Omar Chah, who was one of the principal Emirs, with a letter, which, after the uſual complements, aſſur'd Timur of his ſervices and ſincere friendſhip. He loaded this am-

Book II. baſſador with preſents; which were curious precious ſtones, as alſo pearls worthy to be preſented to emperors; gold rings, gold money, rich ſtuffs, raritys of great price, Arabian horſes, excellent mules for running, cover'd with ſaddles of gold; and many ſets of mules, ſix in a ſet, with harneſſes of great price, cuiraſſes adorn'd with ſilk ſtuffs, choice furniture, a great ſcarlet canopy, a royal pavilion, a tent, and a great umbrella, which were of rich and ſumptuous ſtuffs, with divers ornaments.

Omar Chah, being arriv'd at court, had the happineſs at his audience to kiſs the carpet. After having made the uſual compliments, he preſented to the emperor the letter, and preſents from his maſter, which he diſtributed among the officers. This prince receiv'd him with the greateſt reſpect, and conferr'd ſeveral favors upon him: he preſented him with pieces of gold, veſts of honor, and horſes; and after having anſwer'd Gelaleddin's letter, ſent him back very well ſatisfy'd with his negotiation, and with the obliging expreſſions he had receiv'd. Timur commanded one of his officers to accompany him, whom he loaded with curious preſents for the king of Perſia; and he order'd this envoy to demand in marriage of Gelaleddin the princeſs his daughter for his grandſon, Mirza Pir Mehemed, ſon of Mirza Gehanghir, to perpetuate and ſtrengthen their friendſhip and alliance.

CHAP.

CHAP. XL.

Timur marches into the province of Mazendran.

WHEN the imperial officers had got Terchiz regiſter'd in the roll of conqueſts, and Timur had plac'd his governors there, he caus'd his army to march to Mazendran.

He paſs'd by the road of Roughi, and order'd his forces to march to Keboud Jaeme, and to Chamſan. The Emir Veli, prince of Mazendran, ſurpriz'd at this news, ſent the Emir Hadgi, and others of his greateſt favorites, to the imperial camp, with ſeveral horſes, whoſe harneſſes were new; as alſo curioſitys of ſeveral ſorts.

His letter was preſented to the emperor, whom he beſought to excuſe him from waiting on him that day, and to order his army to leave his country, that ſo his poor ſervant finding himſelf in ſecurity, might again rejoice in his good fortune, come to court with expedition, and have the honor of ſpending the remainder of his life in his intereſt and ſervice. Timur, thro an exceſs of goodneſs, granted the demands of his letter; and diſmiſs'd his envoy with ſatisfaction.

In the mean while advice was brought from Kelat, that Cheik Ali Behader, having diligently examin'd the paſſages of that place, had mounted the walls in the night, accompany'd only with a few faithful domeſticks, without mentioning it to the Emir Ali Bei; but that he had miſtaken his way thro the darkneſs of the night; that he had met with a high arch from

Book II. whence he was perceiv'd by the enemy, who ſally'd out with all diligence, and getting poſſeſſion of the paſſages, put themſelves in a condition to repulſe him. Cheik Ali bravely attack'd 'em, and the two partys made the great cry, the uſual ſignal for a battel. The fight was bloody, and the ſoldiers were ſo animated againſt one another, that they wou'd liſten to no other words than thoſe which encourag'd the ſlaughter of the enemy. In ſhort, many warriors on both ſides were kill'd; but as the quivers were empty'd, ſome perſons, thro a religious motive, labour'd at an accommodation, in which, thro the goodneſs of God, they ſucceeded; and Ali Bei ſpoke to the Cheik Ali Behader: they embrac'd one another in token of peace and friendſhip, and Ali Bei oblig'd the other to ſtay with him, where he receiv'd all imaginable civilitys and handſome entertainment: they convers'd together for many days, Ali Bei hoping, thro the interceſſion of the Cheik, the emperor wou'd pardon his paſt faults.

Timur having agreed to the prince of Mazendran's requeſt, becauſe he had voluntarily ſubmitted, march'd towards his capital. He paſs'd by Chamlagan and Tcharmagan, and encamp'd in the meadow of Radecan. At this place the Cheik Ali Behader, and thoſe who accompany'd him, join'd the imperial camp; and this general procur'd for Ali Bei the honor of kiſſing the imperial carpet, having a ſword and a handkerchief * in his hand. The Cheik knelt down, and beſought the emperor to grant his pardon to Ali Bei, Timur did ſo, and afterwards careſs'd and made him ſeveral preſents.

* See Ch. 4. of this book in the note.

This action of the Cheik very much pleas'd Timur, and encreas'd his reputation at court: he

he gave him Radecan, in quality of a lordſhip, and Siorgal *. Chap. 41.

This monarch alſo gave Sebzuar to Ali Muaid Serbedal, and order'd that Malek Cayaſeddin, and his children, as well as Ali Bei, and his men, ſhou'd be conducted to Samarcand. He then diſtributed all the country of Youn Garbani to his Emirs; but he order'd the inhabitants and familys in it to be conducted to Tranſoxiana.

CHAP. XLI.

Timur marches to Samarcand. Death of the empreſs Dilchadaga, and of the princeſs Cotluc Turcan Aga, Timur's ſiſter.

TIMUR having no more enemys to fear in the kingdom of Coraſſana, and the lieutenants of Mirza Miran Chah being eſtabliſh'd in the poſſeſſion of the towns and other places of the country; he gave leave to the troops to march to their quarters, and departed with expedition for the capital city of his empire.

When the inhabitants of Samarcand ſaw the court, which was finer than ever it had been before, in their city, they were exceedingly over-joy'd.

They bound Ali Bei, prince of Kelat, as well as the Emir Gouri ſon of Malek Cayaſeddin, and Malek Mehemed his brother, and ſent 'em to Andecan, to Mirza Omar Cheik. The hord of Youn Garbani was alſo ſent to Tach-

* Siorgal is a gift the king makes to any one of a lordſhip, which he and his heirs enjoy for ever.

Book II. kunt, and Malek Cayaſeddin, with his eldeſt ſon Pir Mehemed, were kept at Samarcand.

During the winter the following affair happen'd at Herat. The two ſons of Malek Facreddin and of his brother, making no figure in Herat, when this country was taken, nor during the government of Malek Huſſein, or of his ſon Malek Cayaſeddin, liv'd in extreme poverty; but when Timur conquer'd Herat, theſe princes repreſented to him their miſery, and told him, that having the honor to be his ſervants, they took the liberty to let him know that they were couſins-german to Malek Huſſein, father of Malek Cayaſeddin; that theſe two princes had made themſelves maſters of their effects, and that they cou'd have no hopes of recovering 'em but thro his protection. The emperor was touch'd with their misfortune, and gave the government of Gour to the eldeſt, nam'd Malek Mehemed. About the ſame time a Gouri, nam'd Abouſaid Eſpahbed, a man of dauntleſs courage, who had been put in irons by the order of Malek Cayaſeddin, and remain'd in priſon ten years, was releas'd by the favor of Timur.

An. Dom. 1380. Towards the end of the year of the Hegir 782, the Mirza Miran Chah, having paſs'd the winter with the Emirs upon the bank of the river of Morgab in a place nam'd Yendi, which the Perſians call Pentchdeh, that is, the five villages; it happen'd that Malek Mehemed governor of Gour, thro his folly and ignorance, with a troop of Gouris more ignorant than himſelf, march'd to Herat, and was join'd in the way by Abouſaid Eſpahbed; and when they were arriv'd in the city, another band of raſcally fellows, highwaymen, and vagabonds alſo join'd 'em; and being aſſembl'd together, the

they committed great diſorders and unheard- Chap. 41.
of acts of injuſtice, cruelty and abomination. The governor, intendants, and officers of the Emirs retir'd of their own accord into the fortreſs of Ectiareddin, the gate of which the rebels burnt; which ſo much aſtoniſh'd the gariſon of the Turks, that without taking care of any thing, they flung themſelves off the walls, to endeavour to ſave their lives: but there was no quarter granted 'em, and no one cou'd ſave himſelf from the hands of the rebels.

The Mirza Miran Chah having advice of theſe diſorders, ſent with all expedition the Emirs Seifeddin and Acbouga with ſome troops to Herat, and himſelf march'd thither afterwards with an army.

When the Emirs arriv'd, the Gouris advanc'd to repulſe 'em, and gave 'em battel at the end of the ſtreet of Khiavan; but they were defeated, and many of 'em ſlain. Some of 'em fled into the city, and diſpers'd themſelves during night: and as the Mirza Miran Chah arriv'd about that time, his troops drew their ſwords to chaſtiſe this rabble, and ſlew ſo great a number of 'em, that they built a very high tower with their heads, as an example for the future to ſeditious perſons [s].

When the emperor heard of this news, which was brought him by the Mirza Miran Chah, he gave orders that Malek Cayaſeddin, who was impriſon'd in the fortreſs of Samarcand, his brother Malek Mehemed, his grandſon the Emir Gouri, and Ali Bei Youn Garbani, ſhou'd be all put to death.

[s] This circumſtance ought not to ſurprize the reader, nor appear to him incredible, there actually being till this day at Iſpahan, capital of Perſia, ſuch an edifice built of the ſkulls of wild beaſts.

In

Book II. In the year of the Hegira 785, which was that of the Mouſe, the moſt illuſtrious princeſs An. Dom. 1383. Dilchadaga, wife of Timur, paſs'd from this world into the other; and ſome days after her deceaſe, dy'd alſo Cotluc Turcan Aga, Timur's eldeſt ſiſter, famous among the princeſſes in her time for her piety and charity, which conſiſted in founding of hoſpitals, moſques, colleges, and many other publick works for the aſſiſtance of the people, who all by this means partook of her bountys.

She was bury'd near prince Cotſam ſon of Elabbas. The emperor was highly afflicted at this loſs for a long time. Every one paid his complements of condoleance with the uſual ceremonys; and he did ſeveral charitable things for the repoſe of the ſouls of the deceas'd, and gave abundance of alms to the poor who deſerv'd 'em: but becauſe his natural good nature caus'd in him an extraordinary ſorrow, which kept him too long from the care of the affairs of ſtate, the Cheriffs, doctors, old men and religious, among whom were Seid Bereke, Coja Abdelmalek, and Cheik Zade Saghezdgi, preſented themſelves before him, and comforted him by an agreeable converſation drawn from the tradition and diſcourſes of Mahomet, from the Alcoran it ſelf, and from many pious hiſtorians; who excited in him the deſire of taking upon him the care of the people and army, and of rendring juſtice. In ſhort, he approv'd of this maxim, as he had done before, that an hour only employ'd by a prince in executing juſtice, was of more importance than the worſhip given to God, and the prayers made during one's whole life: ſo that being at laſt comforted by the verſe of the Alcoran, which tells us, *That we muſt return to God, becauſe we are his;*

he

he for the future employ'd all his zeal in the regulation of the ſtate and religion. Chap. 42.

CHAP. XLII.

Timur ſends a ſixth army into the country of the Getes.

THE emperor having learnt that there were diſorders committed in ſome places of the country of the Getes, commanded Mirza Ali to march thither with an army, to deſtroy the ſeditious people of that country, the greateſt part of whom were not Mahometans; he recommended to him principally to purſue Camareddin, the author of thoſe troubles: and then he went to Kech. On advice of Mirza Ali's departing with his army, the people of Behrin laid an ambuſcade to ſurprize him, and ſucceeded ſo well in it, that they plunder'd all his baggage, vanquiſh'd, and oblig'd him to return to the emperor.

The emperor at the ſame time, to revenge himſelf on theſe raſh people, ſent the Cheik Ali Behader, Seif Elmulouc, Atilmich, and Argoun Chah Eſtachi, with troops to make war on 'em; and as he heard no news from 'em ſo ſoon as he expected, he ſent after 'em the Emir Gehanchah Yakou, Eltchi Bouga, Chamſeddin, Outchcara, and Saintemaure Behader, with ten thouſand horſe: but theſe Emirs were ſcarcely come to Atacom, when they met thoſe upon upon their return who were ſent before 'em, and had overtaken the people of Behrin, of whom they had kill'd a great number, pillag'd their country, and made many ſlaves. But as the

Book II. the Emir Gehanchah had orders to ſeek out Camareddin; he oblig'd the former Emirs to return with him to that expedition. They went together to Iſſigheul, and from thence as far as Gheuctopa, in ſearch of Camareddin; but not being able to find him, they return'd to Samarcand in autumn, and had the honor to ſalute the emperor.

CHAP. XLIII.

Timur marches to Mazendran, and thence to Siſtan.

TIMUR having reſolv'd to march in that ſeaſon to Mazendran, gave orders for the raiſing of freſh troops, to render his army more formidable. When all was ready, he took horſe at the happy moment, according to the obſervations which were made; and having reviewed all the troops, and diſplayd his ſtandard, he march'd towards Mazendran. After having encamp'd and decamp'd many times, he arriv'd at Termed; and ordor'd that the victuals for his army ſhou'd be brought thither. This prince caus'd a bridge to be built in a narrow paſſage, where having croſs'd the river of Morgab, he encamp'd on its banks: the Emir Yakou, governor of Cabuleſtan [c], had the honor to kiſs the carpet in the camp, where he gave an account of the affairs he had in charge, and at the

[c] This province, whoſe capital city is Cabul, hath on the S. Zabuleſtan, on the N. Bedakchan, on the E. the kingdoms of China and Cotan, and on the W. thoſe of Bamjan, Gour and Raver.

ſame

ſame time deſir'd orders from the emperor, re- Chap. 43.
lating to the government of his frontiers.

During theſe tranſactions, advice was brought that the Toman of Nicoudari, which inhabited a place fit for the ſummer ſeaſon, deſign'd to revolt; and that Cheik Daoud Sebzuari, whom Timur had honor'd by making him chief of Sebzuar, had been guilty of ſo much ingratitude and inſolence, as to kill Taban Behader governor of that town, by which action he declar'd himſelf a rebel: that the Mirza Miran Chah having notice of it, had ſent the Emir Acbouga of Herat at the head of an army to Sebzuar, and the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin had follow'd him with freſh aſſiſtance; that they had beſieg'd Sebzuar, and put abundance of the rebels to the ſword, after having taken this town; that the Cheik Daoud fled, and retir'd into the fortreſs of Bedrabad, ſituate on the ridge of a mountain, where he had fortifyd himſelf; but that the Emirs Hadgi Seifeddin, and Acbouga, had actually beſieg'd it. Timur had no ſooner heard of this rebellion, and that of the country of Siſtan, than he ſent the Cheik Ali Behader and Outchcara Behader, at the head of a great army, againſt the Emir Veli prince of Mazendran, that they might encamp near him, and reduce his frontiers to obedience; and himſelf march'd towards Siſtan.

His army encamp'd at the beginning of the month of Ramadan in the year of the Hegira 785, before the town of Herat, the inhabitants of which, as we ſaid before, were join'd with the Gouris rebels; and the emperor himſelf march'd to Sebzuar, where he encamp'd. This fortreſs was attack'd according to his orders, and many breaches were made; the Cheik Yahia Coraſani being appointed to direct the miners, An. Dom. 1383.

the

Book II. the place was ſo ruin'd, that the greateſt part of thoſe within periſh'd, and the Cheik Yahia was cruſh'd to pieces under a wall which fell down.

Strange puniſhment of the rebels.

There were near two thouſand ſlaves taken, who were pil'd alive one upon the other with mortar and bricks, ſo that theſe miſerable wretches might ſerve as a monument to deter others from revolting, who knowing the vengeance of this conqueror, ſhou'd not bring themſelves into this inevitable misfortune, which their pride might tempt 'em to.

When the emperor was ſatisfy'd with this revenge on the inhabitants of Sebzuar, he regulated his troops, and ſent the vanguard to Siſtan; whither he afterwards march'd with the reſt of the army, which conſiſted of a hundred thouſand warriors compleat.

The prince Chah Gelaleddin of Ferah having a deſign to come to Timur's court, had no ſooner advice of the march of this monarch than he went out of his fortreſs, and came with diligence before the imperial ſtandard, with a ſpirit of ſincerity and ſubmiſſion: he made preſents to Timur, which indeed were but mean, conſidering the prince to whom they were preſented; for no one was able to make thoſe which were worthy of him: but they were ſuitable to the ability of Gelaleddin, who well knowing it was his intereſt to be in favor at court, acquainted the emperor with the reſolution he had taken of ſacrificing his life in his ſervice.

Timur order'd Akitmur Behader, and other captains, to make inroads in the neighbourhood of the town of Siſtan, and pillage that country. They executed this order with expedition, and ſo much vigor, that the gates of the town were beaten to pieces; and as ſoon as the army had paſs'd

paſs'd the mountain nam'd Ouc, and was come to the fortreſs of Zere [7], theſe brave warriors aſſaulted it according to order, and gain'd the victory; tho five thouſand enemys, who had no thoughts of being conquer'd, fought a bloody battel, wherein the greateſt part were ſlain with arrows and ſwords: our ſoldiers made a mountain of the dead bodys, and with their heads erected a tower. Chap. 44.

CHAP. XLIV.

Town of Siſtan [8] beſieg'd, and taken.

THE emperor having rang'd his army in form of a crown round the place, advanc'd to the gate of the town with a troop of choſen men, in whom he cou'd confide, and got upon a hill of ſand. Chahchahan Tageddin Siſtani, with many others, came out from Chah Cotobeddin to find the emperor, whom they had the honor to ſalute: after having given aſſurances of their obedience and ſubmiſſion, they beſought Timur to permit 'em to pay him a tribute and the ordinary cuſtoms: but during this conference with the emperor, the beſieg'd ſally'd out in multitudes with good troops, and prepar'd themſelves for the fight. Timur, who knew of their deſign, plac'd two thouſand horſe in ambuſh, and order'd Mehemed Sultan

[7] Near a lake in Siſtan, to which it gives its name.

[8] A town and province. The town, otherwiſe call'd Zarange, is ſituate in long. 97. lat. 32. 20. on the river Senaroud, which is a branch of the Hendmend, which diſcharges it ſelf into the lake of Zere. This province, which is part of Coraſſana, is otherwiſe call'd Sedgeſtan and Nimrouz.

Chah

Book II. Chah to advance with a few men, and begin the fight; but at length, on pretence of flying, to turn to the right with what cavalry he had. This order was executed: and the enemys, who were only foot, growing preſumptuous on this flight, fail'd not to purſue 'em vigorouſly as far as the place where the ambuſh was laid; but the 2000 horſe fell on 'em with fury, and there was a bloody battel. The enemys infantry wounded many of the horſes with their ſwords, and abundance were ſlain; but the lances kill'd a great number of the enemy, and the reſt were cloſely purſu'd even to the gates of the town. The approach of night put a ſtop to the battel; but the next morning, the crys and trumpets were heard on all ſides. The emperor in perſon commanded the main body; and under him Mirza Miran Chah the right wing, being aſſiſted by the great Emirs, among whom were Hadgi Seifeddin, Acbouga Behader, and other princes of the royal blood; and the left wing was led by the Emir Sar Bouga, who had near him Codadad the ſon of Huſſein. Our troops march'd round the place, and having in a manner block'd it up, beat their kettle-drums, to ſignify that it was time to begin the attack; they continu'd to ſound the trumpet, and having made the great cry, dug a ditch before 'em, and there fix'd paliſados, and did many other things till night came on.

Then two thouſand of the enemy ſally'd out to ſurprize the beſiegers; and having agreed to attack the quarter of the Emir Chamſeddin Abbas and Behram Coja, they croſs'd the ditch, being favor'd by the night, and advanc'd as far as the tents, and even to the middle of the camp, where they ſlew ſome horſes and camels. But our captains, who were willing to engage

theſe

theſe raſh fellows, ſuffer'd them to croſs the ditch, and diſcharg'd ſo many arrows on 'em, that they kill'd a great number, and wounded the reſt, who with great difficulty retreated into the town. Chap. 44.

The army march'd the next day to the place, and attack'd it on all ſides. The attack was anſwer'd by thoſe who ſally'd out to repulſe the beſiegers; but the ſtandard of the prophet being diſplay'd, the Mirza Ali with five hundred horſe fell upon the enemy, and repuls'd 'em as far as the town, which he enter'd with his battalion: nevertheleſs he was reſiſted by the brave men of the country of Zabul, who having no longer any thoughts of ſaving their lives, but only of performing heroic actions, not only reſiſted him with extreme valor, but being ſuccour'd by a troop of others who follow'd 'em, ſhut the gate upon our warriors, and kept 'em cloſe in the town. This action rekindled the fury of both partys, and reviv'd in the Zabulians the memory of the hiſtory of the ſon of Daſtan *.

Akitmur Behader, having advice that the gate of the town was ſhut upon the Mirza Ali, ran thither full ſpeed with a thouſand horſe, the moſt valiant ſoldiers of the army. They cut the gate to pieces with their ſwords, ſlew the guards, and diſpers'd the ſoldiers who had ſhut the gate on our men: by which means the Mirza Ali went out of Siſtan in triumph, with thoſe who were under his command, and came to the imperial camp.

* Rouſtem, the ſon of Zal, ſirnam'd Daſtan, born at Zabul, of which place he was king; the greateſt hero the hiſtory of Perſia ever mention'd.

Book II. Chah Cotobeddin, king of this country, not being able to defend himſelf againſt an army ſo numerous and formidable as that of Timur, found himſelf oblig'd to ſubmit; he came out of the town to ask pardon of the emperor, and made the following ſpeech: "Great prince, in "vain I ſtrive to defend my ſelf againſt you, "whoſe mighty arm is able, if I may ſo ſay, "to bend mountains. Of what uſe will it be "to me to tempt fortune, who has rais'd you "to ſuch a height, that you ſeem able to com- "mand even her? No, my lord, I ſee no other "means of ſaving my life than by flight. But "what place is there for me to retire to, where "I may ſhelter my ſelf from your vengeance; "ſince every one obeys your power? There is "no aſylum under heaven in which I can better "truſt, than your royal clemency. Yes, my "lord, I have fled to ſave my ſelf from you; "but 'tis to you I have fled."

The emperor not only pardon'd him, but even diſtinguiſh'd him from the other princes by his favors.

After this action, Timur having on a plain cuiraſs without ſleeves, mounted his bay horſe; and with fifteen men only rode to the left wing of the army to review it; but at the ſame time he had advice that between twenty and thirty thouſand of the populace of Siſtan, tho their prince was gone out of the town, and had preſented himſelf before the imperial throne, being arm'd with bows and arrows, had ſlid down the walls, holding by one another's hands, and had the boldneſs to march againſt the victorious army: which oblig'd Timur to turn towards the body of his army to command 'em; but as the enemy let fly a great number of arrows, Timur's

Timur's horſe wounded.

mur's horſe was wounded. The emperor was no ſooner come to his tent, than he put Chah Cotobeddin in irons; and having rang'd his army in order, he was about to march in perſon to the fight; but the moſt affectionate Emirs took hold on his horſe's bridle, and on their knees repreſented to him, that he had many years to live under his auſpicious fortune, and as long as any of them remain'd, he ought to undertake no action, in which the leaſt danger might be ſuſpected. Timur, at the preſſing inſtances of his officers, had no ſooner turn'd his horſe, than all the Emirs fell ſo furiouſly upon the enemy's, with their arrows and ſwords, that they cut them in pieces, cruſh'd a great number of 'em under their horſes feet, and wounded others, who with difficulty retir'd into the city, the gate of which they ſhut with the utmoſt expedition. The victorious ſoldiers purſu'd their victory, gave a ſecond aſſault, mounted the breaſt-works; and having made many breaches, enter'd the place, of which they made themſelves maſters, ruin'd the houſes and public edifices, put to the ſword thoſe horſe who were not ſlain in the fight, and in ſhort raz'd the walls of this fine city, the inhabitants of which they kill'd, both men, women and children, from perſons of a hundred years old, to infants in the cradle. Chap. 44.

The emperor ſtaid there ſome days, during which time they carry'd away the treaſures of the kings of Siſtan, and all the precious ſtones, other riches, and curious pieces of great price. The ſoldiers took even the very nails of the gates, and burnt every thing which cou'd be conſum'd with fire.

Some fabulous authors report, that in the country of Zabuleſtan a voice was heard, which

Book II. advertiz'd the ſoul of Rouſtem [1] of all theſe diſorders in theſe words; "Lift up thy head, "behold the condition of thy country of Per-"ſia, which is at length reduc'd by the power of "the Tartars."

An. Dom. 1383. This conqueſt was made in the month of Chawal in the year of the Hegira 785, which was that of the mouſe; the ſun being in capricorn.

They then ſent the Chah, that is, the king of Siſtan, Cotobeddin, to Samarcand, as alſo the generals of the army, and governors of the provinces. The town of Ferah was the place of the retreat of the Cadis, doctors, and other lawyers. The brave ſoldiers who had a ſhare in gaining the victory, enjoy'd the emperor's favors above others; and the government of this province was given to Chachahan.

[1] Rouſtem had always conquer'd the Tartars, and they cou'd never make themſelves maſters of any town of Iran when he was alive. He was general of the Perſians, king of Zabul under Cyrus and other emperors; and he ſlew Eſfendiar, who is thought to have been the ſame with Xerxes. He liv'd very long, and in four or five reigns. See in the *Chah Namé*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLV.

Timur marches to Boſt.

AFTER the taking of Siſtan, the royal ſtandard was carry'd to Boſt [a]; and the troops in their paſſage conquer'd the fortreſs of Tak, which they raz'd to the ground.

And when they were encamp'd on the banks of the river of Hirmen [b], they deſtroy'd an edifice call'd the bank of Rouſtem; and left no footſteps of that antient monument.

The army paſs'd by Kuke Cala, where they had advice that Toumen Nicoudari, was advanc'd to the quarters of Kidge [c] and Mecran, which he cloſely beſieg'd. Timur judging it convenient to oblige Toumen to return, the Mirza Miran Chah was nam'd for that purpoſe; and to deſtroy this rebel, Mireke Mehemed, ſon of Chir Behram, the emperor's favorite, ſent to accompany the prince the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, Cheik Ali Argoui Berlas, Sevindgic Behader, and other Emirs. They march'd day and night; and when they had paſs'd the deſart, they found Toumen with his men of the hord of Nicoudari, encamp'd in the meadow of Coran.

Toumen no ſooner had advice that the imperial troops were arriv'd, than he mounted his

[a] A town of the kingdom of Siſtan, on the frontiers of Zabul; long. 100. lat. 33.
[b] The ſame as Hendmend.
[c] A town in the kingdom of Mecran, long. 99. lat. 27. 50.

Book II. horſe, and came into the field ready for battel. The Emir Seifeddin his old friend, conſidering his great age, entertain'd him with all poſſible reſpect and civility: he enquir'd of him the ſtate of his health, and ſtrove by the moſt obliging expreſſions to bring him over to his duty, aſſuring him he had nothing to fear from the emperor, but might come with courage to the foot of the throne; and he pray'd him to uſe no hoſtility. But fate was wholly ſet againſt Toumen; he had no regard to his friend's advice, but began the fight, where he was ſoon kill'd by a lance, and his head was ſent to the emperor.

Timur with the army march'd by the upper part of the river of Hirmen; and as it was for the advancement and honor of monarchy, that whoſoever ſhou'd be guilty of diſreſpect, or commit any inſolence againſt Timur, ſhou'd receive a puniſhment ſuitable to his boldneſs; it happen'd that the prince of Mam Catou, who had wounded Timur in the hand with an arrow, when he return'd from Siſtan accompany'd by the Emir Huſſein, at this time came to the court with preſents: but at his arrival, he being known to Timur, whoſe anger was excited, and who wou'd never let treaſon go unpuniſh'd; as ſoon as he was gone out from his preſence, he commanded him to be ſeiz'd, and ſhot to death with arrows: which puniſhment appear'd too mild for ſo great a crime. The victorious troops in their march made themſelves maſters of the town of Mam Catou, and of Calaſurc, which ſignifys the red fortreſs.

There were three thouſand of Toumen's ſubjects got together in the town of Hezarpez, the reſidence of the Sede[1] of Toukai, who had ſhut

[1] A company of a hundred men.

up

up the paſſages of the mountain, and fortify'd themſelves. As they did not obſerve the Muſſulman laws, they committed ſo many diſorders, that the Mahometans were weary of their inſults, and reſolv'd to beſiege the town. Chap. 46.

The troops on their arrival began to attack it; and at length our valiant ſoldiers, ſeconded by the good fortune of the emperor, took it by aſſault, tho it was thought impregnable. The rebels were chaſtis'd: ſome were caſt headlong from the top of the mountain, others were ſlain, and their heads ſerv'd to build towers, as uſual.

Timur march'd from Hezarpez to the citadel of Dehne, of which the hord of Tagatchi had made itſelf maſter. The men of this hord guarded it with a great deal of care; but their meaſures were broken by the ſtrength and valor of our troops, who did ſome memorable exploits at this place. They carry'd it by aſſault, put all the garriſon to the ſword, and built towers with their heads, to ſtrike terror into other princes.

CHAP. XLVI.

War againſt the Ouganians, inhabitants of the mountains, ſouth of Candahar.

THE Ouganians had ſent ſome time ago a man of the mountain of Couh Solyman, to give notice that they were willing to ſubmit themſelves to the emperor, and to deſire from him a Deroga; which was granted: but as ſome time after news was brought that they had revolted, the army march'd towards their country, with order to fight 'em. This order was

Book II. obey'd; and there was a bloody battel. The Mirza Ali Aicoutmur, and ſome of the troops were wounded; and Nikepei Chah, in loſing his life againſt theſe infidels, obtain'd the glory of martyrdom [6]. Theſe ſad accidents excited the courage of the valiant Akitmur; he caſt himſelf at the emperor's feet, to beg leave of him to permit him to return againſt the enemys, that he might continue to employ his life in his ſervice, which he had entirely conſecrated to that uſe.

Timur, who knew his intrepidity, fearing leſt he ſhou'd run headlong into too great dangers, refus'd what he demanded, tho many regiments, which had not had the boldneſs to withſtand the enemy, had left the field of battel. In the mean while, Ramadan Coja, who thought it a crime to turn his back upon the enemy, kept firm in his poſt, and made a brave reſiſtance. Timur commanded Baki Coja Uzbec and Chamſeddin to fall upon 'em; and as they executed this order, Aïd Coja, a young man, who had laid in ambuſcade on the ridge of rock, dexterouſly took hold on one of the enemys by the hair of the head, dragg'd him to the ground, and cut off his head, which he carry'd to the emperor: this was look'd upon as an heroic action from ſo young a man.

At length, all our brave ſoldiers fell upon the enemys on every ſide with ſo much courage and reſolution, that thro the aſſiſtance of heaven and Timur's good fortune, they made themſelves maſters of the fortreſs [7], and oblig'd

[6] The Mahometans make it an article of their faith, that thoſe who are kill'd in the wars againſt the infidels are martyrs.

[7] The fortreſs of Couh Solyman built upon this mountain.

the

the perfidious Ouganians to come out of it, who were deliver'd to the ſoldiers, and according to the laws of Genghiz Can, put to death. Chap. 46.

From thence the emperor began his march to Candahar, to which place he had already ſent Gehan Chah Behader [8], Moubacher, and Eskender Cheiki with troops. Thoſe lieutenants had ſeiz'd on the avenues of the place at their arrival, and begun the ſiege; but having had an opportunity to fight, by an effect of the good fortune of our prince, they carry'd the town by aſſault, ſeiz'd on the governor of the province, and having put him in irons, ſent him to court, where he was hang'd.

Timur being come to Candahar, gave a handſom reception to Gehan Chah Yakou: he honor'd him with ſeveral preſents, and at length ſent him to the town of Calat [9] at the head of an army. When he was arriv'd there, he beſieg'd it, and made ſeveral aſſaults, in which the enemys had ſometimes the worſe, and ſometimes the better; but they cou'd by no means defend themſelves againſt the cunning of the engineers, who, by undermining ruin'd the walls and breaſt-works on all ſides; and by this means the general made himſelf maſter of the town, the walls and buildings of which he order'd to be raz'd; and then rejoin'd the imperial camp, at the ſame time that Mirza Miran Chah, returning from Cuſtar and the Rebat [1] of Sultan Mahmoud, came before the throne.

---

[8] Alſo call'd Gehan Chah Yakou, ſon of the Emir Yakou.

[9] A town in the kingdom of Coran near Candahar, different from Kelat in Coraſſana and Eclat in Armenia.

[1] Rebat ſignifys a park.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVII.

Timur returns to Samarcand.

SISTAN, Zabuleſtan, and their dependences, being brought into ſubjection to Timur, there remain'd no more enemys in theſe provinces, every one obeying him, which made this monarch deſirous, ſince the charming ſeaſon was come, to return to the capital city of his empire. He gave both the military and civil government of Candahar to Saifel Berlâs Candahari: and he preſented Saifel Nicoudari with the Toman of that country; and as the Emir Yakou dy'd in the winter, he gave his place to his ſon Gehan Chah; and at the ſame time diſbanded the Emirs, officers and troops; and leaving the army, departed with all expedition to Samarcand, where he arriv'd in fourteen days.

The princes and princeſſes of the blood, accompany'd with the other ladys, and all the great lords, Emirs, Cheriffs, and other principal perſons of the empire, perform'd the ceremony of kiſſing the earth, and wiſhing the emperor joy upon his conqueſts. They alſo made the uſual preſents, and ſprinkled upon his head pearl-ſeeds, precious ſtones, and gold-duſt; and gave thanks to God for his happy return, and diſtributed alms. All theſe demonſtrations of zeal and reſpect were ſoon after renewed on the birth of a prince, who about this time was born to the emperor; and who was nam'd Ibrahim Sultan: and the Emirs diſtributed among the people a great deal of money, teſtify'd their joy by magnificent entertainments and publick feaſts;

and

and in the aſſemblys of pleaſure they ſerv'd up wine to encreaſe the joy and diverſions. But this prince dy'd very young, and his death caus'd in the emperor a ſorrow natural to a father. Chap. 48.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Timur marches into the province of Mazendran.

AFTER the emperor had ſtaid three months at Samarcand, he reſolv'd to march to Mazendran; but firſt prepar'd to enter Iran: The army during its march us'd extraordinary expedition to get to Termed; the engineers built a bridge upon the Gihon, which the imperial troops had no ſooner croſs'd, than all the kingdoms of Iran were in a conſternation.

Timur encamp'd at Balc, and ſtaid there ſome days, expecting to be join'd by the troops of the provinces, purſuant to an order he had before given: and his army was ſoon conſiderably increas'd, by the arrival of about a hundred thouſand horſe, whoſe commanders were arm'd with cuiraſſes and bucklers.

We have above * related that the daughter of Gelaleddin Chah, prince of Fars, had been demanded in marriage for the Mirza Pir Mehemed, ſon of Gehanghir, ſon of Timur: whereupon in the beginning of the year 785, the emperor ſent Oladgia Itou and Hadgi Coja, his ambaſſadors to Fars, to conduct this great princeſs to court; which they did accordingly about this time. * Chap. 39. An. Dom. 1383.

The

Book II. The princeſs Serai Mulc Canum, and Touman Aga, accompany'd with many other ladys, went to meet her, and receiv'd her with all imaginable ceremonys and pomp; they ſprinkled over her precious ſtones, pearl-ſeed, and gold-duſt; they prepar'd marriage-feaſts; and in ſhort, nothing was wanting that was uſual in public rejoicings. After the marriage-feaſt was finiſh'd, Hadgi Coja was accus'd before the throne of many crimes committed in the laſt campain, with deſign to raiſe himſelf above his quality: he was queſtion'd upon theſe accuſations, convicted, and being condemn'd, was put to death.

Timur then review'd his army, which he had aſſembled from all parts of his dominions, and began his march as ſoon as it was ready. When the court was come near the river Morgab, the princeſs Canzade, wife of Mirza Miran Chah, met 'em, coming from Herat, to receive her ſpouſe; and the Mirza Calil Sultan was committed to her care, in order to be educated by her. Timur left the princeſs Touman Aga at the camp, and ſent the empreſs Serai Mulc Canum, and the other ladys, to Samarcand. He decamp'd at the ſame time, and taking the road to Burkei Tach, came down from Seracs, from whence he went to Baverd [a], and arriv'd at Neſa [b], where he learnt that the Emir Veli having fortify'd the citadel of Douroun, had ſhut himſelf up in it, and furniſh'd it with a good number of ſoldiers. Then the Cheik Ali Behader, Sevindgik Behader, Mobacher, and other Emirs, who commanded the

[a] The ſame as Abiverd.

[b] A town in the deſart of Kivac, between Coraſſana and Carezem, long. 93. 20. lat. 48, 45.

van-

vanguard of the army, met that of the Emir Veli, in a place nam'd Ghiaoukerch. Each party was rang'd in order of battel, and at the ſame time advanc'd. Mobacher began the attack with vigor: an arrow which was ſhot at him hit him on the face, near the teeth, and went out by his neck; but this brave warrior, notwithſtanding his wound, ruſh'd a ſecond time upon the enemy, whoſe head he cut off, and flung into the middle of the field. This action aſtoniſh'd the enemys, and put 'em to flight; and Timur, that he might recompenſe Mobacher for this heroic action, made theſe places of Ghiaoukerch and Hourberi, Siorgals, and gave 'em to him, that he might enjoy the revenue of theſe lordſhips for ever. From this place they departed for Douroun: our men beſieg'd this caſtle, and made ſeveral aſſaults; and at length having taken it, put the governor and the troops of Veli to the ſword. Chap. 48.

The court having quitted Douroun, went to Tchilaoun, a country full of villages; and having croſs'd the river at Jorjana, encamp'd at Chaſuman, where the Hezares and Sedes had expreſs orders not to ſeparate from their ſquadrons without leave, on pain of death; that they might employ themſelves in building bridges on rivulets and rivers, and doing other uſeful works, as cutting down trees in foreſts, making cauſeways, and clearing the roads.

The vanguard of the two armys meeting, engag'd in a bloody fight. Hadgi Mahmoud Chah Yeſouri gave marks of an extraordinary valor and ſtrength; but he was wounded in the hand with a ſword. Akitmur, and his ſon Cheik Timur, fought like brave men, and made the enemy's ranks give way. Theſe skirmiſhes continu'd twenty days: but on the twentieth,

as

Book II. as the army of Timur was paſſing the bridge of Dervich, the Emir Veli advanc'd, and fought with heroic valor and reſolution. But becauſe the power God gives to armys, to whom he deſigns the victory, is more than human, this unfortunate prince was vanquiſh'd, and oblig'd to fly. Our ſoldiers cloſely purſu'd him, took ſeveral of the braveſt of his army, whom they put to death, as alſo many others, who not finding means to eſcape, ſerv'd to fill the country with the dead and wounded.

The troops, after this compleat victory, enter'd the camp, and then that all neceſſary precautions for their ſecurity might be obſerv'd, the colonels and captains had orders to cauſe intrenchments of earth to be caſt up round their own regiment, to make a ſort of ramparts with their bucklers, and before theſe ramparts to fix ſtakes, which might ſerve as paliſadoes.

The Emir Veli attacks the army during night.

The day being almoſt gone, Timur, who thro his great experience always foreſaw danger, order'd thirty of the beſt companys of his army to lie in ambuſcade in a certain place. When night was come, the Emir Veli, accompany'd by a great number of ſoldiers of Mazendran, ſally'd out of the fortreſs to attack the camp. For which purpoſe his men made the great cry on the ſide of the right wing of the army, where the prince Miran Chah was encamp'd. Veli was marching to fall on him, and being arriv'd at the trenches, they ſtruck with their ſwords and lances againſt the bucklers and paliſadoes which had been fix'd there, tho not without the loſs of many of their men who fell one upon another in tothe ditches.

Then the prince Miran Chah march'd againſt 'em in perſon, and order'd that all the troops he commanded ſhou'd let fly a ſhower of arrows

rows together; and at ſame time the thirty companys all prepar'd to fight with ſword in hand, and ruſhing with fury out of the ambuſcade, fell upon the enemys; and as the Emir Veli, among other artifices had caus'd a great many pits to be dug in thoſe roads, in which they had drove ſtakes before they fill'd 'em with water, part of his army, in the flight, fell into theſe wells, and there miſerably periſh'd. Chap. 48.

The emperor finding the Emir Aicoutmur abſent, demanded where he was; he was anſwer'd, that he was gone to purſue thoſe of the enemy's rear who had fled. In the mean while the army, which march'd all the reſt of the night, found themſelves in the morning at the town of Eſter Abad, capital of Mazanderan, where they burnt and deſtroy'd every thing, without ſparing either old men, women, or children, or even ſucking infants.

This war happen'd in the month of Chawal in the year of the Hegira 786. Fear ſeiz'd the Emir Veli, who the ſame night, carrying with him his wives and children, and guarded by ſome ſoldiers, went to Damgan by the way of Langaru; he left 'em in the fortreſs of Chirdecouh, and at length march'd to Rei. The invincible Timur ſent troops under the command of Codadad Huſſeini, Cheik Ali Behader, Omar Abbas, Comari Einac, and other captains, to purſue him; and they made ſuch haſte, that they almoſt overtook him at Rei. This prince was ſo afraid of loſing his life, that he went into the woods of the country of Rûſteindar, which were inacceſſible, becauſe of their thickneſs, and the height of ſome mountains which were near; and at length eſcap'd from his enemys who purſu'd him. An. Dom. 1384.

The

Book II. The Emir Veli was ſon of Cheik Ali Biſoud, one of the Emirs of Taghitmur Can; and at the time that the Serbedals were ſo daring as to bathe their hands in the blood of this king, Veli, who was preſent at the aſſembly, fled to Neſa, and his father was maſſacred with his maſter. This young lord having found means to make himſelf powerful in this town, at length went to Eſter Abad, of which he made himſelf maſter; inſomuch that Locman Padichah, ſon of king Taghitmur, being frighten'd by Veli, fled, and wander'd about as a vagabond from country to country, till at length liſting himſelf in the ſervice of Timur, (who conquer'd Eſter Abad) he receiv'd from his liberal hands the government of this town.

CHAP. XLIX.

Timur marches into the province of Irac Agemi.

THE emperor order'd the Emirs Acbouga and Outcheara Behader to paſs the winter at Eſter Abad with the ammunition of the army; and out of every ten men he choſe three to accompany him. He march'd towards the kingdom of Rei, and his troops were no ſooner arriv'd in that country, than Sultan Ahmet Cheik Avis Gelair[4], who was at Sultania, aſtoniſh'd at the march of the emperor, fortify'd the caſtle of this town, and gariſon'd

[4] The grandſon of Sultan Avis, ſon of Buzurk Haſſan, whoſe wife Bagdadcatun, daughter of the Emir Tchouban, Sultan Abouſaid had eſpous'd. Buzurk Haſſan was the firſt of the Ilkanians.

it

it with his beſt ſoldiers under the command of his ſon, nam'd Acbouga; and then fled towards Tauris. In the mean while Omar Abbas, at the head of ſixty horſe, march'd to Sultania, to gain intelligence of the ſtate of the place; and his journy was ſo ſucceſsful, that he got there, notwithſtanding the terrible ſnows and exceſſive cold. Some days before, the enemy having news of his march, reſolv'd to fly; whereupon they took with 'em their young prince Acbouga, and departed with all expedition for Tauris: but they were not all gone out of the fortreſs when Omar Abbas arriv'd with his ſixty ſoldiers; who with intrepid courage, enter'd the place ſword in hand, and made himſelf maſter of it. He employ'd all his induſtry to preſerve it, till he ſhou'd receive orders from the emperor who was at Roi, to whom he ſent Irmakchi to advertiſe him of this happy conqueſt. Chap. 50.

ROYAL LIBRARY OF THE BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE ASIATIC

CHAP. L.

The emperor Timur marches to Sultania.

AT the beginning of the ſpring Timur ſet out for Sultania; and in the mean while Sarek Adel, one of the greateſt lords of the court of Cheik Avis, whom Chah Chuja had heretofore brought from Sultania, was ſummon'd by the emperor to court, being then in the ſervice of Sultan Zein Elabeddin, ſon of Chah Chuja, who died in the year of the Hegira 786, which number was compos'd out of the letters of the epitaph made on him, which was, An. Dom. 1384.

Book II. *Haifez Chah Chuja*: It is pity ſo great a man as Chah-Chuja ſhou'd die.

Timur, as a ſingular favor, order'd this lord to be near his perſon; who to obey this order, departed from Chiraz with expedition, to have the honor to kiſs the carpet of the throne; where he was no ſooner arriv'd, than he was diſtinguiſh'd by the emperor's goodneſs, and favor'd with many preſents; beſides which Timur gave him the government of the province of Sultania, and the countrys dependent upon it, after having order'd Mehemed Sultan Chah to leave him in thoſe quarters with an army, that he might make himſelf maſter of the neighbouring countrys.

An. Dom. 1385. After this expedition, which was in the year of the Hegira 787, and in the year of the Leopard, Timur returning from Sultania, laden with the glory he had acquir'd by his victory, enter'd into the mountains of Ruſteindar. The princes of this country not only had not ſtrength to reſiſt him, nor prudence enough to come before Timur; but they ſought ſafety by flight before the army arriv'd there. By this means the country was brought in ſubjection to Timur, and his officers eaſily made themſelves maſters of it; the troops pillag'd it on all ſides, and the ſoldiers were enrich'd with the booty.

The Emir Veli, who was retir'd into a place nam'd Yalous, was ſo terrify'd at this action, that he fled; and our victorious emperor turn'd upon the towns of Amol and Sarye, with deſign to make himſelf maſter of them, as ſoon as he cou'd come at 'em by the way of the mountains of Couheſtan. But Seid Kemaleddin and Seid Razieddin, who were the princes of theſe places, to ſave themſelves from the evil which threaten'd 'em, ſent their Naibes,

bes, that is, their lieutenants, with preſents of precious ſtones and gold duſt, to lay at the feet of the emperor, with a conſiderable tribute to be paid him: ſo that by their lieutenants being admitted to take an oath of fidelity to the emperor, they coin'd gold mony which they honor'd with the name and ſirname of the invincible Timur; and to raiſe his glory as high as they were able, they made prayers for him in all the moſques of their country. At length Timur commanded 'em to obey Locman Padicha, to whom he had given the principality of Eſter Abad, that ſo he might oblige 'em to preſerve their fidelity and obedience, and not undertake any thing which this prince ſhou'd not approve. Chap. 51.

CHAP. LI.

Timur returns to Samarcand, the capital of his empire.

WHEN the officers of Timur had got full poſſeſſion of the provinces of Mazendran, Rei, and Ruſtembar, as far as Sultania, the imperial ſtandard march'd to the ſeat of the empire. When the Court had croſs'd the Gihon, and were arriv'd at Samarcand, the inhabitants wiſh'd all happineſs and proſperity to the emperor at his arrival; he there paſs'd the ſummer in the pleaſures of the ſeaſon, and the winter at Zendgir Serai, in the delights of converſation and entertainments. During this winter, Tocatmich Can ſent to Tauris, by the way of Derbend, an army of near ninety thouſand men, who were for the moſt part infidels, of a cruel and mercileſs nature, and who had

Book II. been ſo inur'd to war, that they were almoſt cover'd over with wounds and ſcars. In this army were twelve Aglens[*], princes of the royal blood of Touchi, the chief of whom was Bic Poulad; there were alſo ſeveral Emirs, as Aiſa Bei, Yagli Bei, Cazanchi, and others: they march'd to Chirouan, and being arriv'd in Azerbijana, block'd up Tauris.

The governor of this city was not able to manage his affairs in ſuch a conjuncture; whereupon the inhabitants, thro the counſel of the Emir Veli, who after his defeat retir'd into this town with Mahmoud Calcali, fortify'd the walls of this and ſome other neighbouring places. They repuls'd our troops with vigor, and defended themſelves courageouſly for eight days: but at length the army of Tocatmich Can, being more numerous than that of the beſieg'd, made it ſelf maſter of the town; and the Emir Veli, with Mahmoud Calcali, fled to the country of Calcal. The Can's army pillag'd the place, and exercis'd all imaginable cruelty's and abominations: the deſolation was univerſal, and all the riches, treaſures, and rarity's, which had been amaſs'd there during a great many years, were conſum'd in leſs than ſix days in this dreadful pillage. After the army had entirely ſeiz'd on this booty, and bound all the ſlaves, it return'd before the winter was paſt, by the way it came.

The emperor having advice of this devaſtation, was incens'd at the violence and tyranny which had been exercis'd againſt the Muſſulmans; in the mean time, he reſolv'd to conquer the kingdoms of Iran, which he was oblig'd to by his laws, becauſe this great country

[*] All the princes of the blood of Touchi are ſirnam'd Aglen.

not

not being at that time govern'd by any prince who was powerful enough to execute his orders there, every thing was in confuſion, by reaſon of the different ſentiments of thoſe who commanded. Chap. 52.

And as the ambition of neighbouring princes daily encreas'd, he was expos'd to the like evils with thoſe which, as we juſt now mention'd, happen'd to Tauris.

CHAP. LII.

Timur enters the kingdom of Iran, where he ſtays three years ſucceſſively.

IN the year of the Hegira 788, which anſwers to that of the Hare; Timur having reſolv'd to make war in Iran, caus'd orders to be publiſh'd, that the Tavachis [a] ſhou'd get together, with all expedition, the troops of the army, and that the ſoldiers of all the provinces, with their officers, ſhould come immediately to court. An. Dom. 1386.

This royal order was every where executed, and the army being in a condition to depart, Timur nam'd the Emir Solyman Chah, the ſon of Daoud, and the Emir Abbas, with two others, whom he left at Samarcand, to govern the empire of Tranſoxiana in his abſence.

The emperor having croſs'd the Gihon, happily arriv'd at Firoz Couh, after many days march; and thon Seid Kemaleddin, prince of Sari, ſent his ſon Seid Cayaſeddin to court, with

[a] A kind of commiſſarys for levying the troops, like the Chaoux among the Turks.

Book II. many ſoldiers to guard him, to be enroll'd among the other officers. About this time alſo our monarch, who was able to diſcover the moſt ſecret affairs of ſtate, and underſtood the carriage of the princes and governors of countrys, had advice of the actions of Malek Azzeddin, prince of the little country of Lor, of the great crimes his inſolent people had been guilty of, and of the robberys he had committed on the highways with impunity, it not being long ſince his ſubjects had beat and plunder'd a caravan, which was going thro their country in pilgrimage to Mecca.

Timur had no ſooner heard of this abominable action, than he reſolv'd at the ſame time to revenge the pilgrims on theſe robbers; and when he had advice of the new effects of their further malice, he thought himſelf oblig'd to chaſtiſe theſe villains, and to deliver the Mahometans from their tyranny: upon which he order'd that of every ten men of his army, two of the braveſt ſhou'd be choſen, and arm'd to the beſt advantage; which being executed, this prince quitted his camp, and mounted his horſe at the head of his flying camp, compos'd of his moſt valiant ſoldiers, and march'd with all expedition to Loreſtan. As ſoon as he was arriv'd there, he caus'd Ouroudgurd and the neighbouring places to be plunder'd; and at length he made himſelf maſter of Corram Abad, a fortreſs almoſt impregnable, whither the robbers of that country were retir'd. He caus'd it entirely to be raz'd, and the greateſt part of 'em being taken, they were flung headlong from the tops of the mountains.

At the ſame time Akitmur Behader, Omar Abbas, and Mehemed ſon of Sultan Chah, fell ſick

ſick thro the intemperateneſs of the air, or rather by the decree of providence which ſent 'em from this world into the other; and Coja Ali Muaid Serbedal, who was wounded in battel, died alſo ſome time after. Chap. 53.

As ſoon as Timur had brought into ſubjection this little country of Lor, and deliver'd it from the diſorders of theſe robbers, he decamp'd, and rejoin'd his army, which came to meet him in the plain of Nehavend.

CHAP. LIII.

Timur marches to Azerbijana, or the country of the antient Medes.

THIS monarch having advice, that the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, who had rais'd troops, was departed from Bagdad to Tauris, again left his camp with ſome troops under the conduct of Cheik Ali Behader, and the ſame day march'd with expedition at the head of his army to that city.

But Sultan Ahmed hearing of his march, was not willing to wait his coming, but fled, and made haſte to Bagdad.

Timur ſent Seifeddin, with the other Emirs, and troops to purſue Ahmed. When they had overtaken his army, he was ſo terrify'd, that abandoning his led-horſes, baggage, and all his furniture, he fled; and as ſoon as our ſoldiers had ſufficiently pillag'd his baggage, they made the great cry Souroun, and return'd.

In the mean while Elias Coja, ſon of Cheik Ali Behader, having march'd by Nakchivan with a ſmall number of horſe; found Ahmed in

Book II. the ſalt-pits of Nemeczar, where this Sultan, guarded by ſeveral troops, made a brave reſiſtence, by which many were wounded on both ſides. Elias Coja himſelf receiv'd a wound, which diſabled him; and this accident ſav'd Ahmed from the danger his life was in. This captain's wound, join'd with his bad conſtitution, caus'd in him a violent diſtemper, which had kill'd him, if the good fortune which always attends Timur's officers, had not favor'd his recovery; and at length he was heal'd, except that he remain'd lame, the diſtemper being got into his foot.

On this occaſion there were many maſſacres and pillagings at [7] Nakchivan. Comari Einac having receiv'd ſome diſpleaſure from the government, ſet fire to the great dome of the palace of Ziaelmulc, to revenge himſelf; and in it there periſh'd, in a miſerable manner, fifteen perſons, who were choak'd by the ſmoke of the ſtraw which was brought thither.

Timur having entirely brought into ſubjection the kingdom of Azerbijana, went to encamp in the neighbourhood of Chenob Gazane, were Seid Razi Coja, Hadgi Mehemed, Bendghir Cattat, Cadi Cayaſeddin, Cadi Abdellatif, and other great lords and Cheriffs of this country, came to make their ſubmiſſions to him; and afterwards a ſum of mony was impos'd on the inhabitants of Tauris [8], as uſual, for having ſaved their lives; which the receivers collected.

The court and army ſtaid at Tauris, and the neighbouring places during the ſummer. Timur

[7] A town of Azerbijana, long. 81. 15. lat. 38. 40.
[8] Capital of Azerbijana, long. 82. lat. 38.

com-

commanded Sarek Adel [9], to be put to death, whom they caſt down from a wall, after having pillag'd his houſe; and then the moſt skilful maſters in every art and ſcience were ſent to Samarcand. Chap. 53.

In the mean time Mahmoud Calcali ſeiz'd in the province of Calcal on the Emir Veli, who, flying to ſave his life, wander'd from country to country. He was deliver'd to Comari Einac, who put him to death, in conformity to the laws of Genghiz Can; and his head was laid at the foot of the throne. Death of Emir Veli.

In autumn, the government of Tauris was given to Mehemed Sultan Chah, and the imperial ſtandard was carry'd to Nakchiran. The army then march'd to Merend [1], and to the defile of mountains nam'd Dez; then it croſs'd the river Ourous* on the bridge of Ziaulmulc, and encamp'd on its banks. There is not a more magnificent bridge in the world than this; it is in the territory of Nakchivan near the town of Youlaha, where the Ourous run at the foot of a mountain. The bridge is built of ſtone, and is of vaſt ſtrength: it is flat at top: the ſtones are ſo well join'd, and all the building is ſo juſt and perfect, that the moſt skilful architect can't view it without admiration. Among the arches of this bridg there are two ſo high and broad, that the breadth of one is more than ſixty Ghez [2], and of the other more than fifty five; they having been meaſur'd at low water: and becauſe when the waters are higheſt the ſtream of this river * Araxes.

[9] Adel fled for refuge from the court of the Ilkanian kings to that of Timur.

[1] A town of Azerbijana, long. 80. 45. lat. 37. 50.

[2] Ghez in Perſian ſignifys a cubit.

runs

Book II. runs thro the great arch, which is contiguous to the mountain, the lower part being empty, they have there made a Caravanſera. At the two ends of the bridge there are gates made out of the ſame rock, of unparallel'd beauty.

The army having decamp'd from this poſt, arriv'd at the citadel of Corni, which they immediately attack'd, and took by aſſault. They ſeiz'd on Cheik Haſſan the governor, and brought him, with a chain about his neck, to the emperor.

They afterwards came to the town of Surmalu, ſituate on the bank of the Ourous: and having inveſted it on all ſides, they took it by ſtorm ſword in hand. They immediately raz'd it, and ſeiz'd on Toutan Turcoman, the leader of this people, whom they bound with cords, and laid before the throne.

From Surmalu the army came to Cars, a town ſtrongly built with ſtone, and which in that country was thought impregnable. A certain Turcoman, nam'd Pirouz Bact, was governor of this country: The ſtrength of the place, and the difficulty of coming at it, becauſe of its ſituation, made him proud; inſomuch that after having well fortify'd the citadel and walls of the town, he imagin'd himſelf able to reſiſt the army of the emperor, who order'd all the machines to be got ready, and that as ſoon as the Gourghe ſhou'd be beat in all the quarters, and the great cry Souroun made, the place ſhou'd be inveſted on every ſide.

The enemy wanted not courage and reſolution to defend himſelf: tho he was briskly aſſaulted, yet he gave marks of his intrepidity and valor; but at length perceiving that victory declar'd her ſelf by degrees for the imperial army, Pirouz Bact ſubmitted with a thouſand

teſ-

teſtimonys of his obedience, tho the wrath of the victorious troops cou'd not be appeas'd but by the pillage of the town, which was at length raz'd to the very foundations. Chap. 54.

CHAP. LIV.

Timur enters Georgia at the head of his army. The deſcription of the Perſian way of hunting; as alſo of the Gerke and Nerke.

GOD hath recommended to Mahomet to excite the Muſſulmans to make war on the enemys of their religion, becauſe it is the moſt excellent of all actions; and the Alcoran praiſes above all others, thoſe who risk their fortunes and lives in ſuch a war.

This was Timur's only aim, from the beginning of his riſe to his death; but he particularly executed it at this time by beginning a war which he had a long while projected.

His zeal exciting him to march to Teflis[1], when he was decamp'd from before Cars, he mounted his horſe in a riſing ground nam'd Ac Bogra, at a time when the violenc of the cold was extraordinary, and the air was full of ice and froſt.

He continued his march by Kitou, and at length arriv'd at Teflis. The ſtrength of the walls of this town had render'd the Georgians proud and inſolent, in imitation of the other infidels; inſomuch that confiding in the citadel, which they had very well fortify'd, they prepar'd for a vigorous defence.

[1] Capital of the kingdom of Georgia, long. 83. lat. 43.

The

Book II. The emperor gave orders for the ſiege. The Emirs and other officers prepar'd with all expedition the arms and machines neceſſary for aſſaulting the place. After having put in order the wings, the body, and other parts of the army, they inveſted the town; and at the ſame time cry'd out, *Allahou Ecber*, God is great, which is the cry call'd Souroun, already ſpoken of. Then the emperor took his ſword in his hand, and our ſoldiers cover'd with their great bucklers made a general aſſault on the town. All the brave men of the army gave marks of an extraordinary valor; and apply'd themſelves ſo briskly to their duty, that thro the aſſiſtance of heaven this royal town was conquer'd, and prince Malek Ipocrates * taken priſoner, and brought to the emperor: he was bound in chains, and carefully ſecur'd.

After this conqueſt, the emperor departed from Teflis, and reſolv'd to follow the diverſion of hunting: ſo the Emirs receiv'd his orders, and the troops form'd the Nerke, that is, being rang'd in a circle to hinder the paſſage of the beaſts, they ſurrounded a great ſpace of ground full of plains and hills; and ſome time after was the Gerke, that is, the men who form'd this circle, conſtantly approaching one another, the ſtags, deers, lions and other wild beaſts of all ſorts, were ſhut up and brought into a narrow compaſs.

Explication of the Gerke and Nerke, in the Perſians hunting.

When the emperor, the princes his ſons, and other princes of the royal blood, were enter'd into the circle according to the cuſtomary rules of the chaſe, and had taken their diverſion in killing many wild beaſts, the ſoldiers who enter'd in

* King of Georgia, a Chriſtian, who afterwards turn'd Mahometan.

their

their turn into the incloſure, took all they cou'd with their hands, of which they kill'd the beſt, and let go the others: in ſhort, there was more game kill'd than the troops cou'd carry away, and they were oblig'd to abandon a great part to the mercy of the birds of prey, and other ſavage beaſts *. Chap. 55

CHAP. LV.

Timur returns to Carabagh.

TIMUR departed from this country with ſuch good fortune, that thro the divine aſſiſtance, his troops in the road, and the neighbouring places, made themſelves maſters of many towns and caſtles, which were in the hands of the infidels: they releas'd the country from their tyranny; and having pillag'd all the places which theſe men had with ſo much difficulty conquer'd, they enrich'd themſelves with a vaſt booty.

The victorious army encamp'd at *Cheki*, from whence the emperor ſent ſeveral bodys of troops againſt the infidels. The Emir Gehan Chah had orders to fall upon the Lekezians, who were entirely pillag'd and the major part ſlain.

The Emir Mehemed Dervich Berlas enter'd with a body of troops into the mountains of *Cheki*, where he took many fugitive rebels, whom he put in irons, making 'em ſlaves; and the ſoldiers ſeiz'd on every thing they had.

* A more compleat account of this way of hunting practis'd among the Eaſtern nations, may be ſeen in the hiſtory of Genghiz Can. Book III. ch. 7. p. 260. — 266.

Ar-

Book II. Argoun Chah, and Ramadan Coja, with other troops march'd with expedition to the province of Tencgout, where they perform'd ſeveral warlike exploits: they kill'd a great many men, plunder'd all the places, and carry'd away ſo many captives, that all the country was ſurpriz'd.

The Emir Mehemed Bei, and the Emir Mouſſa, alſo brought their troops into the country of Acdgeb, and made themſelves maſters of it: and Timur at the head of a victorious army caus'd the ſtandard of the holy war which he undertook, to be fix'd at the foot of mount Alburz, where he made known the purity of his intentions, and the ſtrength of his faith, by hymns and pſalms, which he ſung to the praiſe of God, in token of the triumphs of the muſſalman religion, and the deſtruction of that of the infidels.

The Emirs at length return'd, after they had fully executed their commiſſion, by the conqueſt of the caſtles and towns of the infidels, the greateſt part of which were razed, for the chaſtiſement of their diſorders, and by the booty which they brought away. Theſe generals join'd the imperial camp in a place nam'd Cabale, or Cambale. They alſo made themſelves maſters of the red caſtle, and razed it: from thence they came to Carabagh Surcab *, from whence the army march'd to encamp on the banks of the river Cor †, over which they built a bridge, which was carry'd on by the means of floats of reeds and little ſticks, which the emperor had order'd to be made. He croſs'd this bridge at the head of the army, and march'd to Berda [s], the inhabitants of which ſubmitted without making any defence.

* Calaſurk.

† Cyrus.

[s] In the province of Aran, between the Black-ſea and the Caſpian, joining Georgia, long. 83. lat. 40. 30.

Timur

Timur being at Carabagh, order'd Ipocrates, prince of Teflis, to be brought before him, whom he had before impriſon'd and put in irons. He had a conference with this prince concerning the mahometan religion, invited him to be a Muſſulman, and gave him a thouſand good reaſons to perſuade him to it; and he communicated to him ſo much light in relation to the law of Mahomet, that thro a ſpecial grace, that of the vocation enter'd into his mind, which had been hitherto full of darkneſs. In ſhort, Ipocrates quitted his error, and turn'd Muſſulman. He declar'd there was no other god than God; and that Mahomet was not ſimply a man as others, but that he was the envoy of God, and the ſeal of the prophets: and in fine, having confeſs'd the divine unity, he was rank'd among the true Mahometans. Chap. 55.

This man had a coat of mail, which was reported to have been that which the prophet David had forg'd in a ſmith's ſhop, and which he had made proof of by ſeveral times ſoaking and dying it [e].

He preſented this piece to Timur, with other curioſities remarkable for their antiquity. This monarch receiv'd 'em, and not only permitted him to be of the number of his favorites, but thro the zeal which he had of winning over to him the hearts of others, he permitted him to return home, after having honor'd him with ſeveral preſents. All this good treatment from Timur, was the cauſe that moſt part of the people of this kingdom embrac'd the mahometan religion.

[e] In this paſſage we ſee a ſpecimen of thoſe trifling ideas the Mahometans have of antient hiſtory: there are many more ridiculous in the following part of this work.

Book II. At this time the Emir Cheik Ibrahim, prince of Chirvan [7], who by his power, reputation, honeſty, and noble deſcent, was diſtinguiſh'd among the kings of that time, came to court; and as he was a man of good ſenſe, he ſubmitted entirely to the emperor; and by this means he had the honor to kiſs the carpet of the throne. He offer'd handſom preſents; and among other things ſeveral parcels of raritys, each of which, according to cuſtom, was compos'd of nine pieces.

Among the other galant actions of this prince to render himſelf agreable to Timur, the following was moſt pleaſing to this monarch: After having brought out all the parcels of raritys, which ſhou'd have been nine pieces of each ſort, he preſented him with eight captives which he had bought; and as ſome one ſaid that the ninth piece was wanting, he preſented himſelf to make up the number: which ſo highly pleas'd Timur, that he not only loaded him with favors and gifts, but even gave him the kingdom of Chirvan with its dependences, and the title of king of Chirvan, under which title he became famous in the world.

Timur alſo receiv'd tokens of ſubmiſſion from the ſovereigns of Ghilan [8], who for ſeveral ages, confiding in the ſtrength of their walls, and the difficulty of acceſs to their mountains and woods, as alſo in the number of their marſhes and ſloughs, had not obey'd any king. The princes who then reign'd ſent their children and

[7] A province near Armenia, which has for its capital Chamaki, long. 84. 30. lat. 40. 50.

[8] A province on the ſouth ſhore of the Caſpian ſea, whoſe capital is Derbavend, long. 87. 20. lat. 36. 10.

officers,

officers with preſents to the foot of the throne, who promis'd for their maſters not only a ready obedience, but alſo the payment of a tribute. Chap. 56.

Then the Cheik Ali Behader, who had the care of the emperor's baggage, arriv'd at Carabagh by the way of Ardevil; and the emperor paſs'd the winter on the banks of the river Orous.

CHAP. LVI.

The march of Timur to Berda. The motion of the army of Capchac. Defeat of the troops of Tocatmich Can.

AS ſoon as winter was gone, that is, at the beginning of the year of the Hegira 789, which among the Moguls is call'd the year of the Crocodile, the invincible Timur march'd to Berda, having receiv'd advice that Tocatmich Can of Capchac had revolted, and brought an army into the field, which he had ſent by the way of Derbend [a], contrary to the counſel of Ali Bei Goncograde [b], Oronc Timur, and Acbouga Behrine [b]. Theſe three Emirs, famous in the empire of Touchi Can, were remarkable for their prudence, candor, and nobleneſs of mind; they daily endeavor'd to ſhew the falſity of the ſentiments of Tocatmich Can, and repreſented to him the way he ought to take: they counſel'd him to preſerve the rights of the emperor Timur An. Domi. 1387.

[a] A town of Armenia, on the W. ſhore of the Caſpian Sea, long. 89. lat. 43. It is alſo call'd Babelabouab.

[b] Tribes of Tartars in Capchac.

Book II. in full force, to treat his officers with civility, and to acknowledg the obligations due to this monarch, who had put him in poſſeſſion of the empire of Touchi, and of the throne of his anceſtors, by his power, favors, and extraordinary goodneſs, without which he cou'd never have attain'd to that grandeur and majeſty to which he is at preſent rais'd; that thus he was oblig'd always to remember the favors he had receiv'd from this great prince, and to give marks of his gratitude, ſince the thoughts of it always occaſion'd joy, and it is ſometimes the ſole cauſe of the riſe of a kingdom. "Who knows, ſay they, "but that in ſome change of fortune, (from "which God preſerve the Can!) he muſt not be "oblig'd to have recourſe to the protection of "the great monarch Timur, as to an aſylum?" In ſhort, the ſincerity of theſe lords, who only ſought his good, was of great ſervice to the kingdom, till Cazanchi, who had kill'd his own father, found means to approach him, together with Ali Bei: but as ſoon as theſe diſturbers of the ſtate had an eaſy acceſs, Tocatmich, at their perſuaſion, turning from the right way, broke off the good correſpondence he had kept with Timur, proudly declar'd himſelf his enemy, and brought an army into the field, which he ſent into Azerbijana.

Timur had ſpeedy notice of theſe things; and there was no ſooner advice brought him that they perceiv'd on the other ſide of the river Cor a great body of ſtrange troops, than he order'd Cheik Ali Behader, Aicoutmur, Oſman Abbas, and other Emirs, to croſs the river, and to obſerve the diſpoſition of affairs in that country, and to inform him of it; tho at the ſame time he prohibited their attacking the troops which were ſeen there, if they belong'd to the army of Tocat-

Tocatmich, becauſe of the treaty made with that prince. When theſe Emirs were departed from the camp, Timur, excited by his good fortune, ſent after them the Mirza Miran Chah, Hadgi Seifeddin, and other princes, with troops to aſſiſt 'em, in caſe they ſhou'd be attack'd. In ſhort, thoſe who went firſt, coming up to the enemy's army, knew it to belong to Tocatmich Can: wherefore upon ſerious reflection they diſſembled their deſire of fighting, and immediately retir'd; but the enemys attributing this action to cowardice, grew proud, and fell upon 'em, diſcharging all their arrows. Then our men perceiving themſelves forc'd to it, bravely defended their lives: and a bloody fight enſu'd, tho' our Emirs were not prepar'd for it. The field of battel was near a wood, which hinder'd our men from fighting after their own manner, ſo that they cou'd not dogg the enemys, as they deſir'd; and this ſituation was the reaſon that about forty horſe were kill'd, and our brave men, who were always admir'd for their valor, were put to the rout. Chap. 56.

In the mean time the Mirza Miran Chah, who had croſs'd the river of Cor, arriv'd with the troops he commanded: he ſaw this tragical ſpectacle, and at the ſame time fell upon the enemy. All his brave men fought 'em both on the right and left, killing all they met; inſomuch that not being able to ſuſtain the attacks of our warriors, they ſhamefully fled. Our ſoldiers purſu'd 'em as far as Derbend: they took a great many priſoners, whom the Mirza Miran Chah put in irons, and ſent to court. Choride, brother of Mobacher, who was wounded in the fight, was of that number, and was brought to the imperial camp: but Timur affecting an air of gravity and reſolution, did not only not puniſh

Book II. the wickedneſs of theſe miſerable people, but rather choſe to pardon 'em. He enquir'd of 'em concerning Tocatmich Can, as he had done before the laſt action, and ſhew'd the good will he bore to him by theſe words: "How comes it "that your prince, whom I regard as my ſon, uſes "me ſo ill, as to ſend an army into this country, "without any provocation given him? For you "know there is between us a certain right of "fatherhood and ſonſhip. And why is he the "occaſion of the loſs of ſo many thouſands of "Muſſulmans? It is requiſite that for the fu-"ture he abſtain from this method of acting, "which will bring ſhame upon him; and on "the contrary, he muſt punctually obſerve the "articles of alliance which we have ſworn to, "inſtead of rekindling the war which was lain to "aſleep." After our monarch had thus ſpoken to 'em, he ſet 'em at liberty; ordering 'em clothes and mony, and a guide to conduct 'em; that they ſhou'd paſs thro the midſt of the army, and be ſent back to Capchac, where they ordinarily dwelt.

The verſes which the celebrated Cheik Sadi[r] applys to God, may be properly refer'd here to Timur: "How can he deprive his friends of "his favors, who ſo liberally diſtributes 'em a-"mong his enemys?"

After the Mirza Miran Chah, had repaſs'd the river Cor, he return'd to the camp by the banks of that river, and at length decamp'd to march to Gheuctche Tenghiz, which ſignifys the blue ſea.

[r] The author of Guliſtan, or *Roſarium Politicum*, a book of morality, tranſlated into latin by Gentius.

CHAP.

CHAP. LVII.

The arrival of the empreſs Serai Mulc Canum, and the princes her ſons.

WHEN the court was at Gheuctche Tenghiz, the emperor had advice that Serai Mulc Canum was coming thither with the young princes, the Mirza Charoc and the Mirza Calil, his ſons, from Samarcand. He was ſo overjoy'd, that leaving his court at Gheuctche Tenghiz, he took horſe, and went with expedition to meet 'em. He met this charming company at Merend, where the princes, with their mother, ſprinkled, according to cuſtom, gold and precious ſtones upon his head, in ſo great quantity that the officers were fatigu'd in gathering 'em up; and they then ſpread out their rich preſents, compos'd of the moſt ſingular raritys. Afterwards the emperor departed from Merend to return to his camp, and at length march'd to the caſtle of Alengic, where there was a fortreſs commanded by the lieutenants of Sultan Ahmed.

Three days after his arrival, he order'd that the Emirs with their ſoldiers, ſhou'd in the night aſcend the mountain which join'd this place, and as ſoon as it was day attack it. They executed this order, and making themſelves maſters of the lower citadel, with ſword in hand they ruin'd it. Thoſe who guarded it, being afraid, fled to the top of the fortreſs, the inhabitants of which were ſo bold as to refuſe to ſurrender, tho they wanted water. Yet at length thirſt reduc'd 'em to deſpair; for being ready to periſh, they capitulated, and promis'd with an oath to

Book II. depart out of the place, and give it up to the beſiegers; which was the reaſon that the troops ceas'd attacking it, and came down from the mountain. But the minute the beſieg'd were ready to go out, there came a great cloud, follow'd by a large ſhower of rain, which in twenty four hours fill'd all the ciſterns and reſervatorys of water; and they had no ſooner quench'd their thirſt, then they broke their word and treaty.

Timur hereupon order'd Mehemed Mireke and Outchcara Behader to begin the ſiege; and this prince retir'd into the camp. He had ſent before this enterprize the Cheik Ali Behader againſt the fortreſs of Bayazid; but as ſoon as he arriv'd there, not thinking himſelf ſtrong enough to carry the place, he was follow'd by the Emirs Hadgi Seifeddin and Aicoutmur, at the head of a great detachment. At length, they beſieg'd the place together, attack'd it on all ſides, beat down the walls, and turn'd back the water; inſomuch that in a ſhort time having taken and raz'd it, they put the governor in chains, and brought him to the emperor.

CHAP. LVIII.

Timur's army marches againſt Cara Mehemed, prince of the Turcomans.

AT this time the emperor Timur having advice that the Turcomans were always moleſting the Muſſulmans, whom they attack'd not only in the ordinary caravans, but even in thoſe of Mecca, to which the name of holy was given; and that no one cou'd paſs ſafely by the places where they dwelt; he departed from the province of Nakchivan, and march'd towards 'em,

'em, after having ſent orders to Mehemed Mireke, whom he left at the ſiege of Alengic, to come immediately to the camp. He alſo order'd in the road, that the baggage ſhou'd march to Alatac, and ſtay there. Chap. 58.

Then the emperor march'd with expedition at the head of his army, and as ſoon as he arriv'd at the caſtle of Bayazid, formerly call'd the fort of Aidin, the troops pillag'd it, and plunder'd all that the inhabitants had left in that country. Paſſing further, they arriv'd at the caſtle of Avenic [1], where Meſer, ſon of Cara Mehemed, reſided: they pillag'd all they found belonging to the Turcomans in the mountains and plains of thoſe provinces, and in the neighbouring places.

From thence they march'd to the town of Erzerum [2], which they took the ſame day they came; and Timur encamp'd on the banks of the river of Chiachour, from whence he ſent an ambaſſador to Arzendgian [3], to perſuade Taharten, the ſovereign of it, to make his ſubmiſſion to him. The ambaſſador was receiv'd with many honors and ceremonys. Taharten gave him a favorable reception, and treated him with all imaginable reſpect; he obey'd the emperor, and conſented to pay the Carage [4]; and having charm'd the ambaſſador by a thouſand civilitys, he ſent him back to his maſter.

Then our prince appointed three of his beſt ſquadrons, under the command of Mirza Miran Chah to go in ſearch of Cara Mehemed [5], father

[1] The ſame as Van, ſituate in the upper Armenia.

[2] A town formerly call'd Arzen-Arroum, and Erzerom, ſituate in Bilad-Arroum, i. e. Anatolia, or leſſer Aſia; long. 77. lat. 39. 40.

[3] A town of Arroum, long. 74. lat. 38.

[4] A tribute which the Mahometan princes exact from the Chriſtians and Jews, who dwell in their dominions.

[5] The chief of the monarchy of the black-ſheep.

Book II. of Cara Youſef Turcoman. This prince enter'd with his brave warriors into the lands of theſe diſturbers of the people's quiet; and after having plunder'd their cattel, horſes, camels, ſheep, and other goods, made the greateſt part of their wives and daughters ſlaves, whom they brought away, and then rejoin'd the court.

Mehemed Mireke was alſo ſent into this country on the ſame account with a body of men: the road which he took brought him by chance into the mountains, where he found a narrow paſſage ſtopt up, into which he march'd. The enemy perceiving him, oppos'd his paſſage; ſo that our brave men were oblig'd to draw their ſwords. Nevertheleſs, thro Timur's good fortune, they eſcap'd out of this dangerous place after a bloody conflict; and return'd with expedition to the camp.

Soon after, Cheik Ali, ſon of Argoui Berlas, Icbalcha Bargougi, and Yetlic Coutchin, all valiant and intrepid men, put themſelves at the head of another ſquadron, to go in ſearch of Cara Mehemed: they march'd every where with extraordinary diligence, and at length diſcover'd him; where he was retir'd to the top of an inacceſſible mountain among ſteep rocks: nevertheleſs they attack'd him; our men did ſurprizing actions, and Lala Coja, who had been the emperor's governor, was ſlain in the fight. At length the enemy got upon the ridge of the mountain, where he was out of our reach; upon which the Emirs thinking all their attacks wou'd be in vain, immediately return'd, and brought their troops to the imperial camp.

Timur then ſent thither ſome other choſen troops under the conduct of Gehan Chah Behader; this captain alſo enter'd their country, which he plunder'd, bringing away a great number

ber of their cattel, arms, and other goods, which were diſtributed among the troops, who return'd to the camp in triumph. Chap. 58.

In the mean while Chah Malek, ſon of Caya-ſeddin Berlas, who was gone another way without the emperor's order, was found dead in a deſart, where he had been ſlain by theſe robbers.

The emperor decamp'd, and march'd to the plain of Mouche [6], all the houſes of which he caus'd to be plunder'd. He at length arriv'd at the city of Eclat [7], where the people ſubmitted to him; and after having given 'em skilful commanders, he departed for the town of Adelgiaouz, the prince of which came out to meet Timur, to whom he ſubmitted; and having the good fortune to kiſs the carpet, he laid at the emperor's feet as much gold and precious ſtones as he was able; he alſo made other preſents, and at length being aſſiſted by his good fortune, he was rank'd among the officers of this prince, who according to his wonted clemency loaded him with his favors; he not only careſs'd him, but again confirm'd him in the principality of his country and all his lands.

Timur continu'd his march by the lake of Van, and march'd to Bend Mahi [8], from thence to Alatac, where the baggage and body of the

---

[6] A village at the foot of a mountain, from whence ſprings a little river; it has a plain twelve days journy long, call'd Sahrai Mouche, i. e. the plain of Mouche. It is in the lower Armenia, two days journy from Mia Farekin, and three from Eclat; long. 73. 50. lat. 39. 50.

[7] The capital of lower Armenia, long. 75. 50. lat. 39. 20.

[8] A place from whence a little river diſcharges it ſelf into the lake of Van, and where are caught a great many little fiſh call'd Tarric.

The author of this work hath wrote a particular deſcription of the lake of Van.

army

army waited for him in the meadow of Abara Serai.

CHAP. LIX.

Timur marches to Van and Vaſtan[9]. The letter which Chah Chuja king of Perſia wrote to Timur at his death.

THE victorious ſtandard of Timur was carry'd to Van and Vaſtan; and Malek Azzeddin, who commanded there, being afraid of the army, ſhut himſelf up in a caſtle, which is a ſtrong citadel, ſituate on the ridge of a mountain, and border'd on one ſide by a lake.

The army us'd all their efforts to take it: they inveſted the fortreſs on the land-ſide, and omitted nothing which is practis'd in ſieges; they alſo attack'd the walls of the town.

Two days after Malek Azeddin was inſpir'd by his good genius to obey Timur; he came down from the fortreſs, and had the honor to kiſs the carpet of the throne: but the inhabitants, by reaſon of their baſeneſs, revolted from their prince, and wou'd not receive him; they fortify'd the avenues of the fortreſs, and put themſelves in a poſture of defence: whereupon our troops erected battering rams, got ready their machines for caſting of ſtones, and aſſaulted the place.

This famous fortreſs, which had never been conquer'd by any ſovereign, was taken by the

[9] A town S. E. of Van, and at ſix leagues diſtance; ſituate in the lower Armenia, on the bank of the lake of Van, long. 77. 50. lat. 34. 50.

arms

arms of the great Timur on the twentieth day of the ſiege; and our troops enter'd it ſword in hand: they ſlew a great number of the rebels, and caſt down ſeveral from the top of the mountain, after having ty'd 'em neck and heels. And thus they clear'd the world of theſe villains, who had no other employment than that of committing diſorders and robberys. Chap. 59.

Then there arriv'd at court an ambaſſador from Arzendgian on the part of Taharten, who ſent preſents of abundance of curioſitys, as ſilver money, the fineſt horſes, and mules of a particular breed.

The prince's letter contain'd a teſtimonial of his reſpects and obedience, offers of his ſervice, and a reſolution to be always firmly attach'd to Timur's intereſt.

The emperor gave a very favorable reception to the ambaſſador, and diſpatch'd orders, wherein he confirm'd the principality of Arzendgian to Taharten, as heretofore; and diſmiſs'd him with letters-patent for his inveſtiture, with which he ſent robes of honor of ineſtimable value.

The emperor order'd the caſtle of Van to be demoliſh'd. There are ſeveral incredible things related concerning this fortreſs; and among others, that it was built by Cheddad ſon of Aad, on the brink of a very ſteep mountain, and that Yadghiar Andcoudi, who was prince of a Toman, having one day undertaken to raze it, he cou'd not ſo much as looſen a ſtone tho he employ'd a great number of ſoldiers.

Timur departing from his camp, happily arriv'd at Selmaz [1], where after having gratify'd Malek Azzeddin by his favors, he left him in

[1] A town of Azerbijana, long. 79. 5. lat. 37. 40.

the

Book II. the government of all Kurdeſtan, and at the ſame time began his march.

The prince of Ermitizec had at that time the honor to kiſs the imperial carpet; and after having made his ſubmiſſion, he acquitted himſelf of the dutys a ſervant is oblig'd to perform, and gave great marks of his obedience. His ſincere ſubmiſſion was the reaſon that Timur left him the principality of Ermit, and made him a preſent of a young ſhe-ſlave, of extraordinary beauty.

The emperor at length march'd to Meraga [a], and from thence to Ghilan, where he ſtaid ſome days; he had before that ſent a man nam'd Merahem to Zein Elabeddin, ſon of Chah Chuja prince of Chiraz [b], to ſummon him to come to him, with order to tell him that his father was particularly attach'd to the emperor, with whom he had made an alliance; that at the time of his death he had wrote a letter to this monarch to recommend his ſon to him; for which reaſon it belong'd to him to make appear his willingneſs to continue this friendſhip, and ſhew ſome marks of his zeal; and that as a teſtimony of this union, he ought to come with expedition to the emperor's court, which was not far from him, there to receive the favors of this monarch, and have a handſom reception; that he might at length return home with all the ſatisfaction he can poſſibly expect, not only as to himſelf in particular, but what might procure the advancement of his friends, and abaſement of his enemys.

As we have had occaſion to mention the letter of Chah Chuja, we have thought proper to inſert a copy of it here, that the reader may have a detail of all the circumſtances.

[a] A town of Azerbijana, long. 82. lat. 37. 20.

[b] Capital of Fars, not ſo antient as Eſtacar, the Perſepolis of the antients, long. 88. lat. 29. 36.

A letter writ to the emperor Timur by Gela-leddin Chah Chuja, king of Perſia, and prince of Chiraz, juſt before his death.

" GOD is truly living; there is no other " god than God: every thing is done by " his order, and you muſt return to him.

" May it pleaſe God that this letter come " ſafe to the hands of him, whoſe majeſty and " power extends as far as heaven, which is the " ſupport of empire; who is the moſt accom- " pliſh'd of all thoſe, who make profeſſion of " practiſing juſtice and mercy: the liberal pro- " tector of the greateſt kings, the moſt equitable " and juſt of the emperors of the earth, and of " this time; whom God always favorably re- " gards, becauſe he is the Pole of truth; THE " EMIR TIMUR GOURCAN: whoſe " reign and empire may God eſtabliſh for ever, " that the Cæſars, the maſters of the world, " and the moſt potent princes, may fly to him " for refuge. God grant that this emperor may " always be aiding in the execution of the di- " vine orders, and in rendring all due reſpects " to the commands of the Almighty: and laſtly, " may this prince, who has no equal in the " world, arrive to the higheſt pitch of his de- " ſires.

" After having thus wiſh'd you all happineſs, " and given you all the praiſes which are requi- " ſite to maintain union among true friends; " we put you in mind that great men eſteem the " world as the theatre of inconſtancy, and the " place of the moſt ſtrange events; and that " men of learning are never attach'd to trifles, " nor tranſitory pleaſures and beautys, becauſe

" they

Book II. " they know that the corruption of all things
" being neceſſary, the duration of creatures is
" impoſſible; for which reaſon they have pre-
" fer'd the delights of eternity to the periſhable
" things of this world. In ſhort, I have em-
" ploy'd, poor and indigent as I am, as far as in
" me lay, theſe few days which I have receiv'd
" of God, to exalt the ſtandards of the faith,
" to obſerve the order of the law and of juſtice,
" and to execute the commandments of our pro-
" phet in all thoſe things which the Creator has
" put into my power; and in fine, I have only
" apply'd my ſelf in the ſight of God, and for
" the love of him, to preſerve the people under
" my protection in perpetual peace; and by the
" divine grace, I have carry'd my ſelf with all
" the world, as well as I was able, in the man-
" ner your highneſs cou'd expect.

" As to the treaty of peace and alliance made
" between us, deſigning never to break it, I re-
" gard the gaining of the imperial friendſhip
" as a great conqueſt; and the chief of my
" wiſhes hath been to remain firm and conſtant
" in this peace, and, if I dare ſay it, to have
" in my hand the treaty I have with you at the
" day of judgment, leſt you ſhou'd reproach me
" for having broke my word.

" You have continually loaded me with favors
" thro your goodneſs; they have drawn upon
" you the praiſes and approbation of every one;
" and the manner in which you have beſtow'd
" 'em is the cauſe that they are known through-
" out the world.

" As I am at preſent call'd before the tribunal
" of the ſovereign maſter of the univerſe, I
" thank his divine majeſty, in that I have done
" nothing wherewith my conſcience can re-
" proach me, notwithſtanding any thing I can

" wiſh

" wiſh for; becauſe notwithſtanding the faults Chap. 59.
" and ſins I have committed, which are inſe-
" parable from human life and the deprav'd na-
" ture of men, God hath liberally granted what-
" ever I cou'd deſire; and I have taſted all the
" pleaſures I cou'd expect, during the fifty three
" years I have ſtaid on earth.

" Thus with a ſpirit full of confidence, al-
" ways hoping that the beneficent and merci-
" ful God will pardon my faults, I have an-
" ſwer'd, whenſoever he hath call'd me, that
" I am ready to obey. In ſhort, I die as I have
" liv'd, only carrying with me the word of the
" unity of God, and turning my eyes and my
" deſigns towards the Creator alone, who finds
" nothing agreeable in us except our good
" works; and I have abandon'd all the vanitys
" of the world.

" I pray God to give his bleſſing to this mo-
" narch, who is as wiſe as Solomon, and as
" great as Alexander; to preſerve for a long
" time his life and empire; to augment the
" honors he poſſeſſes, and to ſtretch out farther
" the limits of his dominions, that all men
" may be under the protection of his juſtice.

" In conſideration of the ſincere union be-
" tween you and us, I thought it my duty to let
" you know the ſtate of all things. Tho it be
" not neceſſary to recommend to you my dear
" ſon Zein Elabeddin, God grant him a long
" life under the ſhadow of your protection; for
" I leave him to the care of God and your ma-
" jeſty, as well as my other children and bro-
" thers, having always regarded your alliance
" and friendſhip as the greateſt treaſure I can
" leave to my ſucceſſors. I don't doubt your
" performance of the treaty, not only as the
" maintaining of treatys is a point of religion,

" which

Book II. "which we are oblig'd to have regard to, but alſo "becauſe of the good-will you have always "ſhewn to any who belong to me on every oc-"caſion.

"I therefore beſeech your majeſty to look up-"on all the princes who wait upon his perſon "with an eye of diſtinction, according to your "uſual cuſtom, and to grant 'em your protection "in all their affairs; ſo that the people of this "preſent time may ſee the marks of it, and it "may be declared to all future generations: "and that the envious, who for a long time "have wiſh'd my ruin, may have no cauſe to "rejoice at my death, nor to take advantage of "my family; but on the contrary, be oblig'd "to pay reſpect to my memory, and your majeſ-"ty's merit.

"I alſo beg of you to ſay the Fatihha* and "other prayers for your ſincere friend, who has "the happineſs to depart out of this world in "peace and alliance with you, that thro the "bleſſing of the prayers of a prince ſo great and "happy, my people may know that God hath "been merciful to me, and rais'd me up among "the ſaints. This is what we pray your ma-"jeſty to execute, as our laſt will, of which "you being the depoſitary, it will anſwer in "this world and in the next.

"Laſtly, I beſeech the Almighty, that be-"cauſe of your majeſty's good works, he will "aſſiſt you always with his favors, and make "the reſt of your reign happy."

* The firſt chapter of the Alcoran, which the Turks recite, as we do the Lord's-prayer.

CHAP.

CHAP. LX.

Timur marches again into the countrys of Fars and Irac Agemi.

AS the good fortune and proſperity of Zein Elabeddin was almoſt at an end, he wou'd not appear before the emperor Timur; and in his extravagant humor he even ſeiz'd on the envoy of this prince. Timur having ſought into the reaſons of his conduct, was juſtly incens'd, and reſolv'd to march into Fars and Irac.

In the autumn of the year of the Crocodile, which anſwers to the year of the Hegira 789, this monarch prepar'd to conquer theſe two kingdoms. He compos'd the vanguard of his army of his beſt troops, which he ſent before; and order'd 'em, as well as the baggage, to march towards Rei [5], and to paſs the winter at Sarek Camich. An. Dom. 1387.

The Mirza Miran Chah, the Emir Seifeddin, and the Cheik Ali Behader, were commanded to guard the baggage; and the imperial ſtandard, with the reſt of the army, march'd towards the kingdom of Fars, whoſe capital is Eſtacar [6], an agreeable city, which had formerly been the reſidence of the kings of Perſia for many ages.

The emperor having march'd thro the country of Hamadan [7], arriv'd at Gerbadecan [8],

[5] A town of Couheſtan, a province of Perſia, long. 86 20. lat. 35. 35.

[6] The ſame as Perſepolis, long. 88. 20. lat. 30.

[7] A town of Couheſtan, long. 83. lat. 38.

[8] A town of Couheſtan, long. 85. 25. lat. 34. It is alſo call'd Ghilpaieghan.

Book II. where he rang'd his army in order of battel; and from thence he went to encamp before the city of Iſpahan [a].

Seid Muzaffer Cachi, uncle of Sultan Zein Elabeddin on the mother's ſide, and governor of the city for this prince, came out, accompany'd by Coja Rukneddin Saed, and all the lords, Cheriffs, doctors of the law, and other principal inhabitants of the city, to implore the emperor's mercy. They had the honor to kiſs the imperial carpet: Timur receiv'd 'em favorably, and treated 'em with friendſhip and clemency.

Timur enters Iſpahan.

The troops having ſeiz'd on all the avenues of the city, Timur enter'd it in triumph, and retir'd into the fortreſs of Tabarruk [b]. He then plac'd a gariſon in Iſpahan, the command of which he gave to Aicoutmur, and return'd to his camp, where he regulated the number of ſoldiers which ſhou'd be employ'd in guarding the gates; and then ſign'd an order that all the horſes and arms of the city ſhou'd be given into the hands of his officers, which order was put in execution.

The chief men and elders of the city enter'd into the imperial council, where the ſum was ſettled which was to be paid to redeem the lives of the inhabitants, to whom quarter had been given. They conſented to it; every one was tax'd to pay his ſhare of it; and they demanded commiſſarys to collect the money.

The quarters of the city were ſhar'd among the Emirs, and it was order'd that every Emir ſhou'd ſend one of his men as a commiſſary in his quarter; and that all the mony which theſe

[a] A city of Couheſtan, the preſent capital of Perſia, long. 86. 46. lat. 32. 25.

[b] The fortreſs of Iſpahan is thus call'd.

com-

commiſſarys collected ſhou'd be remitted to the care of Nour Mulc Berlas, and Mehemed Sultan Chah. Timur kept in his camp all the grandees of Iſphahan; and the commiſſarys went into the city to collect the ſum which was ſettled. Chap. 60.

But it unhappily fell out that a raſh young fellow of the ſuburbs of Iſpahan, nam'd Ali Cutchapa, by trade a ſmith, caus'd in the night the drum to be beat in the city; and at this noiſe a company of rabble got together, with deſign to ſhew their raſhneſs. They ſurrounded the quarters of the city, cut the commiſſarys throats; and there were ſav'd in this maſſacre only thoſe whom the inhabitants of each quarter, who were wiſe and brave men, defended againſt the inſults of theſe villains.

Several ſoldiers, who were gone into the city on particular occaſions, were maſſacred in the night, and Mehemed ſon of Catai Behader was of this number. In ſhort, there were more than three thouſand of our men kill'd in this ſedition. Theſe young fools, after having put to the ſword all the Turks they cou'd find, run to the gates of the city, ſeiz'd upon thoſe who guarded 'em, and endeavor'd to fortify 'em as long as they were maſters of 'em, that they might hinder the paſſage of our troops: and thus theſe ſeditious fellows laid the foundation of a grievous rebellion, to execute the deſigns with which their chimerical imaginations had flatter'd 'em.

The next morning the circumſtances of this diſorder were made known to the emperor. He fell into a violent anger; ſo that he immediately order'd the army to march againſt the city, and take it.

Our brave warriors at the ſame time executed this order. Inſtances were made to hinder the effects of it; but the affair being begun, they

Book II. cou'd not retreat from it: ſo the inhabitants were conſtrain'd to fight to defend their lives; and Beian Timur Acbouga was kill'd on this occaſion, which ſo animated our troops that they carry'd the town by aſſault. Timur ſent men to guard the quarter of the Cheriffs, and the ſtreet of the Turekes, where the doctors of the law dwelt, and particularly, the houſe of Coja Imameddin Vaez, tho this great preacher had been dead a whole year.

The emperor order'd that all the inhabitants ſhou'd be put to the ſword, and that they ſhou'd be chaſtis'd with all ſorts of puniſhments for their revolt, and the maſſacres they had committed.

The houſes of the honeſt men, who during the diſorders had ſav'd our warriors from the inſult of the rebels, were preſerv'd; by which means a great number of Muſſulmans eſcap'd the fury of the ſoldiers.

Timur's anger was ſo great, that he order'd the Tomans, Hezares and Sedes, to furniſh a certain quantity of the heads of the inhabitants, that every one might ſhare in the puniſhment of theſe perfidious perſons; and Tavatchis of the Divan were nam'd to be the controllers and depoſitarys of thoſe heads that were cut off.

It was reported by men of credit, that many ſoldiers of our army, who were not willing to kill the Muſſulmans, bought heads of the executioners, and carry'd 'em as if they had cut 'em off themſelves. At firſt a head was ſold for twenty Dinars [a] Cupeghi; but when every one was furniſh'd with the number they were tax'd at, a head was ſold for no more than half a Dinar; and at laſt no one bought any. Thus every one

[a] A ſort of mony at that time in uſe among the Tartars.

they

they met was ſlain; and a great number who had quarter in the day-time, and who fled in the night, found the ways cover'd with ſnow, and had the misfortune to be purſu'd next day by the ſoldiers, who, reſolv'd upon revenging the death of their companions, follow'd the track of theſe fugitives, brought 'em out of the places they were hid in, and put 'em to death: which is a token of the depth of the divine decrees, and that God will finiſh whatſoever he has begun. Chap. 60.

The leaſt computations, which are writ in the regiſters of the Divan, of the number of the men who were ſlain amount to ſeventy thouſand heads, which were laid in heaps upon the walls of Iſpahan, and of which there were at length built towers in ſeveral parts of the city.

In ſhort, ſince the war began, God has not made any people feel a more cruel effect of his wrath than this, to revenge the deaths of three thouſand innocent Muſſulmans kill'd by this inſolent rabble.

This terrible action happen'd on monday, the ſixth day of Zilcade, in the year of the Hegira 789. An. Dom. 1387.

If we are agreed, that in conſequence of the ſtrange effects of the infinite providence of God, the things which happen in this lower world by generation and corruption, have any relation to the motion of the heavenly bodys; we may ſay that all this happen'd very near the time when the eleventh of the celeſtial triplicitys was in Gemini, and the conjunction of the two unfortunate planets, Saturn and Mars, was in the ſign of Cancer.

CHAP. LXI.

Timur marches to Chiraz [3], the capital of Fars or the true Perſia.

TIMUR after his victory and the conqueſt of Iſpahan, appointed Hadgi Bei and Nounan Chah to govern this city for a year, and march'd towards Chiraz. Zein Elabeddin, prince of Perſia, had no ſooner receiv'd advice of his coming, than he fled to one of his couſins-german call'd Manſour, who was governor of Toſtar [4], tho they were at variance. Zein Elabeddin acted in this as that man wou'd do, who to avoid the heat of the ſun ſhou'd run into the fire. He went to join Chah Manſour with his troops by the way of Cazeron [5], without conſidering that he who indiſcreetly truſts his enemy, abandons his own good fortune, and expoſes himſelf to the blame of all the world. Zein Elabeddin being arriv'd at the bank of the river Doudanke [6], Chah Manſour brib'd his troops over to his ſide.

[3] Chiraz was capital of Perſia before Iſpahan; and is at preſent capital of the province of Fars. It was the ſeat of the antient kings, after they had abandon'd Eſtacar or Perſepolis.

[4] Formerly call'd Cuchter, a town of the province of Ehouaz, which is part of Couraſtan, long. 84. 32. lat. 31. 30. Here is a great river, over which Sapor king of Perſia formerly built a famous aquæduct a mile long, by which the water is carry'd up to the town. Abulfeda ſays this town is the moſt antient in the world.

[5] Capital of the province of Sapour, which is part of that of Fars, long. 87. lat. 29. 15.

[6] A river which runs by Toſtar.

An

And as, according to the Alcoran, the temper of ſoldiers, or rather the corrupt nature of men, tends to ingratitude, the ſoldiers of Zein Elabeddin, having no thoughts on the obligations they ow'd their maſter, came over to Chah Manſour: and ſo there remain'd but few with Zein Elabeddin; which was the reaſon that Manſour ſent other ſoldiers to ſeize the prince, and bring him to Toſtar. They put him in irons in the caſtle of Selaſel; and at length Chah Manſour caus'd thoſe ſoldiers to be impriſon'd, who had ſo ungratefully abandon'd their maſter, and all the mony and goods they had were confiſcated. Chap. 61.

The emperor arriving at Chiraz, fix'd his ſtandard on the firſt day of the month of Zilhadge, in the year of the Hegira 789: and at the ſame time his orders were obſerv'd by all the kingdom, which without oppoſition was brought in ſubjection to his officers, and regiſter'd among the dominions of Timur. An. Dom. 1387.

A poet of that time is very much commended, who ſays that the bleſſing of conqueſts conſiſts in gaining the poſſeſſion of peoples hearts without reſiſtence; and that what is not acquir'd by fatigue and labor ought not to be call'd happineſs.

The victorious ſtandard was erected, and all the governors and Kelivis of the kingdom had the honor to kiſs the ground on which Timur ſtood, at a place nam'd Tact Caradge, without the city. They agreed to pay a thouſand Tomans [1] Kapeghis, and to convey 'em with expedition to the royal treaſury.

[1] A Toman is worth twenty French crowns.

Book II. The Emir Oſman Abbas had orders to go into the city to receive the ſum, which was accordingly paid into his hands.

At this time they kept a feaſt, which was honor'd with Timur's preſence. They read the Coutbe [8] in his name: and after he had perform'd the dutys of prayer and ſacrifice [9], he return'd to his camp.

Chah Yahia, prince of Yezd [1], nephew of the deceas'd king Chah Chuja, with his ſon-in-law, and his eldeſt ſon the Sultan Mehemed; as alſo Sultan Ahmed prince of Kirman [2], and brother of Chah Chuja; and Abou Iſhac, grandſon of Chah Chuja, who came expreſs from the town of Sirdgian; and all the neighboring ſovereigns; as alſo the Atabecs of Lor [3], and Gourghin Lar [4], who are ſaid to have been of the race of Gourghin Milad; having all made their ſubmiſſions, had the honor to kiſs the imperial carpet: they made preſents worthy of this great monarch, who gave 'em a handſom entertainment, and us'd 'em with all imaginable civility; while in the mean time the troops went to pillage ſome countrys which were not yet brought under ſubjection.

When the kingdom of Fars, with its dependencys, was entirely ſubdu'd, and the lieutenants of Timur eſtabliſh'd in it, the ſecretarys,

---

[8] A kind of homily, where the Catib, or preacher, begins with the praiſes of the prince then reigning.

[9] The publick ſacrifice is a camel, and private ones are ſheep. The ſacrifice of the camel is moſt curious.

[1] A town of Fars, long. 89. lat. 32.

[2] A kingdom in the middle of Coraſſana, and E. of Perſia. At preſent it is only a province of Perſia. Its capital is Sirdgian, long. 90. 20. lat. 29. 25.

[3] A nation in Coureſtan.

[4] A town of Fars near Kirman,

who

who are call'd Munchis, and the Debirs [5] were employ'd in recording the great exploits and actions done at that time. They wrote letters, which they call'd letters of conqueſts, in the moſt agreeable ſtyle imaginable; and after having ſeal'd 'em with the imperial ſeal, they ſent 'em by certain couriers call'd Mobaches, who are employ'd in carrying of good news, to Samarcand, the capital of the empire, in Coraſſana, and to all the other countrys and provinces in ſubjection to Timur; which great actions were publiſh'd in all the moſques, where the Coutbe was read. Chap. 62.

CHAP. LXII.

Reaſons which induc'd Timur to return to the capital of his empire.

ONE wou'd have thought that this laſt and famous conqueſt, which ſo highly eſtabliſh'd the power of Timur, might have always aſſur'd to him his authority and quiet; but as the moſt perfect things are more eaſily alter'd than others, there ſoon grew diſturbances in the empire. A courier, who came from Tranſoxiana in ſeventeen days, brought advice that a war was rais'd in that country, and that Tocatmich Can had violated the treaty, and ſent a powerful army thither. This army of Capchac, the commanders of which were Bick Yarok Aglen, Ilicmich Aglen, Aiſa Bei, Satgan Behader, and other Emirs, having march'd by the town of Sa-

[5] Secretarys of ſtate in Perſia.

ganac,

Book II. ganac [6], came to that of Sabran [6], and beſieg'd it. Timur Coja Acbouga, who was governor of it for Timur, did his duty in the defence of the town, and vigorouſly reſiſted the beſiegers, who us'd all their efforts to take it; which notwithſtanding their valor they cou'd not do; and being conſtrain'd to raiſe the ſiege, they went to ravage other places.

The Mirza Omar Cheik, who was at Andecan, got together all the troops of this quarter, and march'd againſt 'em; the Emir Solyman Chah and the Emir Abbas, with the troops that remain'd at Samarcand, went to join Omar Cheik, having left to guard that city the Emir Lal, brother to Tagi Bougai Berlas, and Cheik Temour, brother of Akitmur Echader. They croſs'd the Sihon together, and met the enemy's army in the field of Juclik, five leagues E. from Otrar. This expedition was fully perform'd in the autumn of this year. The two armys were rang'd in order of battel, and began the combat, which continu'd till night. Omar Cheik, the moſt valiant and dauntleſs man of the age, ruſh'd into the very middle of the main body: he paſs'd thro all the enemy's army, and was at a great diſtance from his own. When his ſoldiers no longer ſaw him, they began to miſtruſt their ſtrength, and were defeated; and the Emir Abbas was wounded with an arrow. In the mean while the Cheik, accompany'd by the good fortune of the invincible Timur, retir'd in ſafety from the midſt of his enemys, and went with expedition to Andecan, where he rally'd the troops which were diſpers'd.

There then came news that Ancatoura, nephew of the Emir Hadgi Bei Ireanout [7], forget-

[6] Towns of Capchac.
[7] A hord of Tartars.

ful

ful of the favors he had receiv'd from the em- Chap. 62.
peror, had alſo violated the peace; that he was departed from Mogoliſtan [s] at the head of an army, which was already arriv'd at Seiram and Tachkunt; and that the troops having committed divers hoſtilitys, had ravag'd this country.

Omar Cheik had advice of it, and at the ſame time aſſembled the troops of Uzkunt, and came to Cogende, where he learnt that the enemy were gone to Andecan by the road of Chackichmen. He immediately return'd to cut off their retreat, and came up with 'em on the banks of the Sihon before Acſiket [t]. The troops of both partys having ſecur'd the paſſes, encamp'd in view of one another, and march'd in the ſame poſture for ſome days upon the banks, till they found an opportunity of coming to blows.

One night Ancatoura made uſe of a ſtratagem of war: he left a thouſand men in his camp, and order'd that while he march'd at the head of the reſt of his troops on the bank of the river, they ſhou'd light fires in ſeveral parts of the camp, to induce the others to believe that all the army was yet there. He made ſo much haſte, that he found a proper place to paſs the Sihon, which he croſs'd, and at the ſame time Omar Cheik march'd againſt him. The two partys being in view, there enſu'd a battel, in which this prince behav'd himſelf with courage: but as the enemy far ſurpaſs'd him in number, he ceas'd fighting, and enter'd Andecan. Anca-

[s] I believe the author is miſtaken, and has put Mogoliſtan inſtead of Gete, at leaſt that he thinks 'em the ſame, as is imply'd in other places.

[t] A town, N. of the Sihon, long. 101. 10. lat 42. 20.

toura

Book II. ţoura purſu'd him thither, and wou'd have made himſelf maſter of all the avenues of the town to beſiege it; but Omar Cheik, excited by his valor, and truſting in the divine aſſiſtance, immediately ſally'd out ſword in hand, and like a lion fell upon the army of the Getes, who were far more numerous than his own. In the mean while his valor made him ruſh into the midſt of his enemys, whom he fiercely attack'd with his lance and ſword; but Toukel Behader made after him ſword in hand, laid hold of the bridle of Omar's horſe, and led it out of the field.

Ancatoura was not willing to fight any longer; he return'd, and took the road of the country of the infidels. The prince Omar ſent troops to purſue him; which they did for three days, inſomuch that a great many ſtragglers of the Getes were ſlain. The Emir Solyman Chah, the Emir Abbas, and among the captains of Couchons[1], Temourtach, Berat Coja, Sevendge Temour, and others, who retir'd after they had been vanquiſh'd in the fight of Juclik, ſtaid to guard Samarcand. They made the inhabitants of the ſuburbs and the neighboring places enter into the city, and ſent Temourtach to Termed to ſecure that. When the enemy arriv'd in thoſe countrys, they only pillag'd the towns; but ſome of their troops, which went to Bocara, and were there join'd by others of the army of Tocatmich, who came by Carezem, reſolv'd upon beſieging that city.

Tagi Bougai Berlas was then in the place with Atilmich Coutchin, and Derbi Coutchin, who had fortify'd the walls. Theſe captains defended themſelves, and vigorouſly repuls'd the

[1] A company of a hundred horſe.

enemy;

enemy; inſomuch that in the ſeveral attacks they made, the beſiegers had always the worſt, and deſparing of taking Bocara, they rais'd the ſiege, and made inroads into Tranſoxiana. They ſet fire to Zendgir Serai, whither they were conducted by Sultan Mahmoud ſon of Kei Coſru Catlani. They march'd by Carſchi and Cuzar and thence as far as Kioiten on the banks of the Gihon. The Emir Abbas at this time died of a wound he receiv'd from an arrow in the battel of Juclik. Chap. 63.

LIBRARY OF THE BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE ROYAL

CHAP. LXIII.

Timur returns to Samarcand; and gives the government of Fars and Irac to the family of Mouzaffer.

TIMUR, being at Chiraz, on advice of the events we have related, ſent to Samarcand by the way of Yezd, the Emir Oſman Abbas, with thirty of the braveſt horſe of the army, commanding him to make haſte.

The emperor gave the government of Chiraz to Chah Yahia, nephew of Chah Chuja; that of Iſpahan to Sultan Mehemed his eldeſt ſon; and that of Kirman to Sultan Ahmed brother of Chah Chuja. He inveſted the Sultan Abou Iſhac, grandſon of Chah Chuja, in the government of the province of Sirdgian, as alſo in the town and caſtle, which we ſhall hereafter have occaſion to mention. It was made a principality by this monarch, as alſo a Siorgal, that is a lordſhip, which he gave to him and his heirs for ever; and he honor'd all theſe princes with his letters-patent, ſeal'd with the imperial ſignet, which

Book II. which is call'd Altomga, that is, the mark of the red hand.

The emperor then commanded the illuſtrious and learned lord, the Cheriff Gerjani, to quit the country of Fars, and reſide at the royal city of Samarcand. He gave the ſame orders to the principal Emirs of the deceas'd king Chah Chuja, to the Emir Aladin Einac, and to many other lords who were the principal men of the ſtate; and he ſent to the ſame country the workmen and artiſts with their familys, whom he found to be moſt expert and skilful in their reſpective trades. Then having reſolv'd to return to Samarcand, he took horſe at the end of the month of Muharrem, in the year of the Hegira 790, at a moſt lucky moment.

An. Dom. 1388.

When Timur was arriv'd at Bendemir [1], the brave Pehlevan Muhaddeb Coraſani, governor and prince of Abrecouh [2], ſent an expreſs to inform him, that it not being convenient to leave the town without a governor, he beſought him to ſend a Deroga, that he might have the happineſs to kiſs the ground in preſence of the emperor; in which caſe he wou'd come with expedition to court. Timur ſent thither Toukel Baour Chah, who was no ſooner arriv'd than Muhaddeb readily went to meet this monarch; and by the procurement of the Emirs he had the honor to kiſs the imperial carpet. When the victorious ſtandard was arriv'd at Abrecouh, Muhaddeb paid his humble reſpects to Timur; and after having offer'd preſents ſuitable to his ability, he gave him a ſumptuous feaſt. He was treated with all manner of civility by the

[1] A river which paſſes by Chiraz.

[2] A town of Fars, dependent on Eſtacar, long. 87. 50. lat. 31. 30.

emperor,

emperor, who confirm'd him by letters-patent in his principality of Abrecouh. Chap. 64.

The court at length march'd to Iſpahan and Tactapol. When the enemy had advice of Timur's arrival in Tranſoxiana with his army, however reſolute they ſeem'd before, they now thought fit to fly; ſome went to Carezem, others to the deſart of Capchac: and the victorious ſtandard having croſs'd the Gihon, and arriving at the ſeat of the empire, was ſet up in the city of Samarcand.

Timur immediately ſent Codadad Huſſeini, Cheik Ali Behader, Omar Taban, and others, in purſuit of the enemy.

Theſe princes march'd day and night to come up with 'em: they drove 'em as far as Bilen; and after having put abundance of 'em to the ſword, they return'd to court.

CHAP. LXIV.

The emperor orders a proceſs againſt ſome Emirs, whom he had left in Tranſoxiana.

THE troops of the emperor Timur being accuſtom'd to vanquiſh their enemys, it appear'd ſtrange to this monarch that in the battel of Juclik the army of Tocatmich Can had had the advantage of our troops. Upon which he order'd that they ſhou'd bring before him the Emirs who had been at the battel; and having learnt from themſelves the particular circumſtances of the fight, he order'd 'em to be queſtion'd in the council of war, and then to be proſecuted.

Berat

Book II. Berat Coja Coukeltach, who on this occaſion had given no marks of that valor which is uſual in the hero of a triumphant army, had his beard ſhav'd [3]; and after having receiv'd ſevere reproaches for his cowardice, they painted his face with ceruſs and vermilion, put on his head a coif, as if he had been a woman, and made him run bare-foot thro the city.

On the contrary, Kutche Malek, who had ſhewn an heroic courage in the purſuit of the enemy, and with thirteen men only had attack'd in the night three hundred infidels of Ancatoura's party in Yactchal near Cogende, and had deliver'd out of their hands ſeveral of the inhabitants of Cogende and the countrys adjacent, whom they had made ſlaves, and whom he afterwards ſent to their country; Kutche Malek, I ſay, receiv'd, as a reward of his great actions, a country which was made a principality, for him and his ſucceſſors to enjoy for ever: and after many other conſiderable favors and careſſes from Timur, he was honor'd with the priviledg'd order of Tercan [4],

And the Mirza Omar Cheik, who had given inconteſtable proofs of his valor by his great exploits, had the pleaſure of being rais'd in dignity and power, by the favors of the ever-victorious emperor his father.

---

[3] There is no greater reproach among the eaſtern nations than to ſhave the beard after it has once grown; and the ſhame is ſtill much the greater to have it done by the hands of the common hangman.

[4] Tercan is a dignity, which whoever enjoys has great privileges confer'd upon him, as is obſerv'd in the hiſtory of Genghiz Can.

The end of the ſecond book.

A MAP
OF
MOGOLISTAN,
one part of the Kingdom
OF GETE,
and the adjoyning Countrys.
Leagues 20 to a Deg.
Hours Journey of 6 Leag.
Northern TURQUESTAN
KINGDOM of GETE
MOGOLISTAN
TURQUESTAN
CALMAC
CATAY
CATAI
TANGUTH
TIBET
G. TIBET
Deserts
Baikal
Lake Kokonor

BOOK III.

Three bloody wars againſt Tocatmich Can king of Capchac. The conqueſt of his country: The plundering of Muſcovy, Circaſſia, Bulgaria and Georgia. The conqueſt of Perſia, Meſopotamia, and Courdiſtan. The war againſt the Getes, and the ravaging of all Mogoliſtan.

CHAP. I.

Timur-Bec departs for his fifth expedition into the kingdom of Carezem.

IN the year of the Crocodile, which anſwers to that of the Hegira 790, Timur began his march towards Carezem: he encamp'd at Egryar [1], from whence he ſent Condge Aglen, and Temour Cotluc Aglen with the vanguard: theſe two princes had abandon'd Tocatmich Can, and fled for refuge to the court of Timur. An. Dom. 1388.

[1] Six leagues from Samarcand.

Book III. When they had croſs'd the river of Bagdadec [4], they ſent Aid Coja to diſcover the condition of the country; who meeting on the road a ſhepherd of Ilicmich Aglen [5], ſeiz'd him; and having queſtion'd him concerning the condition of the enemy, ſent him to court. Timur being inform'd of all he deſir'd to know, continu'd his road to the river of Chedris [6]; which when he had croſs'd, there came a deſerter from the enemys, who ſaid that Ilicmich Aglen and Soliman Sofi had abandon'd the kingdom of Carezem to ſave their lives; and were fled to Tocatmich Can emperor of Capchac.

On this news Timur ſent Mirza Miran Chah, with five other Emirs follow'd by their regiments, in purſuit of the two princes. Theſe Emirs march'd with ſuch expedition by the road of Comkint [7] and Kiz [8], that they overtook 'em, attack'd 'em, and made a terrible ſlaughter of their men: and having pillag'd their baggage, return'd in triumph laden with the ſpoils of the enemy.

Timur ſtaid ſome days in the capital city [9] of Carezem; during which time he order'd the inhabitants to go and live at Samarcand, and carry their goods with 'em. Then this great city was raz'd even to the very foundations, and ſown with barly, to puniſh his enemys for their daring to raiſe war againſt him. Thus our prince hav-

Ruin of the capital of Carezem.

[4] A river which falls into the Gihon below Bikunt.

[5] Prince of Capchac, king of Carezem, with Soliman Sofi whoſe ſiſter he eſpous'd.

[6] A river which runs into the Gihon, and ſerves as a frontier to the kingdoms of Zagatai and Carezem.

[7] A town of Tranſoxiana, long. 97. lat. 42. 50.

[8] A town of Tranſoxiana, long. 97. lat. 43. 50.

[9] Corcange minor, ſituate in Tranſoxiana on the Gihon, long. 94. 55. lat. 42. 10.

ing

ing reveng'd himſelf, march'd towards his capital city, where he happily arriv'd in few days; and at his entry order'd the enſigns to be diſplay'd in token of victory. Chap. 1.

Notwithſtanding Timur's wars, as his inclination and deſigns always tended to make kingdoms flouriſhing, and his ſubjects happy by the adminiſtration of juſtice; every one call'd him *the father of the people.* But imagining he cou'd not intirely make 'em happy but by being the ſole maſter of the univerſe, he was oblig'd, like other conquerors, to ſtrike terror into all parts, and ſeverely to chaſtiſe thoſe who reſiſted him; by which means his armys were ſo formidable, that they were compar'd to the tempeſts of heaven, becauſe of the deſolation they brought with 'em. Wherefore three years after this conqueſt, in the year of the Hegira 793, Timur reſolv'd to continue the war in Capchac, and ſend Mouſike, ſon of Junki Coutchin [g], into Carezem, to repair the ruins of this kingdom, and ſettle it in its firſt ſtate. Mouſike, according to his commiſſion, re-peopled the country, and brought it up to its antient ſplendor, and even ſurrounded with walls the towns of Cat [f] and Kivac [i], and all the demeſns of the Caan, that is, that part of Carezem which Genghiz Can join'd to the lands of Zagatai Can when he ſhar'd his empire among his children. An. Dom. 1391.

[g] Coutchin is one of the moſt antient and illuſtrious houſes of the Moguls.

[f] Long. 95. lat. 40. 58. near the Gihon.

[i] S. E. of the Gihon, long. 95. 35. lat. 39. 20.

CHAP. II.

Some accidents during Timur's expedition into Carezem.

Rebellion of Mehemet Mireke.

AS ſoon as Timur was departed for Carezem, Aboul Feteh, younger brother of Mehemet Mireke [a], abandon'd Timur: he fled from Samarcand, and at night came to the great deſart of Capchac; which he cou'd not do ſo ſecretly but Lalam Behader Coutchin perceiv'd it; wherefore he purſu'd him with ſo much diligence, that having made uſe of all the horſes of the army which he found on the road, he overtook him at Hiſarec [b], where he found him ſleeping on a plain; he immediately demanded the cauſe of his flight, and his ingratitude to his prince. He anſwer'd, that he went to ſeek his brother Mireke, who had quitted Timur, and ſent for him. Lalam Behader took him by the collar, laid him on a horſe, bound with cords, and brought him back the ſame way he came; and at Bocara deliver'd him up to Mirza Omar Cheik, to whom he told all that had paſs'd between him and the priſoner.

Upon this the Mirza immediately wrote to Timur at Carezem; and in the mean while came with expedition to Samarcand, where he thoroughly

[a] Governor of Catlan, and ſon-in-law to Timur, having eſpous'd the princeſs Sultan Bacti Begum, daughter of Timur: he was ſon of Chir Behram, and relation of Kei Coſru Catlani.

[b] Alſo call'd Hiſar Chaduman, a town of Saganian between the iron-gate and the river of Vacach, near the kingdom of Catlan; long. 100. 50. lat. 38.

rowly examin'd the circumſtances of this rebellion. He had advice, that Mehemet Mireke, not conſidering that Timur had honor'd him with his alliance, marrying him with the princeſs Sultan *Bact* Begum his daughter, who was now big with child, nor reflecting on the loſs of ſo great an emperor's favor, of whom he held the government of the kingdom of Catlan, and the neighbouring places; ſeduc'd by a fatality, which leads men into diſorders, and blind at his good fortune, had neglected his duty to Timur, and was led away with a deſire of making himſelf independent, notwithſtanding the misfortunes ſeveral of his equals had fallen into, who had endeavor'd the like. Indeed Mireke's conſcience reproach'd him a long time for his crime; but his ambition gaining the maſter of his reaſon, he at length reſolv'd to revolt, and declare war againſt the emperor, at the ſame time bringing into his misfortune the troops which were at Samarcand, at the head of which he went out of this town. The Mirza alſo learnt that when the rebels paſs'd by the iron-gate, nam'd Coluga, the troops of Catlan had already pillag'd the province of Termed, and all the neighbouring places; but that they were not able to force the town, becauſe Temour Tach, the governor, had courageouſly defended it, and plac'd chains croſs the ſtreets, to preſerve it from the inſults of theſe rebels. Chap. 2.

When Mirza Omar Cheik was aſſur'd of the truth of this news, he departed from Samarcand, and came to Ilgazigage[s]; he there got together the troops, with which he march'd in

[s] A village without Samarcand, on the road to Carchi in Tranſoxiana. There's another Ilgazigage in Coraſſina.

Book III. purſuit of Mireke. This latter having plac'd his men in order, had already plunder'd the houſes of Dadmute Berlas, and Akitmur Behader, governor of thoſe countrys: he had made himſelf maſter of their effects, and had caus'd the arſenal to be open'd, from whence he had carry'd away all the arms and machines of war, and diſtributed 'em among a company of robbers whom he had aſſembled, and to whom he alſo gave horſes and clothes. This rebel, being prepar'd to maintain the war againſt his prince, was ſo confident in this ſtate of independency, and having got a ſumptuous equipage, that he look'd upon the ſun, if one may ſay ſo, but as an atom, not conſidering that enterpriſes and projects againſt the decrees of providence, have never any other effect than that which the rods of Pharaoh's magicians had in the preſence of the rod of Moſes.

It is true, that theſe rebels had no ſooner heard of the approach of Mirza Omar Cheik, and his expedition in marching, than their inſolence was chang'd into a ſhameful cowardice: a dread of coming to blows with ſo valiant a prince, ſeiz'd the hearts of theſe cowards, who fled, and were diſpers'd upon the ſole rumor of his approach.

This accident broke all the meaſures of Mireke, and put a ſtop to his deſigns: he had the affliction of ſeeing in a moment that power, with which he had been blinded, diſappear; and he knew, tho too late, upon what ill bottom it was founded, and what chimeras his pride and ſelf-conceit had form'd in his imagination.

The rebel being fruſtrated of all his intentions, and reduc'd to a deplorable condition, was oblig'd to paſs the river of Vacach, on

the ſtone bridg, call'd Tachkupru[6], and to fly into the kingdom of Catlan. He was purſu'd with extreme diligence by the Mirza, who having paſs'd by Hiſar and Tircani Candgigai[7], came to the bank of the river, which he ſwam over. And Mireke went to the narrow paſſage, nam'd Derei Dervaz[8], to ſeek the protection of Chah Gelaleddin[9], who refus'd it him, and prudently prohibited his entrance into the caſtle. He only told him the contents of a moral diſtich, which his father, a very prudent man, had learnt in his old age, to wit, that we ought to avoid, as far as in us lies, the company of the unfortunate, and to ſeek thoſe whom fortune favors; in which number was the great Timur, on whom heaven continually ſhower'd ſucceſs. Chap. 2.

Mireke depriv'd of this protection, departed from the ſtraits of Dervaz, to go in ſearch of another aſylum; but he was in very great affliction, becauſe moſt part of his domeſtics abandon'd him.

In the mean while our men having gone over all the mountains and plains to ſeek Mireke, without hearing any news of him; the Mirza Omar Cheik went to encamp in a town nam'd Capchac, in the kingdom of Catlan; and he lodg'd in the palace of Mireke, nam'd Acſerai. He ſtaid there many days, hoping that ſome unforeſeen accident, ſuch as uſually happen'd to Timur, wou'd bring him with honor out of the intricate affair this rebel had involv'd him in.

[6] Long. 101. 30. lat. 38. 30. It is call'd in perſian Poſſenghin.

[7] A village near the river Vacach, long. 101. 20. lat. 38.

[8] A defile of mountains leading from Catlan to Tebet.

[9] Prince of the frontiers of Tebet.

Book III. He was not deceiv'd in his expectation; for Oſman ſon of Arocu Omar, going to Samarcand with ſome domeſtics, and having paſs'd the mountain Boutatou [a], luckily arriv'd at the brink of a fountain, where he obſerv'd the marks of the horſes feet, which were gone out of the common road. He was inſpir'd with a deſire to purſue 'em, and he had no ſooner paſs'd ſome hills than he perceiv'd Mehemet Mireke, ſitting with four valets, who had taken off their horſes harneſſes that they might feed on the graſs: he immediately ſurrounded 'em, leſt they ſhou'd get away; and Oſman ſeizing on the horſes, ſtopt the priſoners Mireke and his men, whom he put in irons: he then diſpatch'd a courier to the Mirza, to give him advice of it, and forthwith return'd with the priſoners. He was on the road when he receiv'd orders to put Mireke to death, which he readily obey'd; and Mireke and his brother Aboul Feteh were executed. Theſe traitors were puniſh'd for an example to others, and to verify the text of the Alcoran, which ſays, *That traitors and ingrateful perſons are accurs'd by God.* The Mirza having put an end to theſe diſorders by the death of Mireke, departed for Samarcand, where he had the honor to ſalute the emperor his father. At the time when Mireke revolted and departed from Samarcand, the Emir Gehanghir alſo went from Condoz, to join the imperial camp with the Tomans of Bourouldai, Taican, and Aperdi; beſides which he was join'd at Balc by the Emir Yadghiar Berlas at the head of the troops of Balc and the neighboring places. As they were marching together, the Toman of Bourouldai revolted

Death of Mehemet Mireke.

[a] Near the river Vacach in Catlan above Ghulec.

and

and turn'd back. Gehancha inform'd the court of it, and return'd to purſue the rebellious Toman, in conjunction with Coja Youſef ſon of Oladgia Itou, Junaid nephew of Bourouldai, and Pir Alitaz officer of the troops of Balc; they march'd with ſuch expedition day and night, that they join'd the rebels at Bacalan, and pillag'd their houſes and goods. The Emir Gehancha had receiv'd news of the revolt of Mireke, and had learnt that he was encamp'd in the territory of Hiſar Chaduman, with the troops he had liſted. This Emir march'd againſt him with his men rang'd in order of battel, while Coja Youſef came to Arhenk to take care of the troops which he commanded; and Pir Alitaz went to Balc to bring away thoſe which remain'd there; after they had all agreed to meet again on the bank of the Gihon. Chap. 2.

Gehancha got there firſt; and having built ſome floats, croſs'd the river, and encamp'd on the other bank at the head of his ſquadron; but as ſoon as night came, Junaid Bourouldai and his brother Bajazet, as alſo Ali Ecber, revolted with the ſquadrons they commanded, which conſiſted of three thouſand horſe. They fell ſuddenly on Gehancha who had no more than ſixty men; but this valiant general, excited by the good fortune of Timur, far from being troubled at the ſight of ſo ſtrange an accident, tho with ſo few attendents, put his truſt in God, and with this ſmall number of men fac'd the enemy, having the river at his back: and he and his men being cover'd with the great and ſmall bucklers which they ordinarily us'd, they march'd courageouſly againſt the rebels. The combat was violent; they began with their arrows, and when they were em-

Book III. empty'd, they had recourſe to their lances and ſwords.

In the mean while Coja Youſef ſent a man by the river to Gehancha to adviſe him to ſtand his ground, becauſe he ſhou'd ſoon come to his aſſiſtance. This news did not a little ſtrengthen our ſoldiers, who with a handful of men, reſiſted ſo great a number of the enemy: it rekindled their valor; they kept firm all the day, and when night was come, Coja Youſef, and Pir Alitaz, with a hundred horſe, having join'd 'em, after they had ſwam over the river, they fell ſo vigorouſly upon the enemy, that they made 'em feel the effects of their courage by a hundred glorious actions: and the ſun was no ſooner riſen, than victory declar'd her ſelf on their ſide. The enemy ſhamefully turn'd their backs, notwithſtanding the advantage of their number, which was twenty to one; they fled towards the river, which they croſs'd, and retir'd to Bacalan. It is remark'd in the Alcoran, That twenty brave men of reſolution and courage alway defeat their enemys, tho they be two hundred in number. Our men purſu'd 'em and kill'd ſeveral; and the Emir Gehancha encamp'd at Condoz with his ſoldiers, very well contented with the victory. The fugitives of the hord of Bourouldai believing themſelves purſu'd, paſt on farther; and having gone over the mountains of Hendoukech, they march'd to Cabul, where they found Abouſaid Biſoud. This governor, thro an unheard-of ingratitude, which made him forget all the favors he had receiv'd of Timur, revolted alſo with 'em.

During theſe tranſactions, it happen'd that Acbouga Biſoud, enemy of Abouſaid, whom Timur had order'd to be ſeiz'd and ſent to Mogoliſtan near

near the mountains of Eltai [a], having attempted to eſcape and get to his own country, was again ſeiz'd and brought to Timur with his feet and hands bound. The emperor hearing of the revolt of Abouſaid Biſoud, was favorable to Acbouga, caus'd his chains to be taken off, and having given him the command of the hord of Biſoud, which this rebel poſſeſs'd, ſent him to Gehancha; and on his return to Samarcand he even diſpatch'd recruits to him by Ramadan Coja and other generals, ordering him to go ſeek the enemy whitherſoever they were retir'd. Thus Gehancha and Coja Youſef departed for Condoz and Bacalan; and having paſs'd Hendoukech and Cabul, they join'd Junaid and Abouſaid at Lagaman [b]; they pillag'd the houſes of their hords, and ravag'd the country; and thoſe who cou'd avoid the fury of the ſcymitars, fled into the country of Sende. The Emir Acbouga, having advice of it, departed from Herat with deſign to fight theſe rebels; and was join'd in the way by Seifel Candahari with the troops of Candahar [c] which he had got together: they paſs'd many mountains and foreſts, and at length overtook theſe unfortunate perſons; and having block'd up all the paſſages oblig'd 'em to fight, and ſo ſmartly repuls'd 'em, that Junaid, Bajazet and Abou- Chap. 2.

[a] Mountains in Mogoliſtan, long. 138. lat. 60. Here the Mogul emperors are ordinarily bury'd.

[b] Lagaman or Lamgan, a town of the kingdom of Cachmir, frontier to Candahar.

[c] A town of India, frontier of Perſia, and at preſent under the dominion of the king of Perſia; it was taken from the Moguls by Chah Abbas the ſecond, father of the preſent king. It is ſituated in long. 106. 30. lat. 33.

ſaid,

Book III. ſaid, after the loſs of a great many of their ſoldiers, and the pillage of the little baggage they had left, had a deal of trouble to eſcape from our men, and fly to the town of Deli * in India. Our troops return'd in triumph to the place of their reſidence with all poſſible ſatisfaction.

Death of the grand Can, inſtal'd by Timur.

When Timur was in the way to Carezem, Siorgatmich Can fell ſick at Bocara where he died: his body was tranſported to the field of Kech, and bury'd near Coubecan Igage †, under a mauſoleum which himſelf had caus'd to be built there. After the reduction of Carezem, Timur return'd during the autumn to Samarcand, which city was magnificently adorn'd to receive him: and he immediately eſtabliſh'd the Sultan Mehemet ſon of Siorgatmich Can in the place of his father.

Sultan Mehemet inſtal'd grand Can of Zagatai.

Then Timur excited by a fatherly love to his children, took up a reſolution to put in practice in their perſons the counſel of Mahomet, who ſays we ought to marry that we may have children, and multiply the ſpecies; wherefore he gave orders to his prime officers to make all neceſſary preparations for magnificent nuptial-feaſts and the ceremonys of marriage: he even order'd a moſt ſolemn publick banquet, in which the inhabitants ſpar'd nothing to teſtify their joy: they adorn'd the great city with the moſt magnificent ſtuffs, and hung out branch'd candleſticks in all the ſtreets: they prepar'd high and ſpacious tents in the delicious garden of Baghi Behicht, that is, the garden of paradiſe: they cover'd the ground with rich carpets, and ſtuffs of all colors enrich'd with em-

* Capital of India, long. 120. lat 30.

† A village in the territory of Kech.

broderys,

broderys, and adorn'd with pearls and precious ſtones. In this beautiful and magnificent garden, the great Timur marry'd, according to the mahometan law, the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, and his brother the Mirza Pir Mehemet, as alſo Mirza Charoc, with the princeſſes who were choſen for their brides, and who were as beautiful as the Houris [s]. It was in the year of the Hegira 790, that the crown of this vaſt empire was ſettled in his auguſt family by theſe happy marriages. After the ſolemnity was finiſh'd, Timur diſmiſs'd his troops; the Mirza Miran Chah return'd to Coraſſana; the Mirza Omar Cheik to Andecan; and Timur paſs'd the winter at Samarcand with all poſſible felicity and contentment. Chap. 3. An. Dom. 1388.

CHAP. III.

Timur departs to make war in Capchac, and is victorious over Tocatmich Can.

AS fate had mark'd on the forehead of Tocatmich Can, ſovereign of Capchac, the misfortune which muſt neceſſarily happen to him, and excited him to deſpiſe the gifts and favors he had receiv'd from Timur; this prince gave marks of his ingratitude on ſeveral occaſions: inſomuch that he ſent officers to levy troops thro all the empire of Touchi, of which he was maſter. This army was compos'd of the

[s] The Mahometans believe there will always be in paradiſe young women whoſe virtue and beauty will never fade. They are call'd Houris.

troops

Book III. troops of Ruſſia, Circaſſia, Bulgaria, Capchac, Crim, Caffa, Ellan and Azac, as alſo of Bachgorod, and even of Muſcovy; and made ſo formidable an appearance, that poets have compar'd it to the leaves of the thickeſt trees, or the drops of rain in the moſt impetuous ſtorms. Tocatmich brought this great army into the field, and march'd againſt Timur at the end of the year 790. The emperor had no ſooner advice of it, than he departed from his capital at the head of the troops of Samarcand and Kech, and went to encamp at Sagrudge [y]. He ſent Tavatchis into all the provinces of his kingdom to levy troops, and bring 'em to the place of rendezvous. This winter the cold was ſo violent that the earth was cover'd with ſnow, and the men were almoſt froze to death. In the mean while, news was brought, that the army of Capchac, commanded by Ilichmich Aglen [z], and compos'd of a vaſt number of horſe, had croſs'd the River Sihon over-againſt the town of Cogende, and was encamp'd near Ajouc-Zernouc [a]. Timur forthwith reſolv'd to give him battel: the lords of his council fell upon their knees, and made preſſing inſtances to hinder him, and particularly beſought him to wait till the troops of all the provinces arriv'd: but as he was not ignorant of the proverb, which ſays, *That delay is dangerous, and that we ought never to put off till to morrow what we are able to do to day*; their remonſtrance was uſeleſs; and without waiting for other troops beſides thoſe of his houſhold which he then ha

An. Dom. 1388.

[y] A village ſix leagues from Samarcand.
[z] King of Carezem, who fled to Tocatmich Can.
[a] A village in Tranſoxiana, near the Sihon, towards Cogende.

With

with him, he departed from his camp, and enter'd into the ſnow, which was already ſo deep that it touch'd the horſes bellys. In the mean while as he was aſſur'd of the victory, he march'd night and day, and ſhortly after was join'd by Mirza Omar Cheik, who having got together the troops of Andecan, march'd along the bank of the Sihon with extreme diligence. Timur ſent Condge Aglen, Temour Cotluc Aglen, and Cheik Ali Behader, with a body of horſe to fall on the enemy's rear, and to block up the paſſages and hinder their flight. The next day at ſun-riſing, they paſs'd over the hill Telanbar *, and came in ſight of the enemy; they immediately made the great cry Souroun to begin the fight. There was nothing heard but the noiſe of kettle-drums, the clashing of ſcymitars, the neighings of the horſes, and the crys of the ſoldiers. After a bloody battel the advantage fell on our ſide; the enemy gave ground, and were oblig'd to fly, after having loſt in the battel a great part of the ſoldiers, a great many of whom caſt themſelves into the Jaxartes to avoid the fury of our arms, and there miſerably periſh'd. Thoſe who eſcap'd out of the fight fled with precipitation; but the greateſt part met the cavalry which Timur had ſent to cut off their paſſage in the rear. And as they were yet purſu'd by our victorious army, they found themſelves ſurrounded on all ſides: our men made uſe of their war-clubs, ſwords, arrows and lances to deſtroy 'em; and ſhew'd ſo much reſolution on this occaſion, that the greateſt part of the enemys were cut in pieces without obtaining any quarter from our ſoldiers. There was only the celebrated Airdi Birdi, ſecretary of ſtate, and one of thoſe whom we call Bacchis,

Chap. 3.

* In Tranſoxiana.

Book III. Bacchis [3], who was made priſoner of war; and they had immediately cut off his head if he had not made himſelf known. So they brought him alive to Timur, who inform'd himſelf from him of the ſtate of affairs of Tocatmich Can, and at length pardon'd him: he even gave him a veſt, which he accompany'd with many other civilitys, and inroll'd him into his ſervice; inſomuch that he who was before but a ſlave, became in a moment a great lord. Timur decamp'd, and
Feb. 1389. march'd towards his capital; and in the month of Sefer, in the year of the Hegira 791, he encamp'd at Acar [4], where he ſtaid ſome time.

When the ſpring appear'd, all the troops of the empire of Timur arriv'd. The Mirza Miran Chah came at the head of thoſe of Coraſſana, and join'd the imperial camp: the troops of Balc, Condoz, Bacalan, Bedakchan [5], Catlan, Hiſar Chaduman, and many other towns and provinces did the ſame. Timur gave orders to the Mirza Omar Cheik, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, and the Emir Aicoutmur, to cauſe a bridge of boats to be built over the Sihon near Cogende. The Emirs obey'd, and built others in many places to facilitate the paſſage of the troops, and they gave advice of it to the court.

At the beginning of the year of the Serpent,
An. Dom. 1389. which anſwers to the month of Rabyulevel 791, this prince departed to continue the war in Capchac. When he arriv'd at the bank of the Sihon, accompany'd by the princes his ſons, he

[3] Secretarys of the Tartar kings, who write in the Iguran characters.

[4] A village near Samarcand and Kech.

[5] A kingdom between Tranſoxiana and Tebet: it is part of Zagatai, is border'd by the Gihon towards the kingdom of Carlan.

croſs'd

croſs'd the bridge at the head of a formidable army. He gave the command of the vanguard to the Emirs Temour Cotluc Aglen [6], Sevindgic Behader, and Oſman Behader. Theſe captains were no ſooner on their road, than they ſent out ſcouts to endeavor to diſcover thoſe of the enemy. In ſhort, they ſoon perceiv'd 'em, and at the ſame time gave advice to the Emirs of the vanguard. Theſe skilful warriors lay in ambuſcade to ſurprize thoſe of Capchac, who having not ſeen our ſcouts were lain down to ſleep, not regarding the maxims of war, which prohibit the taking any repoſe before one has advice of the condition of the enemy. Our men mounted their horſes, after having prepar'd themſelves for fighting; they march'd during the night, and having met the enemy, fell upon 'em like roaring lions on their prey. Chap. 3.

They employ'd all ſorts of arms to hinder any of the enemy's ſcouts eſcaping 'em: they kill'd a great number of 'em; but in the mean while there were ſeveral who ſav'd themſelves notwithſtanding their wounds, and having croſs'd the river Artch [7], retir'd to Tocatmich. The army of this prince had beſieg'd the town of Sabran [8], which was vigorouſly defended by the captains, Gengherche, Lad and Cotchi; which made Tocatmich deſpair of taking it: ſo he rais'd the ſiege, and having pillag'd Yaſſi [9], encamp'd in the large plains of that country.

But he had no ſooner receiv'd advice of the arrival of our troops, than he fled with all his

[6] Son of Ourous Can, and conſequently an enemy to Tocatmich.

[7] Which diſcharges it ſelf into the Sihon near Yenghi Kunt.

[8] A town of Capchac, long. 98. lat. 47. 30.

[9] A ſmall town ſix leagues from Sabran.

Book III. ſoldiers who heard of it; and this army, ſo numerous and well furniſh'd, which might have render'd it ſelf formidable to all the nations, was defeated by a ſingle report, and ſcatter'd here and there like graſhoppers on the plains. In ſhort, the name and arms of the conquering Timur were ſo formidable to his enemys, that as ſoon as they heard of our approach, they made ſuch haſte in their flight, that we cou'd not perceive even the duſt which their horſes rais'd. The ſucceſsful emperor, being inform'd of the rout of the enemy, ſent Hadgi Seifeddin with the furniture of his houſhold to Samarcand, while he march'd with diligence in purſuit of the fugitives. He ſent before[a] him, to gain intelligence, Coja Cheik Coutchin, Toplac Coutchin, Caracan Behader, and Deuletcha Gebegi, with forty choſen men, having each two horſes. Theſe horſemen came up with the ſoldiers of the enemy's rear, who remain'd behind in a place nam'd Sarec Ouzan [b]; they attack'd 'em, and kill'd a great number; but ſome fled.

Our victorious warriors were in the deſart, and about to return home, when they met Kitba Dercan, encamp'd with the hundred familys of which he was chief. They attack'd him ſo vigorouſly, that Chancoul, one of our horſemen, ſeiz'd him by the collar, and took him priſoner. They took all his people captives, ſeiz'd their cattel and flocks, which were conducted with a great deal of fatigue as far as Acſouma [c], where the imperial army was encamp'd.

[a] A hord on the river Artch.

[b] A village of Zagatai, towards Capchac.

Timur

Timur decamp'd from that place, pass'd the desart by the way of Ozencchakel [3], and arriv'd at Bilan [4]; from whence, passing by Sarec, Ouzan, and Courdgun [5], he went to encamp at Alcouchoun [6]. Chap. 4.

CHAP. IV.

Timur sends the Mirza Miran Chah into Coraſſana.

TIMUR, being encamp'd at Alcouchoun, receiv'd advice that the Serbedal [7] princes, and Hadgi Bei Youn Garbani [8], were revolted with the garisons of the towns of Kelat and Tous; whereupon he sent the Mirza Miran Chah thither, who departed at the head of the main body of the army. He made great haste, and as soon as he arriv'd at Samarcand, he caus'd Malek Pir Mehemet, son of Malek Cayaseddin, to be put to death; that so the cause of the disorders in Coraſſana might be remov'd, according to the instructions he had receiv'd. He us'd the

[3] A village of Gete.
[4] A town of Capchac.
[5] A horde in Capchac.
[6] A village in Capchac.
[7] Serbedal signifys head on the branch, because those among 'em who are factious, hang their turbants on branches, in token of resolution. The Serbedals reigned forty five years in Coraſſana, from 737, to 788, of the Hegira. The last of these kings was Coja Ali Muaid Serbedal; he dy'd in the camp of Timur, who plac'd a governor for himself in Sebzuar, where these kings, who were twelve in number, resided.
[8] The same as Youin; several villages in Coraſſana near the town of Tous.

Book III. ſame puniſhment towards Zein Elabeddin, and Mahmoud, ſon of Malek Pir Mehemet; inſomuch that there remain'd not one of the family of theſe Courdes princes.

This young Mirza at length departed from Samarcand for Coraſſana; and as he paſs'd by the fields of Behrabad [2], he met the Serbedal kings, who affecting to ſhew their bravery on all occaſions, came to meet him at the head of their army. Theſe deſperate men, who had reſolv'd to conquer or die, fell furiouſly upon Timur's ſon, who ſuſtain'd the onſet with unparallel'd reſolution; and having given a thouſand marks of his great courage in this bloody action, his right and left wings advanc'd, and ſo dextrouſly ſurrounded the Serbedals, that they found themſelves taken like birds in a net. Then all the army fell upon 'em, and cut 'em in pieces. Prince Melouc was the only perſon who found means to eſcape, tho half dead, and to fly into Perſia with two or three of his guards, who comforted him in his misfortunes. The Emir Acbouga, who was departed from Herat to quell this rebellion, laid ſiege to Tous, and took it, after Hadgi Bei, younger brother of Ali Bei Youn Garbani, was gone out of it to fly into Perſia; but when he was at Semnane [3], he was ſeiz'd by the Cheriffs of Hezaregheri [4], and ſent to the Mirza, who put him to death according to law.

After the Mirza Miran Chah had vanquiſh'd the rebels, and put an end to the diſorders, by delivering the kingdom from the perfidious

[2] A town near Tous.

[4] A town of the province of Coumes, frontier of Coraſſana and Mazendran, long. 88. lat. 36.

[3] A town near Semnane.

Ser-

Serbedals, he return'd to the place of his reſi- Chap. 5.
dence, well pleas'd with his expedition.

In the mean while Timur having reſolv'd to march in perſon in purſuit of Tocatmich Can, all the Emirs and lords of his council again fell on their knees before him, and as faithful ſervants repreſented to him, that it was more convenient, firſt, to march againſt Kezer Coja Aglen [3], ſon of Togal Timur Can, and againſt Ancatoura, to give 'em battel and deſtroy 'em, as a puniſhment for their boldneſs, and to take from 'em all means of hurting him another time, and afterwards he might ſafely go againſt Tocatmich Can. The emperor finding reaſon on their ſide, follow'd their counſel.

CHAP. V.

Timur's expedition into Mogoliſtan againſt Kezer Coja Aglen, and the prince Ancatoura; which made the fifth campaign in that country.

IN the year 791, Timur took a reſolution to march into the country of the Moguls. He departed from Alcouchoun for this expedition; and paſſing by the road of Bouri Bachi [4], with his army, and the troops of his houſhold, he went to Topalic Carac [5], and aſcended the mountain of Ournac [6]; but as his cavalry was not in ſo An. Dom. 1389.

[3] King of Mogoliſtan and Gete.

[4] A town at the entrance of the great mountain of Caf or Caucaſus, which the Orientals ſay ſurrounds all Aſia, long. 105. lat. 54. [5] A hord near the mountain Ournac.

[6] The reſidence of Oguz the ſon of Japhet, the ſon of Noah, the founder of the Mogul empire; long. 110. lat. 55. It is alſo call'd Ournac Lornac.

Book III. good a condition as he cou'd wiſh becauſe of the leanneſs of the horſes, he ſent three troopers out of every ten to the country of Samarcand, giving their horſes to the ſeven who remain'd; and at length regulated all his cavalry at the rate of two horſes to each man. He departed from his camp, and arriv'd at Aiker Souri [7], where there was no water, which very much incommoded the army, they being oblig'd for two or three days to dig wells to get ſome: but as they cou'd furniſh thence only a ſmall quantity for ſo great a multitude, God provided for 'em; for tho they were yet in the midſt of ſummer, there was in the deſart a vaſt large meadow cover'd with ice and ſnow, wherewith all the army quench'd their thirſt, as did alſo the horſes and cattel. The Moguls [8] then gave thanks to God, and departed to encamp at Togrul Otlac [9], where Timur gave orders to his officers to make preparations for a generaal hunting; in the chaſe they travers'd the whole plain of Aigheryali [1], where ſeveral wild aſſes were taken. They carry'd away the fatteſt, and left the others; and at length the army arriv'd at the plain of Oulanyarlic [2], where it encamp'd in a place nam'd Chipar Aigher: at this place they perceiv'd Outambouga and Inekechic with a thouſand horſe belonging to Ancatoura, who march'd over theſe plains to ſeek the hord of Behrine. Mirec Eltchi and Pir Alitaz commanded the vanguard of

[7] A hord at the foot of the mountain Ournac.

[8] The author here calls Timur and the ſoldiers of his army Moguls, becauſe that prince deſcended from 'em.

[9] The meadow of the falcon, a hord in the kingdom of Gete, near the mountain Ornac.

[1] A paſſage of the river Tic.

[2] A plain in Gete, in which is a town call'd Chipar Aigher.

the

the right wing of our army; they vigorouſly attack'd the enemy, and with ſo much ſucceſs, that they turn'd their backs and fled. Our men ſeiz'd on one of their ſoldiers, whom they brought to Timur: this prince having queſtion'd him concerning the condition of the enemy, learnt that Ancatoura was at Ouronc [3]; whereupon he diſpatch'd the Cheik Ali Behader, Aicoutmur and other Emirs to fight him: he order'd 'em to uſe all poſſible expedition to join him at Ouronkyar, and enjoin'd 'em not to make any fire all the way, that the enemy might have no news of their march. Timur immediately follow'd 'em, and march'd all night to make more haſte. Next morning they perceiv'd that the guide having loſt his way, the troops were not in the right road, which oblig'd our men to march all that day to regain the road by Caian Cazi [3]; and at the approach of night they came to Gheucſali [4]. The next morning they re-enter'd the road, and came to Aiokuz [5]: the army encamp'd there, and Timur held a council with the princes his ſons, the Emirs, generals, and other princes and lords who accompany'd him; he told 'em, that as it was likely that the misfortune which happen'd in the road, might have occaſion'd Ancatoura to hear of their march, and to diſperſe his troops, it was adviſable that the army ſhou'd be divided into two bodys, to ſeek the enemy two different ways; which was highly approv'd. Upon this he immediately ſent the Mirza Omar Cheik one way Chap. 5.

[3] Otherwiſe call'd Ouronkyar, a town of Gete, long. 114. lat. 54.
[3] A town of Gete near mount Ornac.
[4] A village of Gete.
[5] A hord of Gete.

Book III. with part of the army, and gave him for a guide the Emir Gelal, ſon of Hamid; and Timur with the other body took the road to Chira [6], Chebadtou [7], Coui Meragh [8], Coragan [9], and Boyurlagou [1]; which places having paſs'd, they came up to Caragoutchour [2].

In the mean while the Mirza Omar Cheik, at the head of his body of the army, paſs'd the plains and mountains; and wherever he met with any of the enemy's ſubjects, he vanquiſh'd and exterminated 'em, till at length he came up with Ancatoura at Coubac [3]. There was immediately made on both ſides the great cry for the battel, which began with incredible vigor; it was continu'd in the ſame manner, and by the goodneſs of God our men gain'd the victory: they kill'd a great number of the infidels, and ſo briskly purſu'd Ancatoura who fled, that they conſtrain'd him to abandon that country, and fly to Cacamaburgi [4]. They took from him a great quantity of cattel: all his daughters, who were of incomparable beauty, fell into the hands of the conqueror; inſomuch that the illuſtrious Mirza, contented with the advantage he had gain'd, return'd in triumph, and laden with ſpoils, to Timur his father, whom he had the honor of ſaluting at Actadictor [5].

As it was a long time ſince the Cheik Ali Behader, and Aicoutmur had departed, and they had had no news of 'em; the Mirza Omar Cheik was order'd to march with a good

---

[6] A town of Geté. [7] A town of Gete. [8] A famous well. [9] A town of Gete. [1] A town of Gete. [2] A temple of the Moguls. [3] A town of Gete, long. 115. lat. 53. [4] An antient caſtle on the frontiers of Gete, and N. of Turkeſtan, long. 115. lat. 56. [5] A village near Coubac in Gete, con-

convoy to inform himſelf of what was become of 'em. This young prince immediately departed; but ſoon after the Emirs, whom he went in ſearch of, arriv'd at the camp another way. In the mean while he purſu'd his road, and when he was arriv'd at a plain nam'd Itchmas Alagheul[6], he by chance met eight hundred of the enemy's horſe, commanded by Carabeian Temour: the Mirza had with him only fifty men, but they were all princes, Emirs, and generals; of which number were Codadad Huſſeini, Temour Coja Acbouga, Hadgi Mamutcha Yeſouri, and Pir Hadgi Erlat; and the other lords were of the ſame rank with 'em. Notwithſtanding the inequality of the forces, all theſe brave men truſted in God, and in the good fortune of Timur; and without heſitation attack'd the enemy, falling upon 'em in this deſart far from any place of retreat, as lions upon their prey. The fight was bloody, but ours carry'd the victory, tho every horſeman had ſix of the other ſide to combat with. The Mirza ſhew'd greater valor than any of the others on this occaſion, and puſh'd his bravery to a point that was admir'd by all. Chap. 5.

Pir Hadgi, ſon of Yetlandgi Erlat[7], one of the moſt valiant warriors of the age, after having overthrown a great number of the enemy, and made his way thro the middle of 'em ſword in hand like a roaring lion, was ſtruck with an arrow, which took away his life. At length our brave men (which is almoſt incredible) put the enemy to the rout, ſlew a great number; and having pillag'd their horſes, ſheep, and

[6] A plain in Gete, near the river Irtich, where there is a ſalt-lake.

[7] The family of Erlat is accounted royal by the Moguls.

cat-

Book III. cattel, return'd to the camp laden with booty, where they were receiv'd with all the applauſe which ſo conſiderable an action deſerv'd. Timur at the ſame time arriv'd at Caragoutchour, where he encamp'd, and divided the booty among the officers and ſoldiers. He ſtaid at this place long enough for the fatning of his horſes. He ſent the Emir Gehancha and Outchcara Behader with thirty thouſand horſe, with all expedition, towards Artich [8], in ſearch of the enemy: they march'd day and night, and arriving at the river of Irtich [9], half the army march'd along the banks of the river, and many ſoldiers enter'd into the iſles and other places where the enemy might have gone for ſhelter. There they found a great many, whom they ſlew, after having pillag'd their goods: they alſo took a great number priſoners, and return'd in triumph to the royal camp with the ſpoils.

At length Timur, having deſtroy'd all theſe Mogul ſoldiers who made head againſt him, put the captives in chains, and ſent 'em under the conduct of Mir Lal, father of Tagi Bogai Berlas, Temour Bouga, and other Emirs, to the city of Samarcand, with all they had taken from 'em.

In the mean while Timur paſs'd the great deſart, and after many days journy arriv'd at Aimal Goujou [1], and lodg'd in the palace of Serai Ourdam, with a pompous retinue and the utmoſt magnificence.

[8] Artich or Irtich, a town of Mogoliſtan, long. 130. lat. 56. 40.

[9] Formerly call'd Artich, a river which runs thro all the country of Gete and Mogoliſtan, and diſcharges it ſelf into the river Oby, which falls into the northern ſea.

[1] Capital of Gete, frontier of Mogoliſtan, long. 115. lat. 53.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Timur holds a diet, and ſends his armys into all the quarters of the Moguls, to fight the Getes.

LIBRARY OF THE BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC

AS Timur's ambition was boundleſs, and the leaſt of his deſigns ſurpaſs'd the greateſt actions in the world, he never abandon'd any one of his enterprizes till he had compleatly finiſh'd it. Tho his armys had ſeveral times overcome the enemy, who were almoſt ruin'd in this campain; yet he held a general council with the princes his ſons, and the other lords of the empire, upon the affair of the Getes, which he was in hopes of putting an end to: he reſolv'd that the army ſhou'd be divided into ſeveral bodys, each of which ſhou'd march a particular way; that they ſhou'd ſurround the country where the Getes ordinarily dwelt; and as ſeveral of theſe people were retir'd into Mogoliſtan, they ſhou'd purſue 'em, and give 'em no quarter in whatſoever province they met with 'em. Purſuant to this reſolution he call'd to the council thoſe who were acquainted with the roads of the country, and who might ſerve as guides: they made their reports relating to the different paſſages and ways of theſe quarters; and wrote memoirs of 'em, copys of which were diſtributed among the princes and generals of the armys. Then a guide was order'd for each body of the army, and the road he was to take was ſet down, as alſo the country he was to ſurround; that by this means thoſe who had fled for refuge

fuge into different places might be taken. And the country of Yulduz was order'd to be the rendezvous of all the commanders of the troops.

The Mirza Omar Cheik, who led the troops of Andecan, had for his guide the princes Burhan Aglen, and Beian Timur ſon of Gete Bikidgec: he went by the road mark'd out to him; made inroads both to the right and left, pillag'd every thing he met, and put to the ſword all the enemys he found: he croſs'd the mountain Doubechin Andour [1], and arriv'd at Cara Coja [2], three months journy from Samarcand by the caravan.

Another body of the army was commanded by the Emir Gchancha, and Cheik Ali Behader, which was compos'd of thirty thouſand horſe well arm'd and mounted; they had for their guide an officer nam'd Sancour, and march'd by a private road; they went to Cara Art [3], and to Chourougluc [4], where they ſlew and pillag'd all the Getes they met.

Oſman Abbas commanded another body of the army of twenty thouſand men, and had for a guide the Emir Gelal Hamid; they paſs'd by Saghizgan [6], Sougoulgan [7], Ligh [8] and Gheyeyar [8], where they treated the inhabitants in the ſame manner they had treated the others.

Codadad Huſeini, and Mobacher Behader were at the head of another body of twenty thouſand men, who having for their guide Co-

---

[1] A mountain in Mogoliſtan near the lake Etracgheul.
[2] A town of Mogoliſtan, call'd alſo Aramut; long. 130. lat. 45. [3] A town in Mogoliſtan.
[4] A vally in Mogoliſtan, famous for the goodneſs of its ſoil. [6] A place in Mogoliſtan, where the king's revenues are collected. [7] Another place for the ſame uſe. [8] Towns of Mogoliſtan.

mar-

martecour, arriv'd at Bicout [8], by the road of Ouritchou [9]; they there met the hords of Boulgagi and Ilker, to whom they gave battel, which prov'd bloody, and continu'd twenty-four hours without ceasing: but at length the enemy gave ground, and our victorious soldiers repuls'd 'em sword in hand, after having slain one part, and put the other to the rout; they pillag'd their goods, and return'd to the camp laden with spoils. Chap. 6.

Timur began his march with his guards and housholde troops, and having taken Kelandoudgi for his guide, he went by the road of Olue Coul [1]; and having ascended Sitchcandaban [2], he again met those Boulgagis, who had escaped the fury of the last battel; he had no sooner perceiv'd 'em than he attack'd these infidels, who were defeated at the first onset, and cut in pieces.

Daban signifys a hill.

It is to be noted, that when Timur march'd into Capchac against Tocatmich Can, he left in Turkestan the Emir Yadghiar Berlas, the Emir Soliman Chah, Chamseddin Abbas, and Cayaseddin Tercan; and when he was upon his return from that country, after having vanquish'd and pursu'd the army of Tocatmich, he turn'd towards Gete, and sent messengers to those Emirs who were in the western Turkestan, between the kingdoms of Gete and Capchac, to order them also to march to the country of the Moguls, that they might assist in the destruction of the Getes who were there. They obey'd these orders, enter'd into Mogo-

[8] A town of Mogolistan, long. 133. lat. 52.
[9] A town in Mogolistan.
[1] The great stream of the river Irtich.
[2] A mountain, long. 124. lat. 53. 30.

listan,

Book III. liſtan, and left on the frontiers, according to Timur's directions, Toi Bouga Cheik, that he might cauſe thoſe lands to be cultivated. Theſe Emirs march'd every where in ſearch of the Getes; and after having gone many days journy, they came to Ourdaban [3], then they croſs'd over the river Abeile [4], and arriv'd at Sutgheul [5], and at length at Tchitcheclic [6], the inhabitants of which were pillag'd, and our ſoldiers enrich'd with the ſpoils. From thence they went to Balaican [7]; and whereſoever they met any of their enemys, they deſtroy'd 'em, or brought 'em away captives and laden with chains. They ſearch'd every where for the hords of Boulgagi and Saloudgi; and when they came to Molzoudou [8], they met Kezer Coja Aglen, king of Mogoliſtan, at the head of a great army: our Emirs judg'd it improper to attack him on horſeback, but as they were not accuſtom'd to fly, they diſmounted and tied their horſes bridles to their belts: they then on a ſudden let fly their arrows on the enemy, and hinder'd their gaining any advantage of 'em. The fight laſted forty eight hours, during which time our men kept fix'd back to back, facing about on all ſides, no one ſtirring from his poſt: whatever motion Coublic, and the other commanders of the Getes cou'd make, they did not advance; and the battel was ſuſtain'd on both ſides in form. Every one thinking it a point of honor that this battel ſhou'd be finiſh'd

[3] A mountain of Gete near Tranſoxiana.
[4] A river which runs into the Sihon.
[5] A town on the bank of the great lake of ſweet water.
[6] A town of Mogoliſtan, long. 117. 30. lat. 40.
[7] A town of Mogoliſtan, long. 125. lat. 50.
[8] A town of Mogoliſtan, long. 132. lat. 50.

with

with ſome accommodation, our brave Emirs made a treaty with Keſer Coja Aglen, which was ſworn to by both partys, and they return'd to Yulduz; which place was the general rendezvous of the troops. Chah Melic Tercan, who thought it adviſable to fly, and was gone into the great deſart, join'd Timur at Keitou [2], where he gave him an account of every thing remarkable in the battel. Upon this news Timur march'd with expedition, join'd the Toman of Sultan Mahmoud Can; and having paſs'd by Conghez [1], arriv'd at Yulduz, where the Emirs Yadghiar Berlas, Soliman Cha, Chamſeddin Abbas, and Cayas Eddin Tercan, who were upon their return after the combat and the peace with Kezer Coja Aglen, had the honor to kiſs the royal carpet. Chap. 6.

Timur choſe the braveſt men of his army, and leaving all his attendance, march'd with expedition, croſs'd the river at Oulakianaour [4], and follow'd the track of Kezer Coja Aglen: he paſs'd the great deſart, and arriv'd at Caroboulac [3]; from thence he went to Tebertach [4], and coming to Couchon Cai [5], he diſcover'd the enemy's army, and paſs'd that night there. When the enemy perceiv'd us, they were afraid, and fled, being favor'd by the darkneſs of the night: there were ſome of 'em who went into the very middle of the deſart, and places moſt

[2] A town of Mogoliſtan near the river Irtich, long. 126. lat. 54.

[1] A town of Mogoliſtan on the ſhore of the great lake Etracgheul, long. 125. lat. 53. 30.

[3] A paſſage over the river Ancora in Mogoliſtan.

[4] A famous fountain at the foot of the mountain Berghiar, long. 136. lat. 50.

[4] A village dependent on Caracorom.

[5] A village in Mogoliſtan, frontier of Calmac.

Book III. diſtant from the public roads, and flung away their enſigns which were black. Thus the army of the Getes was diſpers'd; and as every regiment took to a different road, many went that way by which the army of Timur came, and met the Mirza Omar Cheik, who caus'd 'em all to be ſlain, and pillag'd by his ſoldiers: a body of the fugitives, which follow'd another road, was met and cut in pieces by the Emir Gehancha and the Cheik Ali Behader.

Timur having paſs'd the mountain call'd Nairin Keutel, purſu'd the enemy as far as Caratach[6]; and the king of the Getes, Kezer Coja Aglen, abandon'd his kingdom to ſave his life; neither did he compaſs that deſign till he had us'd ſeveral artifices, ſuffer'd great fatigues, ſeen all his warriors either ſlain or made priſoners, as well as his wives and children, and all the inhabitants of this country, which was entirely ruin'd and brought into confuſion. Behold what extremitys thoſe kings, who are enemys to Timur, are commonly reduc'd to! In the mean while our ſoldiers who had diſtributed themſelves into all parts, gave no quarter to any one inhabitant of Gete, and made terrible havock as far as Coulan Keutel[7]; they got poſſeſſion of an infinite number of horſes, camels, ſheep, and other beaſts; and made abundance of both ſexes ſlaves. Then the victorious Timur began his march homewards; he came to Jalich[8], where he divided among the ſoldiers all the immenſe booty which he had taken from the Getes in all Mogoliſtan: at length he decamp'd from Jalich,

[6] A mountain of Mogoliſtan.
[7] A mountain at the extremity of Mogoliſtan, towards China.
[8] A town of Mogoliſtan near Bicour, long. 133. lat. 53.

and

and paſſing by Cagirtou [9] and Bilagir [1], came to Yulduz, where he encamp'd. Chap. 6.

The Emirs and ſeveral bodys of the army, who were ſent different ways into all the quarters of Mogoliſtan, to deſtroy entirely the Getes, came to this place, laden with ſpoils and an infinite quantity of captives, and had the honor of kiſſing the imperial carpet in this general rendezvous.

Yulduz [2] is a place of great delight and pleaſure: the many delicous fountains, and abundance of paſture, render the living therein ſo very agreeable, that poets have compos'd verſes in its praiſe. The beauty of its fountains is the reaſon of its name; for Yulduz ſignifys the morning-ſtar: the graſs there is ſo ſtrong and nouriſhing, that the leaneſt horſes, when they have been a week in its meadows, become fat and ſtrong.

From thence Timur ſent the Mirza Omar Cheik, with a numerous attendance, to his government of Andecan, ordering him to paſs by the way of the iron-gate, nam'd Coluga, and to deſtroy the enemy whom he ſhou'd find in thoſe quarters. This prince readily obey'd; and as ſoon as he had paſs'd the iron-gate, he met the prince Coublic, one of the great Emirs of the Getes. On the noiſe of the great cry [illegible], and the great trumpet Kerrenai, the armys of the Mirza and Coublic began to move; the attack was made at the ſame time, and all

[9] A town.

[1] A mountain of Mogoliſtan, long. 135. lat. 50.

[2] Diſtant from Samarcand two months journy by the caravan, or four hundred and eighty leagues, at eight leagues a day; it is call'd Cyalis by F. Martini, in the voyage of F. Benoiſt Goez to Catai, and is in the road from Muſcovy to China.

Book III. the field was cover'd with the dead and wounded. Fortune declar'd in favor of the Mirza; Coublic was taken, and his head cut off, according to the law of Genghiz Can. The Mirza, after he had made himſelf maſter of all Coublic's horſes, ſheep, and other goods, and extrminated his ſubjects, continu'd his road by Couzan[3], Outcheferman [4], and the great city of Cachgar [5]; and at length ſucceſsfully arriv'd at Andecan, the place of his reſidence, and the ſeat of his government.

CHAP. VII.

Timur returns to the ſeat of his empire.

TIMUR having accompliſh'd his deſigns with regard to the Getes, whoſe country he had entirely ruin'd, after vanquiſhing the inhabitants, multitudes of whom were ſlain, and others taken captives; and having enrich'd his ſoldiers with the ſpoils, (in which expedition he had march'd above a thouſand leagues) being at length contented with his victorys, he reſolv'd to return to the imperial city of Samarcand. He departed from Ketchik [6] Yulduz at the head of his armys; and when he was arriv'd at Oluc [7] Yulduz, he appointed a ſolemn feaſt, and order'd preparations to be made for a magnificent entertainment, which was to be ſet off with the moſt exquiſite diverſions and

[3] A town of Tebet. [4] A town of Turkeſtan.
[5] Capital of Turkeſtan, long. 107. lat. 43.
[6] The leſſer Yulduz.
[7] The greater Yulduz, mention'd in the foregoing chapter.

plea-

pleaſures. All the plain was cover'd with tents and pavilions, and the ground on which the imperial tent was fix'd, with carpets of brocades with flowers of gold; in the tent was plac'd a throne enrich'd with jewels of ineſtimable value; on which the emperor being ſet, with the ſcepter in his hand, and the crown on his head, he diſtributed robes of honor, and belts adorn'd with precious ſtones, to the princes, Emirs, Cheriffs, and all the lords and officers of his army: he alſo honor'd with his favors the generals and captains of his troops, as a recompence for their fatigues, and in joy of his victorys. But the pleaſure which the brave warriors receiv'd, when Timur applauded their actions, was inexpreſſibly great; in this charming retreat he ſent 'em in cups of gold the moſt delicious wines by the hands of the moſt beautiful women in the world. Chap. 7.

After they had paſs'd ſome days in this joyful manner, they decamp'd from this delightful place; and Timur leaving the Emir Gehan Chah with his baggage, departed on ſunday the fifteenth of Scaban 791, which anſwers to the year of the ſerpent; and made ſuch expedition, that he arriv'd the ſeventh of Ramadan at Samarcand, that is to ſay, in twenty two days; tho from Yulduz to this capital of Tranſoxiana is generally accounted two months journy by the caravan. He render'd to the inhabitants of this great city, by his happy arrival, and the news of his victorys, that joy which his abſence had depriv'd 'em of. The ladys, the children of the queens, the princes of the blood, and the officers of the city, teſtify'd their pleaſure by the quantity of gold and precious ſtones, which they ſprinkled over his head, the magnificence of the public feaſts, and the

An. Dom. 1389.

Book III. preſents which they had the honor to make him: they adorn'd the city, and render'd it ſo ſplendid that it ſeem'd as if the ſeaſon was turn'd into ſpring.

When winter was come, Timur went to Bocara, and paſs'd that ſeaſon at Gheulferketi [s], where he order'd ſeveral little houſes to be built in form of a dome for the lords and ladys of his court. And as there were here ſeveral fine ponds, in which were a vaſt number of all ſorts of birds, and particularly ſwans, he reſolv'd to divert himſelf with fowling. He encamp'd on the banks, and the officers built floats, on which they enter'd theſe ponds, and with great crys and the noiſe of drums and kettle-drums, ſcar'd the birds, and conſtrain'd 'em to fly; and while they paſs'd from one pond to another, the fowlers cry'd out to encourage 'em, but they cou'd not eſcape the furious aſſault of the mercileſs Togrul *, which is the ſtrongeſt and moſt cunning of all the birds of prey: the drums likewiſe made 'em fearful, ſo that in a ſhort time they caught 'em in vaſt numbers. Theſe birds are here in ſo great plenty, that the author of the Mogul annals, call'd Gehanguena, writes, that the princes Zagatai and Octai, ſons of the great Gengiz Can, paſs'd a whole winter in this ſport in this country, from whence they ſent every week fifty camels laden with ſwans, to be diſtributed in the general camp, which was without Samarcand: and this diſtribution of the birds is call'd by the Tartars Chirilga. But no other author makes mention of this particular cuſtom. During the winter, Soliman Chah was elevated to the higheſt degree of fortune, and was particular-

* Abird unknown in France.

[s] A pond near Bocara.

ly

ly favor'd by Timur, who gave him the illuſtrious princeſs Sultan Bact Begum [a] in marriage; for whom he had banquets prepar'd, and the moſt magnificent preſents. Chap. 7.

After the Mirza Miran Chah had finiſh'd, according to the emperor's intentions, the affairs for which he was ſent into Coraſſana, he began his march to return to court: the Emirs and other lords went to meet him with great ceremony, and he paid his reſpects to Timur in his winter-quarters at Bocara. He was very handſomly receiv'd, Timur tenderly embrac'd him, and having kiſs'd his face, he entertain'd him, and enquir'd concerning all the circumſtances of his journy. The Mirza entirely ſatisfy'd him in his anſwers; having kiſs'd the earth, and made ſupplications to God, according to cuſtom, he offer'd his preſents, which very much pleas'd Timur, who applauded him in every thing, and order'd him to ſet down in a rank worthy of his grandeur. The joy at his arrival was univerſal, becauſe it was apprehended, that this prince added freſh glory to religion and the ſtate.

The emperor was deſirous that during this winter the young Mirza Aboubecre, ſon of Mirza Miran Chah, ſhou'd be betroth'd to the daughter of the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin. The princeſs Canzade prepar'd the marriage-feaſt. But as there is no happineſs without a mixture of ſorrow, and 'tis the divine appointment that we ſhou'd weep in the midſt of joy, the illuſtrious lady Coudac Catoun, wife of Timur's father, paſs'd from this tranſitory world to eternity. Timur ſhew'd much affliction at the loſs

[a] Widow of Mireke, and daughter of Timur.

Book III. of this venerable lady, prepar'd funeral-banquets, and gave much alms to the poor, the lame and the orphans. The body of the princeſs was carry'd to the town of Kech, where it was inter'd.

After winter, Timur departed for Samarcand with all his court, hunted in his march; and having paſs'd by Carchi, went to encamp at Akiar in the agreeable meadow of Kech, on the bank of the river of Cochca[1]. The ground on which the royal tent was prepar'd was cover'd with brocade, as was all the field with ſtandards and umbrellas.

CHAP. VIII.

The Conroultai, or diet, held by Timur's order.

AS the valor of Timur, and the power of the Turks[2], eſpecially of the ſoldiers of Zagatai, was now arriv'd to a very high pitch; ſo they were not only independent and ſovereigns, but even made all the other people from the eaſt of Aſia, to the weſt of that part of the world, to tremble: and by the large booty the ſoldiers had gain'd in the ſeveral campains, they were become ſo rich, that the officers, to maintain their own power, ſeem'd to employ themſelves only in ſuing only the protection of thoſe princes

[1] A river which runs into the Toum, which diſcharges it ſelf into the Gihon.

[2] The author here calls the Zagataian ſoldiers Turks, as in other places he gives 'em the name of Moguls.

who

who they ſuppos'd might one day be their maſ- Chap. 8.
ters. Timur therefore thought it adviſable to
enlarge the regiments, and by that means aug-
ment the expences of the commanders, and di-
miniſh their riches, which might ſeduce 'em
from their obedience. In the year 792, which An. Dom.
anſwers to that of the horſe, he ſent orders to 1390.
all parts of his dominions for holding the Cou-
roultai at Akiar, where he was encamp'd.

All the Emirs and generals of the army, the chiefs of the Tomans, and Hezares, the centurions and captains of ten men, as alſo the governors of the provinces, came to the ſolemn banquet, which was uſually made in that aſſembly; the ceremonys whereof were obſerv'd with ſo much prudence and regularity, that it ſeem'd as if they were once again in the times of Feridon [s] or Afraſiab [t]. When the order for augmenting the regiments of the army was ſignify'd, all the commanders fell down, and kiſs'd the earth, in token of obedience; they agreed to every thing contain'd in the order of their ſovereign, and the whole was regulated according to his pleaſure; they all gave it under their hands, that they wou'd bring to the general rendezvous the number of troops they were tax'd at. The Tavatchis *, who took their ſubſcription, were the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, the Emir Gehancha Jacou, and the Emir Chamſeddin Abbas. At the diſſolution of this numerous aſſembly there was another magnificent feaſt made

* Commiſſarys general.

[s] An antient king of the Perſians about the time of the deluge.

[t] An antient king of the Tartars or Scythians.

In their times were made feaſts wherein fifty thouſand men were ſumptuouſly entertain'd. See the hiſtory of Chah Name, or of the kings of Perſia, by Fardihouſſy.

Book III. by Timur's order, the expences of which were prodigious great. The princeſſes and ladys were all adorn'd with the richeſt jewels; the earth was cover'd with carpets of gold, China brocades, and embroider'd pieces of work enrich'd with pearls, rubys, and other precious ſtones: the cups, which were preſented by the moſt beautiful women in the world, were of pure rock-chryſtal, work'd with all the delicacy and fineneſs which can be expected from the skill and induſtry of the moſt ingenious artiſts of paſt ages. Timur laid hold on this occaſion, where the joy was ſo general, to give in marriage the princeſs Sevindge Cotluc Aga, daughter of Chirin Bei Aga, who was exceedingly handſom and much belov'd by him, to the Mirza Omar Cheik his grandſon: and after the ſolemnity of the nuptials was over, the Mirza Miran Chah was order'd to return into Coraſſana, and the Mirza Omar Cheik to Andecan, as the Emirs and governors were to their reſpective governments and hords. The emperor alſo departed home, and ſome days after came down to the meadow of Ilgazigage, ſituate without the town of Samarcand, after having put the affairs of his empire in all neceſſary order.

CHAP. IX.

Timur ſends his troops into the country of the Getes.

AT the beginning of the ſame year the emperor ſent into the country of the Getes the Emirs Soliman Chah, Codadad Huſſeini, Chamſeddin Abbas, and his brother the Emir Oſman

Oſman; and among the colonels of the regi- Chap. 9.
ments and the officers of the houſhold, he ſent Saddictaban, Sultan Sendger, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, Haſſan Jandar, Tilec Coutchin, Aid Coja, Toukel Baourchi, and Nuſret Comari, who commanded twenty thouſand horſe. As ſoon as they had croſs'd the Sihon at Tachkunt, they march'd to Iſſigheul[5], where they met the Emir Malich Aperdi and his ſon Beikech, with Badir and Sadir, Turcomans, at the head of five thouſand brave men who came from Andecan from Mirza Omar Cheik, and join'd our army. When they arriv'd at Gheuctopa[6], they ſtaid ſome days to inform themſelves of the ſtate of the enemy; they took the road of the mountain Arjatou[7], met many of the enemy, of whom they ſlew ſeveral, and took others priſoners; they carry'd away their wives and children, pillag'd their goods, and deſtroy'd the country. Thus they went thro all the provinces of the Getes, and advanc'd as far as Almalegh, where having ſwam over the river Abeile[8], they arriv'd at Caratal, a hord of Ancatoura; there they learnt that Olagiai Bouga Moutchel Catchi, of the family of the Coutchins, who went before 'em at the head of four hundred horſe to gain intelligence, had met Camaroddin in a hunting-country, that our men had been worſted, and that the greateſt part of the ſoldiers on each ſide were kill'd on the ſpot. Upon this news the Emirs ſent Haſſan Jander, Malich and Beikech, to inform themſelves more truly of this event. Theſe captains, whoſe prudence and va-

[5] A lake near Berket in Gete, long. 100. lat. 43.
[6] A hill in Gete, long. 101. 20. lat. 43. 25.
[7] A mountain of Gete near Almalegh, long. 102. lat. 44.
[8] A river which diſcharges it ſelf into the Sihon.

lor

Book. III lor were well known, immediately departed, and arriving at the field of battel, ſaw a great many lie dead on the earth; and among 'em one of our men of the hord of Malangou, in whom there remain'd a little life, he having eat nothing but herbs for forty days: they comforted him, and brought him to the Emirs. He aſſur'd 'em that in this place they had fought Camareddin, that there were many ſoldiers ſlain on both ſides, and that ours fled after having been ſufficiently maul'd, and that Camareddin march'd towards the fields of Itchna Boutchna [9]. The Emirs immediately departed in ſearch of him, and having paſs'd by Itchna Boutchna, they arriv'd at Ouker Keptadgi [1], where they left their baggage, and departed thence poſt; and when they were arriv'd on the banks of the river Irtich, they learnt that Camareddin had croſs'd it, and was gone towards Taoulas [2], into the woods where ſables and ermins are ſaid to be found: they ſaw the rafts and boats the enemys had built to croſs the water. The Emirs ſtaid ſome days at this place, and croſs'd the river, to engrave their arms and red characters with fire on the pine-trees of theſe woods; which they did, that ſucceeding ages might ſee the marks of the arrival of the army of Timur on the trees of the foreſts of his enemys, and as an aſſurance of their conqueſts beyond the river Irtich.

But as there were ſix months paſt ſince they came into theſe deſarts, where they wanted proviſions, and moſt of 'em liv'd on what they got in hunting, and on wild roots; and as the air became extremely cold, they reſolv'd to return,

[9] A town of Turkeſtan, long. 107. lat. 47.
[1] A town of Turkeſtan, long. 100. lat. 48.
[2] A town of Tartary, long. 127. lat. 60.

which

which they did by Altoun Caourke[3], where there is a road made on the banks of the great lake call'd Etrac Gheul[4], and making great haſte, they happily arriv'd at Samarcand, where they had the honor to kiſs the imperial carpet. Chap. 10.

CHAP. X.

Timur marches into the deſart of Capchac.

DURING the autumn of the ſame year 792, Timur took up a reſolution to make war in perſon in Capchac; for this purpoſe he regulated his troops, turn'd all his foot ſoldiers into cavalry, equipp'd 'em with arms, and provided 'em mony and every thing neceſſary. He departed from Samarcand at the head of his army; and having caus'd a bridge to be built over the Sihon at Cogende, he croſs'd this river with deſign to paſs the winter at Tachkunt, between Barſin and Tchinas. An. Dom. 1390.

In the mean while his devotion prompted him to viſit the tomb of Cheik Maſlahet, where they ſay many miracles are perform'd. Timur knowing this viſit was due from him, not only on a religious but even on a political account, in that it wou'd further the accompliſhment of his deſigns. He came to Cogende for that purpoſe, which he did with ſhew of extraordinary devotion, diſtributing among the poor ten thouſand Dinars Copeghi[6]: and at length he went to Tachkunt,

[3] A town on the bank of the great lake of Turkeſtan.

[4] Great lake in Turkeſtan on the frontiers of Mogoliſtan.

[6] The Dinars Copeghi are ducats of gold, worth ſeven livres, ten ſols of French mony.

where

Book III. where he lay dangerouſly ſick for the ſpace of forty days; during which time the Emirs and great lords were in the utmoſt conſternation. This prince was in a manner the ſoul of the world; and the fear of loſing him made many perſons tremble. In ſhort, the people believ'd that his ſword wou'd no longer be able to protect the weak, and keep the powerful within bounds: that the ſecurity of familys wou'd ſoon be loſt, houſes plunder'd, and the cloyſters broke open, wherein true chaſtity is preſerv'd. Whereupon every one addreſt themſelves to God by prayer, and the vows made for his health were ſo ardent and efficacious, that the Almighty reſtor'd him, becauſe it was abſolutely neceſſary for the publick weal. This good news caus'd every one to rejoice; and they render'd ſolemn and public praiſes to God for the recovery of the emperor's health.

When Timur had recover'd his ſtrength, the Mirza Miran Chah arriv'd at the head of the troops of Coraſſana, and paid his reſpects. The emperor review'd his army and put it in order; he made preſents to the generals and other Emirs, and diſtributed among the ſoldiers all the ſilver mony which was in the treaſury; which diſtribution the Turks call Okulga, as the diſtribution of the birds taken in the chace is call'd Chirilga. He alſo gave horſes, arms and clothes to thoſe who wanted 'em, and aſſign'd guides to the ſeveral generals.

The guides of the body of the army in which the imperial ſtandard was fixt, were Temour Cotlu Aglen, ſon of Temour Malec Can of Capchac, Condge Aglen, alſo prince of Capchac, and Aidecou Uzbec.

An. Dom. 1391. On thurſday the twelfth of the month Sefer, in the year of the Hegira 793, the ſun being then

then in the eighth degree of Aquarius, Timur departed from Tachkunt with his court, and left Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir, and Mirza Charoc, to govern the empire of Zagatai in his abſence, and gave 'em for lieutenants the Emirs Lal and Melket. Timur ſent away all the ladys, except his favorite Sultaneſs, Tchulpan Mule Aga, daughter of Hadgi Bei [7] of Gete; who in this journy had the honor of privately converſing with the emperor. As ſoon as the imperial ſtandard began its march, the Emirs of the Tomans and Hezares, and the colonels of the regiments, departed at the ſound of the trumpets, and the court came to Cara Suman [8].

Chap. 10.

At this time ambaſſadors came from Tocatmich Can; they were conducted with all the uſual honors and ceremonys, by the Emirs in the higheſt ſtations. The great ſnows and rains oblig'd the court to ſtay ſome days at Cara Suman. Timur order'd that the ambaſſadors ſhou'd be brought to him with freedom, and ſhou'd enter in at the great gate of the imperial tent. As ſoon as this permiſſion was granted 'em, they ran [9] thither, touch'd the ground with their head, in token of their reſpect to the emperor; and they us'd nothing but the moſt reſpectful compliments, by which they begg'd pardon for their maſter, and aſcrib'd a thouſand praiſes to Timur. At length they pre-

[7] Hadgi Bei Ircanout, prince of the Getes.

[8] A town of Capchac, long. 99. lat. 45. 6.

[9] The cuſtom at the entry of ambaſſadors ſent to the Tartar emperors, is this: as ſoon as the gate of the imperial pavilion is open, and a ſign made to advance, they run to caſt themſelves at the feet of the throne.

ſented

Book III. ſented to him a Choncar[1], and nine horſes of ſurprizing ſwiftneſs. He indeed took the Choncar in his hand: but he gave the ambaſſadors no other marks of a good reception or compliance, tho it was the cuſtom of this great prince to careſs all ambaſſadors. Thoſe who perceiv'd this difference of reception, ſaid all they cou'd to engage Timur to pardon Tocatmich. To conclude their audience, they preſented alſo, thro the interceſſion of the great Emirs, the letter of Tocatmich Can, which contain'd the following words.

" Your majeſty has always acted the part of " a father towards me; you have always nou- " riſh'd and brought me up as your ſon, and the " favors I have receiv'd from you are innume- " rable. If my wicked proceedings and the " war I have carry'd on by the inſtigation of " ſome malicious perſons, which has been my " misfortune, and of which I repent and am " aſham'd, can once more find pardon from the " clemency of my lord, this will be an addi- " tion to the obligations I owe to him; this " goodneſs will make me conſider what I am, " and hereafter, far from acting contrary to " the treatys made with his majeſty, I will do " every thing which ſhall pleaſe him in token of " my reſpect and thankfulneſs: in ſhort, I will " be a ſubmiſſive and obedient ſervant to his " orders."

[1] A ſort of bird of prey preſented to the kings, adorn'd with ſeveral precious ſtones; which is a mark of homage: and the Muſcovites, as well as the Crim Tartars, are oblig'd by their laſt treaty with the Ottomans, to ſend one every year adorn'd with a certain number of diamonds, to the port of the grand ſeignior of the Ottomans.

Timur

Timur anſwer'd the ambaſſadors in theſe terms: " When your maſter Tocatmich was " wounded and ill us'd by his enemys, and " came for refuge to us, every one knows that " I rank'd him among my children, and us'd " him kindly. At length looking upon his " intereſt as my own, I made war on Ourous " Can, and march'd my troops againſt him; " which was the reaſon that great part of my " cavalry, and an infinite number of equipages " and riches entirely periſh'd by reaſon of the " cold which this winter was extremely violent. " Notwithſtanding this misfortune, I endea- " vour'd to maintain and defend him againſt " every one; I ſeparated his country and ſub- " jects from thoſe of Ourous Can, and put 'em " into his hands: at length I render'd him ſo " powerful, that he was crown'd emperor of " Capchac, and aſcended the throne of Touchi. " Truly I confeſs that this good fortune comes " from God, but I know at the ſame time I " have been the inſtrument of it: and the friend- " ſhip I had for him induc'd me to call him ſon, " while he call'd me father. When he ſaw him- " ſelf powerful, and fortune had begun to be " favorable to him, he forgot the obligations " he ow'd me: and without thinking in what " manner a ſon ought to behave towards a fa- " ther, he took the opportunity, while I was " gone into Perſia, and was employ'd in the " conqueſts of the kingdoms of the Perſians " and Medes, to betray me and commit acts of " hoſtility againſt me. He hath ſent his troops " to ruin the places near my kingdom. I ſeem'd " to take notice of it, that he might conſider " with himſelf, be aſham'd of his action, and " for the future abſtain from the like extrava- " gances. But he was ſo drunk with his ambi- " tion,

Chap. 10.

Book III. " tion, that not diſtinguiſhing good from evil,
" he hath ſince ſent another great army againſt
" me, the vanguard of which, compos'd of a
" conſiderable body of horſe, is enter'd into my
" country. It is true, as ſoon as we put our-
" ſelves in a readineſs to march againſt this
" vanguard, they fled before they cou'd per-
" ceive the duſt our horſes made: and now To-
" catmich having advice of our march, begs
" pardon, becauſe he knows no other way to
" ſave himſelf from the puniſhment he deſerves.
" But ſince we have ſeen him ſo often violate
" his oaths, and treatys, it wou'd be impru-
" dence to rely on his promiſes. We will exe-
" cute, with the aſſiſtance of God, the reſo-
" lution we have taken, and the deſign for
" which we have levy'd our army, that all the
" world may ſee that God puniſhes the ingrate-
" ful. In the mean while, whatever reaſon we
" have for making war, and exterminating him;
" if he preſently tells the truth, and ſincerely
" deſires peace, he muſt ſend to meet us Ali
" Bei [2], that he may negotiate it with our great
" Emirs; and we will do whatever is con-
" ſiſtent with our dignity, and the preſent con-
" juncture."

Timur then order'd the ambaſſadors to be regal'd, and gave 'em veſts of gold ſtuffs; he ſettled their expences, and commanded that they ſhould be handſomly treated, but that his officers ſhou'd have an eye upon their actions.

March 5. The ſixth day of the month of Rabyulevel, Timur held a council with the princes his ſons and the great Emirs; and it was reſolv'd that the ambaſſadors of Tocatmich ſhou'd follow the

[2] Firſt miniſter of Tocatmich Can.

army, which at length march'd to the conqueſt of the empire of Touchi: they paſs'd by Yaſſi, Caratchoc [3], and Sabran; and having gone a long way, and encamp'd and decamp'd for three weeks in the vaſt plains of Capchac, the horſes were ſo fatigu'd with the great way they had gone, and the ſcarcity of water, that they were reduc'd to extremity. At length on the firſt day of the month of Jumazyulevel the army arriv'd at Sarec Ouzan, where the horſes quench'd their thirſt, and the ſoldiers return'd thanks to God; they employ'd ſome days in croſſing the river, becauſe the waters were very high: but having found an eaſy paſſage, they decamp'd, and ſwam over the river. During this night two ſervants of Aidecou Uzbec fled, and paſs'd the deſart to find Tocatmich Can; they purſu'd 'em, but were not able to overtake 'em. The army continu'd its march in the great deſart, and encamp'd in places where there were wells, that they might not want water. Chap. 10. March 19.

The twenty-firſt of the month Jumazyulevel, they came to a mountain nam'd Coutchec Tac [4]; from thence in two nights and one day they went to encamp at Oulouc Tac [4], where Timur wou'd have the pleaſure of ſeeing this great deſart of Capchac: he aſcended a mountain, and ſaw with admiration thoſe vaſt plains, which for the ſpace they took up, and their verdure, reſembled the ſea. He ſtaid there all the day, and order'd the ſoldiers to bring ſtones to that place, where he caus'd a very high obelisk to be erected; and skilful engravers engrav'd on it the date of the year April. 9.

[3] A town of Capchac between Yenghikunt and Sabran.

[4] Mountains in Capchac, between the rivers Arich and Illanjouc.

Book III. and day on which Timur came there at the head of his army, that this ſtructure might remain as a laſting monument to poſterity. The troops decamp'd, and while they march'd follow'd the chace; they arriv'd at the banks of the river Ilanjouc [5], where they encamp'd; and when they had croſs'd the river, they continu'd their march, and in eight days arriv'd at Anacargou [6]. And as it was four months ſince they came from Tachkunt, the army wanted victuals; and what was more ſtrange, in whatſoever part of the deſart they march'd, tho they had gone ſix or ſeven months journy, they met not a ſingle man, nor any cultivated land. Victuals were extremely dear and ſcarce in the camp; a ſheep was ſold for a hundred Dinars Copeghi, and a Man [7] of wheat of good weight, weighing ſix royal Mans, was worth near a hundred Dinars Copeghi; and moreover it was very difficult to get them for mony. Timur order'd his guards, as alſo all the Emirs of the Tomans, the colonels of thouſands, the centurions and decurions, to make proclamation that no one on pain of death ſhou'd bake in the camp either bread, paſtry-work, mutton, pies, tarts, or any thing proper for boiling; but that every one ſhou'd be contented with Boulamaja [8], which is commonly bak'd. The Emirs themſelves began to live in this manner, for an example to others; inſomuch that a Man of wheat of Embar weight, equal to eight royal Mans, with a few herbs added, wou'd make ſixty diſhes of Bou-

[5] A river which runs into the Tic in Capchac.

[6] A hord in Capchac, long. 100. lat. 54.

[7] A Man weighs a pound and a half french weight.

[8] Meat fricaſſa'd and minc'd, with a white ſauce, like a fricaſſy of chickens.

lamaja,

lamaja, and each ſoldier had a diſh allow'd him every day. But as at length they were not in a condition to allow ſo much, many ſoldiers were depriv'd of it, and were oblig'd to hunt conſtantly in this vaſt deſart, and to live upon only ſome eggs of birds and certain animals, with what herbs they found fit to eat; of which they cou'd ſcarcely find enough to ſuſtain life. Timur order'd a general hunting on ſunday the firſt of Jumazyulaker: the Tavatchis gave orders to the Emirs of the right and left wing of the army to ſend out ſoldiers to form the Gerke; ſo they ſurrounded a great tract of land, wherein they chas'd an *infinite number of beaſts and birds; and two days after made a ſlaughter of the beaſts, which is call'd Camarmichi. Chap. 10.

Timur rode on horſeback in all parts of the circle, and ſlew a great number of fawns, antilopes, deers and roe-bucks, till his dinner-time, which was two hours and a half before noon; and then he return'd to his tent: at length the ſoldiers fell upon the game, and ſlew ſo many ſtags, deers and other beaſts, that abundance of victuals was brought to the camp; which caus'd great joy after the ſad ſcarcity they had ſuffer'd. They pickt out the fat beaſts, and left the lean. Among this game they found a ſort of ſtags larger than buffalos, which ſurpriz'd 'em, they having never ſeen the like before: theſe animals are call'd Candagai by the Mogols, and Buken by the inhabitants of Capchac; they ſlew a great many of 'em, and the army ſubſiſted a long time on their fleſh.

CHAP. XI.

Timur reviews his troops.

AFTER this hunting was finiſh'd, Timur was willing to take an exact view of his troops; he order'd 'em to be plac'd by Tomans and ſquadrons, and that every ſoldier ſhou'd have his lance, war-club, poniard, and leathern buckler, and that their horſes ſhou'd be cover'd with tigers skins; he alſo took care that each of 'em ſhou'd have a ſabre on his left ſide, and a half-ſabre on his right. Timur mounted his horſe cloth'd in his royal robes; he had on his head the crown of gold enrich'd with rubys, and held in his hand a golden mace carv'd at top like an ox's head. In this ſtate he began to march by the left wing, which he found in good order: he paſs'd before the firſt rank compos'd of the Toman of Birdi Bei. This general leap'd off his horſe, and took notice to Timur of the looks, ſtature, armor, and addreſs of his ſoldiers; he fell on his knees holding his horſe's bridle, kiſs'd the earth, and made ſupplications for Timur; (for the cuſtom of reviews is, that at that time every commander ſhou'd make ſupplication for the emperor, and ſpeak an elogium on him even in his preſence.) "Let "all the world, ſaid he, be obedient to Timur: "our heads and our lives, as fidelity and our "duty obliges us, ſhall always be ready to be "ſacrific'd at the feet of the horſe of his maje-"ſty." Timur anſwer'd, and applauded the Bei, wiſhing that thro the valor of this brave man and of thoſe who are like him, the empire might continue always flouriſhing. This prince ſtaid

ſtaid at the Toman of Birdi Bei, and examin'd all the companys belonging to it: he then rode towards the Toman of Codadad Huſſeini, which he found compleat and well-equipp'd, the ſoldiers in their poſts, and the ranks perfectly guarded. This Emir, as well as the firſt, on his knees beſought Timur to obſerve the order of the ſoldiers of his Toman, as alſo their ſtature and equipage, and made a diſcourſe in praiſe of his majeſty, and a prayer for his proſperity. Timur anſwer'd him with the ſame complaiſance as he us'd to the other; he teſtify'd his friendſhip, and commended him for the good order in which he ſaw his Toman. Cheik Temour, ſon of Akitmur Behader, at the head of the Hezares of the hord of Selduz, came next in order of battel; theſe had for their arms, bows, arrows, and nets to catch men, beſides a ſcymitar and club. Cheik Temour alſo made ſupplication on his knees, and paid his reſpects. Timur approv'd of his conduct, return'd him thanks, and march'd on farther. He came to the body of the army of Andecan, commanded by the Mirza Omar Cheik, all whoſe enſigns were diſplay'd; he ſtaid there a long time, becauſe this body was more numerous than the others. The Mirza haſten'd to pay his devoirs and to the emperor, according to the maxims of war; which was highly ſutable to the ſon of ſo great a monarch. He fell on his knees, as the reſt had done, and made his vows for the proſperity of his majeſty: he congratulated him on his conqueſts, which extended from the frontiers of China to the Caſpian gates. The emperor was very well pleas'd with the body of the army commanded by the Mirza his ſon, prais'd him exceedingly, and with a great deal of goodneſs ſaid, "I pray God that "fortune be at your diſpoſal, and always give "you

Chap. 11.

Book III. " you the advantage over your enemys." Timur overjoy'd, advanc'd towards the regiment of Mahmond Can; and at length came to the Toman of the Emir Soliman Chah: theſe two generals ſpake as uſual, and gave preſents to the emperor, who careſs'd and prais'd 'em for the good order of their regiments. He at length ſaw the ſquadron of the young prince Mehemet Sultan Behader his grandſon, examin'd the ranks of his ſoldiers with attention, and ſtaid there a long time. This young Mirza made his ſubmiſſions, as the others had done, prais'd the emperor his grandfather, offering vows for his proſperity, which were well receiv'd; and Timur full of joy ſaid to him, " My very dear and " worthy ſon, my family being enlighten'd with " ſuch a lamp as you, can never fail of conti- " nuing in brightneſs and ſplendor."

At length the emperor examin'd the regiment of the guards, which made up the main body; all the Emirs and captains of which made their ſubmiſſions and vows, as alſo the Mirza Miran Chah who commanded the right wing of the army: for after Timur had view'd the Hezares and Tomans, the Emirs and great generals who commanded 'em, as Mehemet Sultan Chah, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, the Emir Gehancha Yakou, and ſeveral others, rang'd their Tomans by Hezares and companys, and put 'em in order of battel neatly equipt. When Timur had paſs'd by one regiment, the commanders fell on their knees, and follow'd him in that poſture; and leading their horſes by their bridles, they made interceſſion for his health, and ſpeeches in his praiſe, full of marks of their good-will and ſincerity.

This great prince encourag'd 'em, and diſtinguiſh'd 'em by applauſes ſutable to the order he obſerv'd

obſerv'd their ſoldiers in. In ſhort, the review continu'd two days from morning till evening; and the emperor found that this numerous army was in the condition reſolv'd on at the Couroultai or diet, which was held at Akiar in the meadow of Kech, and which the Emirs had promis'd in writing. At length they beat the kettle-drums, made the great cry Souroun as at the beginning of a fight, and got off their horſes, inſomuch that every one, ſeeing the exact order of this great army, cou'd not ſufficiently admire the power, valor, and good conduct of the invincible Timur. Chap. 12.

CHAP. XII.

Timur ſends the Mirza Mehemet Sultan at the head of the ſcouts.

WHEN Timur had finiſh'd this review, and receiv'd the compliments of all the generals of the army, after he had animated their courage by his ſpeeches, he reſolv'd to ſend a general to command the body of troops call'd Mangalai [a] in the Mogol language. The young reſolute Mirza Mehemet Sultan fell on his knees, and beſought his father to honor him with that employ. The emperor approv'd the zeal he ſhew'd at ſo tender an age: and granted his requeſt; and having careſs'd him, gave him the command of the body of the ſcouts, letting him know that by reaſon of the employ he had in charge, the generals and ſoldiers of the army re-

[a] The vanguard of the army.

Book III. poſ'd their confidence in him, and that he had need of great preſence of mind, a ſtrong conſtitution, and perfect activity to acquit himſelf worthily of an employ which was the principal part of war, and on which the ſecurity of the army entirely depended. The aſtrologers having fix'd the hour and moment of his departure, which was on the twenty fourth of April; this Mirza immediately put himſelf at the head of the ſcouts, and the great Emirs were order'd to accompany him every where. They had yet no news of the enemy; but the Mirza, after two days march with the Emirs, found a kind of beaten road, and came to the place where they had encamp'd, and made fires in five or ſix places, which were not yet entirely extinguiſh'd. They immediately ſent advice of it to Timur, who order'd expert guides to find out which way thoſe who had lighted thoſe fires were gone: he always recommended to 'em to gain information of the enemy's army, to keep a ſtrict guard, and to neglect nothing, but uſe all neceſſary precautions to diſcover the enemy, and to be well aſſur'd of every thing. The Mirza and the Emirs having receiv'd theſe orders, immediately obey'd, and march'd day and night, greatly fatigu'd, to inform themſelves of what they cou'd: they came to the river of Toupal [a], and having croſs'd it, the ſcouts brought advice that they had ſeen fire in ſeventy places; and that they had ſought every where, but had not found one perſon. They brought word of it to Timur, who immediately decamp'd, and march'd with extreme diligence. When he was arriv'd at the river of Toupal, he found the paſſage deſtroy'd

[a] A river which runs into the Tic in Capchac.

by

by the ſcouts, and order'd the ſoldiers to get faggots and great pieces of wood to mend it; and at length he croſs'd the river with all his army, and join'd the former body. Chap. 9.

All thoſe who were ſent to gain intelligence, wander'd like vagabonds in this vaſt deſart, without ſeeing one footſtep, or learning any news of the enemy. Timur order'd the Cheik Daoud a Turcoman to come before him, and ſent him with a convoy to gain intelligence. He was a man of courage and experience, who had paſs'd part of his life in theſe deſarts, and there ſuffer'd extreme fatigues, to finiſh ſeveral important affairs, and had endur'd the cold and heat of ſeaſons. The Cheik departed according to theſe orders, and after two days and two nights march, diſcover'd ſome hamlets of little conſequence; he went with his guard behind a hill, and on the next morning they perceiv'd a horſeman who came out of theſe hamlets on ſome particular buſineſs; they waited till he had paſs'd 'em, then they ruſh'd upon him, took him, and carry'd him to Timur. This prince treated him handſomly, and made the Cheik Daoud ſeveral preſents, and among the reſt a gold ſcarf to hold a quiver, and a rich and curious veſt. He demanded of the priſoner news of Tocatmich Can; who anſwer'd, that it was a month ſince he and his comrades came out of their own country to dwell in that place, but that they heard no news of the grand Can, tho ten cavaliers in armor, unknown to them, came ſix days ago to 'em, and retir'd to a wood at a ſmall diſtance from theſe hamlets. Timur order'd Aid Coja to go with ſixty men to make the inhabitants of theſe hamlets decamp, and bring 'em to court, which he did. Comari Yeſaoul was at length ſent with twenty horſe, to bring away by

force

Book III. force the ten men who were in the wood. He got thither, and fought 'em; ſome were ſlain, and the others taken and brought to Timur, who learnt from their mouths certain news of Tocatmich Can, on which the army decamp'd.

May 11. After having march'd many days, and paſs'd ſeveral lakes and rivers, they arriv'd the 24th of Jumazyulakher on the bank of the river of Tic [3]. The guide ſaid there were three paſſages over this river, one call'd Aygher Yali, another Boura Ghetchit, and the third, which was the leaſt of all, Tchapma Ghetchit. Timur did not judg it convenient to march by theſe paſſages, leſt the enemy ſhou'd lie there in ambuſcade; but he was willing that at the place they were in, they ſhou'd all, both horſe and foot, ſwim over the river: yet this cou'd not be done in leſs than two days, becauſe the army was ſo numerous. Six days after they arriv'd at the river Semmour [4]; and the ſcouts heard the crys of the enemy, of which they immediately gave advice to the emperor: and even the Mirza Mehemet Sultan ſeiz'd one of the enemy, whom he brought to his father, who inform'd himſelf of what paſs'd in the army of Tocatmich. This man told him that a great many of the hords were come to that place; but that having advice of Timur's march, they had decamp'd and were return'd, as ſoon as they knew the place where their enemys were. Timur forbid any one ſtirring from his regiment, order'd that no fire ſhou'd be made during the night, and caus'd his army to depart when he had rang'd 'em in order

[3] A river of Capchac, which runs into the Caſpian ſea, long. 93. lat. 47.

[4] Which diſcharges it ſelf into the Tic.

of

of battel. They march'd on the ſound of in- Chap. 12.
ſtruments of warlike muſick; and when this vaſt multitude began to move, it reſembled the troubled ocean. The firſt day of the moon of Regeb, May 17.
the army arriving at the river of Ayic [s], Timur ſtopt at the foot of a bridge, and firſt caus'd the vanguard to croſs over, and then the main body, (for the right and left wings ſwam over the river) and then he paſs'd the bridge, and continued his march. In the mean while our ſcouts took three of the enemys, and brought 'em to Timur, who queſtion'd 'em concerning the ſtate of their army. They ſaid that Tocatmich Can having no news of the Army of Zagatai, the two ſervants of Aidecqu who fled from the camp, came to ſeek him, and inform'd him of the approach of an army more numerous than the ſands of the deſart, or the leaves of trees, with Timur at the head of it: that when Tocatmich heard this news, he was enrag'd to a very great degree, and ſaid he wou'd raiſe two armys; and at the ſame time he ſent orders into all the provinces to aſſemble the troops, and went to encamp himſelf at Kerc Gheul [t], from whence he ſent out other orders to levy ſoldiers. Tocatmich imagin'd that when Timur ſhou'd arrive at the river of Tic, he wou'd croſs it by the ordinary paſſages; wherefore he lay in ambuſcade in that paſſage to ſurprize him: but the emperor being forewarn'd of the deſigns of Tocatmich, ſwam over the river at another place, and came near him without danger. Whatever was the cauſe, this prince underſtanding the manner of

[s] Ayic or Jaic, a river which runs into the Caſpian ſea, long. 90. lat. 47.

[t] A lake in Nagaya in Capchac, between the Volga and the Jaic.

the

Book III. the actions of Tocatmich Can, ſtaid in that place till all his troops were come up to him; he rang'd the two wings in order, and commanded they ſhou'd all have ready their great and little bucklers; that they ſhou'd draw lines round the camp, and make diviſions of it, that the regiments might dig ditches round 'em. This order was executed; every one work'd, and us'd all imaginable precaution, and they paſs'd the night in the ſame place. The next day the army decamp'd, and continu'd its march, and every night obſerv'd the ſame rules. Timur order'd all the Emirs to come before him from the commanders of Tomans to the centurions; he ſpoke to 'em with a great deal of civility, to excite their courage, honor'd 'em with rich veſts, and gave them as well as their ſoldiers particular ſuits of armor, as alſo iron clubs, iron corſlets for their horſes, coats of mail, ſabres, bows and arrows; and at length he march'd with deſign to give battel. They met in their way with many ſloughs and marſhes, which they paſs'd with extreme fatigue; after which they encamp'd to reſt themſelves.

In the mean while the ſcouts brought advice that three regiments of the enemy appear'd; there then came further advice, that behind 'em were a great body of ſoldiers. Timur mounted his horſe, and advanc'd againſt 'em; he caus'd his army to march in order of battel, and then one of our ſcouts brought a ſoldier of the enemys whom he had taken; they inquir'd of him concerning every thing they were deſirous of knowing, and then put him to death. Altho they had ſeen ſome regiments of the enemy, yet the army did not approach; and as theſe regiments diſappear'd, Timur ſent Sevindgic Behader and Argoun Chah to gain intelligence, and

and thorowly to examine into the condition of this army. Thoſe Emirs advanc'd, and learnt that the regiments which ſhew'd themſelves were return'd; they ſought after 'em without being able to meet 'em; of which they gave advice to Timur, who ſent Mobacher with orders not to return without certain news of the enemy. Mobacher departed with a good number of the moſt valiant horſe of the army, and made great haſte; he arriv'd at a wood, from whence at ſome diſtance he perceiv'd a ſmoke; and as he obſerv'd attentively, he heard voices, and immediately ſent ſome men to learn from whence they came; who brought him word, that they were ſome of the enemy, of whom there was a troop in thoſe quarters. He thereupon prepar'd for battel, and went to fall upon 'em: theſe men ſeeing there was no other remedy than fighting, ſtood their ground to ſave their lives; thus the fight began, and the war which ſeem'd aſleep reviv'd again; they reſiſted ſome time, but at length ours had the advantage, and vanquiſh'd the enemy, of whom they took forty, who were brought, gnaſhing their teeth, to the foot of the imperial throne. Timur careſs'd Mobacher, and gave gifts to thoſe who had accompany'd him; he inform'd himſelf from the priſoners of the condition of Tocatmich Can. They told him he had caus'd it to be proclaim'd every where that the army ſhou'd aſſemble at Kerc Gheul; that in conſequence of that order they went there, and found no one, but knew not the reaſon why they fail'd of coming to the rendezvous; that they wander'd as vagabonds in the woods and deſarts, while they had the misfortune to meet Mobacher, and be taken priſoners. After they had learnt from 'em what they moſt deſir'd, they were put to death

Chap. 10.

by

Book III. by Timur's order. At length they brought to him the ſon of the prince of Memac [5], who had been wounded; he fell on his knees, and ſaid that he was upon his road to Serai [6] to meet the Can, but that he did not find him in the rendezvous, and that he cou'd give no other account. Timur ſent Gelal, ſon of Emir Hamid, with Nadila Tercan, Mouli, Sainte Maure, and other brave men in quality of ſcouts, with order, that as ſoon as they ſhou'd perceive the duſt of any of the enemy's troops, they ſhou'd take care, if the others were the greateſt number, to ſhew themſelves and immediately return as running away, by that means to deceive 'em and engage 'em nearer; and that they ſhou'd not fail to give immediate notice of all that ſhou'd happen. The Emir Gelal and the others march'd according to theſe orders, croſs'd the marſhes and rivers, and perceiv'd the duſt of the enemy, of whom fifteen horſe ſeparated themſelves from the reſt, and advanc'd upon our men. Sainte Maure alſo advanc'd againſt 'em, ſpake to 'em himſelf, and return'd flying. The Emirs immediately gave notice what had paſs'd, by Mouli, who join'd Timur with all expedition, and gave him an account of all they had ſeen, and of what had paſs'd, with the utmoſt exactneſs.

[5] A province bordering on that of Serai in Capchac.
[6] Capital of Capchac on the Volga, long. 80. 44. lat. 52. 30.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Battel between the ſcouts of the two armys. Death of the Emir Aicoutmur, and other famous men.

TIMUR having receiv'd this news, or-der'd the Emir Aicoutmur to follow the ſcouts, and to bring him more poſitive advice concerning the ſituation of the ground on which the enemy's army was poſted, and of the num-ber of thoſe who were advanc'd; and he was particularly enjoin'd to uſe great prudence and exact precaution. This Emir haſten'd his depar-ture, croſs'd the marſhes and rivers, and join'd Emir Gelal Hamid, and the other ſcouts. From thence he advanc'd, and perceiv'd on the top of a hill ſome horſemen, who ſeem'd diverting them-ſelves in viewing the fine plains. He ſent to 'em a troop of horſe, the braveſt he had with him; but the others ſeeing 'em, fled, and our ſol-diers, upon aſcending the hill, perceiv'd on the other ſide thirty compleat compa-nys of horſe in armor, rang'd in order of bat-tel in a vally, who watch'd in this ambuſcade an opportunity to ſurprize us. Our men ſtopp'd in this place, and ſent advice of it to Aicout-mur, who immediately departed, aſcended the hill, and us'd all precautions to view the ſtate of the enemy; but as there was a great number of 'em, he thought it not proper to attack 'em, but imagin'd it better to return without noiſe, and repaſs the waters and marſhes. He ſent back his ſoldiers, while he remain'd with ſome horſe behind the enemy, who obſerving the Emir

Ai-

Book III. Aicoutmur ſtaid but with few ſoldiers, and that the waters and marſhes which he muſt croſs wou'd hinder the bringing any aſſiſtance, they fell on him full ſpeed. This valiant man briskly ſuſtain'd their attack with unparallell'd reſolution: he kept back with his arrows many companys, while he and his companions made a brave reſiſtance, to give time to his ſoldiers and domeſtics to paſs theſe rivers and marſhes, which himſelf had alſo done, if his horſe had not been unfortunately ſhot under him with an arrow; and while he was remounting a ſecond, that was alſo ſhot, and imediately died. Then the enemy charg'd the Emir on all ſides; but this intrepid perſon, tho on foot, defended himſelf againſt the multitude that ſurrounded him: he wou'd not give way nor ceaſe fighting, till his enemy, who did not know him, cut him in pieces. This general, whoſe great fame was yet below his merit, had the honor of martyrdom, which is the crown of warriors.

His death was follow'd by that of Herimulc, ſon of Yadghiar Berlas, an illuſtrious man, as well for his birth, for he was a relation of Timur, as his merit, being of the moſt valiant men of that age. The famous Ramadan Coja, and the celebrated Mehemet Erlat, were alſo ſlain in this fight: theſe were the greateſt captains Timur had. On this ſad accident, the army of Tocatmich Can was compar'd to a lamp which is going out, and which, as its laſt effort, caſts a light greater than ordinary in the room it is in. In ſhort, from this time the power of Tocatmich continually diminiſh'd, as will be related hereafter.*

Timur then arriv'd at the bank of the river, having near his perſon the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, and the Emir Gehancha: he got off his horſe as well

well as his guards, and croſs'd the river with them, notwithſtanding the arrows of the enemy, which made an extraordinary noiſe while they flew thro the air. Our men having croſs'd the river, fell upon the enemy as lions on their prey: the ſcymitar of the invincible Timur ſpoil'd the precautions and artifices of theſe foxes; they were routed, and conſtrain'd to fly, leaving on the ſpot the greateſt part of their ſoldiers. Gelal Hamid was remarkable above others: he attack'd with thirty men three companys of the enemy who ſtood in his way, whom he exceedingly gaul'd; and he acquitted himſelf of this action with ſo much skill, valor and courage, that he acquir'd all the glory a warrior can expect from the moſt noble and vigorous enterprize. Nedila alſo fought like a brave man, and made appear his merit, which he had the happineſs of doing in Timur's preſence; as alſo Chah Malek ſon of Togaimirken, who did not ſhoot one arrow without wounding or killing him he aim'd at. Bajazet, who had ſix fingers on each hand, alſo on this occaſion gave marks of the moſt heroic valor. And when the troops were retir'd, they ſurpriz'd three of the enemy, whom they brought to Timur. Chap. 13.

Then this prince return'd to his camp, and order'd the brave men to come before him, a liſt of whom had been drawn up. He highly prais'd 'em; and that poſterity might be put in mind of their valor, he not only loaded 'em with favors, but made 'em of the order of the Tercans, and enjoin'd the Yeſaouls [a] to receive 'em whenever they came to the palace, and admit 'em to his

[a] Yeſaoul and Chaoux ſignify the ſame. They are door-keepers, and have liberty to enter into the chamber and cloſet of the grand Can.

Book III. preſence. He alſo order'd that neither they nor their children ſhou'd be condemn'd, or even queſtion'd for any crime, except they have committed it nine times.

Timur declar'd that theſe privileges ſhou'd be preſerv'd to their ſucceſſors for ſeven generations. He granted ſeveral other favors to the relations of the Emir Aicoutmur, who had the honor of martyrdom; and among the reſt to Chah Malek ſon of Calagigai. He gave him the poſts and titles of honor which belong'd to his father, as alſo the great ſeal, as well as the ſeal of the butterfly *.

And as it was near ſix months ſince the imperial ſtandard ſet out, and it always advanc'd towards the north, the army came to a place ſo near the pole, that in the evening, before the ſun was entirely ſet, the rays of the morning appear'd in the eaſt; and in thoſe places when the ſun is in the northern ſigns, it is not permitted, according to the ordinance of the Mahometan law, that the evening prayer ſhou'd be made. Timur departed from that place with his ſtandard diſplay'd, and went to encamp on a neighboring mountain; where he ſtaid till next morning, and then decamp'd. Tocatmich Can never exprected the arrival of our army; but his ſcouts appear'd every day to skirmiſh with us, and ſurprize us if they found an opportunity: yet as ſoon as our ſoldiers oblig'd 'em to give battel, they fled with all ſpeed into the deſart.

In the mean while Timur held a council with the princes his ſons, and his generals; and as it was there reſolv'd on, he order'd the Emir

* A little ſeal in the ſhape of a butterfly, which the king of Perſia makes uſe of to this day.

Omar

Omar Cheik to put himſelf at the head of twenty thouſand horſe, and to march with expedition to engage Tocatmich Can, and if poſſible to ſecure his perſon. He nam'd the Emirs Sevindgic and Sultan Sendger, the Emir Oſman, Haſan Jandar, and ſome others, to accompany him; and at the ſame time the twenty thouſand men departed: and the Mirza made 'em march ſo expeditiouſly, that on the morrow they had advice that the ſcouts of both partys were met. Timur immediately got ready his army, and imploring God's aſſiſtance who had always made him victorious, he was full of fury, if one may ſo ſay, and march'd to fight the enemy. The air was ſo dark, the clouds ſo thick, and the rains ſo great, that one cou'd not ſee three paces. Chap. 14.

CHAP. XIV.

The army rang'd in order of battel in an extraordinary manner. A terrible fight which enſu'd thereupon.

THE fifteenth day of the month Regeb 793, which anſwers to the year of the Monkey, the air clear'd up after ſix days bad weather. Timur rang'd the army in order of battel; and becauſe the affair was of great conſequence, he us'd his utmoſt care. He divided the army into ſeven bodys, which was never before practis'd among his troops; but it was believ'd this was done by inſpiration from God, to make Timur victorious, becauſe the number *ſeven* is eſteem'd ſacred and myſterious. But as this knowledg July 5. 1391.

Book III. belongs only to thoſe who are acquainted with the ſeptenary and cabaliſtic numbers, we will ſay no more of it. Timur gave the command of the firſt body to Sultan Mahmoud Can, which was to ſerve for the vanguard; and the Emir Soliman Chah was his lieutenant general. He plac'd the Mirza Mehemet Sultan at the head of the ſecond, which was more numerous, and paſs'd for the main body; and this prince had the moſt skilful officers to ſerve under him. The third, which ſerv'd as the rear or body of reſerve, was compos'd of the regiment of guards, and twenty companys of ſoldiers, choſen out of the braveſt of the army, and thoſe who had been inur'd to war; and it was commanded by Timur himſelf, who kept his poſt behind the ſecond body, at a diſtance from the others, that in the heat of the battel, if any part of our army ſhou'd be overpower'd, freſh men might immediately be ſent to ſuccour 'em. The fourth body, which ſerv'd for a right wing was under the command of Mirza Miran Chah, who had for his lieutenant general the prince Mehemet Sultan Chah. He prepar'd this party of troops for battel, after having made all the ſoldiers get ready their great and little bucklers. The fifth body, which ſerv'd for a vanguard to the right wing, was led by the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, a perſon who was uſually in the greateſt dangers, and on the moſt difficult affairs, out of which he wou'd bring himſelf with glory and diſtinction. The ſixth, which conſiſted of the troops of Andecan, compos'd the left wing of the army, and had for its leader Mirza Omar Cheik. The ſeventh body ſerv'd as a vanguard to the left wing, which was commanded by Birdi Bei, ſon of Sar Bouga, and by Codadad Huſeini, two Emirs who had on a hundred occaſions

given

given marks of the greateſt valor, and the moſt unblamable conduct. Chap. 14.

All the Emirs and ſoldiers of the Tomans, Hezares and Sedes, being thus fix'd in their poſts, every one according to his rank; the cavalry and infantry march'd in order of battel, under their reſpective generals; and the motion upon the march of this numerous army reſembled the waves of the impetuous ſea. Some ſoldiers were arm'd with bucklers, ſwords and arrows; others had in their hands war-clubs and partizans; others lances and pikes: moſt of 'em were cover'd with cuiraſſes. The princes and Emirs had coats of mail, or breaſt-plates of iron, and all of 'em wore on their heads helmets ſo neatly poliſh'd, that the great number of 'em dazzled the eyes of the beholders. On the other hand, they perceiv'd the enemy's army, the ſoldiers of which were compleatly arm'd. Tocatmich Can had divided 'em into three bodys according to cuſtom, that is, into a main body and two wings. All his generals and captains were princes of the royal blood of Touchi; and among the reſt Tach Temour Aglen, Bikyaroc Aglen, Ilicmich Aglen, Bic Poulad Aglen, Ali Aglen, Chinta Aglen, and others; as alſo Emirs of great eſteem, as Ali and Soliman Soufi Gangorat [3], Norouz Gangorat, Actao, Acbouta, Orouſionc Cayat [4], Aiſa Bei eldeſt brother of Aidecou, Ajan Bei, Serai, Kuke Bouga, Yageibi Behrine [5], Cougourbi, and other great Emirs of Capchac; they rang'd themſelves in form of a half-moon, and then came in view.

[3] Gangorat is an illuſtrious royal family among the Moguls.
[4] Cayat, a Mogul hord. [5] Behrine a Mogul hord.

Book III. Then Timur, thro an exceſs of bravery, and deſpiſing Tocatmich, order'd all the cavalry to diſmount, and to prepare their tents as if they wou'd encamp: which Tocatmich perceiving, he was ſurpriz'd at the little regard our men had to his troops. This action made him alter his meaſures, and he rang'd his army with greater care than he commonly us'd. Thus the two partys being in view of each other, it was obſerv'd that the army of Capchac ſurpaſs'd ours by ſome companys. Timur, who confided more in the aſſiſtance of heaven than in the multitude of ſoldiers, and the abundance of arms, equipages and ammunition, got off his horſe, and addreſs'd himſelf to God by prayer, as he always did before a battel. He twice bow'd his head towards the ground, and pray'd to God, who was the diſtributer of laurels and victorys. Having remounted his horſe, all the army lift up their hands to heaven, crying out, Allahou Ecber; God is the moſt great; and diſplaying their enſigns and ſtandards, they beat their drums, as well as their great and little kettle-drums. They made the great cry call'd Souroun, to begin the battel at the ſound of the terrible trumpet Kerrenai; and it may be ſaid, there never was ſo great a confuſion between heaven and earth. Then the excellent Imam, Seid Bereke, of the race of Mahomet, who had formerly predicted to Timur his coming to the throne, lift up his hands to heaven, uncover'd his head, and humbling himſelf before God, beſought victory for the emperor: he recited with extraordinary zeal a paſſage [6] of the Alcoran to

[6] This paſſage of the Alcoran, according to the mahometan Cabaliſts, is full of a ſecret and myſterious virtue,

obtain

obtain it; and at length he took up ſome dirt, which he flung in the enemys faces, ſaying, "Your faces ſhall be blacken'd thro the ſhame "of the defeat:" Then he ſaid to Timur, "Go where you pleaſe, you ſhall be victori- "ous." Chap. 14.

At the ſame time the braveſt men on both ſides began the fight with half-pikes, ſwords and iron-clubs. The Emir Hadgi Seifeddin was moſt active in the ſervice of his prince. He was the firſt who with ſword in hand ruſh'd violently upon the left wing of the enemy, which was over-againſt him. This wing ſometime diſputed the victory; but by his good conduct he at length overthrew it, and deſtroy'd all the meaſures the enemy had taken. As their ſoldiers exceeded ours in number, they advanc'd to attack the ſquadron of Hadgi Seifeddin in the rear; but Gehancha Behader, who perceiv'd their motion, advanc'd towards them with his regiment, which he had detach'd out of the body of reſerve. He ſo furiouſly fell on 'em with ſword and lance, that he conſtrain'd 'em directly to return. Caliutchac Behader attack'd the enemy on the other ſide, and made 'em retreat with the like precipitancy. The Mirza Miran Chah, who commanded the right wing, at the ſame time fell upon 'em; and his attack was ſo ſucceſsful, that having put the cavalry into confuſion, he overthrew whatſoever ſtood in his way, and routed the enemy's left wing. Oſman Abbas advanc'd at the head of his regiment of Capchac, and attack'd three companys of the enemy; but he fell from his horſe in the midſt of 'em, and had been in great danger if he had not found means to remount. Then he return'd to attack the three companys of skirmiſhers, whom he put to the rout. Cheik Ali Behader on this occaſion per-

Book III. form'd exploits of the utmoſt valor. On the other hand, the Mirza Mehemet Sultan advanc'd at the head of the main body, and broke thro that of the enemy. The Mirza Omar Cheik, at the head of the left wing, alſo perform'd whatever cou'd be expected from a skilful general and a valiant ſoldier, defeating and cutting to pieces all who reſiſted him. Birdi Bei and Codadad Huſeini, ſo briskly oppos'd the right wing of the enemy, that they oblig'd it to give ground and fly. All the Emirs reſiſted thoſe who oppos'd 'em, and the field of battel was cover'd with blood.

Then Tocatmich obſerv'd how his troops decreas'd. He found he cou'd not be long able to withſtand the ſquadrons which Timur commanded in perſon; for which reaſon he turn'd his horſe another way. He then attack'd the Mirza Omar Cheik; but finding this prince's troops maintain their ground, he quitted 'em, and attempted to fall on Cheik Temour Behader, who commanded the Hezares of the hord of Selduz. Tocatmich, accompany'd by a great number of the braveſt Emirs of his empire, attack'd Cheik Temour with the utmoſt vigor: and tho the latter, with his lieutenant Tomanich, defended themſelves with courage equal to that of Tocatmich, and let fly great ſhowers of arrows upon their enemys; yet the ſoldiers of Tocatmich, imitating the Fedais † of the Iſmaelites, who ſacrific'd their lives at their prince's order, without fear of death, fought with ſo much fury, that the brave reſiſtance of our men was ſo far from diſheartening 'em, that it even ſerv'd to animate 'em. They behav'd themſelves with

† Thoſe who were formerly call'd aſſaſſins.

ſo

ſo much courage in every attack, with their ſwords and half-pikes, that they gain'd the advantage of our men, and almoſt defeated the whole hord of Selduz. They ruſh'd into the very middle of the ſquadrons, and were about to poſt themſelves behind our army, with deſign to keep their ground and gain the victory. But the Mirza Omar Cheik perceiv'd their motions, and with his cavalry fell upon Tocatmich; every one, holding his buckler before him, fought with reſolution. On the other hand, Timur, who was in purſuit of the enemy's main body which he had routed, was told by Tcheke Tavachi, that Tocatmich had travers'd our army with many ſquadrons, and had form'd ſome ranks behind ours, having reſolv'd to maintain his ground. Timur reflecting on this advice, which was confirm'd by an expreſs from Mirza Omar Cheik, deſiſted from the purſuit of thoſe he had defeated, to make Tocatmich repent of his raſhneſs. He carry'd with him his moſt valiant captains; but Tocatmich on ſight of the imperial ſtandard, was diſpirited, and fled. He was not long in reſolving what to do; for being ſeiz'd with fear and deſpair, he quitted the deſire and ambition of reigning, to ſave his life; ſo that his reflection only on oppoſing his benefactor, oblig'd him ſhamefully to fly. The lords and generals of his army, not being able to make any farther reſiſtance, follow'd their maſter's example, and their ſtandards were overturn'd. Our ſoldiers on this defeat were exaſperated againſt the conquer'd, and cloſely purſuing 'em, made a terrible ſlaughter; ſo that nothing but confuſion was ſeen in the Mogul troops. All the army of Capchac were diſpers'd; and for the ſpace of forty leagues whither they were purſu'd, nothing cou'd be

Chap. 14.

ſeen

Book III. ſeen but rivers of blood, and the plains cover'd with dead bodys.

The raſhneſs and ingratitude of Tocatmich being thus puniſh'd by the juſtice of God, and Timur having reveng'd himſelf on the perfidiouſneſs on the king of Capchac, he got off his horſe, and fell upon his face, to return thanks to the King of kings for his victory, acknowledging that he had obtain'd it thro his goodneſs and clemency alone. The children of Timur, the princes of the blood, the generals, and all the great Emirs and officers came to him; they fell on their knees, congratulated him on his ſucceſs, and ſprinkled gold and precious ſtones upon him, according to the cuſtom of the Moguls, in token of their joy, at this important victory. Timur embrac'd the princes his ſons, and gave many teſtimonys of affection to the Emirs and great officers; and praiſing their brave actions, he made 'em preſents worthy of his grandeur. He then choſe ſeven horſe out of every ten in the army to go in purſuit of the fugitives. Theſe brave conquerors departed with expedition to overtake the conquer'd; But as theſe miſerable people having before 'em the Volga, and behind 'em the vengeance of our men, they cou'd not fly far, deſpairing of paſſing the river, or of obtaining any quarter. Thus few of the enemy eſcap'd their fury. The women, children, baggage, and goods of the conquer'd fell into the hands of the conquerors; and it wou'd be difficult to enumerate the quantity of ſpoils which our ſoldiers brought away.

We have related that Condge Aglen, Temour Cotlue Aglen, and Aidecou, three princes of the royal blood of Touchi, bore an antient hatred to Tocatmich; that they had fled from him,

him, and ſeeking refuge at the court of Timur were attach'd to his ſervice both in time of peace and war. This monarch always treated 'em favorably, and with particular marks of diſtinction. He often made 'em preſents of belts, precious ſtones, robes of honor, and horſes of great price. After Tocatmich was vanquiſh'd, but yet had the good Fortune to ſave his life from a thouſand dangers; theſe three princes, ſeeing the empire of Touchi brought ſo low, and the people diſpers'd, fell on their knees before Timur, and told him, that if he approv'd of it, they wou'd go in ſearch of the hords which they formerly commanded, and bring 'em over to his ſervice. Chap. 14.

Timur conſented to it, and gave 'em letters-patent, that no one might moleſt 'em, or any who belong'd to 'em; and he exempted their ſubjects from the right of paying the Gan, which is a kind of tax. Theſe princes, after their orders were given 'em, went in ſearch of their ſubjects with a great deal of joy. Timur follow'd the troops which he had ſent in purſuit of the enemy; and being arriv'd at the bank of the Volga, he encamp'd in the plain of Ourtoupa, which for its verdure, freſh and pure air, ſurpaſſes all others. Here the tent and imperial throne was fix'd, to give a magnificent entertainment to the Emirs. All the camp, which conſiſted of a great number of tents and pavilions, was incompaſs'd with a curtain of brocade with gold flowers, which appear'd the more magnificent, in that this camp was three leagues in length every way, and a man's voice cou'd not be heard from one ſide to the other.

Temour Cotluc Aglen, who was gone in ſearch of his former ſubjects, found 'em; and he

Revolt of Prince Temour Cotluc Aglen.

Book III. he had no ſooner got 'em together, than he had the ambition to think of aſcending the throne of Touchi. He forgot the obligations he ow'd to Timur; and inſtead of keeping his promiſe of returning to court with his ſubjects, he led 'em into the midſt of the deſart. Aidecou was not more ſincere than the other; for having found his men, he march'd with 'em on his ſide the country, notwithſtanding the agreement he had made. A natural enemy will never become a true friend; a thiſtle will bear no other fruit than thorns; the ſeed of the bitter-apple will not produce balm; a reed for mats will give no ſugar; nor a female pearl become a male: he who is by nature vitious, will never be made virtuous. There was only Condge Aglen, who having found part of his ſubjects, return'd to court according to his promiſe. This prince had always been extremely favor'd, and even familiar with the emperor, having ſhar'd with him in his moſt ſecret pleaſures; for which reaſon he met with a handſom reception.

Revolt of Aidecou.

All the Emirs and warriors, whom the emperor had ſent out to pillage the country, return'd victorious, loaded with booty, as horſes, camels, oxen, ſheep, and a great number of captives of every age and ſex. They took all the enemys who had hid themſelves in the iſles of the Volga, and brought 'em laden with chains; and put 'em all into the hands of Timur, to diſtribute 'em as he thought fit. All the poor men who were in the ſervice of the army, and who by labor and the ſweat of their bodys, cou'd ſcarce find ſuſtenance, on this occaſion got together ſo many horſes and ſheep, that when they had a deſign to return to their country, they cou'd not carry with 'em all their

goods, but were oblig'd to leave part behind 'em. Chap. 14.

Among the ſlaves were a great many beautiful girls, ſome of whom were plac'd in Timur's ſeraglio, and the reſt diſtributed among the Emirs. They alſo choſe five thouſand handſom young men, who were put in the Seraglio, to be inſtructed in the particular ſervice of the emperor, and to have the care of the officers and poſts in his houſhold. Then Timur order'd that preparations ſhou'd be made for a ſolemn and magnificent feaſt in the meadow of Ourtoupa, on the bank of the Volga; which was more ſumptuous than any that had ever been in the country of Touran. The ſeveral ſorts of meats, as well as of liquors, were ſerv'd up in veſſels of gold or of precious ſtone, by the hands of the moſt beautiful women in the world, which made every thing appear more agreeable. The ſongs, which celebrated the victorys of Timur, were at the ſame time ſung on the Rihavi, a tune us'd [illegible] ſongs of triumph. This piece of muſic was ca[illegible]d Fatehnamei Capchac, that is, the triumph of Capchac. This plain of Ourtoupa on the Volga was the ſeat of the empire of Touchi, ſon of the great Genghiz Can; and his ſucceſſors have always made it the place of their reſidence. Timur had the ſatisfaction to continue his diverſions on their throne. The moſt beautiful ladys of his ſeraglio attended him, and each of the lords had his own with the cup in her hand to accompany the voice and airs of the muſicians who ſung in the tune Ochac, which was only practis'd when the aſſembly was inclin'd to amorous converſation. All the army had a ſhare in the diverſion, which made the ſoldiers,

who

Book III. who ſpent twenty ſix days in pleaſure, forget the fatigues of war.

CHAP. XV.

Timur returns from the deſart of Capchac to the ſeat of his empire.

AFTER this famous victory, there remaining no more enemys in the deſarts, or in the iſles of the Volga, Timur began his march to Samarcand with the army, follow'd by a great train of captives of both ſexes, which exceedingly pleas'd the ſoldiers, who had their ſhare in the goods, mony, and ſlaves. The inhabitants of the deſart of Capchac live in portable tents, which need not be taken to pieces at decamping, and are with very little trouble fix'd again at an encampment. When they decamp, they place theſe tents upon camels, and march in that manner to the place where they wou'd encamp next. Our ſoldiers in the way diverted themſelves with the converſation of their beautiful ſlaves. Tho in other conqueſts the goods and ſlaves were only brought away, yet in this, even the houſes were carry'd home; which made the camp become ſo ſpacious, that if any one loſt his tent it wou'd require a long time to find it again.

When the army arriv'd at the river of Tic, the love of his country made Condge Aglen, who was a native of Capchac, fly from the army with his men. Which verify the maxim of men of ſenſe, that one ought not to truſt ſtrangers; for ſooner or later we ſhall be betray'd by 'em.

Some

Some days after the army had croſs'd the Tic, Timur, leaving the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin and other Emirs, to conduct the body of the army and the baggage, went before thro the reſt of the deſart, without conſidering the danger he ran: ſo that in the month of Zilhadge 793, he came to Sabran, thence to Otrar; and at length croſs'd the river of Sihon, from whence he arriv'd at Samarcand, where the inhabitants teſtify'd their joy, as well as the princes his ſons, the queens, the princeſſes, and the Nevians *, who ſprinkl'd upon him gold and precious ſtones, and congratulated him on his victory and happy return. Then public feaſts were prepar'd, accompany'd with conſorts of vocal and inſtrumental muſick, perform'd by the fineſt voices and inſtruments; in which the neweſt airs, and charming ſongs compos'd on the victorys of this great prince, were often ſung. This feaſt laſted many days, and there was nothing wanting which might demonſtrate a compleat joy. Timur permitted the Mirza Miran Chah to depart for Herat, while himſelf began his journy to Tachkunt, croſs'd the Sihon, and encamp'd in the great plain of Barſin, near that place. In the beginning of Muharrem 794, which anſwers to the year of the Monkey, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, whom Timur left at the river of Tic to conduct the body of the army and the baggage, arriv'd at the plain of Barſin. And as the army which rendezvous'd at Tachkunt in order to go to Capchac, departed from that town in the month of Sefer 793, and arriv'd at Barſin in the month of Muharrem, we may ſay that this important campain continu'd eleven months.

Chap. 4.

September 1391.

* Foreign princes.

December, 1391.

January, 1392.

As there was a great quantity of booty, and the vaſt plain of Barſin was cover'd with the flocks

Book III. flocks and cattel taken from the enemy; the emperor was willing that the princes his ſons, the princeſſes, and ladys of the court, the Cheriffs and chief men of the ſtate, who were not at the war, ſhou'd ſhare in the booty. He diſtributed among 'em ſeveral beautiful girls and boys; gave 'em ſheep and cattel in abundance, and a great many fine horſes. All the court paſs'd the winter in this place with Timur; and in the beginning of the ſpring this prince return'd to Samarcand. He repaſs'd the river before Cogende, where he entertain'd this charming court with a general chace, becauſe this place was full of all ſorts of beaſts, of which a vaſt number were kill'd.

CHAP. XVI.

The government of Zabuleſtan given to Mirza Pir Mehemet, ſon of Gehanghir.

WHEN Timur with all his court arriv'd at the plain of Akiar near Kech, he appointed the Mirza Pir Mehemet, ſon of Gehanghir, governor of the kingdom which formerly belong'd to the grand Sultan Mahmoud, that is, all the country from Gazna [4] and Cabul as far as India; and from Candahar to the river Indus [5], call'd in Perſian, Abſend. He order'd ſeveral officers, great Emirs and Nevians to at-

[4] A town between Zabul and Candahar, long. 104. 30. lat. 33. 30.

[5] Otherwiſe call'd Abſend and Mehran. It ſprings from the lake of Behre, near Lahor. long. 108. lat. 32.

tend

tend this prince: of which number were the famous Cotobeddin, couſin of the Emir Solyman Chah, Behloul ſon of Mehemed, Dervich Berlas, Iſlam ſon of Eltchi Coja Berlas, and many other lords. This young prince with the Emirs went at the head of a great army to take poſſeſſion of his government: and Timur departed from Akiar to Samarcand, where many princes and great lords begg'd leave of him to marry their children with princeſſes of their rank and birth: to which this prince not only conſented, but he wou'd alſo be himſelf at their feaſts, to let 'em ſee that he ſhar'd in their joy. He went out of the city to encamp in the delicious meadow of Canigheul, where he gave orders that preparations ſhou'd be made for the magnificent entertainments and diverſions which ſhou'd accompany theſe marriages. A royal banquet was provided, at which the tables were ſet in form of an army rang'd in order of battel, Timur being plac'd at the head of 'em on a throne of gold. The bridegrooms were on one ſide, and the brides on the other, all cloth'd in the richeſt apparel. The officers of the imperial houſhold waited on 'em, and the throne was ſurrounded by the greateſt lords of Aſia; ſo that they imagin'd themſelves in the reign of Efraſiab [6], an antient emperor of Touran, whoſe great actions are recorded by hiſtorians. Chap. 66.

There was the greateſt plenty imaginable at this feaſt; the muſicians even ſurpaſs'd themſelves on the tunes Ochac and Ozzal [7]. And to render this joy compleat, the Mirza Pir Mehemed, ſon

[6] Efraſiab, emperor of Touran, was the enemy of Rouſtem, celebrated in Fardaouſi's hiſtory of Perſia, which contains one hundred thirty thouſand verſes.

[7] Oriental tunes for amorous ſongs.

Book III. of Gehanghir, and his brother the Mirza Rouſtem, by the emperor's order, the ſame day marry'd the daughters of Cayaſeddin Tercan; and the Mirza Aboubecre, ſon of the Mirza Miran Chah, eſpous'd the daughter of the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin. They had apartments prepar'd for 'em, and particular officers aſſign'd 'em.

CHAP. XVII.

Timur departs for a war of five years continuance.

WE have a tradition of Mahomet, wherein he aſſures us that he was the child of the ſword, and that the moſt happy moments which he paſs'd with God were when he had the ſword in his hand; and he adds, that paradiſe it ſelf is under the protection of the ſword: which demonſtrates that kings are not peaceable poſſeſſors of the throne, but when they are victorious; and that ſubjects can't enjoy quiet in their familys, but by the protection of the ſword of their prince. The ſcepter and crown, ſays a certain poet, are the reward of that prince who undergoes the fatigues of war, and marches at the head of his armys, that he may arrive at grandure and glory. Thus Timur did not gain an empire before he was maim'd at the ſiege of the capital city of Siſtan. When this prince was on his return from the toilſom but glorious campain of Capchac, his ambition prompted him to repaſs by the kingdom of Iran, which he had before conquer'd, to ſuppreſs the diſorders which had got footing there, thro the preſumption of ſome raſh fellows, who during the abſence of the court

court had revolted. The Tavatchis had orders Chap. 17.
to go into all the provinces to assemble the troops, and to require 'em to get ready for a campain of five years; and come immediately to the court. Timur departed from Samarcand the fifteenth of Regeb 794, while the season was very hot, and caus'd a new standard to be display'd, on which was the figure of a dragon. When he was near Bocara in the month of Muharrem, the grandees of that city came out to meet him. The troops encamp'd before that city; and he was seiz'd at this place with a distemper on the first of Chaban 794. which he conceal'd a long time, and decamp'd; but when he was at Jouidez, a place dependent on Bocara, his distemper increas'd; and he was oblig'd to stop there, and call to him the ladys, and the princes his children. The empresses Serai Mule Canum, Tquman Aga, and Sultan Bact Begum, came with the sons of the emperor, who order'd that the Mirza Mehomet Sultan, who was gone before at the head of the vanguard, and had already cross'd the Gihon, shou'd leave the troops at the place where he shou'd receive these orders, and return to court. The most skilful Turkish and Arabian physicians were made use of; and the Emir Hadgi Seifeldin was set over 'em, to see that they prepar'd with dispatch the necessary remedys for Timur's relief. But the princes, the princesses, and Timur himself, who knew that health was to be expected from God alone, who is the true physician, employ'd not only temporal but spiritual remedys; and order'd the Alcoran to be read. They sent presents to all religious places, and to the tombs of the great Cheiks; they gave alms to the poor and sick, and sacrific'd the finest horses in the imperial stables, as well as others, distributing

May 10. 1392.

May 25.

Book III. the fleſh among the poor. The people's prayers, and the charitys of the grandees ſoon had their deſir'd effect; and what is writ in many places prov'd true, that alms prolong life: for the night
June 10. 1392. before the fifteenth of Chaban, which is call'd Chebeberat, or the night of breves, God reſtor'd the emperor to his health. The joy at this good news was univerſal: and Timur order'd the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to return to the command of his vanguard; while himſelf took
June 20. 1392. horſe the twenty-fifth of Chaban 794. to ſhew himſelf to the people, who wiſh'd him health and proſperity.

CHAP. XVIII.

Timur departs from Jouidez after his recovery.

June 26. 1392. THE firſt of Ramadan 794, Timur gave orders concerning the conduct of his army;
July 2. and the ſixth of the ſame month he order'd the drum to be beat, after the aſtrologers had fix'd the happy moment: and he departed at the head of his troops. He ſent the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin to Samarcand, and went to encamp himſelf
July 6. at Amouye on the tenth of Ramadan; from whence he ſent back to his capital the empreſſes Serai Mulc Canum, Touman-Aga, and other ladys: and two days after, the Mirza Charoc alſo receiv'd orders to return home. The emperor embrac'd and kiſs'd him, and having comforted him for his ſeparation, he careſs'd him a thouſand times, and recommending him to God, took leave of him. The ſame day the Mirza ſet out for Samarcand, Timur departed from Amouye, croſs'd the Gihon, and enter'd into Coraſ-

Coraſſana. Some days after he went to Macan and Abiverd; and on the twenty-ninth of Ramadan to Yaſſi Daban, where on the appearance of the new moon he read the prayer of Beiram, which is the grand feaſt of the Mahometans. He there ſolemniz'd this feaſt with all the ceremonys us'd on theſe happy days. He at length departed for Ilgazigage Cabouchan [8], where he join'd the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who commanded the body of the ſcouts. He alſo found there the Mirza Pir Mehemed, ſon of Gehanghir, at the head of his troops, and the Emir Gehancha with his, who according to orders, were already come from Condoz and Bacalan to join the ſcouts. The princeſs Canzade, widow of Gehanghir, came thither alſo from Herat; ſhe put a ſtole round her neck, according to cuſtom, that ſhe might have the honor to preſent to Timur the princes his ſons, preſumptive heirs of the crown. At this place ſhe gave a magnificent entertainment to the emperor, who made her ſeveral rich preſents. Timur decamp'd on the twentieth of the month Chawal; and arriving in the territory of Eſter Abad, he encamp'd on the banks of the river of Jorjiana [9]. The ſame day the venerable Seid Bercke brought to Timur the Seid Caias Eddin, ſon of Kemaleddin [10], with conſiderable preſents. He told his majeſty, that his father order'd him to come and ſubmit to him, and to ſhew his willingneſs

Chap. 18.

July 26.

Aug. 15.

[8] A village between Abiverd and Eſter Abad in Coraſſana. There is another Ilgazigage near Samarcand.

[9] A river which paſſes by a town of the ſame name, in the province of Mazendran, on the frontiers of Ghilan, and runs into the Caſpian, long. 89. lat. 38.

[10] Kemaleddin was a ſort of falſe devot, of the race of Mahomet, who by his hypocriſy made himſelf chief of his party, and maſter of the town of Sari in Mazendran.

Book III. to pay the tribute, and make a treaty with him, the conditions of which he wou'd perform as a faithful ſervant and a ſincere friend. Timur receiv'd him handſomly, and was ſatisfy'd with his propoſals, for the perſon's ſake who brought him; and Caias Eddin was highly pleas'd with the emperor's favors to him. When Timur arriv'd at Eſter Abad, Piri Pacha, ſon of Locman Pacha, to whom the emperor had given the government of this place after his father's death, paid his devoirs as a faithful ſervant, made preſents to the emperor, and entertain'd him very agreeably.

CHAP. XIX.

The taking of Amol, Sari, and Mahanaſar.

THE army, after three days march from Eſter Abad, came to a wood extremely thick, the trees of which grew ſo cloſe together, that the wind cou'd ſcarce paſs thro: whereupon the emperor order'd the ſoldiers to cut down the trees, and open a paſſage thro this foreſt, tho it had been till that time impenetrable. They immediately began to execute his orders; and at laſt made three great ways, each of which was a bow's-ſhot in breadth. The middle way was deſign'd for the main body to march thro, and the others for the two wings. They inſenſibly arriv'd, cutting down the wood before 'em, at Sari*, and there learnt that the Seid Kemaleddin had fled to the Seid Razieddin at

* A town of Ghilan, long. 88. lat. 37.

Ma-

Mahanaſar[3], which are three towns ſituate four leagues from Amol[4] on the ſhore of the Caſpian ſea; and that they had built a fort on an adjacent hill, which join'd the ſea on one ſide, and inſtead of ditches was ſurrounded with precipices which were commanded for the ſpace of a mile by the ſea, which in turbulent weather flow'd within the rocks; ſo that the place ſeem'd to be in the middle of water. Round about the wall they had fix'd great trees near one another, the branches of which were ſo cloſely join'd together, that they ſerv'd inſtead of a ſecond wall. The princes of Amol and Sari retir'd into this place with their relations, houſhold, beſt captains, treaſures, and whatever they had that was precious. The rich inhabitants of theſe countrys, and the foreign merchants themſelves, alſo retir'd thither with all their effects, confiding in the ſtrength of their walls, and the inacceſſibleneſs of the place: and thus this fortreſs was fill'd with ſo great a quantity of gold, ſilver and furniture, that the moſt skilful arithmeticians cou'd ſcarce compute the value of 'em. Timur inform'd of theſe particulars, order'd his ſoldiers to march with expedition: he paſs'd the lakes and marſhes of theſe foreſts, and in three days arriv'd at Amol. He order'd the Seid Cayas Eddin to go and come with his father, and bring him to him. And as this nation had always the character of being faithleſs, irreligious, and deprav'd in their morals; God permitted that the infamous ſentence which was us'd to Kemaleddin and the other Cheriffs, ſhou'd be pronounc'd by his own ſon, whom Ti-

[3] Long. 88. 8. lat. 37. 50.
[4] A town of Ghilan near the Caſpian, long. 87. 25. lat. 37.

Book III. mur ſent to 'em, ordering him to make the following ſpeech: "You are men not to be truſted, and of a corrupt religion; you have no temple to worſhip God in, and you aſſemble no where to perform acts of piety according to your duty. You neither obſerve the commandments of God, nor the counſels of the prophet; and when any one is about to call others to prayer, you cruelly put him to death. The names of Seid and Cheriff are profan'd by you, and you are unworthy of the honor of being deſcended from the great Mahomet."

As ſoon as the ſon of Seid Kemaleddin was ſet out, Timur order'd that the water in all the reſervatorys, ciſterns, and other veſſels, which were in Amol, ſhou'd be ſpilt: which being done, the army began its march, making the uſual crys. And as it was abſolutely neceſſary that they ſhou'd paſs thro marſhes and ſloughs, the ſoldiers cut down all the wood they cou'd find, which they caſt into the marſhes. This was tedious work; for they could advance but one league a day, and were oblig'd to encamp in mooriſh ground upon faſcines. Thus at length this country, which was ſo full of trees that the ſun cou'd ſcarce penetrate it, became like a large plain, after the army had cut 'em down. On the twenty-ſixth of Zilcade 794, the ſcouts of both partys join'd, and there were skirmiſhes, in which the blood flow'd on all ſides. Hubbi Coja did ſurprizing actions; but he was unfortunately ſlain, being willing to ſacrifice his life to his honor, while he imagin'd that a warrior, whoſe reputation is famous among poſterity, never dies. As he was the ſon of Cheik Behader, his loſs was regretted not only for his valor, but becauſe of his birth. Three days after this battel of the ſcouts, wherein neither party gain'd

Septemb. 21. 1392

the

the advantage, the Seid Komaleddin Deraz and Moulana Amadeddin, came and caſt themſelves at the feet of Timur, to implore his clemency. They demanded quarter, and beſought him to pardon what was paſt: which Timur granted, on condition that the Cheriffs, who commanded in all thoſe quarters, ſhou'd ſend him part of the goods of the inhabitants, and one of each of their children in hoſtage, ſo that he might be aſſur'd of their fidelity. He told 'em, that if the Cheriffs wou'd exactly execute this order, they might ſleep in ſecurity, and come before him with confidence, ſince he had given his word for their ſafety. Chap. 19.

The Cheriffs return'd home, and declar'd the will of Timur to their brethren: but their ill fortune depriv'd 'em of their reaſon; for imagining themſelves able to make a defence, they were ſo far from hearkning to his propoſals, that they caus'd the kettledrums to be beat, and war to be declar'd. Timur, on advice of it, ſent to the Caſpian ſhore Piri Pacha, Argouncha of Bourdalic, Nadercha of Caragheul, and Cheik Ali of Amouye, with the maſters of the barks of the Gihon, and the flingers of artificial fire, that they might get poſſeſſion of the enemy's barks, and attack Mahanaſar. They follow'd their inſtructions, and were ſo ſucceſsful, that they ſurpriz'd the enemy's veſſels, and erected horſes-tails on ſticks inſtead of ſtandards. They diſtributed all their ſoldiers into theſe veſſels, whom they brought by ſquadrons to the foot of the walls at the ſound of kettledrums and trumpets; their colors being diſplay'd. The ſoldiers with their cuiraſſes on, and ſword in hand, made the great cry to begin the attack, and beſiege Mahanaſar in form. They caſt a great number of arrows, with pitch and

Book III. and tar ſet on fire, from the barks into the town; ſo that it is ſaid that the Caſpian ſea was become a ſea of fire. The attack was ſo vigorous, that thoſe who guarded the out-parts were oblig'd to fly into the place to ſave their lives; while ours at the ſame time ſcal'd the walls. The firſt of Zilhadge 794, Timur took horſe, and approach'd the place, which put the enemy in confuſion. They held a council on what they had to do; and perceiving they wou'd be at laſt oblig'd to ſurrender, conſidering the advantages Timur's men had already gain'd, they reſolv'd to implore his clemency, before they were reduc'd to too great extremitys. They came out of the place in companys; and caſting themſelves at the feet of the generous Timur, implor'd his protection, and confidently truſted all their affairs in his hands, beſeeching him to ſerve as an interceſſor for 'em with himſelf, and conſider that they had ſubmitted without waiting the extremitys, tho they were able to have held out a long time, and to have haraſs'd his troops; and moreover, that they had acted thus, becauſe they knew they had to do with the moſt generous prince in the univerſe. Timur highly reprimanded 'em for their errors in religion, for they were Chiais [5], and threaten'd to hang 'em all if they wou'd not profeſs the orthodox tenets of the Sunnis [6]: but he was at length more moderate, becauſe of their nobleneſs, and the honor they had to deſcend from Mahomet, whom he regarded as the ſeal and the greateſt of the prophets. He told 'em that this conſideration, join'd with the re-

Nov. 25. 1392.

[5] A ſect of Perſians at preſent.
[6] A ſect of the Ottomans and the Mogul's of India.

duction

duction of the place and their submission, appeas'd his wrath, and made him change his resolution. After this he treated 'em civilly, and even made 'em several presents; but he continu'd to exhort 'em to embrace the orthodox sect, instructing 'em himself in the charming maxims of the religion of the Sunnis, and errors of the Chiais: he prais'd the professors and doctors of the law of the former, and earnestly invited the Cherifs to be instructed, that they knowing which law is agreeable to God, there might remain no scruple in their consciences. After having thus exhorted 'em, he sent 'em to the town of *Sari*, with orders to guard that place strictly. Chap. 19.

Timur staid some days at Mahanasar, to give orders for the carrying away the great riches, which were brought thither from all parts; he fill'd the barks with 'em, and generously distributed 'em among the Emirs and soldiers, who had signaliz'd themselves on this occasion. After they had pillag'd and clear'd this place, they destroy'd it, and turn'd it into a large heap of rubbish, which is to be seen to this day.

In the mean while advice was brought to the emperor from all parts, that there were in this country a great number of men of an erroneous opinion, call'd *Fedais*, whom the Europeans term Assassins. Whereupon he order'd that all those who were of the race of Mahomet shou'd be separated from these men, and be brought to him; and that then they shou'd put to the sword all who were of this sect; which was immediately done, and the country freed from the disorders those assassins had caus'd there. Whenever these fellows found a stranger, or any one else, with a paper or book in his possession, whether he were a lawyer, philosopher, or a man

Slaughter of the assassins.

Book III. man of letters, they believ'd it lawful to put him to death. Cheik Ali Behader had a great hand in the deſtruction of theſe wretches, to revenge the death of Hubbi Coja his ſon. Eſkender Cheiki was alſo reſolv'd to revenge that of his father Efraſiab, and other relations ſlain by the Derviſes, the diſciples of Seid Caouameddin. They inveſted Amol, that no one might eſcape their wrath, and made the moſt terrible maſſacre in that city ever mention'd in hiſtory. Timur caus'd the Seid Kemaleddin and his ſon to be put in a veſſel to be carry'd to Carezem; and the Seids Mourtaza and Abdalla, with their ſons, and ſeveral other men, were carry'd to Samarcand, and thence to Tachkunt.

Terrible maſſacre in Amol.

CHAP. XX.

Timur ſends a letter to Samarcand.

THE province of Mazendran being entirely brought under ſubjection, Timur ſent to Samarcand the news of the taking of Sari, Amol, and Mahanaſar, with their dependencys: he ſent for the Mirza Charoc his ſon, and the Mirzas Calil and Rouſtem his grandſons, as well as the Sultan Huſſein, grandſon of the Emir Mouſſa, and ſon of Timur's daughter: as alſo the princeſs Beghiſi Sultan, daughter of the Mirza Miranchа, and the empreſſes Serai Mulc Canum, Toumah Aga, and others.

December 1392. In the month of Muharrem 795. he caus'd a very fine palace to be built in a place nam'd Chaſman, in the neighbourhood of Jorjiana. He gave the government of Sari to Gemchid Caren,

ren, native of Cain in Couheſtan; and that of Amola to Eskender Cheiki, from whom the Cherifs had taken it, after having traiterouſly ſlain his father and brother, as they had alſo ſerv'd him if he had not fled for refuge to Timur's court, where he ſtaid a long time. On the twentieth of Muharrem the emperor lodg'd in the palace which he had built at Chaſman. He ſent out Tavatchis to cauſe all the troops which were diſpers'd to return to the camp. He had advice that his letter got ſafe to Samarcand, with the riches and raritys of Mazendran; and that on the eighteenth of Zilhadge, they had made public rejoicings, and beautify'd the city, in token of joy for this conqueſt. The perſon who brought this news had ſeveral preſents made him; and much alms were given away to the poor. Chap. 20. Decem. 17. 1392. Nov. 15. 1392.

Serai Mulc Canum, Touman Aga, and the other ladys, with the emperor's children, departed from Samarcand[a] the twenty-fourth of Zilcade 794, and laid the firſt night at Tutuc. The next day there fell great rains and ſnow, and it was exceeding cold, by reaſon of a hurricane which roſe from the Caſpian ſea. This bad weather did not hinder the ladys and princes coming to Chaduman, where they lodg'd in the Caravanſera's. On the 26th they came to Damas, a famous hoſpital, founded by Timur for the relief of the poor; where they ſtaid two or three days till the ſtorm was over: then they departed, and in three days arriv'd at Carchi, where they met a courier from Timur, who ſent orders that they ſhou'd leave their baggage behind, and make haſte themſelves. But as the

[a] A village five leagues from Samarcand.

Mirza

Book III. Mirza Charoc excus'd himſelf from making ſo much haſte by reaſon of a diſtemper in his eyes, the others came but ſlowly, that he might not be left alone. They croſs'd the Gihon at A-
Decem. 13. mouye on the ſixteenth of Muharrem 795, and
1392. encamp'd on the other ſide: from whence they march'd day and night till they came to Macan, where the diſtemper in Mirza Charoc's eyes abated. Serai Mulc Canum ſent to Timur an account of the health of the princes his children, and of all that had happen'd ſince their departure from Samarcand. The meſſenger was no ſooner ſet out, than they departed and came for the village of Dehi Hendouan, where they left their baggage to make the more haſte. They then march'd day and night, and in thirteen days arriv'd at Chilaoun [s], where they paid their reſpects to Timur. He tenderly embrac'd his ſons, the ſight of whom highly encreas'd his joy for his new conqueſt. The princes and princeſſes made their compliments, and offer'd preſents to him, as uſual; then they went with him to Chaſman, where they found all neceſſary preparations for their diverſion; and the great lords of the court had alſo furniture and other things to adorn their apartments, which render'd the joy compleat.

[s] A town near Jorjiana in Coraſſana.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXI.

Timur makes war a ſecond time on the kingdoms of Fars and Irac.

TIMUR's courage not permitting him to paſs all his life in pleaſure, at the end of winter, the ſun being in Capricorn, he prepar'd to continue his conqueſts. He fix'd the campain of that year for the kingdoms of Fars and Irac: the great generals, the officers and ſoldiers re-aſſum'd their courage; and the emperor ſent the Mirza Mehemet Sultan at the head of the vanguard, with his brother the prince Pir Mehemet, accompany'd by the Cheik Ali Behader and other Emirs. Then he choſe three men out of each ten, who compos'd a ſeparate body, at the head of which he departed from Mazendran the twenty-fourth of Sefer 795, Jan. 20. 1393. leaving the Emirs Yadghiar Berlas, Gehancha Behader, and others to guard the baggage, and conduct the main-body of the army, with orders to follow him ſlowly. Among the empreſſes, Serai Mulc Canum, and Touman Aga, ſtaid with the baggage; and Tchulpan Mulc Aga, Duro Sultan Aga, and Neghiar Aga, had the honor to accompany Timur. He gave the command of another vanguard to Mirza Charoc, and went himſelf to Yeilac Veli [9]; and after having furniſh'd victuals for the army at Damgan [1], Semnan [2], and Rei Chehriar [3], he march'd

[9] A town in a mountain, where the Emir Veli prince of Mazendran paſs'd the ſummer; long. 89. lat. 36. 30.

[1] A town of Coumes, frontier of Tabareſtan, long. 89. lat. 36. 20.

[2] A town of Coumes, frontier of Irac Agemi, long. 88. lat. 36.

[3] A town of Irac Agemi, long. 86. lat. 35. 30.

further.

Book III. further. The Mirzas Mehemet Sultan and Pir Mehemet at their arrival at Cazuin [4] gave battel to Chahſouar, governor of it; whom Coja Cheik attack'd, took priſoner tho he was arm'd, and brought to the two princes, who ſent him to Timur. From thence they went to Sultania [5], the governor of which Actcheghi was dead, and Aznefcha his intendant had taken the government on him in his ſtead. This coward fled at their approach. The two Mirzas ſtaid there eight days; furniſh'd the troops with victuals; and having put a good gariſon in the place, match'd towards Bagdad. When they had enter'd Courdiſtan, there arriv'd a meſſenger from Timur, who brought orders for 'em to paſs by Geb Chumal [6]. Upon which they immediately return'd, and went to take the caſtle of Sancar [7], the victuals and ammunition of which they brought away: then they pillag'd the country, and their horſes eat up all the unreap'd corn.

At their departure there came a ſecond meſſenger who brought an order for 'em to reduce all the inhabitants of Courdiſtan; and to free the country from theſe robbers. For which reaſon they went to Tchebtchal [8], and thence to the mountain of Biſtoun [9], where Sevindgic Behader, Temour Coja ſon of Acbouga, and Mobacher Behader went from the main-body into

[4] A town of Irac Agemi, frontier of Ghilan, long. 85. lat. 37.

[5] A town of Irac Agemi, frontier of Azerbijana, long. 84. 20. lat. 36. 30.

[6] A town between Irac and Courdiſtan, long. 82. 40. lat. 36.

[7] On the top of a mountain, frontier of Azerbijana and Courdiſtan, long. 81. lat. 36. 50.

[8] Long. 77. 35. lat. 37.

[9] Long. 75. lat. 37.

the

the country of the Courdes. The Mirzas Chap. 21.
march'd towards Derbend Tachi Catun [1], whither one of the chief men of the country, in hopes of obtaining the government of it, fled. He told 'em no one knew the road ſo well as he, and if they pleas'd, he wou'd be their guide. The Mirza Mehemet kindly receiv'd him, gave him a belt, a veſt, and ſome gold; and order'd the Cheik Ali Behader to go as a Mangalai, with this man for a guide. Ibrahim Cha, prince of theſe places, handſomly receiv'd the Cheik Ali, ſubmitted, and ſent his ſon Sultancha to the Mirzas with Arabian horſes, and other curious preſents, conſiſting of nine pieces of each ſort. Sultancha came to the princes, kiſs'd the carpet, and made preſents from their father. The Mirza Mehemet Sultan was content with theſe ſubmiſſions of the Courde prince, and ſent an expreſs for the Cheik Ali to come back. He accordingly began his march; but being upon the road, his guide, fruſtrated of his hopes by the peace with Ibrahim Cha, traitorouſly ſtuck him with a knife while he was eating, of which he fell dead upon the ſpot. This brave man, who had ſignaliz'd his courage in twenty famous battels, cou'd not ſave himſelf from this coward, who was taken by Cheik Ali's men, and immediately put to death with the moſt cruel torments, and afterwards burnt.

[1] A defile of mountains near Eclat in Courdiſtan.

CHAP. XXII.

Timur marches to the kingdoms of Loreſtan and Coureſtan.

TIMUR, being at Chehriar, choſe a number of brave men, and left the Mirza Mirancha with the reſt of the army in that place, ordering him to wait the baggage which ſhou'd come from Eſterabad; and at the head of this ſelect body he march'd to Ouroudgerd [3]. The Mirza Omar Cheik, at the head of the left wing, march'd by Kiochki Toupan [4] and Ave [5], to beſiege the fortreſs of Kiou [6]; which he took after a ſhort defence, and put the governor Mehemet Comi in chains. The next day he went to Marvan [7], the governor of which place, Mehemet Perahhani, who commanded there for Mehemet Comi, came to him, and ſaluted him. From thence he march'd to Kerheroud [8]. Esfendiar the governor, not imagining himſelf ſtrong enough to make a defence, came out of it, was ſeiz'd and carry'd to the Mirza, who ſent him to the emperor with Mehemet Comi.

Feb. 26. 1393. Timur arriv'd at Ouroudgerd the firſt of Rabiulakher 795; to which place the Mirza Omar

[3] A town eighteen leagues from Hamadan in the province of Couheſtan in Irac Agemi, long. 84. 40. lat. 34. 25.
[4] A hill between Rei and Ave.
[5] A town of Couheſtan between Rei and Hamadan, long. 85. lat. 35. 50.
[6] On a mountain, long. 84. lat. 36.
[7] A town of Couheſtan, near Hamadan, long. 84. lat. 35. 30.
[8] A town of Couheſtan, long. 84. 10. lat. 35.

Cheik

Cheik came, after he had paſs'd by Turvan [1]: and with Timur's permiſſion he return'd to the right wing of the army. Timur gave the command of the militia of Ouroudgerd to Seifeddin; and leaving Cheik Micail with the government of Nehavend [2], three days after he arriv'd at Corram Abad [3], the governor of which, Malek Azzeddin, not daring to defend himſelf, fled. Timur ſtaid one night in theſe quarters, left troops to beſiege the place, and order'd the Mirza Omar Cheik to purſue Malek. Then he ſent partys of horſe into all the quarters of the kingdom of Loreſtan, to exterminate the robbers, and put a ſtop to the diſorders they committed. Timur departed from Corram Abad to Toſtar [4]; and when he was almoſt at the end of his day's march, he plac'd ſome brave men in ambuſcade near the high-ways, who ſlew the Lores robbers as they went into their cottages from the mountains. Timur arriv'd in eleven days at the bridge of the river Abzal [5]. The Mirza Omar Cheik diligently purſu'd Malek. Chap. 22.

[1] A town of Couheſtan, long. 84. 40. lat. 35.

[2] Otherwiſe call'd Nouhavend, a town of Couheſtan, built by Noah, on a mountain fourteen leagues ſouth from Hamadan, near Ouroudgerd; long. 83. 50. lat. 34. 10. Here was a famous battel between the Mahometans, commanded by the Calif Omar, ſon of Elcattab, and the king of Perſia, Yez Degerd, who was vanquiſh'd, and loſt his kingdom, A. D. 638.

[3] A fortreſs of Loreſtan near the town of Lor, long. 84. lat. 32. 40. the reſidence of the prince of Loreſtan.

[4] Capital of Coureſtan, between the kingdom of Fars and the Perſian gulf, towards Baſra and Vaſet; long. 84. 30. lat. 31. 20. It is accounted the antienteſt city in the world.

[5] A river which runs thro Coureſtan by Toſtar, and falls into the Perſian gulph at Hiſſn Mehdi. Sapor king of Perſia caus'd an aqueduct to be built from one of its branches a mile long, which conveys water to the city of Toſtar; it is the moſt remarkable and curious machine extant.

Book III. Azeddin as far as the caſtle of Munkere [5]; but he cou'd hear nothing of him: he reduc'd all the places and inhabitants in thoſe mountains [6], and afterwards join'd the imperial camp at the bridge of Abzal. The Mirza Miran Chah, who conducted the baggage and main body of the army, march'd with a troop of horſe to the gates of Cachan [7]. Melouk Serbedal (governor of it for Chah Manſour king of Perſia, to whom he fled before from Coraſſana, for fear of being ſeiz'd by the ſoldiers of this Mirza) had no ſooner heard of his arrival than he ſent an expreſs out of the town to beg quarter; which was granted, and a veſt ſent him. Then Melouk came out, and put himſelf under the protection of the Mirza, who return'd to join the baggage. Timur ſent prince Omar Cheik to the right with a body of the army; when he came to Haviza [8], no one reſiſted him, and Iſlam, governor of it for Chah Manſour, fled to ſave his life. The Mirza fortify'd, and plac'd a gariſon in Haviza. Timur departed from the Abzal on the ſixteenth night of his march; at ten a clock in the morning he croſs'd the bridge, and went to a town on the other ſide. This bridge is very famous, and of curious ſtructure; it is ſaid to have been built by Sapor Zulectaf; has twenty eight lofty magnificent arches, each of which has a leſſer, which make in all fifty ſix. It is built of ſtone and brick, with great beauty and ſtrength; ſo that it has always attracted the eyes of the curious,

Deſcription of the bridge on the river Abzal.

[5] Towards Vaſet upon the Tigris. [6] On the banks of the river Chat, which joins the Tigris and Euphrates at Gourna.

[7] A town of Couheſtan, where porcelane is dug, with which the walls and houſes of Perſia are cover'd, three days journey from Iſpahan; long. 86. lat. 34.

[8] Corruptly ſo call'd from Ahouaz, a town of Couheſtan on the river Abzal, long. 85. lat. 31.

rious, and brought to their remembrance the king who built it. Chap. 22.

Whilſt Timur ſtaid at Dez Foul, a town at the foot of this famous bridge, Chamſeddin the governor of it preſented him with twenty loads of ſilver; and the commiſſarys afterwards carry'd away the very horſes and mules. Timur departed for Toſtar at noon; and in his way ſtaid upon a hill, where he caus'd the horſes to be put to graſs; then marching all night, he came the next morning in the ſight of Toſtar, where he encamp'd on the bank of the river Tchehar Donke. Ali Coutual and Eſfendiar Nami, governors of Toſtar for Chah Manſour, fled to Chiraz at the report of Timur's approach. But the chief men and Cherifs of Toſtar went out of the town at his arrival, croſs'd the river, and came to the door of his tent to make their ſubmiſſion, and aſſure him of their obedience. In the mean while the Emirs and ſoldiers pillag'd all the inhabitants of the neighbouring country, and brought to the camp a great number of horſes and mules, which Timur diſtributed among the ſoldiers. Thus the enemys loſt all their effects by the emperor's wrath, and his friends obtain'd pardon by his clemency.

On the 20th of Zilhadge, Timur croſs'd the river of Tchehar Donke, and went into a foreſt of palms without the city. The Mirzas, Mehemet Sultan and Pir Mehemet, alſo departed from Derbend Tachicatun; and after having paſs'd ſeveral rivers and mountains in Courdiſtan and Loreſtan, exterminated the robbers there, and reduc'd the inhabitants to obedience, they arriv'd here, where they had the honor to ſalute the emperor. All the troops alſo join'd the imperial camp at this place. March 18.

CHAP. XXIII.

An account of the motions of the princes of Fars, or of Perſia and Irac, on which the preſent affairs depend.

WE mention'd in the ſecond book, that Timur, after a campain of three years, returning from Perſia to Samarcand, paſs'd by Chiraz, becauſe the princes of the family of Muzaffer became obedient to him, and ſeveral of 'em had liſted themſelves in his ſervice; upon which he then gave the government of Chiraz to Chah Yahia, head of that family, and confirm'd him in that of Yezd, which he before poſſeſs'd. He likewiſe gave the government of Iſpahan to Sultan Mehemet, eldeſt ſon of Chah Yahia; that of Kirman to Sultan Ahmed, brother of Chah Chuja, with permiſſion to return to his own country; that of Seirjan to Sultan Abou Iſhac, ſon of Avis, ſon of Chah Chuja: and becauſe the Pehlevan, Muhaddeb Coraſani, one of the Emirs of Chah Chuja, (who had been long time governor of Abrecouh for this prince, and after his death for his ſon, the Sulton Zein Elabeddin) had been faithful to his truſt in this government, Timur confirm'd it to him. Chah Manſour, younger brother of Chah Yahiah, was then goverpor of Toſtar, whither the Sultan Zein Elabeddin was retir'd, for fear of our army; nevertheleſs, Chah Manſour caus'd him to be arreſted and put in irons. By which means, from the year 790, when Timur march'd from Perſia to Touran, to the year 795, when he return'd from Mazendran to Perſia, there

An. Dom. 1388.

An. Dom. 1393.

were

were great diſorders among the princes of the houſe of Muzaffer. At length Zein Elabeddin, priſoner in the caſtle of Kerikerd four leagues from Toſtar, by the aſſiſtance of Ahmet Chah Turmetachi, and Mahmout his relation, eſcap'd with them to Malek Azeddin Kerit at Ouroudgerd, who conducted him to Iſpahan. And as the officers of this city were in the intereſt of Zein Elabeddin, the Sultan Mehemet retir'd into the fortreſs, and a month after went out with the conſent of Mehemet Courtchi, who went with him to Yezd; and by this means Zein Elabeddin became maſter of Iſpahan. Then Chah Manſour departed from Toſtar at the head of an army, and came to the gates of Chiraz, where the Cherifs, back'd by their diſciples, open'd to him the gate of Salem. Chah Yahia ſat in the Divan of Chah Chuja till the arrival of Chah Manſour: then he took horſe, went out of the town by the gate of Sadet, and took the road of Yezd. Chah Manſour took his ſeat in the Divan, wou'd not purſue his brother; but was content with eſtabliſhing himſelf on the throne of Perſia, of which Chiraz is capital. At length he rais'd a powerful army, with which he ſeiz'd on the caſtles of Bid, Sermac and Merouſet, and march'd to the town of Abrecouh, commanded by the Pehlevan Muhaddeb: tho he did not beſiege it, but return'd to Chiraz. The Sultan Zein Elabeddin alſo rais'd an army at Iſpahan, imagining that the Emirs of Chah Manſour wou'd come over to his ſide, becauſe moſt of 'em had rais'd themſelves in his father's court. He march'd to Chiraz with his ſmall army; while Chah Manſour advanc'd with his to give him battel. They met near the fortreſs of Eſtacar, at the foot of the new bridge; and Zein Elabeddin's expectations

Chap. 23.

Book III. were not accompliſh'd. Chah Manſour's ſoldiers ſwam over the water, and attack'd him ſo briskly, that the Sultan's men being moſtly kill'd or routed, he was conſtrain'd to fly to Iſpahan. The Pehlevan Muhaddeb, fearing leſt Chah Manſour ſhou'd get poſſeſſion of the whole kingdom, contracted a ſtrict alliance with Chah Yahia; the latter of whom being by chance on the mountains of Yezd, a day's journey from Abrecouh, the Pehlevan went to him, offer'd his ſervice, and made a treaty with him, which they both ſolemnly ſwore to. The Pehlevan at length invited him to come to Abrecouh, to which the prince conſented; he conducted him into the town, and prepar'd lodgings for him in a little palace, which he had built and adorn'd for his own uſe. The courtiers of Chah Yahia, ſeeing their prince maſter of the town and caſtle of Abrecouh, importun'd him to break the treaty with the Pehlevan: he conſented to their infamous propoſal. They ſeiz'd on the Pehlevan Muhaddeb, loaded him with chains, and ſent him to the caſtle of Melous on the frontiers of Yezd, where he was put to death by the orders of Chah Yahia, who plac'd a ſtrong gariſon in Abrecouh under the Emir Mehemet Courtchi, and return'd to Yezd. On advice of this Chah Manſour departed from Chiraz at the head of a formidable army to beſiege Abrecouh, the governor of which having fortify'd himſelf in the caſtle, he took the town, and having plac'd troops in gariſon, march'd to Yezd, to attack Chah Yahia: but the latter being inform'd of his march, ſent an expreſs to Mehemet Courtchi, ordering him to ſurrender the place to Chah Manſour, on condition he ſhou'd not bring his army to Yezd. Chah Manſour having learnt this circumſtance from the courier whom he met;

im-

immediately return'd to Abrecough, the caſtle of which was deliver'd to him without oppoſition. He plac'd a good gariſon in the town as well as in the citadel, and took the road to Iſpahan, cauſing the corn and graſs to be deſtroy'd; and after much miſchief done, he return'd to Chiraz. The following year he march'd thither again at the head of an army, and return'd after having committed the like diſorders. Zein Elabeddin ſeeing himſelf ſo oppreſs'd by this powerful prince, ſought for protection from the princes his relations. The Sultan Ahmed prince of Kirman, and the Sultan Abou Iſhac of Seirjan, came to aſſiſt him at the head of their troops, which were well equip'd. Chah Yahia made ſome fair promiſes, which he did not keep; for he came out of the town of Yezd, but did not join the princes. Several other lords of the houſe of Muzaffer join'd in defence of Zein Elabeddin, march'd towards Chiraz in the beginning of the ſpring, pillag'd ſeveral countrys, eſpecially that of Kerbal *, from whence they turn'd towards the hot country. On advice of this Chah Manſour march'd againſt 'em, and gave 'em battel in the meadow of Feſa, in a village nam'd Jurouz. This prince, whoſe name ſignifys victorious, was in effect ſo: for he routed the confederate princes ſo that every one retreated to his own country. Chap. 23.

In the following ſpring Chah Manſour return'd againſt Iſpahan; as ſoon as he was encamp'd without the city, he order'd Coja Azadeddin to come to him, whom this prince * of Loreſtan, in all appearance, entertain'd at Iſpahan, to carry on his intrigues. He came out of

* Chah Manſour.

* A town between Iſpahan and Abrecough.

the

Book III. the city; and, what is moſt ſurprizing, the inhabitants, as ſoon as he was got to the tent of Chah Manſour, deliver'd up the place. The Sultan Zein Elabeddin fled; but he was taken near Rei between Veramin and Chehriar by Mouſa Choucar, who ſent him to Chah Manſour; who with unparallel'd cruelty put out this prince's eyes with a hot iron, not thinking of the threatnings of God, which are, *That he will never pity them who ſhew no pity to others.* Chah Manſour, ſeeing himſelf maſter of Iſpahan, march'd twice to the gates of Yezd: the ſecond time his mother, who was alſo Chah Yahia's, came out of the town, to endeavor to make peace betwixt 'em; and thus exhorted her ſon: "Behold your eldeſt brother, who is contented to live with his two children in the town of Yezd, and to leave you the kingdoms of Fars and Irac! If you endeavor to deprive him of that place too, you will be juſtly reproach'd." Theſe ſpeeches made him return from before Yezd to Chiraz.

Beſides theſe there were ſeveral motions for the laſt four or five years between the princes of the family of Muzaffer, who naturally delighted to make war on each other, which put the empire of Iran in great diſorder. The kingdom of Perſia was but one, and yet ten kings pretended to it, who were, as one may ſay, ſo many butchers to deſtroy the people and country. It being too long to give a detail of their hiſtory, we will only mention what belongs to our ſubject. When Timur encamp'd without the town of Toſtar, the towns of Chiraz, Iſpahan and Abrecouh, were in the hands of Chah Manſour, who reſided at Chiraz; the town of Yezd was poſſeſs'd by Chah Yahia, who liv'd there with his two ſons; the kingdom of Kirman

man was govern'd by Sultan Ahmed; and the Sultan Abou Iſhac commanded in Seirjan. All theſe princes were of the family of Muzaffer. Chap. 24.

CHAP. XXIV.

Timur marches to Chiraz againſt Chah Manſour.

AFTER the Mirzas Mehemet Sultan and Pir Mehemet were return'd in triumph from Derbend Tachi Catun, to the imperial camp without Toſtar, Timur ſent Sevindgic Behader to Haviza to ſummon the Mirza Omar Cheik to court; and having made himſelf maſter of Toſtar, he gave the government of it to Coja Maſaoud Sebzuari, to maintain there the troops of Sebzuar which he commanded. At length Timur left the army, and on the 25th of Rabyulakher 795, which anſwers to the year of the hen, march'd with diligence towards Chiraz, and on the road ſent a ſecond expreſs to the Mirza, who had taken Haviza, to inform him that the emperor order'd him to follow him to Chiraz at the head of the baggage and main-body. The 27th of Rabyulakher 795, Timur croſs'd the river Doudanke [s], and two days after encamp'd on the bank of that of Chouroukan Kende [s]. The 1ſt of Jumaziulevel he went to encamp at Ram Hermez [t], where Atabec Pir Mehemet, prince of the upper Loreſtan, came to kiſs the foot of his throne, and offer him preſents; to which honor he was admitted by the mediation of the great Emirs; and being well receiv'd by the April 17. 1393. April 22.

[s] Rivers in Coureſtan, which fall into the Abzal.

[t] A town of Coureſtan, long. 86. lat. 31. 25.

em-

Book III emperor, he follow'd his court. Timur took horſe about noon, paſs'd the river of Ram Hermez [4], and encamp'd on the other ſide. The 2d of Jumaziulevel he encamp'd on the river Fei [5].
April 23. The third, after having march'd all night, he
24. went to encamp in the plain of Zohra. The
25. fourth he paſs'd by Kerdeſtan [6], croſs'd the Abargoun [7], and went to encamp at Behbehan [8].
26. The fifth he paſs'd the Abchirin [9], and encamp'd
27. in the plain of Lachter [10]. The ſixth he march'd to Kedge Havas [11], and encamp'd at the ſpring
28. of the river Canbidac [12]. The ſeventh he en-
29. camp'd at the village Joulaha. The eighth he went to Bacht [13], croſs'd the Abchob [14], and,
30. encamp'd at Malemir Chial. The ninth he paſs'd the Cavedan [15], where he gain'd intelligence concerning the fortreſs of Calaaſefid: from whence he went to ſtay at Neubendgian [16]. The
May 1. 10th of Jumaziulevel he rang'd his army for battel, and went to encamp at the foot of Calaaſefid, one of the ſtrongeſt citadels of Aſia. The governor for Chah Manſour was nam'd Sadet, which ſignifies good fortune, tho he was an unfortunate wicked fellow. The Perſians confided

---

[4] This runs thro the town, and falls into the Abzal below Ahouaz. [5] A river of Coureſtan which falls into the Abzal.
[6] A town of Coureſtan, frontier of Fars.
[7] A river which divides the kingdom of Coureſtan and Fars, runs by Semirem, and falls into the Abzal.
[8] A town of Fars, long. 86. 25. lat. 30. 30.
[9] A river which comes from the town of Coſruchirin.
[10] A great town of Fars. [11] A village of Fars.
[12] A river which falls into the Perſian gulf near Benderic.
[13] A town of Fars dependent on Neubendgian.
[14] A river which comes from Bouan, accounted by the Arabians one of the ſeven wonders of the world.
[15] A river which paſſes by Cazron, and falls into the Perſian gulf. [16] A town of Fars, long. 87. 10. lat. 30. 20.

in

in this place, becauſe it was ſituate on the top of a very rugged mountain, where there was but one ſlippery way to aſcend. On the top of this mountain there was a beautiful ſmooth plain, a league long and as much broad. Here are rivers and fountains, fruit-trees, and cultivated lands, with all ſorts of beaſts and birds. The princes had built there many pleaſure-houſes, where they had no reaſon to fear fires or torrents, and much leſs mines or aſſaults by battering-rams, and other machines: ſo that no king had ever undertaken to beſiege it, believing it impregnable and inacceſſible, as well becauſe of its height and the impoſſibility of carrying up battering-rams, as for the hardneſs of the rock which cou'd not be dug. The way which leads to the top of the mountain is made ſo, that in any ſtrait three men may oppoſe a hundred thouſand, and hinder their aſcending. The inhabitants, not contented with its natural ſtrength, had fortify'd and wall'd all the turnings with great ſtones join'd with mortar. As the cultivated fields were ſufficient for the maintenance of the inhabitants, and the cattel and fowl had enough to feed on, no one had dreamt of ſtarving 'em out, ſeeing nothing but death had any power over the inhabitants. Timur coming to the foot of this mountain, aſcended in company with his moſt faithful captains as far as the gate of the fortreſs, and caus'd the great cry Souroun to be made in the troops who follow'd him. The two wings encamp'd on the top of another mountain which join'd the place. Timur's tent was pitch'd there; and he order'd his ſoldiers to give a general aſſault. The cavalry and infantry march'd up the mountain to the fort: the Mirza Mehemet Sultan atack'd it on the right ſide, as the Mirza Pir Me- Chap. 24.

Book III. Mehemet did on his: the Mirza Charoc parted from the left wing, and ran to the foot of the place with his men, whom he made to diſmount: all the army did the ſame, and gave a furious aſſault. After having labour'd all day, theſe men won'd aſcend the higheſt parts of the mountain, and give a general attack to carry the place: but night being come, every one ſtaid in the place he was in. The next morning the princes, Emirs and ſoldiers began the aſſault at the noiſe of drums, kettle-drums and trumpets. The enemy ſhot from the place a great number of arrows and ſtones. Our brave captains ſacrific'd their lives in Timur's ſervice: every one took a pick-ax in his hand to break the rock, as formerly Ferhad [a] did. Acbouga, an officer of the Cheik Mehemet Aicoutmur, by chance mounted a place unſeen; when he was there, he prais'd God and the prophet, crying out, *Timur is victorious, and his enemys are confounded.* He acted the part of a valiant man upon this ſteep rock; for covering himſelf with his buckler, he fell upon the beſieg'd, who were ſo ſurpriz'd at being attack'd in a place they thought no one dar'd aſcend, that they left off fighting. The ſoldiers of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan went up the way which leads to the gate of the fortreſs, where diſplaying their enſigns, and fixing their horſe-tails, they cry'd out, *Victory!* The others mounted the rock which Acbouga had ſhewn, and ſome went up by other ways: ſo that the place was taken, and the gariſon precipitated from the top of the mountain.

[a] A famous ſculptor in the reign of Coſroes king of Perſia.

Me-

Mehemet Azad ſeiz'd on the governor Sadet, and brought him to Timur, who order'd that in his blood they ſhou'd revenge thoſe who had loſt their lives in this aſſault. The ſword is the inſtrument of vengeance to thoſe who forget themſelves; and when God chuſes any one to command, we muſt ſubmit to him without reſiſtance. The Sultan Zein Elabeddin, whom Chah Manſour had blinded and kept priſoner in this place, was brought to Timur, who receiv'd him kindly, gave him a veſt, and comforted him, promiſing to revenge him on Chah Manſour, whom he wou'd puniſh for his injuſtice and cruelty. The emperor order'd all the women, whom the ſoldiers had taken, to be releas'd; and leaving Malek Mehemed Aoubehi governor there, he return'd. The 11th of Jumaziulevel, he went to encamp at Neubendgian: He gave Acbouga, who firſt mounted the rock of Calaaſefid, ſo much ſilver-mony, ſtuffs, tents, women-ſlaves, horſes, camels, mules and other things, that this officer, who the day before was maſter but of one horſe, dazzled with this abundance, did not know whether what he ſaw was a dream or reality. The next morning Timur paſs'd by the defile of Bouan, and encamp'd at Tirmerdan *; from whence he departed on the 13th, and encamp'd at Jaragian *; on the 14th he arriv'd at Jouyem *. On the road he inform'd himſelf concerning Chah Manſour; who, as every one told him, had fled. Chap. 24. May 2.

* Towns of Fars between Chiraz and Neubendgian.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXV.

Battel between Timur and Chah Manſour. The death of the latter.

AS Timur was not troubled at the affair of Chah Manſour, he the ſame day divided his army into two bodys, one of which was led by himſelf, and the other by Mirza Mehemet Sultan: he gave the vanguard of his own body to Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir, and the rear to Coja Acbouga. The troops of Mehemet Sultan were on the right, whoſe vanguard was commanded by Cheik Temour Behader. The Mirza Charoc had no troops, for he always attended on Timur. He ſent before as a ſcout Emir Oſman Abbas, and himſelf at the head of the army took the road to Chiraz. The Emir Oſman had not gone far, before he perceiv'd a body of the ſcouts of Chah Manſour, who were at the end of the gardens without the town, marching forwards: he hid himſelf in a bottom ground till they had paſs'd him; and then he ſally'd out of his ambuſcade with Sainte Maure, Acous, Temoue, Mouelli, Cara Mehemet, and Behram Yeſouri. The brave Behram overtook 'em firſt ſword in hand, and cut one of the horſes bridles: the man fell, and not being able to get away, Behram put him on his own horſe bound, and brought him to Timur, who queſtion'd him concerning Chah Manſour, and the number of his ſoldiers; and then continu'd his road. When he had gone about a league, he perceiv'd in the fields without the town three or four thouſand horſe,

horſe, arm'd with coats of mail, helmets, and breaſt-plates of leather lin'd with iron; their horſes cover'd with a kind of cuiraſſes made of thick ſilk, and their enſigns diſplay'd. Theſe men being inur'd to war and fatigue, and skilful at the bow, Chah Manſour advanc'd at their head like a furious lion, and in oppoſition to his reaſon, which ſhould have preſerv'd in his mind a ſuitable idea of the perſon he had to do with, as one whoſe arm had caſt down all his enemys, on a friday at the hour of prayer he attack'd our main body compos'd of thirty thouſand Turks, the moſt dextrous men of their time, in a place nam'd Patila: he overthrew their ſquadrons, broke their ranks, made his way into the midſt, and gain'd behind our army poſts of the utmoſt conſequence: then he return'd furious as a dragon to the fight, ſeeming reſolv'd to loſe his life. Timur ſtopt ſhort with ſome of his favorites, to conſider the extreme vigor, or rather raſhneſs, of this prince, who dar'd attack him in perſon. Timur ſeeing him come directly againſt him, wou'd have arm'd himſelf with his lance to oppoſe him; but he cou'd not find it, becauſe Poulad Tchoura, the keeper of it, had been ſo briskly attack'd, that he fled and carry'd away the lance. Timur, who had only fourteen or fifteen perſons with him, did not ſtir out of his place till Chah Manſour came up to him. This raſh perſon ſtruck the emperor's helmet twice with his ſcymitar; but the blows did no harm, for they glanc'd along his arms: he kept firm as a rock and did not change his poſture. Adel Actachi held a buckler over Timur's head, and Comari Yeſaoul advanc'd before him: he did ſeveral great actions, and was wounded in his hand with a ſword. Chap. 25

Book III. Then Mamoutcha, Tavakul Baourthi, Amancha, and Mehemet Azad, enter'd into the middle of the enemy's army, and gave extraordinary proofs of their courage and ſtrength. Chah Manſour, who had been repuls'd from before the emperor, fell upon the infantry of the main-body, while Mirza Mehemet Sultan ſo briskly attack'd the right wing of the Perſian army, that it gave way. Mobacher and the other Emirs cloſely purſu'd them, and made a terrible ſlaughter. The Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir bravely defeated their left wing, killing ſome, and obliging the others to fly. The Mirza Charoc, who fought near Timur like a lion, rally'd a whole batallion of ſoldiers who fled; and Gelalhamid, Beiram, Souſi, ſons of Cayaſeddin Tercan, and Coja Raſtin behav'd themſelves courageouſly in his preſence, and with their arrows made the enemy give way; Abdel Coja Pirau, and Cheik Mehemet Aicoutmur, joining 'em. The regiment of Allahdad, call'd the faithful; that of Cheik Noureddin, ſon of Sarbouga, nam'd Aimulc; and that of Boi, which was the imperial regiment call'd Coutchin; which were in the main-body, having been routed by Manſour, rally'd, and diſplaying their colors, form'd themſelves into a compleat ſquadron. The three regiments of Cheik Ali, Lalam Coutchin, and Behramdad, wou'd not ſtir from their poſt, where they bravely fought. At length the Mirza Charoc, tho but ſeventeen years old, behav'd himſelf with ſo much valor and conduct, that he hem'd in Chah Manſour, cut off his head, and caſt it at the feet of the emperor his father, congratulating him on the victory: "May the heads, ſaid he, of all your "enemys be thus laid at your feet, as that of "the proud Manſour is." This lucky accident

Charoc cuts off Chah Manſour's head.

diſ-

diſcourag'd the Perſian ſoldiers, who till that time had fought well. Theſe leopards were turn'd into deers, for they who were not kill'd fled. Timur, pleas'd at this great victory, embrac'd the princes his ſons and the Nevians, and fell on his knees with 'em to return thanks to God for the victory. At length the Emirs came to him, and having congratulated him, they alſo fell on their knees: and as they preſented him the gold cup, according to the cuſtom of the Moguls, they ſaw on a ſudden come behind 'em a body of the enemys rang'd in order of battel and well equipp'd, who advanc'd to attack 'em. Timur and the Mirza Charoc, with the lords, march'd againſt 'em; they made the great cry, and receiv'd the enemy with ſo much vigor, that they immediately gave way and were routed. The fugitives gain'd the mountain of Calatſurc, that is, the red caſtle; while ſome Emirs purſu'd 'em, who cut 'em to pieces. Timur paſs'd the night at the village of Dinou Can; and the next day this conqueror, like Menoutcher [1], when he enter'd victorious into Eſtacar, antiently the capital of Perſia, began his march to make his entry in triumph, and in warlike habit, into the famous city of Chiraz, the preſent capital of that kingdom. He order'd his ſtandard to be diſplay'd on the gate of Selm [2], where he lodg'd, while the army encamp'd in the out-parts of the town. Eight gates were ſhut up, while only that of Selm was kept open. Then many chief lords of the court enter'd the city, took down the names of the magiſtrates and heads of the quarters, according to which they collected the treaſures, riches, furniture, ſtuffs, horſes and mules of Chah Manſour, his courtiers, and fa- Chap. 25.

[1] Son of Feridon, one of the firſt kings of Perſia.
[2] So call'd from one of the ſons of Feridon.

Book III. mily; which they convey'd out of the city, and preſented to Timur, who liberally diſtributed 'em among the Emirs. The inhabitants were tax'd for having their lives preſerv'd, and the tax was regularly paid. Timur ſent the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to Iſpahan, with orders to fix a gariſon there, and to receive a tribute for ſaving the lives of the inhabitants. The Debirs had orders to prepare the letters of conqueſts, to ſend to Samarcand and other capitals of the kingdoms of the empire of Timur. The Mirza Omar Cheik, who, according to the orders given him, ſtaid behind with the baggage, pillag'd all the rebels he cou'd meet, as well the remains of Chah Manſour's army, as the robbers of Loreſtan, the Chouls [3], and the Courdes. When he had paſs'd by Neubendgian, and was come to Cazeron [4], he receiv'd orders to ſtay there, and place gariſons in all thoſe countrys, and make regulations according to the laws of the Moguls: which he accordingly executed with applauſe. Some days after he had orders to come to court, at Chiraz, where he had the honor to ſalute the emperor.

The princes of the family of Muzaffer, having no place to retire to, where Timur cou'd not come at 'em, reſolv'd in good earneſt to ſubmit. Chah Yahia departed from Yezd with his ſons, and the Sultan Ahmed of Kirman, to come to court. They made preſents to the emperor of precious ſtones, horſes, mules, tents, pavilions, and all ſorts of curioſitys. The Sultan Mehdi ſon of Chahchuja, and Sultan Gadanfer ſon of Chah Manſour, were in Chiraz. Timur

[3] Inhabitants of the mountains of Malemir Chol and Cazeron.
[4] A town of Fars, long. 87. lat. 39.

with

with the princes his ſons, the great Emirs and Nevians, ſpent a month in feaſts and diverſions; in which muſicians plaid upon organs and harps; and red wine of Chiraz was preſented in gold cups by the moſt beautiful virgins in the city. The Sultan Abou Iſhac, ſon of Chahchuja, alſo came to court from Seirjan, and made preſents to Timur, who employ'd himſelf in regulating the kingdom of Perſia, and the affairs of the people; that under the ſhadow of his laws they might enjoy peace, of which continual wars and tyranny had depriv'd 'em: he eas'd their extraordinary taxes, as a prince of moderation and equity ought to do. He appointed governor of the kingdom of Fars, which is the heart of the empire, and the moſt full of citys, towns, and villages of any place in Aſia, his dear ſon, Mirza Omar Cheik, who made a magnificent feaſt to thank the emperor, offer'd him preſents on his knees, and aſſur'd him with an oath of his inviolable fidelity, and exactneſs in executing his orders. Chap. 26.

CHAP. XXVI.

Timur ſeizes the princes of the houſe of Muzaffer, and diſpoſes of their effects among his lieutenants.

THE children and ſucceſſors of Mehemet Muzaffer having made themſelves maſters of the provinces of Perſia and Irac, every one ſet himſelf up for ſovereign, coin'd his own mony, and had public prayers read in his own name. Theſe princes, notwithſtanding their affinity, hated one other ſo much, that every one made

Book III. made attempts on the life and eſtate of his brother, and let no occaſion ſlip whereby he might pillage the country; and when any one gain'd advantage over another, if he gave him his life, he was ſure to blind him with a hot iron: the father ſpar'd not the ſon, nor the ſon the father. But what was worſt of all, the poor people bore the burden of theſe diſorders, and were in a manner the tennis-ball of misfortune and miſery, and groan'd under the weight of tyranny and oppreſſion. Our conqueror applying himſelf to regulate the affairs of this kingdom, the Cheiks, the doctors, the Imams, and the inhabitants of Perſia and Irac, preſented to him petitions concerning the ſtate of affairs, the changing of the laws and maxims of the country, and the diſorders into which the perverſity of the Muzafferian princes had brought 'em. The principal intent of their requeſts was, that Timur won'd no longer truſt the command of two kingdoms in the hands of thoſe tyrants; that under a milder government the Muſſulmans might be freed from their miſerys, collect their ſcatter'd effects, re-ſettle their familys, and render this ruin'd once more a flouriſhing kingdom. In anſwer to theſe requeſts, Timur order'd that theſe princes ſhou'd be ſeiz'd and loaded with chains, and their houſes pillag'd; which was done on the twenty third of Jumaziulakher 795. The Emir Oſman ſent men to Kirman to bring away the treaſures of the Sultan Ahmed; the Mirza Omar Cheik ſtaid at Chiraz, to govern the kingdom of Perſia, and the emperor nam'd for his counſellors the Emirs Birdibei, Sarbouga, Mirza Omar Muaid, Zirec Yacou, and Sevindgic Behader, with annual commiſſions, and aſſign'd good troops to the prince to maintain his authority.

June 14. 1393.

The

The emperor was accompany'd by Beiran Temour, Javakul, Melic Aperdi, Devlet Coja, and other favorites; he gave the government of Kirman to Aidecou, ſon of Cayaſeddin Berlas, the brother of Emir Yacou Berlas; that of Yezd to Temouke Coutchin; and that of Abrecouh to Lalam Coutchin. He ſent troops to beſiege the town of Seirdgian, of which Gouderz was governor for Sultan Abou Iſhac, grandſon of Chahchuja. The ſtrength of this place, ſituate on the top of a high mountain, had inſpir'd this governor with the thoughts of fortifying it, and living independent. Chap. 26.

At this time Timur ſent to Samarcand the prince Chebeli, whoſe eyes had been put out by Chahchuja his father, and Zein Elabeddin, who had been us'd in the ſame manner by Chah Manſour; and aſſign'd for their ſubſiſtence ſome of the beſt ground of that city, that they might ſpend the remainder of their lives with pleaſure under the ſhadow of his clemency. In theſe retreats there are pleaſures which the ambitious never taſte. All the men of learning, and the artiſans of Fars and Irac, abandon'd their country, and went to dwell at Samarcand. Timur gave the government of the little kingdom of Loreſtan to the Atabec Pir Ahmed, with letters patent ſeal'd with the ſeal of his red hand [1]. Thus Pir Ahmed return'd to his antient reſidence with near two thouſand familys, whom Chah Manſour had pillag'd, and conſtrain'd to retire to Chiraz; and this old Atabec began to govern the country of Malemir [2], as his anceſtors had done before.

[1] The Mogul emperors make their hand red, and imprint it on their patents as a ſeal.

[2] The ſame as Loreſtan; and different from Malemir Chol.

CHAP. XXVII.

Timur marches to the kingdom of Irac Agemi, or Hircania.

June 18. 1393. TIMUR departed from Chiraz for Iſpahan the twenty-ſeventh of Jumaziulakher 795, hunting and deſtroying the game, which abounds in that country, all the way. He encamp'd at Coumcha [a] after twelve days march; at which place he iſſu'd out that famous order, ſo much deſir'd by the people, and ſo remarkable in hiſtory, that the princes of the houſe of Muzaffer ſhou'd be put to death; which was done with rigor, according to the laws of Genghiz Can, to the great ſatisfaction of all the ſubjects of this kingdom. All the males of this houſe, who were then at Yezd and Kirman, were to death by the governors of theſe countrys, that the people might be deliver'd from the fear of their violence and tyranny.

June 30. 1399. Timur decamp'd from Coumcha, and arriv'd at Iſpahan the ſixth of Regeb 795. Mirza Mehemet Sultan went to meet him, gave him a handſom entertainment, and offer'd preſents worthy of the greateſt emperors; he executed his commiſſions very faithfully, which proy'd of ſervice to him for the advancement of his fortune. Timur ſtaid five days at Iſpahan in the palace of Nacchidgehan, and departed thence on the fifteenth of Regeb. He permitted Mirza Charoc to go and meet the queen his mother

[a] A village near Iſpahan.

Serai

Serai Mulc Canum, taking the road to the village of Dehi Alavi. Chap. 27.

Timur in two days march arriv'd at Gerbadecan, and next night went to the village of Ancouan, the inhabitants of which, being atheiſts, had fortify'd themſelves in the caverns of rocks. A ſtratagem was made uſe of to ſubdue 'em; all the troops were employ'd in digging rivulets along the mountains where there were rivers or ſprings, and to break down the banks, that all the waters might flow at once like torrents into the caverns where theſe miſcreants were, and drown 'em preſently if they did not make haſte out. This deſign ſucceeded; the waters fell on a ſudden into thoſe cavitys, and caſt theſe miſerable people into the fires of a dark eternity: and their goods were pillag'd by the ſoldiers. Timur paſs'd the night at Ancouan, and departed the thirtieth of Regeb in the morning, and encamp'd in the plain of Perahan, where a general hunting was order'd: all the country was ſurrounded, and abundance of antelopes and wild-aſſes were kill'd. The empreſſes, Serai Mulc Canum, and Touman Aga; the princeſs Canzade, and the other wives of Timur's ſons, partook of the diverſions of this chace. As they had left their baggage to come the more eaſily to court, they join'd the emperor at this place, congratulated him on his conqueſts and return, ſprinkled on him precious ſtones, and made preſents to him. July 10.

The third of the moon Schaban, Timur decamp'd and went down to the meadow of Foul Carcara, where he ſtaid three days; he took horſe on the ſixth, and encamp'd the eighth at Schaban in the agreeable plain of Hamadan. The Mirza Miranchа left the baggage on the rood, to come to the court of the emperor his father. 13.

Book III. father. The Emirs Gehancha Behader, Chamſeddin Abbas, Hadgi Mamoutcha, and Outchcara Behader, who ſtaid with the baggage and main-body, took the road to Sultania, with the troops they commanded, and had the honor to ſalute Timur at Hamadan. Mirza Mchemet Sultan, who was left behind at Iſpahan, join'd the court at this place: and the two empreſſes, Serai Mulc Canum and Toumân Aga, to divert the court, gave Timur a magnificent feaſt in this agreeable place.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Timur inveſts the Mirza Miran Chah in the kingdom of Hulacou Can.

THE emperor being willing to recompenſe the Mirza Miran Chah for his ſervices, gave him the ſovereignty of the kingdoms of Azerbijana, Rei, Derbend Bacou, Chirman, and Ghilan, with their dependencys, and the adjacent countrys as far as Roum or Anatolia, ſubject to the Ottomans. This Mirza gave Timur an entertainment in Hamadan, becoming the greatneſs of the gift he had receiv'd; he made him conſiderable preſents of raritys which he had got at Tauris, Sultania, and other places where he had ſtaid. They ſpent ſeveral days in pleaſures and diverſions, and were entertain'd with conſorts of muſic on all ſorts of inſtruments. After the feaſt the emperor departed from Hamadan on the thir-
Aug. 3. 1393. teenth of Schaban 795, ſending before him the Mirza Miranchа towards Coulaghi[1]; he order'd

[1] A town of Courdiſtan, long. 79. 30. lat. 37. 20.

a

a hunting, and went to encamp in the meadow of Ilma Courouc *. On the next day the circle was made, and the game kill'd. The court then went to Toumatou *, and ſtaid there five days; and on the ſixth having diſplay'd the ſtandard for departure, there was another hunting. The Emirs of both wings form'd the great circle as uſual, ſurrounding all the plain of Bech Parmac †. From thence they went to encamp in the meadow of Ghul Loudja †; the next day at Dalper ‡, in the plain of Gonbedec, where they made entertainments. The nineteenth of Schaban they departed, and the court went to encamp four leagues from thence. The Mirza Mirancha being arriv'd at the plain of Coulaghi, ſent an expreſs to Timur, to acquaint him that the robber Sarec Mehemet Turcoman had fortify'd himſelf in the mountains with his family, and getting together a company of ſeditious people, had ſet himſelf up for ſovereign. Chap. 29. Aug. 9. 1393.

CHAP. XXIX.

Timur vanquiſhes the Turcoman Hachan Sarec.

TIMUR had no ſooner receiv'd this advice from the Mirza, than paſſing by the caſtle of Sagaſoun, he came to Coulaghi in two nights march. Being at the plain of Gehanaver, he plac'd a ſtrict guard in all the ways whereby

* A town near Hamadan in Couheſtan.
* A village of Couheſtan.
† Towns of the country of Courdes.
‡ Town of Courdiſtan, long. 80. 45. lat. 35. 30.

th3

Book III. the enemy might get away. Theſe robbers had a fortreſs nam'd Habachi, as well as other defiles of mountains, wherein the ways were extreme rugged and narrow: in theſe places the Turcomans had retrench'd themſelves, placing troops in the narrow paſſages, whom our army attack'd. Our ſoldiers got up to the very top of the mountain, from whence they brought away a great many ſheep and cattel. Berat Coja Kukeltach on this occaſion gave marks of an extraordinary valor; and aſcending the mountain by very difficult ways, fought with extreme courage, and made himſelf admir'd by all the army: but he was at length unfortunately ſlain by a poiſon'd arrow, to the great regret of Timur and all the Emirs. The Cheik Hadgi ſon of Comari, who aſcended the mountain with him, was alſo wounded in the fight, and conſtrain'd to return to the camp, where he dy'd of his wound. The great men willingly ſacrific'd their lives to their honor and reputation. The Turcomans obſerving the reſoluteneſs of our ſoldiers, fled the ſame night by the by-ways and woods of the mountain Aourman, leaving their baggage behind 'em; our men purſu'd 'em as far as the other mountains, bringing away a great number of horſes, mules, ſheep and other cattle. The Cheik Temour Behader at the head of a body of horſe, purſu'd the fugitives with ſo much expedition, that he overtook 'em, and ſlew a vaſt number of 'em. Our men made themſelves maſters of the place they had fortify'd, which was fit for the ſummer-ſeaſon.

Death of Berat Coja Kukeltach.

There was another place in theſe quarters, in which a great number of Guebres [6] were got

[6] Adorers of fire, and profeſſing the religion of the antient Perſians. There are to this day a great many of 'em in the eaſt, particularly in India.

toge-

together. Timur order'd 'em to make themſelves maſters of this place, and to ruin it. The ſiege laſted ſome time: but being at length taken, it was reduc'd to a heap of rubbiſh, and all thoſe who were in the place exterminated. The emperor, with the empreſs, and the princes his ſons, return'd to the plain of Coulaghi: on the tenth of Ramadan he decamp'd to return home, and the next morning join'd the baggage on the banks of the river Acſai. He ſtaid one or two days at every encampment in theſe quarters, to conſult of the means to exterminate the robbers in each place. He ſent Mirza Miran-cha to beſiege Sarec Courgan [7], and Ouchcara had orders to beſiege Caroutou [7]: they aſſaulted theſe places with ſo much fury, that they took and ruin'd 'em, after having put to the ſword the ſoldiers who were in 'em; and then return'd victorious to the imperial camp. Timur order'd Mirza Mehemed Sultan to go to the Derbend [8] of Courdiſtan, to reduce that country, and deſtroy the robbers of thoſe places, who plunder'd paſſengers at their pleaſure. The Mirza departed to obey this order, tho he had made preparations for a magnificent entertainment, which he deſign'd to give the court. After the court departed for Acboulac [9], where they ſpent the month of Ramadan in faſting and prayer. The firſt of Chawal, after the faſt was over, Timur gave great alms, and celebrated the Bairam, that is, the paſſover of the Muſſulmans. Two days after, the great Mufti Noureddin Abderrahman Eſſeraini, famous for

Chap. 29.

Aug. 30.

[7] Caſtles in Courdiſtan.

[8] Or Demur Capi, iron-gate, a narrow paſſage like the Portæ Caſpianæ.

[9] A town near Arbelle in Courdiſtan.

his

Book III. his learning, came from Bagdat as ambaſſador from the Sultan Ahmed Gelair *: Timur received him handſomly, as he was wont to do learned men, and noted doctors; he gave him audience, the ſubject of his embaſſy being, that the Sultan ſincerely ſubmitted to the emperor; but being ſurpriz'd at the approach of the great Timur, he dar'd not come to caſt himſelf at his feet; that he knew himſelf not powerful enough to make any reſiſtance; and moreover that his intention was not to oppoſe him, nor to ſuſtain a ſiege. The ambaſſador made his preſents, which conſiſted of nine of each ſort; among which were Murkens, a kind of large deer, leopards, Arabian horſes with ſaddles of gold: and then he went back. Timur did not receive theſe preſents after his uſual kind manner, becauſe he ſuſpected the ſincerity of Sultan Ahmed, ſeeing the prayers were not read, nor the mony coin'd in Timur's name, at Bagdad. Nevertheleſs he honor'd the Mufti Cheik Noureddin, becauſe of his particular merit, which recommended him more than his ambaſſy; he gave him a very rich veſt, a horſe of great price, and ſilver-mony, and ſent him back to his maſter without any poſitive anſwer.

* Deſcended from Hulacou.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXX.

Timur marches to Bagdad [1].

AFTER Timur had diſmiſs'd the ambaſſador of Sultan Ahmed Gelair [2], he reſolv'd to beſiege Bagdad. He order'd Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir to return to Sultania with the baggage, and the empreſſes and ladys; and the ſoldiers to provide themſelves with two bottles of water a-piece. On the thirteenth of Chawal 795, Timur took the road to Bagdad: he march'd day and night to encamp at Yan Boulac [3], and after three days he went before as a ſcout; he march'd all night, and arriv'd at Coura Courgan [4]; the next morning he met Mehemet, prince of the Turcomans, whom he attack'd at the head of a hundred horſe, and routed him: the army which came after pillag'd all his ſubjects who dwelt in Chehrezour [5]. At this place Timur made choice of a number of brave ſoldiers, at whoſe head he march'd in a litter thro narrow paſſages between Octob. 3. 1393.

[1] Capital of Irac Arabi, ſeat of the Califs, on the Tigris, long. 80. lat. 33. 20. fifteen leagues from the antient Babylon; it was built by Abouiaſor Almanſor, ſecond Calif of the houſe of the Abaſſides, A. D. 757.

[2] A Mogul prince; for Bagdad remain'd in the hands of the Moguls from 1256 when Hulacou Can, grandſon of Genghiz Can, ſlew Muſtaſem Billah laſt of the Abaſſide Califs, and extirpated the Califate which had continu'd ſix hundred years.

[3] Village near Arbelle in Courdiſtan.

[4] A town in Courdiſtan near Cherezour.

[5] A city of Couheſtan, frontier of Courdiſtan, long. 82. lat. 34. 30.

ſteep

Book III. ſteep mountains, which were very difficult to get thro.— He order'd 'em to light the Machalets, a ſort of great torches, by which means he made expedition, ſtopping no where on the road, ſo that the army cou'd ſcarce follow him. When he was at Ibrahim Lic [6], he enquir'd of the inhabitants whether they had ſent pigeons [7] to Bagdad to give advice of his arrival. They told him that as ſoon as they perceiv'd the duſt of his army, they had done ſo. Timur immediately caus'd another pigeon to be brought; and making the ſame men write a billet, the contents of which were, that the duſt they had perceiv'd at a diſtance was caus'd by the Turcomans, who fled to avoid Timur, they tied this letter under the wing of the pigeon, which they caſt into the air. The bird immediately fled to its pigeon-houſe at Bagdad: it was brought to Sultan Ahmed, who on this advice gain'd freſh courage. Nevertheleſs he did not entirely confide in this laſt billet; for on receit of the firſt he had caus'd his furniture to be carry'd to the other ſide of the Tigris.

Timur having at the tomb of the Santon pray'd to God for victory, and diſtributed much alms to the poor who reſided there, he ſent before him as a ſcout Oſman Behader, and departed himſelf at the head of the army: he went twenty ſeven leagues, each of which were three meaſur'd miles, without getting off his horſe; Octob. 10. and on the twenty firſt of Chawal 795, in the 1393.

[6] A place of devotion, twenty ſeven leagues from Bagdad.

[7] This practice is common in the Eaſt. They carry pigeons from their pigeon-houſes to the place from whence they wou'd have advice. Theſe birds, when ſet at liberty, immediately fly to their neſts, by which means news is brought to a very diſtant country in a ſhort time.

morn-

morning, arriv'd at Bagdad. The Sultan had already croſs'd the Tigris; and having broken the bridge, and ſunk the boats, reſolv'd to ſtay on the other ſide, till our army arriv'd, and he was perceiv'd by our men. He had no ſooner heard the noiſe of our trumpets, and the cries of our ſoldiers, than he fled out of the kingdom by the way of Hille [8]. Our troops, who cover'd near two leagues of ground nigh the city, caſt themſelves into the water with a great cry, and paſs'd the Tigris notwithſtanding its rapidity. Mehemet Azad, who was one of 'em, having found the royal galley of the Sultan, to which he had given the name of Chams, that is, the ſun, brought it to Bagdad, and Timur croſs'd the river in it. The Mirza Miranchа, at the head of the army, croſs'd the Tigris, over againſt Caryatula Cab [9], below the city. Thus the Tartar troops having paſs'd the Tigris, enter'd Irac Arabi; like army's of piſmires or graſs-hoppers, they cover'd the fields, pillaging on all ſides, and endeavoring to find the enemy, that they might block up his way. The inhabitants of Bagdad were as much ſurpriz'd to ſee ſo great a number of Zagataians ſwim over their river, as their neighbours the Babylonians were formerly at the confuſion of languages; and biting their fingers in token of admiration, they were ſatisfy'd that the progreſs of Timur, and the courage of his ſoldiers, were not to be equal'd by thoſe of other potentates of the Chap. 30.

[8] Otherwiſe Hillet Benimezid, a town of Irac Arabi, between Bagdad and Couſa, in the land of Babel or Babylon; long. 79. 45. lat. 31. 50. There are three other towns of the ſame name, one near Ahouez in Coureſtan, another near Mouſſel, and the other between Vaſet and Baſra.

[9] The village of the eagle, the ſuburbs of Bagdad.

Book III. earth; but that this conqueror was guided by the hand of God, and that his victorys were the immediate work of heaven. Our prince wou'd himſelf purſue Sultan Ahmed, accompany'd by the princes his ſons and the Emirs: he march'd by Serſer[1]; and being arriv'd at Carbatou[2], Aibadge Aglen, the Nevians, the generals and his chief courtiers, beſought him to return to Bagdad to repoſe himſelf, while they purſu'd the enemy, and endeavor'd to ſeize the Sultan, and bring him to him with his hands and feet bound. Timur knowing their ſincerity, return'd to Bagdad, where he ſtaid in the palace of Sultan Ahmed, whoſe treaſures which he had left fell into the hands of the officers of Timur's houſhold. The Emirs at the head of the troops march'd all the day and the following night, and next morning arriv'd at the Euphrates, which Sultan Ahmed had paſs'd in the night, having broke the bridge, and ſunk the boats: he had taken the road of Damas by the way of Kerbela[3]; on advice of which Oſman Behader told the other Emirs that he thought it proper to ſwim over the river, and purſue the Sultan. The other Emirs oppos'd it, ſaying it was better to go along the bank till they ſhou'd come to a place where the army might paſs without any risk. This propoſal was follow'd, and they march'd along the banks till they found four empty veſſels. Our Emirs em-

[1] A town three leagues from Bagdad, between that and Couſa. The pilgrims of Mecca going from Bagdad, take up their firſt lodgings here. A little river, call'd the river of Serſer, which falls into the Euphrates, runs by it.

[2] Village in Irac Arabi, ſeven leagues from Serſer.

[3] A plain, long. 77. lat. 32. 30. on the Euphrates, where Imam Huſſein, grandſon of the falſe prophet Mahomet, was ſlain by Yezide, ſon of Maavia, firſt of the Califs of the houſe of Ommiah.

bark'd,

bark'd, and made their horſes croſs the water, Chap. 30.
while they held 'em on the ſides of the veſſels: the whole army did the ſame, and march'd with ſuch expedition, that they overtook the Sultan's baggage; they ſeiz'd on his furniture, tents, mony, ſtuffs, and whatever fear had made him leave behind him; by which means he loſt all his goods. The Mirza Mirancha arriv'd at Hille, where he ſent his troops in purſuit of Sultan Ahmed. Aibadge Aglen, prince of the houſe of Touchi, Gelalhamid, Oſman Behader, Cheik Arſlan, Seid Coja ſon of Cheik Ali Behader, and other Emirs of Tomans, in all forty five, overtook Sultan Ahmed in the plain of Kerbela on the twenty-ſecond of Chawal. Oct. 11.

Theſe Emirs were oblig'd to purſue him themſelves, becauſe the horſes of the common ſoldiers were ſo fatigu'd, that they were conſtrain'd to be left behind to reſt themſelves. The Sultan had with him near two thouſand horſe, two hundred of whom turn'd upon our Emirs ſword in hand. The Emirs got off their horſes, and let fly their arrows on the enemy, by which means they repuls'd 'em: then they remounted their horſes to purſue 'em; but they fac'd about again and attack'd the Emirs, who got off their horſes and took to their arrows, on which the enemy fled once more. Ours purſu'd 'em again; but they return'd to the charge a third time with ſo much fury, that the Emirs had not time to diſmount: thus they fought with extreme vigor, and many were kill'd on each ſide. Oſman Abbas did wonders; but he was wounded in the hand with a ſword. At length the enemy were repuls'd; whereupon our men ſeiz'd on a great quantity of ſpoils, and purſu'd 'em no longer.

Book III. That day being extreme hot, and the plain of Kerbela affording no water, our men expected to periſh by thirſt. Aibadge Aglen and Gelalhamid ſent men to ſeek for water, who cou'd get no more than two pots full: Aibadge drank one of 'em without quenching his thirſt; wherefore he ſaid to Gelalhamid, "I ſhall certainly die "with thirſt, if you don't give me the pot which "is your portion." The Emir Gelal anſwer'd, "I have heard it told the emperor, that a cer- "tain Perſian travelling with an Arabian, the "like misfortune which we now ſuffer happen'd "to them in a deſart. The Arabian had a little "water left; on which the Perſian ſaid, I know "the generoſity of the Arabians is ſo noted, "that it hath paſs'd into a proverb; you will "diſcover a great proof of it, if you will give "me the cup of water you have left." The Ara- "bian anſwer'd him, If I give you my water, "I muſt die of thirſt; nevertheleſs neceſſity "ſhall not make me tranſgreſs the maxims of the "Arabians; for I prefer a good name to life. "I had rather run the hazard of dying than let "my action put a ſtop to the celebrating of the "virtue of my countrymen. Then the Arabian "gave his water to the Perſian, who by this "means paſs'd the deſart, and gave occaſion to "every one to praiſe the extraordinary charity "of the Arabians." The Emir Gelal after having related this ſtory, ſaid to Aibadge, "I "will imitate the Arabian in giving you my "portion of water; but on condition that you "mention this charity to the princes of the "houſe of Touchi, and to their ſubjects, ſo "that the fame of my action may bring credit "to the deſcendents of Zagatai Can, one of "whom I have the honor to be: moreover, that "when you arrive at the imperial camp, you

"ſhall

" ſhall inform the emperor of what I *have done*, Chap. 30.
" that *this* action *may* have a place *in hiſtory*,
" and be a monument of my virtue to all our
" deſcendents."

Aibadge having conſented to theſe conditions, Gelal reſolv'd to die; wherefore he gave his water to Aibadge, who quench'd his thirſt. Yet Gelal did not die, God permitting him to eſcape for this good action. They then departed with the reſt of the Emirs, and arriv'd at Mackhad near the Euphrates, where Huſein ſon of Ali was ſlain. Every one kiſs'd the gate of the holy place, and paid his devotions, according to the cuſtom of the Mahometan pilgrims. The brave Emirs gain'd great advantages over the enemys, and took priſoner Aladdole ſon of Sultan Ahmed, and ſome others of his children, as likewiſe his wives and domeſtics, of whom the Sultan rather choſe to be depriv'd, than expoſe himſelf to the fury of our Emirs. Thus the Sultan eſcap'd with a few of his men, and the Emirs return'd to court enrich'd with ſlaves and ſpoils.

Aibadge Aglen and the Emir Gelal related what had paſs'd about the water; which extremely pleas'd Timur, who was naturally generous. This monarch extoll'd the great wiſdom of the Emir Hamid father of Gelal, and pray'd for the repoſe of his ſoul; he then applauded Gelal, telling him that he muſt acknowledge he had many times offer'd to ſacrifice his life to his ſervice, but that this action of expoſing himſelf to a certain death by giving the water to Aibadge to preſerve his life, and by this means to gain renown to the Zagataians, more ſenſibly touch'd him than all his former actions. Timur therefore made great preſents to Gelal, who anſwer'd 'em with an unlimited obedience.

CHAP. XXXI.

Return of Mirza Mehemet Sultan after the defeat of the Courdes robbers.

THE Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who before the expedition to Bagdad was gone againſt the Courdes, enter'd their mountains, and deſtroy'd a great number of theſe robbers; ſome of whom he had reduc'd to obedience, and precipitated from the tops of the mountains others who were moſt rebellious, and had fortify'd themſelves on the ridge of a high mountain. This ſeverity was not uſeleſs, for ſince that time one or two men may travel ſecurely in their great roads, whereas before large caravans, accompany'd by a hundred archers, were oblig'd to paſs thro by-ways; as I my-ſelf * can witneſs, having gone thro 'em ſeveral times. The young prince having ſucceſsfully finiſh'd this expedition, return'd to court by Derbend Tachi Catun [4], and had the honor to ſalute the emperor at Bagdad. Some days after he was ſent to Vaſet [5], as governor of that town, and the province dependent on it. Then Timur ſent expreſs to Mirza Mirancha who was at Hille, to depart for Baſra [6]. At length orders were given that the wives of Sultan Ahmed and his ſon A-

* Chereffeddin Ali, author of this book. M. Petis, the tranſlator, has alſo gone this way twice.

[4] A defile of mountains, where one muſt paſs under an arch cut in the rock, more than ſix hundred paces.

[5] A town of Irac Arabi on the Tigris, long. 81. 30. lat. 32. 10.

[6] A town near the place where the Tigris and Euphrates fall into the Perſian gulf, long. 84. lat. 30. call'd alſo Baſſora.

laddole

laddole ſhou'd be tranſported to Samarcand, with all the learned men of Bagdad, and the maſters of arts and ſciences; as alſo the famous Coja Abdelcader, author of the book of Edouars, that is, the ſeveral tunes in muſick. Letters of conqueſt were ſent to Samarcand, Cachgar, Cotan, Carezem, Azerbijana, Perſia, Irac, Coraſſana, Zabuleſtan, Mazendran, Tabareſtan, and other kingdoms and citys, that on this good news rejoicings might be made every where for the emperor's victorys. Chap. 32.

Timur ſpent two months at Bagdad in diverſions, in gilded palaces, and pleaſure houſes on the bank of the Tigris; being intirely ſatisfy'd with the progreſs of his campain, and the other conqueſts his ſubjects continu'd to make with ſo much glory. The officers of juſtice by his orders ſeiz'd on all the wines they found in Bagdad, and caſt 'em into the Tigris: and the inhabitants of Bagdad paid to the commiſſarys the accuſtom'd tribute for the preſervation of their lives.

CHAP. XXXII.

Timur ſends an ambaſſador to the Sultan Barcoc in Egypt.

AS Timur's chief ſtudy and ambition was to ſecure the roads from robbers, to regulate the affairs of kingdoms, and give peace to the people, he thought proper to ſend the Cheik Save, one of the moſt skilful and famous doctors of his time, in embaſſy to Malek Ezzaher Barcoc, Sultan of Egypt and Syria. He order'd ſeveral noble Moguls to accompany him, and he gave him a magnificent equipage and a royal

Book III. garment. The letter which he carry'd was as follows: " The potent emperors of the houſe " of Genghiz Can having been at war with the " kings your predeceſſors, who oppreſs'd the peo- " ple of Syria; and theſe wars having ended in " a peace by the intervention of ambaſſadors, " ſecurity and union have been eſtabliſh'd be- " tween the two nations. And foraſmuch as " ſince the death of the invincible Abouſaid " Behader Can [7], there has not reign'd in the " empire of Iran any ſovereign prince of the " race of Genghiz Can, who has regulated the " affairs of the people; but on the contrary there " have been governors in all the provinces of " this great empire, who have ſet themſelves " up for kings, and caus'd infinite misfortunes to " the people: the King of kings hath made " choice of us, by a peculiar favor, to remedy " theſe diſorders, and permitted our victorious " ſword to conquer all the kingdoms of Iran, " as far as Irac Arabi which borders on your do- " minions. We imagine that the love we owe our " people requires that, becauſe of the proximity " of our two empires, a correſpondence ſhould " be ſettled between us by letters, and that am- " baſſadors ſhould go and come mutually from " one empire to the other, ſo that the mer- " chants of both nations might travel with ſe- " curity: which will render the countrys flou- " riſhing, produce plenty in the towns, and " maintain the people in peace. 'Tis for this " reaſon we have ſent an ambaſſador to you; " beſeeching God to load you with his favors, " if you act as becomes you. Now thanks be

[7] Son of Codabende, ſon of Argouncha, inter'd at Sultania.

" to

" to him, who is the ſole lord and maſter of Chap. 33.
" kings, and of all the people in the univerſe."

CHAP. XXXIII.

The taking of the town of Tecrit [s].

AFTER the reduction of Bagdad, the merchants and travellers preſented petitions to Timur, importing that in the neighbourhood of Bagdad there was a place call'd Tecrit, which for its ſtrength was eſteem'd impregnable, and had drawn thither a great number of robbers, who had fortify'd themſelves in that rock, and when caravans paſs'd by that place, pillag'd 'em, and eſpecially thoſe of Egypt and Syria, which were the richeſt of any: they likewiſe aſſur'd him that battering-rams and other machines cou'd do no harm to this place; that the inhabitants were not ſatisfy'd with robbing, but that they murder'd the paſſengers; and that till this time no prince, how powerful ſoever, has been able to put a ſtop to theſe diſorders. For theſe reaſons Timur conceiv'd that the reduction of this place, and the ruin of theſe villains, wou'd gain him a treaſure of merit in the other world, and great honor even in this. He therefore order'd Burhan Aglen, Yaic Souſi, Gelalhamid, Chamelic, and Seid Coja, to march to Tecrit, and block up the place; which they accordingly did. Timur diſtributed among the Emirs and ſoldiers the mony which had been collected from the inhabitants of Bagdad for

[s] Long. 79. lat. 34. 30.

pre-

Book III. preſerving their lives; and left at that place the Emir Oſman Abbas, who had been wounded in a ſkirmiſh at Kerbela, giving him for a penſion a thouſand Dinars Copeghi a day, which he generouſly ſaid was to pay the ſurgeon. After this he departed from Bagdad the twenty fourth
Nov. 11. of Zilhadge 795, to encamp at the tomb of Cheic
1393. Behloul, where he pray'd this Santon to intercede with God for the victory. Timur having ſent Mirza Charoc with the ſcouts, march'd all the following day, croſs'd the Tigris, and lay on the bank of the river: the next day he arriv'd at a great lake, where he encamp'd. On the morrow he went to Anna [a], and the day
Nov. 17. after to Lejarma. The firſt of Muharrem 796, he came to the town of Harbi; the following night he encamp'd at Bendaſar, and the next morning he went for Ghez Setani. In his way thither a lion being perceiv'd in the wood, Timur reſolv'd to chaſe theſe wild beaſts which abounded in this country; for which reaſon the wood was ſurrounded, and there came out five lions, which furiouſly prepar'd their claws and teeth to kill the hunters, whom they fiercely attack'd; but they were receiv'd with ſo much dexterity and vigor, that all the five were ſlain at the ſame time, and made the prey of other beaſts.

After this chace Timur departed, and the 4th
Nov. 20. of Muharrem arriv'd at Teerit. He rang'd his army in order, commanded the drum to be beat, and the great cry made. The men ſurrounded the place, and ſapp'd the out-parts, which they overthrew. Timur order'd his tent to be fix'd near the works, to animate the ſoldiers. Then

[a] A town on the Euphrates, long. 76. 30. lat. 34.

Yarali

Yarali prince of Mouſſel, and the Cheik Ali Oirat [1], prince of Arbelle, came to caſt themſelves at the feet of Timur, with many preſents. Timur order'd his ſoldiers to enter the place notwithſtanding any difficultys. This town was built on a rock near the Tigris [2] in the reign of the Saſſanians [3]. The paſſages were clos'd up with mortar and ſtones, and it was ſo well fortify'd, that it cou'd never be taken by force; the rock on which it was built being very high. The Emir Haſſan, the governor, robb'd on the highways, not obeying any prince: but when he knew of Timur's arrival, he was afraid, and ſent his younger brother to aſſure him of his obedience and ſervices. Timur receiv'd him handſomly, and having made him a preſent of a beautiful horſe and a veſt, he diſmiſs'd him, ordering him to tell his brother Haſſan, that if he came chearfully before him, he ſhou'd be well receiv'd. Haſſan's brother gave him an account of all this: but this unfortunate prince reſolv'd to defend himſelf. Our brave ſoldiers immediately beſieg'd Tecrit cloſely: fixing the battering-rams and machines to ſhoot ſtones, with which they ruin'd the houſes of theſe robbers. The third day of the ſiege, the Emir Haſſan ſent his mother to Timur to intercede for him, with preſents of horſes and raritys. She humbly repreſented that Haſſan well knew that he was not powerful enough to defend himſelf againſt the imperial army; but that the fear of appearing before Chap. 20.

[1] A family of the antient Moguls.

[2] The Tigris is call'd Dedgele by the Arabians. Tir, in Perſian, ſignifying an arrow, becauſe the Tigris is rapid, ſome pretend the name of Tigris is from that etymology.

[3] The kings of Perſia of the fourth race, the laſt of whom, Yezdegerd, was kill'd by Oſman, An. Dom. 645.

Book III. the majeſty of Timur, hinder'd his coming out; that if he wou'd pardon him, he wou'd ſend his brother and ſons as hoſtages to the court. Timur was very civil to Haſſan's mother, and told her, that for her ſake he wou'd pardon her ſon; but that he muſt come out of the place, or be reſponſible for the death of ſo many perſons who were in the town. Theſe words diſquieted the lady, who return'd to the town, the ſiege of which was continually going forward; the ſoldiers having already advanc'd under covert to the foot of the walls, and Seid Coja with his regiment having made the enemy abandon a tower in the night, and oblig'd the guards to retreat into the town. The taking of this tower facilitated the taking of all the out-works, for they were preſently abandon'd. Timur's anſwer to Haſſan troubled him ſo very much, that he reſolv'd upon fighting to the laſt, that he might have the honor of dying ſword in hand. Timur order'd all the ſoldiers to aſſault the walls together: whereupon the Tavatchis divided the ſpace the walls took up among the troops, and mark'd with a red furrow what each regiment ſhou'd ſap, and gave it 'em in writing. This diſtribution began with the regiments of the left wing, which was the moſt honorable of the two; which regiments compos'd the Toman of Kepek Can, which had for their leader Arſlan. This Toman work'd in files, and was follow'd by the regiments of the Toman of prince Charoc, who labor'd with ſo much earneſtneſs, that in a ſhort time they pierc'd the rock thirty five cubits. The regiments of the other Tomans [a] imploy'd themſelves in the ſame

[a] The names of the Tomans and Hezares, as well as of their generals, are given in the original; but the French tranſlator thought proper to omit 'em, as too tedious for the reader.

manner

manner in the places allotted 'em. By this may be known the ſtrength of the town of Tecrit, ſince they were oblig'd to employ at once ſeventy two thouſand men, the number of ſoldiers in Timur's army, to undermine the place. Chap. 33.

The Emir Haſſan ſeeing the work ſo far advanc'd, was greatly troubled; wherefore he ſent to Timur, to confeſs his fault and demand quarter. Timur anſwer'd, that to obtain his requeſt, Haſſan muſt come out of the place. The next day he ſent another man to Mirza Charoc to beg his protection, and to intercede for him. Haſſan afterwards ſent his brother to the ſame prince, to repreſent his deſpair and miſery, telling him that every one in the place, and Haſſan himſelf were firmly reſolv'd to obey Timur for the future; but that the fear of appearing before him hinder'd Haſſan's coming out. Charoc conducted him to Timur, who declar'd, that if Haſſan did not come before him to give aſſurances of his repentance for his crimes, and the robberys he had committed on the high ways, with promiſe to abſtain for the future, he wou'd hear no more excuſes; but if he did what he deſir'd, he wou'd not only pardon his crimes, but treat him according to his quality. Timur gave Haſſan's brother a veſt, and ſent him back to the town, telling him, that if Haſſan wou'd not come, yet he might ſtay with him. When the two brothers came to a conference, one of 'em argu'd in this manner: "It is "a long time ſince from one generation to ano- "ther we have been ſovereigns in this place, and "done what we pleas'd, having no one to con- "troul us. If we ſhou'd now ſurrender, thoſe "whom we have wrongfully plunder'd, will "demand juſtice againſt us: then we muſt not "only reſtore what we have taken away; but

"ſhall

Book III. " ſhall be puniſh'd, and perhaps put to death in a " ſhameful manner. Wherefore I approve of " fighting to the laſt drop of our blood." The robbers in the place willingly conſented to this reſolution, and began hoſtilitys. This irritated Timur, who order'd the drums and kettle-drums to be beat, the trumpets to be ſounded, and the great cry to be made. Part of the walls fell down, having been propt by large pieces of timber, which were now ſet on fire. The beſieg'd repair'd this great breach, and fought like deſperate men reſolv'd to die. Timur order'd all the ſoldiers to advance together, and enter the places they had undermin'd, and where they had fix'd props, to fill 'em with ſmall pieces of dry wood and pitch, which they accordingly did: and on the 20th of Muharrem 796, at night, they ſet fire to the wood and pitch. The air was darken'd by the ſmoke, and moſt part of the walls fell on a ſudden; as likewiſe the tower which had been taken by Yaic Souſi; and twenty of the enemys fell with the walls. The beſieg'd, notwithſtanding the ruin of the walls, arm'd themſelves with planks and great bucklers, and continu'd to make a defence againſt our men, who advanc'd to the very middle of the place, where there was a furious and bloody battel; the beſiegers fighting for glory, and the beſieged for their liberty and lives.

Decemb. 6. 1393.

Further orders were given, that the walls which were yet ſtanding ſhou'd be undermin'd: the baſtion where the Tomans of Allahdad and Amancha were working, was deſtroy'd to the very foundations by Bedreddin. Whereupon the Emir Haſſan being terrify'd, retir'd with his ſoldiers to the edge of the mountain, of which they were yet maſters. The brave Emirs begg'd

beg'd leave upon their knees to aſcend that moun- Chap. 33.
tain, to finiſh the deſtruction of theſe raſh people: but Timur anſwer'd 'em, that it was better to wait the razing of the place. Some of the beſieg'd on this came out, to beſeech the Emirs to intercede only for their lives: but Timur warmly anſwer'd, Let him come or not, no quarter ſhall be given; for I know that by God's aſſiſtance I ſhall gain the victory: I will ſeize the chief of the robbers, and hinder the retreat of theſe villains. The ſoldiers were animated by theſe words of the emperor, and at length getting up to the top of the mountain, finiſh'd the aſſault of the place. They bound the Emir Haſſan and thoſe who accompany'd him, neck and heels, and brought 'em to Timur, who order'd the inhabitants to be ſeparated from the ſoldiers, and prohibited any one to inſult 'em; but that the ſoldiers ſhou'd be ſhar'd among the Tomans, and put to death. Thus they made theſe robbers ſuffer the puniſhment due for their crimes, in plundering and killing paſſengers. The Tavatchis caus'd towers to be built with their heads for an exmple to others, and fix'd the following writing on them, *Thus the malefactors are puniſh'd.* This conqueſt was on the 25th of Muharrem 796, Dec. 11. which anſwers to the year of the Hen. Timur order'd that one of the walls of the place ſhou'd be left entire, that poſterity might wonder how it cou'd be taken by aſſault and the ſtrength of men; and that they might remember with fear the puniſhment of theſe robbers, and acknowledg with admiration the valor of the ſoldiers of ſo powerful a conqueror.

LIBRARY OF THE BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Timur continues his journy, and ſends his princes and Emirs to make inroads in ſeveral kingdoms.

Decemb. 17. 1393. THE firſt of Sefer 796, Timur return'd to Harbi, which was the rendezvous of all the troops, which were ſent to make inroads both before and during the ſiege of Tecrit; and order'd a general hunting to divert the court and army, wherein they kill'd a great many wild aſſes and antilopes. The Mirzas and Emirs, who went with troops to make irruptions in the provinces of Irac Arabi, and even further, to put an end to the diſorderly practices of the Arabian robbers, came here to wait on the emperor: of which number was the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who went to Vaſet along the banks of the Tigris; as likewiſe Mobacher and Argouncha, who march'd another way with their troops; and the Mirza Mirancha, who went from Hille to Baſra at the head of his; Emir Yadghiar Berlas and Gehancha Yakou, who ſet out together; Mehemet Dervich Berlas, Cheik Ali Margoub, and Iſmael Berlas, who had taken another road. All theſe Emirs eſtabliſh'd the laws of Genhiz Can, ſlew a great number of Arabians, and pillag'd their goods and horſes, becauſe they robb'd on the high roads, and hinder'd the paſſage of the caravans going in pilgrimage to Mecca.

They who had brought into ſubjection and made tributary the princes of the tribes of the furtheſt

furtheſt parts of the deſart, came alſo to Harbi Chap. 34.
to give an account of their progreſs. The prince
Miranchа, having conſign'd the government of
Baſra to Meloue Serbedal, croſs'd the great ri-
ver of Chat Elarab [*], and join'd the Mirza Me-
hemet Sultan: and theſe two princes, having
glorioufly accompliſh'd their deſigns, deſtroy'd
the common enemys of the empire, and execu-
ted Timur's intentions, come alſo to court,
where they had the honor to ſalute his majeſty.
Bagdad and all Irac Arabi being brought into
ſubjection to Timur, this conqueror ſent the fol-
lowing mandate to all the princes, governors,
lords of provinces and towns, and even to the
generals of forces, the Cheiks of the tribes and
familys of the Turcomans and Ogours.

" You found theſe countrys without a ſove-
" reign; and like players at mell, who finding
" the ground empty, fling their ball from one
" ſide to t'other at their pleaſure, you have car-
" ry'd your ſword whereſoever your ambition
" hath prompted you, and acted in an arbitrary
" manner: but now the caſe is alter'd; for you
" muſt ſubmit to our orders, and repenting of
" what is paſt, ceaſe to rob on the high-ways,
" and no longer inſult paſſengers, if you ex-
" pect that our mercy and juſtice ſhou'd extend
" as far as your eſtates: but if you obey not
" this command, know that whatever happens
" to you for the future in conſequence of this
" refuſal, will be thro your own fault, and you
" will have none to accuſe but your ſelves."
Some who receiv'd this order, on ſerious conſide-
ration, came to caſt themſelves at Timur's feet,

[*] A river into which the Tigris and Euphrates fall; that is, from Courna as far as Baſra or Baſſora.

Book III. whom he regarded favorably, and gave 'em employments in their own countrys according to their merit and birth: but the others who continu'd in rebellion, by their diſobedience brought on themſelves the wrath of God, and conſequently all the diſaſters which happen to the moſt wretched; and theſe men were at laſt exterminated, as we ſhall ſee hereafter. In the mean while Emir Oſman Abbas came from Bagdad with the baggage, and join'd the imperial camp at Harbi.

CHAP. XXXV.

Timur marches to Diarbekir *.

WHEN Timur had reduc'd Irac Arabi, he reſolv'd to march to the country of Diarbekir; having firſt committed the government of Bagdad to Coja Maſaoud Sebzuari, and order'd him to maintain peace among the inhabitants; to inform himſelf of the condition of the poor and infirm; and to ſhew reſpect to the Cherifs, the deſcendents of Mahomet, as well as to the doctors and men of letters; and even to feed the poor as far as he was able. Then he departed for Diarbekir, ſending the Mirza Miranſha with many Emirs and troops to conquer other places ſituate on the Tigris. Timur caus'd a bridge of boats to be built over this river, which he paſs'd, and order'd a rumor to be given out, that he was on his return home, that

* The ſame as Amed: only that Diarbekir takes in both the town and country; whereas Amed is only the town: it is ſituate on the Tigris, long. 74. lat. 38.

the

the enemys might be leſs on their guard. He choſe two men out of every ten in all his army, leaving the reſt and the baggage with Oſman Behader, ordering him to march ſlowly: he alſo gave to Ardechir Tavatchi, the lieutenancy-general of his troops, with the care of his own hord, as well as of proper places and fit ground to encamp in. The Mirza Mehemet Sultan, Emir Cayaſeddin Tercan, and Ouchcara Behader, had orders to ſtay with the baggage, and to take care of it, in conjunction with the commander. Timur embark'd with the greateſt diligence; and when he had paſs'd by Toouc [3], and was got to Carcouc [4], the inhabitants came out to meet him with great ceremony, and ſincere marks of reſpect and obedience: and he gave this place, as a lordſhip for ever, to Emir Ali Mouſeli. Then Czal Mirali Oirat, Pirali, and Gehanghir, ran to caſt themſelves at the emperor's feet, to aſſure him of their ſubmiſſion; as did the princes of all theſe quarters, the governors of towns, eſpecially the prince of Altoun Cupruc: he gave them a handſom reception, and made them preſents of belts of gold, magnificent veſts, gold, precious ſtones, and ſtuffs for their wives and daughters. Chap. 35.

Timur departed on the 4th of Sefer 796, for Arbelle [5], the prince of which, Cheik Ali, paid his devoirs to him, and treated him magnificently, with all his court. The next day Timur went to encamp on the bank of the river Cuna- Decemb. 20. 1393.

[3] A town in Meſopotamia near Harran.
[4] A town of Meſopotamia, long. 76. 35. lat. 35. 25.
[5] A town of Meſopotamia between Mouſſel and Tecrit, dependent of Chehrezour, famous for the battel between Alexander and Darius, long. 77. 10. lat. 35. 50.

Book III. zab [6]: two days after he ſwam over, and arriv'd at Mouſſel [7], where he devoutly viſited the tombs of the prophets Jonas and Georges [8], recommending himſelf to their prayers; he gave ten thouſand Dinars Kepeghi to each tomb, for the building of magnificent domes over theſe illuſtrious bodys: he alſo diſtributed much alms among the poor.

In the mean time Mirza Miranchа arriv'd, after having conquer'd the countrys and towns ſituate on the Tigris, and reduc'd many people to the obedience of Timur, whom he had the honor to ſalute at Mouſſel. Yarali, prince of this place, gave a ſumptuous banquet to Timur and all the court; at which ſome one heard this poor prince ſay, when the victuals was ſerv'd up to Timur, "Is not this the hiſtory of Solo-"mon [9] and the piſmire?" He then offer'd his preſents on his knees.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Timur marches to Edeſſa [1].

TIMUR departed from Mouſſel for Riha or Edeſſa, taking Yarali prince of that place for his guide. The Emirs of Tomans rang'd the army in order, advancing by ſqua-

[6] It falls into the Tigris below Mouſſel.

[7] A city W. of the Tigris, long. 77. lat. 36. 30.

[8] The Mahometans admit of many prophets unknown to us, as the prophet Georges.

[9] This is a fable of the Mahometans, who believe that Solomon was entertain'd by a piſmire.

[1] A town of Meſopotamia, long. 76. lat. 36.

drons.

drons. While they were on their march, Sultan Aiſa, prince of Merdin [a], ſent an expreſs to meet Timur, to offer him his ſervices. Whereupon, at the end of Sefer 796, Timur being near Merdin, ſent to this prince to come with expedition to join his army, becauſe he had a deſign to enter Syria and attack Egypt. Timur having paſs'd this place, encamp'd at Raſelain [b], from whence he ſent all the army to pillage the enemy's country. The right wing plunder'd the lands ſubject to Huſſein, call'd the black ſheep; and the left wing the neighbouring places, from whence they brought away a great many horſes, camels, oxen and ſheep. When they were return'd loaded with ſpoils, they decamp'd and march'd to Edeſſa; the prince of which place, nam'd Ghuzel, had abandon'd that city on the approach of our army, with ſome of the inhabitants, who took ſhelter with him on a high mountain. Timur ſent Emirs and ſoldiers in ſearch of 'em, who pillag'd 'em, and took 'em priſoners. Then Timur, accompany'd by the princes his ſons, the Nevians, and principal Emirs, made his entry into the city of Edeſſa, all the houſes of which were built with ſtone. This place is ſaid to have been built by Nembroth *: and the Mahometans believe that Abraham was caſt into the furnace here, the fountain which ſprung up in the midſt of the fire to quench it, being now to be ſeen; and round about the fountain the place is black with ſmoke. Timur and all his court were overjoy'd to ſee the remains of this miracle, tho they already believ'd it true, by the light of faith. They bath'd in this foun-

Chap. 36.

Beginning of A. D. 1394.

* Nimrod.

[a] A town of Meſopotamia, long. 74. lat. 37. 15.

[b] A town of Meſopotamia, where are ſeveral ſprings, from whence the Cabour riſes.

Book III. tain, and drank of its water with great devotion.

Timur ſpent nineteen days in this city in plays and entertainments, giving largeſſes to the warriors who had expos'd themſelves to the greateſt dangers for his ſervice. Juneid, a Turcoman prince, had the honor to pay his reſpects to the emperor in this place, whereby he obtain'd the lives of himſelf, his family, children, and ſubjects. The prince of Haſni Keifa [4] had the ſame honor; for he ſubmitted to Timur, and brought him the keys of his town; he therefore met with a kind reception. The Sultan Aiſa prince of Merdin, refus'd to come to court notwithſtanding his promiſe; upon which Timur thinking it not prudent that a rebel ſhou'd be left in the midſt of his dominions, return'd to Feb. 10. 1394. Merdin the twenty ſixth of Rabiulevel 796. He met the Sultan Ali prince of Arzine [5], who caſt himſelf at his feet, and offer'd his ſervice, with magnificent preſents. The prince of Batman [6] did the ſame, and was receiv'd into the number of Timur's ſubjects. The empreſſes Tchelpan Mulc. Aga, and Dilchadaga, who had been thirty-five days abſent from court, and had follow'd the baggage, join'd Timur on the top of a hill. The baggage alſo arriv'd, having paſs'd by Merdin. Timur rang'd his army for battel, and continu'd his march: he encamp'd at Tchumlic, ſeven leagues from Merdin, where Malek Azzeddin prince of Gezire [7] had the ho-

[4] Town on the Tigris in Meſopotamia, long. 74. 20. lat. 37. 20.

[5] Town of Courdiſtan.

[6] Town and river which falls into the Tigris, in Courdiſtan.

[7] A town in Meſopotamia on the Tigris, long. 75. 30. lat. 37. alſo call'd Geziret Ber Omar.

nor

nor to ſalute him, making great preſents, and ſubmitting to pay tribute. Timur receiv'd him courteouſly, and permitted him to return home. The Sultan Aiſa had no ſooner learnt that the emperor was on his march to Merdin, than he came out of that place, to caſt himſelf at his feet, with preſents of fine horſes, mules, and other curioſitys, nine of each ſort. He was preſented to Timur on the twenty-eighth of Rabiulevel, by the great Emirs: the emperor demanded the cauſe of his unwillingneſs to come before him; on which he beg'd pardon for his fault. Timur was willing to pardon him; and to comfort him, gave him a veſt. Then he departed from that place, and went to encamp at the foot of the mountain Merdin. Chap. 37.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Death of Mirza Omar Chiek, Timur's ſon.

THE Mirza Omar Cheik, who among all his royal virtues poſſeſs'd a ſupreme degree of valor and intrepidity, being the head-general of the army under Timur, during the year that he was in the country of Fars, had made himſelf maſter of all the provinces and places, which were not ſubjected to Timur while he march'd thro that country; of which number were the fortreſſes of Eſtacar Ferec, and Chehriari Ghermeſir. He then went into the out-parts of Seirjan, which was beſieg'd by many Emirs, who had not yet taken it. But when Timur took up a reſolution to make war in Syria and Egypt, and had march'd to Diarbekir, he ſent orders to Mirza Omar Cheik to return to court;

Book III. which orders the Mirza receiv'd while he was beſieging Seirjan: yet he did not wait till the reduction of the place, but immediately departed, leaving Aidecou Berlas, with Chah Chahan governor of Siſtan, and Pirali Selduz, to continue the ſiege. The Mirza being on his return to Chiraz, equip'd himſelf for his journy, leaving Sevindgic to govern the kingdom of Perſia in his abſence. This Emir rebuilt the fortreſs of Cahender, ruin'd by Chahchuja, while the Mirza with his guards took the road to Chouleſtan. He paſs'd by the country of the Courdes, and arriv'd at a little fort nam'd Cormatou, inhabited by a ſmall number of men. The Mirza got upon an eminence to view the place, where he was ſhot with an arrow in the Vena-Cava, which kill'd him on the ſpot. This unforeſeen accident had almoſt made the Mirza Pir Mehemet, and thoſe who accompany'd him, deſpair, ſo that they even wiſh'd their own deaths: but who can eſcape when fate calls? This misfortune happen'd in the midſt of winter in the Feb. 1394. month of Rabiulevel, 796, which anſwers to the year of the Hen; the Mirza being but forty years old. After the ſoldiers had bitterly lamented the death of their prince, they deſtroy'd with fire and ſword all the living creatures they cou'd find in the place, which they raz'd.

When the news of this misfortune came to the imperial camp, which was without the town of Merdin, every one was in ſo great a conſternation, that no one dar'd reveal it: yet as it was improper to keep it ſecret, after different reſolutions they agreed to tell it to the emperor; which they did in his cloſet, with many ſighs and tears. Timur heard all this without being mov'd, only anſwering in the words of the Alcoran, *We belong to God, and muſt return to him.*

Then

Then he gave the kingdom of Fars to Mirza Pir Mehemet ſon of the deceas'd, tho he was but ſixteen years old; and order'd Ouchcara Behader to take care that the corps of the deceas'd Mirza ſhou'd be carry'd to Chiraz by the Emirs, and that he ſhou'd accompany 'em. Ouchcara Behader at his arrival at Cormatou ſignify'd theſe orders to the Emirs Birdi Bei, and Zirec Yacou, who with their regiments return'd to the camp. And the Mirza Pir Mehemet, with the Emirs of the court of the deceas'd, as alſo the Emir Ouchara and others, march'd in ceremony from Cormatou to Chiraz with the corps, which was there laid under a dome. Some time after the princeſſes Sevindgic Cotluc Aga, Bei Mulc Aga, and Melket Aga, the wives of the deceas'd, with his little ſon the Mirza Eskender, carry'd the body to Kech, where he was inter'd in a mauſoleum built by the emperor his father. The cauſe of this tranſlation was, that Timur had erected at Kech an edifice with ſeveral domes, which he deſign'd for the burying-place of the princes of his houſhold. This fine piece of building was on the ſouth of the tombs of Santon Chamſeddin Kelar, and the Emir Tragai, Timur's father; and had on the right and left ſepulchres, which the prince had erected, as well for the Mirza Gehanghir, for whom this was principally deſign'd, as for his other children. God, being willing to honor Timur not only in his life, but alſo after his death, inſpir'd ſo ſincere a love for him in the great Emirs, who ſeconded him in all his enterprizes, that they all caus'd their burying-places to be erected near this ſumptuous monument, according to their quality and birth; and wherever they died, they were, according to their laſt wills, tranſported to this place, to teſtify to poſterity the great

Chap. 37.

Book III. great love they had for their prince. The Emir Acbouga bore ſo great a reverence to him, that wherever he ſat or lay, he never turn'd his back towards the place where Timur was, and his feet were always ſtretch'd out that way. All theſe demonſtrations of reſpect and love in Timur's officers, were not only proofs of his merit, but alſo mark'd out ſomething divine, which was granted to him above other men.

When the Sultan Aiſa, prince of Merdin, came to caſt himſelf at Timur's feet, he ſubmitted to pay the tribute uſually impos'd on towns which are taken: upon which the commiſſarys went into the place to receive theſe taxes, as did the ſoldiers to buy what they had occaſion for. But a company of young men, who were got together, inſulted the ſoldiers; of which Timur being inform'd, he order'd the Sultan Aiſa to come before him, of whom he demanded the cauſe of this action: and by ſeveral queſtions put to him, they found, that at his coming out of the town he had charg'd his brother and ſubjects not to deliver up their arms, or ſurrender the place; and what was found moſt criminal in his conduct was, that he had order'd 'em not to obey the commands ſent to 'em in any letters about receiving a governor; for he had reſolv'd to ſacrifice his life for their ſafety. Sultan Aiſa being convicted of what was alledg'd againſt him, orders were given to ſeize him, and bind him in chains: yet Timur did not think proper to beſiege Merdin at that time, becauſe there was not graſs enough for the great number of horſes, and winter was almoſt at an end.

Timur decamp'd from before Merdin the eighth of Rabyulakher 796, and march'd towards the mountains, where he encamp'd; and the next day he departed for Eſpendge. On the third

Feb. 22. 1394.

third day the Emirs being every one in their poſts at the head of their regiments, there happen'd a terrible tempeſt; it lighten'd and thunder'd every where, and ſuch great rains fell, that all the tents were full of water, and our men were in the utmoſt confuſion; they cou'd not ſtay in the camp for fear of being drown'd; the camels as well as the mules were ſtuck faſt, and in a ſhort time nothing cou'd be ſeen but the horſes ears, becauſe the ſoil was very ſoft, and caus'd much mud: they ſuffer'd thus many days, whereby a great many beaſts were loſt. The greateſt part of the cavalry were oblig'd to diſmount to put their tents in order; but the ſtorm ſtill encreaſing, they were forc'd to leave all their effects, and march on foot. At length Timur with his guards, after great fatigues, got out of the ſloughs, and on the tenth of Jumaziulevel 796, encamp'd on ground which was firm and full of graſs. He immediately ſent men to inform himſelf of the condition of the princes his ſons; and theſe Mirzas, as well as their Emirs, with felts before them, and umbrellas on their heads, paſs'd the ſloughs with their Tomans: then they departed from this place for old Mouſſel. Chap. 37. March 25. 1394.

Timur had before this time ſent to Sultania many preſents for the princes his ſons; and an Emir, who had ſaluted Timur at Thumlic with Malec Azzeddin prince of Gezire, was ſo raſh and daring as to ſteal theſe curioſitys, and carry 'em to Gezire. Malec Azzeddin, notwithſtanding his promiſes to be obedient to the emperor's orders, entertain'd this robber, promis'd to protect him, and by this action declar'd himſelf Timur's enemy.

Timur reſolving to revenge himſelf on this bold fellow, ſent two couriers to Malec, with orders

Book III. orders requiring him to ſeize the Cheik, and to ſend him to court in fetters, if he was deſirous to obtain pardon for the fault he had committed, in protecting him; but if he refus'd to do this, he wou'd bring his cavalry to Gezire, and deſtroy his country, fortreſſes, ſubjects, and domeſtics, not excepting one. Malec Azzeddin was ſo blinded by his adverſe fortune, that truſting in the ſtrength of his caſtle, and the Tigris which ſurrounded it, he refus'd to obey theſe orders.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Timur marches to Gezire.

March 8. ON the refuſal of Malec Azzeddin, Timur departed on the thirteenth of Jumaziulevel, leaving the baggage behind, and croſſing the Tigris on floats: he march'd all night, and at break of day, while the enemy were aſleep, fell upon 'em with his troops, who pillag'd all the country, took two or three fortreſſes, and enrich'd themſelves with a great quantity of goods and horſes.

During this confuſion, Malec Azzeddin fell into the hands of one of our ſoldiers, who took from him many valuable pieces; and not knowing who he was, let him eſcape.

After Timur had ravag'd the town and country of Gezire, and oblig'd Malec to wander about the deſart as a vagabond, he return'd home, repaſs'd the Tigris, and order'd that all the booty, nay even the ſheep, ſhou'd be conducted to Mouſſel. Upon which the booty was convey'd over the Tigris in forty barks, and arriv'd

arriv'd at the imperial camp in ten days and ten nights. Chap. 39.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Timur's ſecond enterprize upon Merdin.

WHEN Timur had taken Gezire, and the fortreſſes of that province, he held a council with the Emirs, aud took care himſelf of the regulation of the army, providing the infantry with horſes. So on the firſt of Jumaziulakher 796, he began his march towards Merdin, ſending the Mirza Miraucha at the head of the vanguard. Timur in his march pillag'd the inhabitants of the plains and mountains, and on the twelfth came in view of Merdin with all his army. Then tents were erected for the ſoldiers to lie in, and the troops enter'd into the gardens, where they poſted themſelves to advantage. April 15. 1394.

The next day the princes, Emirs and ſoldiers of the Tomans, Hezares and Sedes, gave an aſſault upon the place on the noiſe of drums, trumpets, kettledrums, the great trumpet Kerrenai, and the terrible cry of Souroun. The main-body placing their bucklers on their heads, fix'd the ladders; and then taking their war-clubs in their hands, and their ſabres in their mouths, they ſcal'd the walls with ſuch fury, that they made the enemy give way. They ſoon made themſelves maſters of the town, while the beſieg'd fled into the fortreſs Couh [1], which was

[1] Tho Couh ſignifys in Perſian a mountain, yet it is the name of the fortreſs of Merdin in particular.

ſituate

Book III. ſituate on the ridge of a mountain, thinking to eſcape the fury of the conquerors: but our warriors cloſely purſu'd 'em, taking many girls and boys, beſides a great many horſes, mules, and camels. Then they poſted themſelves at the foot of the walls, with deſign to force the beſieg'd, after they had repos'd themſelves. There was but one way to get up to the fortreſs, on the top of which was a fountain ſufficient to turn a mill, which falls down the rock. Many poets have deſcrib'd the ſtrength and advantageous ſituation of this fortreſs, and among others, Ebni Féraia, who gives it the ſirname of Cala Chahba, that is, the white caſtle. We attack'd it in the evening, while the enemy caſt down abundance of ſtones; we deſiſted during night, but the next day our ſoldiers got upon the mountain level with the walls of the place: here they ſeiz'd on ſeveral of the enemy, who had hid themſelves in the caverns of the mountain. The beſieg'd obſerving the fury of our ſoldiers, and with what vigor they advanc'd, were ſo diſmay'd, that they came with tears and groans to beg quarter; which being told Timur, he retir'd from the foot of the walls, and re-enter'd his camp. Then the beſieg'd came out of the place with ſeveral preſents, nine of a ſort, among which were Turcoman horſes, of an inеſtimable value, with large ſums of money: they ſwore to become faithful and obedient, ſubmitting to pay a tribute every year. The preſent conjunctures were very favorable to the people of Merdin, and appeas'd Timur's fury: for next day an expreſs arriv'd from Sultania from the empreſs Serai Muſc Canum, mother of Mirza Charoc, with advice of the birth of a ſon to this heir of the crown.

CHAP.

CHAP. XL.

Birth of the Mirza Oluc Bei.

THE firſt of Jumaziulevel 796, which anſwers to the year of the Dog in the Mogul calendar, God was pleas'd to bleſs the Mirza Charoc with the birth of a ſon in the caſtle of Sultania, on whoſe countenance the ſplendor of the royal majeſty ſeem'd already to appear. The aſtrologers took all neceſſary precautions to aſſure themſelves of the moment of his nativity; and to find the point of his horoſcope, that they might obſerve the centers of all the houſes, and fix the ſituation of the planets and their aſpects, they erected the figure of his horoſcope. The houſe of his nativity was Leo, which has the ſun for its lord, and which prognoſticated the accompliſhment of his deſires, and his coming to the crown: the ſun acquir'd nobleneſs by means of Aries in which it was at that time, which ſignify'd that this prince wou'd be learned, and put the ſciences in practice. When this news was brought to Timur, he was ſo overjoy'd, that his fury was abated, and he pardon'd the raſhneſs which the inhabitants of Merdin had been guilty of, and even remitted the taxes they had ſubmitted to pay. Then he gave the principality of the country to Sultan Sale, brother of Sultan Aiſa. The next day the drums were beat for their departure, and Timur began his march. The roads were mark'd out for the regiments, and they march'd towards Boſri: the Mirza Mehemet Sultan took the road to Meidan; Timur march'd to Saour, being accompany'd by Mirza Charoc; April 3. 1394.

Book III. Charoc; and the Mirza Mirancha went to Jaouſec; the Emirs of Tomans, according to their ranks, took alſo different ways. Timur, at his arrival at the Tigris near Saour, ſent by water the Mirza Mirancha to give neceſſary orders, as to the regulation of the gariſons, and the receiving the revenues from the places conquer'd on the river. Timur croſs'd the Tigris, and encamp'd in a delightful meadow, where he ſtaid three days with a deſign to return to Alatac. But he receiv'd advice from Mirza Mehemet Sultan, and Mirza Mirancha, that the inhabitants of the town of Caratche Coja, which is commonly call'd Hamed, priding themſelves in the ſtrength of their walls, refus'd to come before him to teſtify their obedience.

CHAP. XLI.

Timur marches to Amed or Hamed[3], *capital of the country of Diarbekir.*

TIMUR on information of the inſolence of the men of Hamed, ſent thither the Emir Gehancha; and on the 23d of Jumazyulakher 796, march'd in perſon againſt this city, where he arriv'd in two days and one night. The Tigris was ſo ſhallow, that the troops paſs'd it on foot: then they encamp'd round the walls of the town, and beſieg'd it. The ſtrength of this place conſiſts in the height of its walls,

[3] Amed or Hamed, Coratche Coja, Diarbekir, and Caramit, are the ſame place, ſituate on the Tigris in Meſopotamia, long. 74. lat. 38.

which

which are built of free-ſtone, and in their thickneſs, which is ſuch, that two horſes may paſs abreaſt on 'em. On the top of this wall there is built another, which is alſo of free-ſtone, and the height of a man; and on both there is a terrace; on the outſide of which there is another ſtone-wall with battelments. Thus in this great wall there are two ſtorys, ſo that when it rains, or is exceeding hot or cold, the ſoldiers may fight in the loweſt ſtory. Beſides all this, there are high towers diſtant from each other fifteen cubits. In the middle of the town there are two fountains of rock-water, with many fine gardens: all which have been ſeen by the author [1]. It is reported the walls have been built four thouſand three hundred years, and that the place has never been taken by force of arms. Indeed the Calif Caled, ſon of Velid, with a detachment of Mahometans during the firſt progreſs of religion *, after having beſieg'd it a long time, enter'd it by the common-ſhore, and ſo made himſelf maſter of the town. Chap. 41.

* Mahometaniſm.

Timur on his encampment without the place, prepar'd the ſoldiers to give the aſſault next morning; and made 'em advance at break of day with their great and little bucklers, to diſcharge a ſhower of arrows into the place. The beſieg'd caſt down abundance of ſtones on our men, who nevertheleſs ſtood their ground. Oſman Behader, who advanc'd foremoſt, ſapp'd a tower, and made a conſiderable breach. Seid Coja, notwithſtanding the vigorous defence of the beſieg'd, made a ſecond breach. Argouncha did the ſame, and firſt enter'd the town, getting on the top of a tower, where he

[1] As likewiſe by the French tranſlator.

Book III. gave marks of a ſingular valor. The other Emirs of Tomans alſo behav'd themſelves nobly, every one ſcaling the walls by different ways. Thus this place, which no conqueror had been able to take in four thouſand years before, was carry'd in leſs than three days by the valor of Timur's ſoldiers, whoſe whole life was a continu'd ſcene of victorys, and prodigious events. They enter'd into this great city, and pillag'd it, ſetting fire to the houſes; while moſt part of the gariſon were kill'd in the breaches. The officers began to beat down the walls with axes and other inſtruments; but as they were built very ſtrong, they work'd a long time without being able to demoliſh any conſiderable part; wherefore thinking it wou'd require an age to ruin 'em intirely, they only pull'd down the tops.

May 9. The laſt day of Jumaziulakher, Timur decamp'd; and three days after an Uzbec ſoldier was brought before him, who accus'd Yaic Souſi with fomenting a rebellion, and deſigning to fly during night. Yaic was arreſted, and being queſtion'd by Timur, he confeſs'd his crime, and diſcover'd his accomplices. But as he had ſeveral times before been convicted of the like crimes, which the emperor had pardon'd; and had receiv'd favors from Timur, who had given him a Toman, and made him the greateſt Emire in the left wing of the army, next to the princs of the blood; his judges order'd him and his ſon to be laid in irons, and all his accomplices to be put to death; which was accordingly executed.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLII.

Timur returns to Alatac.

TIMUR took the road to Alatac, and being in the meadow of Mehrouan, the princes and governors of the neighboring places, the chiefs of tribes. and the generals of troops, came from all parts to pay their reſpects to him, and ſubmit to the taxes impos'd upon 'em. After Timur had paſs'd by Miafarekin, Batman and Achma, he mark'd out the roads to the Emirs of Tomans, aſſigning guides to each. The Mirza Mehemet Sultan took the road to Tchepatchour, with the Emirs of the left-wing. Timur march'd by Sivaſſer, and continuing his road towards Sahra [t] Mouchi, where he encamp'd the 13th of Redgeb with Mirza Charoc, he came to ſome high mountains, where, tho it was ſpring time, theſn ows were ſo deep, that many horſes, mules and camels periſh'd. The Mirza Miran-cha, with the Emirs of the right wing, join'd the camp at Betlis [u]; which the Mirza Mehemet Sultan did alſo with the left wing: and the princes of thoſe parts ſubmitted to Timur. May 29.

Hadgi Cheref, prince of Betlis, who was the moſt ſincere and courteous of all the princes o Courdiſtan, and who had always attach'd himſelf to Timur's intereſt, came to ſalute him; making preſents to him of horſes, which were

[t] A little town and fine meadow, two days journy in length, at the ſame diſtance from Miafarekin, and three from Eclat, long. 74. 30. lat. 39. 30.

[u] A town near the lake of Van, long. 75. 30. lat. 38. 30.

Book III. not only ſtrong, but even ſwifter than ſtags and wild-goats; briſk in action, and yet as gentle as lambs: among the reſt was a bay-horſe, which outrun all Timur's ſwifteſt horſes. Timur was pleas'd with Hadgi Cheref, and treated him with the utmoſt civility, not only confirming him in his former poſſeſſions, but even joining other lands to his demeſn: and to diſtinguiſh this prince above the other princes of Courdiſtan, he gave him a veſt embroider'd with gold, as likewiſe a belt, and a ſword with a gold handle. He then put Yaic Soufi into his hands to be kept priſoner in his caſtle; and afterwards order'd that the roads ſhou'd be taken down in writing.

CHAP. XLIII.

Timur ſends bodys of ſoldiers into ſeveral countrys to enlarge his conqueſts.

TIMUR order'd Mehemet Dervich Berlas to beſiege the caſtle of Alengic; at whoſe approach Cara Youſef with his Turcomans fled: whereupon Timur, in council with the princes and Emirs, reſolv'd that the troops ſhou'd march in purſuit of 'em. He made Burhan Aglen general of the horſe, ordering him, with Aibadge Aglen, Gehancha Behader, and other Emirs, to decamp from Sahrai Mouch, and purſue theſe Turcomans to the very utmoſt, and ſo deliver the public from the diſorders they committed by their robberys.

Then Timur reſolv'd to exterminate all the Courdes princes, who refus'd to come before him, according to the orders ſent 'em. The Mirza

Mirza Mirancha had inſtructions to give quarter to all who ſhou'd come and make their ſubmiſſions to him; to pillage the ſubjects of them who diſobey'd; and afterwards to beſiege Alengic. Chap. 43.

Then the emperor having ſent Tavachis into all the provinces to get recruits, continu'd his road to Alatac: from which place the empreſſes and other ladys ſet out, to join the court, paſſing by Tauris [1] the 25th of Redgeb. Timur ſent June 16.
the Mirza Charoc to meet 'em, who in four days join'd 'em between Merend and Coi.

When Timur encamp'd in the neighbourhood of Eclat [2], Cacan prince of Adeliaouz [3], one of his old friends, came to pay him his reſpects, making handſom preſents, which Timur receiv'd with pleaſure, being perſuaded of his ſincerity, and zeal in his ſervice. He then gave this prince the lordſhip of Eclat, with its dependencys, to be enjoy'd by him and his heirs for ever.

The 2d of Chaban, Timur order'd a hunting-match in the plains of Eclat; in which were ſlain white goats, ſtags, wild ſheep, and many other beaſts. After which, it having been eleven months ſince he had ſeen the young princes whom he left at Sultania with the baggage, he parted from the army, and rode poſt to meet 'em, paſſing by Alichgherd [4]; and encamping that evening at Outch Kiliſſa, that is,

---

[1] The Ecba tana of the antient Medes, long. 82. lat. 38.

[2] Capital of lower Armenia or Courdiſtan, near the lake of Van, long. 76. lat. 39.

[3] A town on the bank of the lake of Van, between Ardgichet and Eclat.

[4] Or Malaziard, a town of Courdiſtan.

Book III. the three churches of Alatac [s]. In the morning the empreſſes and ladys arriv'd with the Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir; and had the honor to ſalute Timur, and teſtify their joy at ſeeing him. But this their pleaſure was mixt with bitterneſs, becauſe of their complements of condolence for the death of the Mirza Omar Cheik; which renew'd the emperor's grief, who only ſaid to 'em, *God gave him to me, and God hath taken him away.* Then Timur ſent Temour Coja ſon of Acbouga, with a body of ſoldiers to aſſiſt Mehemet Dervich Berlas in the ſiege of the fortreſs of Alen-
June 24. gic. The 8th of Chaban Timur decamp'd for Aidin, the inhabitants of which place came to aſſure him of their ſubmiſſion, bringing with 'em all their ſilver-mony, horſes and cattle, ſtuffs, and proviſions; and with tears in their eyes they beſought him to grant 'em quarter; which he did, and having blam'd 'em for their remiſneſs in not coming to him before, he reſtor'd 'em all they had brought. Then he departed for Outch Kiliſſa, where he arriv'd in one night. Here Taharten, governor of Arzendgian, came to pay his reſpects to him, and on his knees made him large preſents, after having given him aſſurances of his obedience. Timur being pleas'd with his conduct, accepted of his preſents, and treated him with all imaginable honor and civility.

[s] A town of Courdiſtan, where are the three churches of Atchmiadzin; the ſeat of the patriarch of Armenia, near Nacchivan, long. 77. lat. 40.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIV.

The taking of the town and fortreſs of Avenic.

MESSER, ſon of Cara Mehemet and prince of Avenic, perſiſting in his deſign not to come to court, tho he had been ſummon'd by a circular letter; Timur reſolv'd to make himſelf maſter of that town: he therefore ſent before ſome troops under the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, and on the 16th of Chaban march'd thither himſelf in perſon, firſt encamping in the meadow of Alichgherd, from whence, paſſing by Kioſatac, in two days he arriv'd at Avenic, before the Mirza. The ſoldiers immediately attack'd the town, and ſoon made themſelves maſters of the walls, which they raz'd. Upon this Meſſer retir'd with his men into the fortreſs, ſituate upon a ſteep and craggy mountain, all the paſſages of which were block'd up and fortify'd, a wall being alſo built on one ſide, on the very edge of the mountain, the gate of which was alſo fortify'd; ſo that Meſſer and his Turcomans reſolv'd to defend it to the laſt. July 2.

The Emirs of Tomans, and the braveſt men of the army, diſmounted, and march'd up as far as the gate, which they aſſaulted, after having cloſely inveſted the caſtle. At the ſound of drums and kettle-drums, the battering-rams were made ready, while the horſemen were mounted as high as the walls, to diſcharge arrows on thoſe who ſhou'd be plac'd on the breaſt-work.

The 19th of Chaban, Meſſer ſent his ſon and his lieuteſant, with conſiderable preſents, to Timur; to whom they ſaid, That Meſſer, being July 4.

Book III. ſatisfy'd of his inability to defend himſelf againſt the valiant officers of the imperial army, had reſolv'd entirely to ſubmit to the emperor's orders, but had not boldneſs enough to come out of the place; that if Timur wou'd grant him quarter, he wou'd not fail for the future of behaving himſelf like a faithful ſervant, in whom he might confide. Timur gave theſe envoys a handſom reception, preſenting each with a veſt and a gilt belt; telling 'em that he freely pardon'd Meſſer, and that he might come out of the place without any fear, ſince he had promis'd him quarter. The envoys carry'd back this anſwer to Meſſer, who had done whatever Timur requir'd, had fortune been favorable to him: but he was ſo unhappy as to reject the advice given him, and choſe to defend himſelf, diſcharging on a ſudden a whole cloud of arrows on our men, who by that perceiv'd his reſolution.

This oblig'd the Emir Taharten to ſpeak to Meſſer from a place where he cou'd ſuſpect no danger; he demanded of him what unruly paſſion made him perſiſt in his ſtubbornneſs, and commit hoſtilities againſt a prince, who had oblig'd the kings of the ſeven climates of Aſia to lay down their arms, being ſatisfy'd of their inability to defend themſelves againſt him. He told him, he wou'd be a ſelf-murderer, if he did not ſubmit to Timur. "Conſider, ſays he, "that all the kings of Aſia have laid their "crowns and ſcepters at this conqueror's feet; "that he has under him two hundred generals, "each of 'em equal in valor to the great Rou-"ſtem; and that theſe lords bear ſo much reſpect "to him, that they are always ready to ſacrifice "their lives in his ſervice. The magnificence "and grandeur of this monarch ſurpaſs'd even

"that

" that of Feridon [1], Gemchi [2], and the em- Chap. 44.
" perors of China. I adviſe you to conſider the
" danger you are in; and not confiding in the
" ſtrength of your walls, to reflect on your
" weakneſs. Not being able to reſiſt theſe
" Turks, who make the univerſe to tremble,
" depart ſpeedily out of the fortreſs. God is
" witneſs of my ſincerity in adviſing you to
" eſcape the danger you are in."

On this advice Meſſer was in greater perplexity than before; he ſent his ſon, and one of his neareſt relations nam'd Setilmich, to the emperor with preſents of very beautiful horſes. With groans and tears they begg'd pardon, as they had done before. But Timur perceiving Meſſer had no deſign to quit the place, caus'd Setilmich and his attendents to be ſeiz'd.

The 21ſt of Chaban, the Mirza Mehemet Sultan rejoin'd the camp with his troops: during this night the ſoldiers ſcal'd the mountain as far as the walls, againſt which they made a vigorous aſſault, which laſted till day. During this aſſault an arrow was diſcharg'd from the place, at the end of which was faſten'd a billet, wherein were contain'd theſe words: " Setilmich
" who is with you is one of Meſſer's neareſt
" relations, and being the braveſt of all, com-
" mands the gariſon; if you put him in chains,
" the men within this place, being depriv'd of
" their general, will loſe all courage." This adviſe was not diſpleaſing, tho it had been already put in execution. Next morning, Timur order'd Meſſer's ſon, who was but ſix years old, to be brought before him: this young prince caſting himſelf on the ground, kiſs'd the emperor's July 7.

[1] Firſt king of Perſia. [2] Third king of Perſia.

feet,

Book III. feet, and in ſubmiſſive terms beg'd pardon for his father, promiſing that if his highneſs wou'd grant his father his life, he wou'd go himſelf and ſummon him to appear before the throne, with a ſword and handkerchief in his hand. Timur being ſenſibly touch'd with theſe ſupplications, ſaid, "Go, my child, I will give your father "his life, on condition that he makes his ap- "pearance before me." Then he gave the child a veſt, and fix'd a collar of gold about his neck, ſending him back to Meſſer with a very obliging letter. When the young prince was introduc'd into the caſtle in this condition, the beſieg'd murmur'd againſt their prince, and applauded Timur; they very civilly receiv'd the men who were ſent to conduct Meſſer's ſon, and at their departure gave 'em gold and garments. Yet Meſſer wou'd not reſolve upon going out, tho he had been invited to it with ſo much civility and complaiſance. This oblig'd Timur to order the Emirs of the Tomans to keep fix'd in their reſpective poſts, and make ready the machines for caſting ſtones, and other neceſſary arms. The aſſault began, our troops approaching the walls, where they were not leſs fatigu'd with the ſtones caſt by the beſiegers, than theſe were by our arrows: but at length the ſtones from our machines ruin'd ſeveral houſes ſituate on the top of the mountain. Upon this the mother of Meſſer came down from the fortreſs, and throwing her ſelf at Timur's feet, beſought him to pardon her ſon: ſhe repreſented to him that there was no probability that a hamlet of Turcomans ſhou'd be able to hold out againſt the emperor's army; and begg'd of him to conſider that this diſorder proceeded only from the fear her ſon was in, which wou'd not let him know his own intereſt. Next day Timur gave

a magnificent veſt to Meſſer's mother, and told her that if her ſon wou'd ſave his life, he muſt immediately depart out of the place. The empreſſes Serai Mulc Canum and Touman Aga alſo gave her veſts. When ſhe was return'd to the place, ſhe told her ſon what Timur had ſaid: but he imprudently continu'd his ſtubborneſs. Timur order'd a hill of earth to be rais'd over-againſt the walls of the place: whereupon the ſoldiers went to all places within three days journy of the town to cut down trees, which when they had convey'd to the fortreſs, Timur order'd Oſman Abbas to inſpect the workmen in the Meljour (for ſo they call this ſort of work) from evening till morning. When the trees were pil'd one upon another, the ſpaces were fill'd up with ſtones and mud mix'd together; and thus the Meljour was finiſh'd in a ſhort time, and rais'd higher than the fortreſs. A regiment mounted it, and having prepar'd the machines, diſcharg'd ſo great a quantity of ſtones, that it ſeem'd as if a mountain had fallen on their heads. The 15th of Ramadan the beſieg'd were, thro ſcarcity of water, reduc'd to extremity, and oblig'd to turn out the inhabitants, ſo that there remain'd in the place only the officers and gariſon of Meſſer, who reſolv'd to defend themſelves to the laſt. Nevertheleſs, as the machines, which were continually diſcharging great ſtones, ruin'd the houſes, and beat down the arches upon the ſoldiers heads; Meſſer being aſtoniſh'd, ſent his lieutenant to implore the aſſiſtance of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who conducted him to the emperor, to whom he made known the diſquiet Meſſer underwent. Timur again promis'd him quarter if he wou'd come to him; and gave the lieutenant a veſt at his departure. Notwithſtanding all this, Meſſer con-

Chap. 44.

July 30.

Book III. continu'd in his ſtubborn humour, and reſolv'd to defend himſelf. A company of our brave ſoldiers remain'd all night in the caverns of the mountain, and in the narrow and almoſt inacceſſible paſſages. Coja Chahin, one of that number, advanc'd with ſeven others, and mounting one of the arches, got to the foot of the walls of the place, where he lighted fires to advertiſe the army. Upon this the Emirs, Argouncha Ectadgi, and Amancha Cazanedgi, aſcended the mountain in the ſame place, and came to a very narrow arch; where the beſieg'd attack'd 'em notwithſtanding the darkneſs of the night. Amancha being dangerouſly wounded, was conſtrain'd to return to the camp: while Argouncha and the reſt getting upon another arch, which is above three hundred cubits broad, arriv'd at the foot of the walls, which they ſapp'd with their hatchets, hammers and pick-axes, fixing at the ſame time ſtakes to prop 'em up. The officers and gariſon, ſeeing themſelves thus put to it, wou'd no longer ſtand their ground, but abandon'd Meſſer: ſome flung themſelves off the mountains, while the others exclaim'd againſt Meſſer, and in token of ſubmiſſion flung their arms on the ground, and beg'd leave to depart out of the place. Meſſer, to appeaſe 'em, ſent his mother and ſon to Timur on friday, which was the day of their feaſt. His mother caſt herſelf at the emperor's feet, and with tears in her eyes begg'd her ſon's life. Timur, touch'd with her affliction, told her, that for her ſake he wou'd grant him his life, but on condition that he came himſelf to beg pardon; otherwiſe that after the reduction of the place, he wou'd give order that every one ſhou'd be ſlain, whoſe blood wou'd cry for vengeance againſt Meſſer. The mother of Meſſer re-

return'd to the caſtle very much diſtracted, and gave her ſon an account of every thing; but he did not go out that day, and wou'd have continu'd to defend himſelf, if his domeſtics had not quitted him, and leap'd off the walls. Then ſeeing himſelf reduc'd to extremity, he tied a handkerchief about his neck, and took a naked ſword in his hand, with which on the ſecond day of the feaſt he departed out of the fortreſs of Avenic: he had immediate recourſe to the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, whom he beſought to intercede for him, promiſing for the future an entire ſubmiſſion to the emperor, and to lay down his life in his ſervice: he ſhew'd ſo many ſigns of grief in this diſcourſe, that the Mirza was mov'd to compaſſion, and having comforted him, brought him to Timur. Meſſer obtain'd favor of the emperor, tho his proceedings had merited another kind of treatment. The arms were taken from the gariſon, and orders were given that Meſſer and the Sultan Aiſa prince of Merdin ſhou'd be conducted to Sultania, and that afterwards Meſſer ſhou'd be carry'd to Samarcand; which was accordingly done. Timur careſs'd thoſe who had given proofs of their valor at the ſiege of Avenic, and diſtributed the treaſures of Meſſer among them. Chap. 45.

CHAP. XLV.

Timur's return after the taking of Avenic.

TIMUR ſtaid five days at Avenic, to ſolemnize the feaſt with plays and banquets; and then putting the caſtle into the hands of the Emir Atilmich, and leaving ſome good ſoldiers

Book III. diers with him, he decamp'd the ſeventh of Chawal. Next day his grand viſier Seifeddin, being come from Samarcand, made him rich preſents. Timur having inquir'd of him how publick affairs were in grand Tartary, Capchac, Gete, and Turkeſtan; the Emir told him, there was an entire tranquillity in thoſe parts, where his majeſty was lov'd and admir'd by all; and that the news of his conqueſts having ſpread as far as Gete, the inhabitants of Cara Coja had abandon'd that kingdom. Timur entertain'd himſelf in his march with the viſier, till they came to the delicious meadow where they were to encamp that night: the variety of flowers in this place charm'd the emperor; and as there was good grazing here for the horſes, he eaſily conſented to ſtay ſome days. On the ſeventeenth of Chawal he entertain'd his court with a ſumptuous banquet, and the fineſt muſick, which celebrated his conqueſts. After this regale, Timur confer'd the principality of Arzendgian on Taharten, to whom he gave advice in relation to the government of that place: then having preſented him with a crown, and a belt of gold enrich'd with precious ſtones, he ſent him into his own country.

Aug. 28.

Aug. 31.

Taharten made prince of Arzendgian.

During theſe tranſactions the Emir Zirec Yakou, who was gone to beſiege Aidin with a body of the army, according to Timur's orders, had given ſuch conſiderable aſſaults upon that town, that the Emir Bayazid, the prince of it, found he cou'd not hold out againſt this general: upon which he demanded a truce, promiſing that as ſoon as the army ſhou'd decamp from before the walls, he wou'd go out of the town. Zirec willingly conſented to his propoſal. Bayazid accordingly went out during the night without Zirec's knowledg, and came ſtraitways to Timur's

mur's camp; he caſt himſelf at the emperor's feet, and preſented him with a horſe of great price, whoſe good qualitys he ſaid ſurpaſs'd thoſe of Rocche, the horſe of Rouſtem. Timur receiv'd Bayazid with joy, and ſeem'd pleas'd with his conduct in coming to him; he then confirm'd him in the principality of his town and its dependencys, and call'd home the troops which then block'd it up, whom he prohibited from committing any acts of hoſtility. He ſign'd patents to impower Bayazid to eſtabliſh a governor in the town of Aidin, whom he ſent thither, after having given him a veſt, and a belt of gold. Chap. 46.

CHAP. XLVI.

Timur ſends an army into Georgia.

ONE of the principal advices of Mahomet to his followers, is, that they ſhou'd make war on thoſe who profeſs a different religion from themſelves, and ſacrifice their own lives for the increaſe of the faith. This caus'd Timur, who was a ſtrict Muſſulman, to ſend Burhan Aglen, Hadgi Seifeddin Gehancha, and Oſman Behader, into Georgia, againſt Acſica prince of that country, while he himſelf ſhou'd march thither by the foreſts of Alatac with a very numerous army. The Emirs enter'd Georgia, divided themſelves into ſeveral bodys, and waſted the country of thoſe infidels. Timur before his decampment order'd a hunting; in the evening all this fine country was ſurrounded, and next morning the circle growing leſs and leſs, the meadow was cover'd with game. Timur began

the

Book III. the ſlaughter, and the captains follow'd in their turn; ſo that there was not one officer who had not for his ſhare at leaſt ten beaſts.

After this hunting Timur continu'd his road to Georgia in long marches, ſeldom diſmounting to repoſe himſelf; while his troops plunder'd all who were of a different religion, and wou'd not ſubmit to the emperor. As Timur's ſole intention in this war was God's glory, he had every day ſome conſiderable bleſſings ſhower'd on him from heaven. Among other delights, when he arriv'd at Cars[1], he had the pleaſure of encamping in a very agreeable plain, where the green meadows, the infinite number of ſprings and rivulets of water clear as chryſtal, the ſhady groves, delicious fruit-trees, the variety of balſams and flowers, and the refreſhing zephyrs were ſo charming, that they ſeem'd to meet together in this place only to receive the greateſt emperor of the univerſe. At this happy place was born to Charoc, a prince, at whoſe birth all the court was tranſported with joy, and the whole army made public rejoicings.

CHAP. XLVII.

The birth of Ibrahim Sultan, ſon of Charoc.

OF all the bleſſings the Divine-being inceſſantly beſtows upon his creatures, the moſt learned doctors believe there is none greater than that of the continuation of the ſpecies:

[1] A town of Georgia, long. 40. 50. lat. 31. 25.

tho

tho it muſt be conſeſs'd that the favor which God grants to men, of educating their children in virtue, nobleneſs of mind, and the knowledg of his goodneſs and almighty power, is infinitely more excellent; becauſe the former is common to the beaſts, and the latter places men upon an equality with the angels, renders 'em prophets, and, if one may dare to ſay it, raiſes 'em up to divinity it ſelf. God, whom it pleas'd to increaſe Timur's power, and to furniſh him with favorable conjunctures to render himſelf maſter of the univerſe, granted him this bleſſing in a degree above that beſtow'd on other potentates, that ſo his power might be preſerv'd in his auguſt poſterity: wherefore on the twenty-ſixth of Chawal 796, he bleſs'd with a ſon the Mirza Charoc, whoſe phyſiognomy prognoſticated the height of grandeur to which he ſhou'd in time arrive; as his horoſcope ſignify'd that he ſhou'd aſcend the throne, and be the heir of his father's crown. Serai Mulc Canum immediately ſent this agreeable news to Timur, who teſtify'd his joy to the court by preſents of gold, ſilver and curious ſtuffs. All the lords of the court ſpread gold and precious ſtones upon the young child: the emperor's children, the queens, the Emirs, and the Nevians, alſo paid their reſpects to him; and Timur order'd a ſumptuous banquet. That the rejoicings might be genetal, he elevated many great lords to conſiderable poſts, and deliver'd the poor from their miſerys; ſo that there was ſcarce one perſon in the whole empire who had not cauſe to return thanks to God, for he exempted the people from all ſorts of taxes for a whole year. Orders were iſſu'd out to the moſt skilful aſtrologers to come forthwith to draw the horoſcope of the young prince. But as Moulla Abdalla Leſſan was the

Chap. 47.

Sept. 9. 1393.

Book III. skilfulleſt of any preſent, they chiefly regarded his remarks; which were, that he ſhou'd be endow'd with all the virtues of a great prince; that from the cradle he ſhou'd wear a crown, and become the greateſt monarch; and that this crown ſhou'd remain for ever in his family, becauſe the ſun was at this time in the tenth houſe of Leo. Then Timur order'd him to be call'd Ibrahim * Sultan, that he might have for his patron that prophet who was God's chief favorite.

* Abraham.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Solemn rejoicings for the birth of Ibrahim Sultan, ſon of Charoc.

NEXT day at ſun-riſing Timur decamp'd from the meadow of Cars for the plain of Minecgheul', where he had information that the Emirs, who had been ſent into Georgia, after having gain'd ſeveral battels, conquer'd great part of the country, and taken many ſtrong places from the Chriſtians, were upon their return. Shortly after theſe Emirs had the honor to ſalute Timur; and having preſented to him the ſpoils they had taken in Gurgiſtan *, they congratulated him on the birth of the prince his grandſon. After this, orders being given for preparations to be made for the banquet, they provided tents and canopys, which they adorn'd with the moſt magnificent furniture of all Aſia. Theſe tents took up two leagues of ground: the

* Georgia.

' A village near the mountain Joudi in Georgia.

empe-

emperor's was under a canopy ſuſtain'd by forty pillars, and as ſpacious as a palace; in the middle of it was erected a throne, which was ſo ſet off with precious ſtones, that it reſembled the ſun. A great number of the moſt beautiful ladys of Aſia were plac'd on each ſide the throne, with veils of cloth of gold, adorn'd with jewels. At length the emperor came and ſat upon the throne with the ſcepter in his hand, and the crown on his head. The muſic was plac'd in two rows; the vocal on the right, and the inſtrumental on the left. Nine Chaoux of a handſom mein, well equip'd, and mounted on Arabian horſes, came there in quality of ſtewards of the feaſt: who having diſmounted, took golden wands in their hands, and march'd in proceſſion before the diſhes which were ſerv'd up. They were follow'd by cup-bearers, having in their hands chryſtal bottles, and golden cups; with red wine of Chiraz, white of Mazendran, grey-color'd of Coſrouan, and water as clear as that of the fountain of * Kioſſer. The converſation of charming women, whoſe hair hung in treſſes down to the very ground, did not add a ſmall luſtre to this illuſtrious aſſembly. The Mirzas, Emirs, Nevians, and foreign lords of Iran and Touran, who came to Timur's court from India even unto Greece, partook of all the diverſion which this opportunity cou'd favor 'em with; and to teſtify their utmoſt joy, they join'd with the Zagataians in vows for the proſperity of the emperor and the new-born prince. Then Timur choſe the princeſs Touman Aga, who was as wiſe as Balkis[a], and as illuſtrious as Caidafa[b], to be

Chap. 48.

* Fountain in Mahomet's paradiſe.

[a] Solomon's wife.

[b] Queen of the Amazons, and the Thaleſtris of Quintus Curtius.

Book III. governeſs to the young Mirza: on which account ſhe made a magnificent banquet, which laſted eight days, to return thanks to the emperor for the honor he did her. The Emir Oſman Abbas was appointed his governor, and his wife Sadekin Aga, a relation of Timur, his nurſe. When theſe entertainments, which laſted three
Octob. 5. weeks, were finiſh'd, Timur decamp'd from
1394. Mineeghcul the eighteenth of Zilcade 796, and went to encamp on the top of a mountain.

CHAP. XLIX.

Timur conſtitutes the Mirza Charoc governor of Samarcand.

Octob. 8. THE twenty-firſt of Zilcade Timur confer'd upon the Mirza Charoc the government of Samarcand; he recommended to him entirely to apply himſelf to the doing acts of juſtice, and treating his people as his children: in which paternal advices Timur acted with great prudence. Then he embrac'd his ſon, and having kiſs'd his eyes and head, took his leave of him. After Charoc's departure, the empreſſes Serai Mulc Canum his mother, Touman Aga, and other princeſſes and ladys of the court, alſo departed with the baggage for Sultania, at which place they had orders to ſtay. Charoc
* Gihon. having croſs'd the Oxus *, the inhabitants of Tranſoxiana came as far as the banks of that river to receive him with all the honors due to ſo illuſtrious a viceroy: and the ways were lin'd with people from the Gihon as far as Kech. The Emir Solimancha, on advice that the Mirza was near Kech came to meet him

with

with great ceremony. The city of Samarcand was adorn'd to grace his entry: the artiſans, brought thither from other countrys, ſtrove to excel one another on this occaſion in their reſpective arts. The ſtreets he muſt paſs thro, from the gate of Aferine to the royal palace, were hung with carpets; the gates were adorn'd with pieces of cloth which had been taken from the enemys in the ſeveral battels the emperor had won; and the ground was cover'd with ſattin and ſcarlet cloth. Charoc made his entry amidſt the people's acclamations; and as ſoon as he was ſet upon the throne, he order'd (according to the example of the juſt Anouchiroüan *) the heralds to proclaim that the inhabitants ſhou'd repair to him for juſtice againſt their oppreſſors. Thus he began to execute the function of vicerov, exactly following his father's advices; ſo that the contented happy people had cauſe to thank God for giving 'em ſo equitable a prince, under whom the weak cou'd live in as great ſecurity as the powerful. Chap. 50.

* Coſroes.

CHAP. L.

Timur goes in perſon to the Georgian war.

TIMUR's zeal for religion made him undertake the war himſelf in Georgia: wherefore he decamp'd, and enter'd the mountains of thoſe Chriſtians, cutting in pieces all who reſiſted, and pillaging their country. Then he march'd into the lands of certain Georgians, nam'd Cara Calcanlic, that is, the black buckler, who had fortify'd themſelves in caſtles ſituate on very ſteep mountains: by the aſſiſtance of hea-

Book III. ven he vanquiſh'd theſe enemys, enter'd their habitations, and plunder'd their goods, after having put 'em all to the ſword. He encamp'd ſome time in their plains to repoſe his army, and from thence march'd before Teflis [4]; and continuing his road came to the plain of Cheki [5], where he encamp'd ſeveral days. From this place the Emirs Hadgi Seifeddin and Gehancha Behader were ſent to pillage the lands of a Georgian prince nam'd Bertaz: they accordingly enter'd this prince's country, made a terrible havock, and took the inhabitants priſoners, whom they brought to the camp. Timur alſo ſent the Cheik Noureddin, ſon of Sarbouga, with a conſiderable body of the army, into other mountains call'd the Couheſtan of Georgia; he had no ſooner ſet footing in thoſe parts, than Sedi Ali of Cheki, prince of the houſe of Erlat, who was governor there, was afraid and fled, abandoning his effects to Noureddin, who having deſtroy'd his houſes, ſack'd his country, and pillag'd his goods, return'd to the imperial camp. At this time advice was brought by the way of Chirouan, that the troops of Tocatmich Can, having for their generals Ali Aglen, Elias Aglen, Aiſa Bei, Yagli Bei, and other great Emirs of Capchac, had paſs'd by Derbend, and ravag'd ſome countrys dependent on Chirouan. Timur having learnt this news by the Uzbecs, ſaid, It was better that the game ſhou'd run into the nets, than that the hunters ſhou'd go in ſearch of it; and that there was nothing to fear from the armys of Capchac. Whereupon he immediately departed from Cheki, to-

[4] Capital of Georgia, long. 83. lat. 43.
[5] A town between Teflis and the river Cyrus.

meet

meet theſe raſh inhabitants of Capchac, with all his Emirs at the head of their regiments. The enemy, on advice of his march, ſhamefully fled. Timur, who was then on the banks of the Abcor *, order'd the quarter-maſters to chuſe a place for paſſing the winter-ſeaſon. They pitch'd on the plain of Mahmoudabad †, to which Timur march'd, and encamp'd on the plain of Calin Gonbed, near the town of Facrabad. Timur, who extremely lov'd the princes his children, ſent to Sultania for them, the empreſſes, and the baggage to come to the imperial camp; which they accordingly did, in their paſſage croſſing the Cyrus. Mirza Miranchа quitted the ſiege of Alengic, to come to court; and being at Babi [a], he was inform'd that he had a ſon born to him, whom the emperor nam'd Aigel. Mirza Pir Mehemet, leaving the Emirs Sevindgic, Haſſan Jagadaoul, and Ali Bei ſon of Aiſa, at Chiraz, departed thence, and join'd the imperial camp in the winter-quarters, where they paſs'd the ſeaſon agreeably in plays and feaſts, every day furniſhing new diverſions.

Chap. 51.

* Cyrus.

† In Georgia.

CHAP. LI.

Timur marches a ſecond time into Capchac againſt Tocatmich Can.

THE winter was no ſooner on the decline, than Timur departed for Capchac at the head of a powerful army, to make war on Tocatmich Can, who had not only re-eſtabliſh'd himſelf in his kingdom, but was daily making

[a] A town of Georgia, long. 79. lat. 41. 50.

Book III. irruptions into Timur's dominions, to repair the loſs of his laſt defeat. Timur diſtributed among his ſoldiers ſeveral ſums out of his treaſury; and ſent the ladys with the baggage to Sultania, to which place alſo came Tchelpan Mulc Aga, while the empreſſes Serai Mulc Canum and Touman Aga, with the young princes, departed for Samarcand. Timur order'd for their convoy Mouſa Recmal, to whom he gave the government of Sultania, in concert with Aki Irancha governor of the fortreſs. The ſeventh of Jumaziulevel 797, the army began their march in order of battel, with their enſigns diſplay'd: and as their faces were turn'd towards the north-eaſt, the left-wing advanc'd before the reſt of the army, which was the manner of the Tartar armys marching.[1] While they were in their winter-quarters, the emperor wrote the following letter to Tocatmich Can.

March 10. 1395.

"After having given God the thanks which "are due to the governor of the world; I de- "mand of you, whom the devil of pride hath "turn'd from the right way, what is your de- "ſign in paſſing beyond your bounds? who has "put you upon ſuch vain undertakings? Have "you forgot how in the laſt war your country "and effects were reduc'd to nothing? You "certainly behave your ſelf with great raſhneſs, "ſince you oppoſe your own happineſs. Is it "poſſible you can be ſo ignorant that they who "have teſtify'd their friendſhip to me, have "been receiv'd with reſpect, and drawn great "advantages from the treatys I have made with "'em, and which I have inviolably obſerv'd;

[1] Among the Tartars, the left wing is more honorable than the right.

"while

" while my enemys have not only been under continual diſquiets and fears, but alſo been " unable to eſcape my vengeance, tho in the " greateſt ſecurity? You are acquainted with " my victorys, and are perſuaded that peace or " war are equally indifferent to mè. You have " experienc'd both my mildneſs and ſeverity. " When you have read this letter, don't delay " ſending me an anſwer; but let me know your " reſolution, either for war or peace." This letter was carry'd by Chamſeddin Almaleghi, a a man of great wiſdom, experience, and addreſs; who was as well skill'd in contriving any noble deſign, as in executing it with vigor; he was perfectly acquainted with the maxims of the Tartars of Touran, and with the intereſts of the ſeveral princes of that country: and he always ſucceeded in his negotiations by his eloquence, and forcible ways of arguing *. Becauſe of theſe qualifications he was ſent into Capchac, where at his arrival he was admitted into the preſence of Tocatmich Can, to whom he related in a few words the ſubject of his embaſſy. He afterwards diſcours'd with Tocatmich in ſo forcible a manner, that the Can was wrought upon by it; and being perſuaded of the neceſſity of peace, he was about conſenting to it, and begging pardon of Timur. He had without doubt concluded a treaty, if his courtiers and generals, whoſe intereſt it was to make war, had not perſuaded him againſt it, and by that means brought ruin upon the ſtate. Tocatmich, following the evil ſentiments of his courtiers, ſent a rude and imperious anſwer to Timur, by the hands of Chamſeddin, to whom he made a preſent of a veſt. This ambaſſador, at his arrival at the court near the river of Samnour,

Chap. 51.

* He was afterwards Timur's prime miniſter.

Book III. nour [s], gave the emperor a detail of his embaſſy, and preſented to him Tocatmich's letter. Timur was enrag'd at the impertinent reaſons which he alledg'd in his anſwer; and at the ſame time gave orders for the review of his army, which he commanded to get ready with expedition.

CHAP. LII.

Timur reviews his army.

TIMUR permitted his ſoldiers to repoſe themſelves one night, and commanded 'em all to march next day in order of battel to the place of the review; which was on the banks of the Samnour, ſituate at the foot of mount Alburz, five leagues from the Caſpian. The troops having mounted, made the great cry: the Canbol * of the left wing was at the foot of mount Alburz, and that of the right wing on the banks of the ſea; and from one to the other were poſted a great number of ſoldiers upon a line. It is reported that from Genghiz Can's time ſo numerous and well-equip'd an army had not been ſeen in thoſe parts: nor do we read of any ſuch in the hiſtorys of the kings of Perſia. While Timur review'd this formidable army, all the Emirs and principal officers of each Toman on their knees aſſur'd him of their fidelity, and reſolution to ſacrifice their lives in his ſervice; for which he encourag'd 'em with the moſt affecting ſpeeches. After the review, he return'd

* Vanguard.

[s] Different from the river of the ſame name, which is a branch of the Tic in Capchac.

to

to the main body; they beat the drums and kettledrums, and ſounded the Kerrenai and the great baſſoon: the ſoldiers in an inſtant drew their ſwords, and turn'd towards the place where the enemy was at that time: after the great cry Souroun, the Emirs of the Tomans, the commanders of thouſands, and the centurions took to their reſpective poſts, and march'd in order of battel with the enſigns diſplay'd. When the army had paſs'd by Derbend, advice was brought that a hord of Tocatmich's party, call'd Caitagh, was at the foot of mount Alburz. Timur deſirous to try his fortune, according to the maxim, That the end of a battel uſually ſucceeds like the beginning, order'd that that hord ſhou'd be deſtroy'd. Our Emirs march'd thither immediately, and unexpectedly fell upon theſe unfortunate perſons. They ſurrounded 'em, ſo that of the thouſand who were there, ſcarce one eſcap'd: and after they had pillag'd their houſes, they ſet 'em on fire. At the ſame time advice was given that an ambaſſador of Tocatmich, nam'd Ortac, was coming to the camp; but at the ſight of ſo great a number of our troops, he was ſeiz'd with fear, and immediately return'd to Tocatmich, whom he told, that Timur had ſent out a great body of ſcouts, whom he follow'd in perſon at the head of a very formidable army. Timur at his arrival at Terki [1], learnt that Tocatmich's ſcouts, commanded by Cazantchi, were encamp'd on the banks of the Coi [2]: whereupon he departed with ſome choſen troops, and having march'd all night, he unexpectedly fell upon the ſcouts in the morn- Chap. 52.

LIBRARY OF THE BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE ASIATIC

[1] A town of Derbend, long. 85. lat. 43. 30.
[2] A river of Derbend above Terki, which falls into the Caſpian.

ing,

Book III. ing, who had neither time to prepare for battel, nor means to fly; ſo that our men made a horrible ſlaughter of 'em. Timur continu'd his road, and encamp'd on the banks of the Sevendge [3], till the remainder of his troops came up to him. In the mean time Tocatmich, at the head of a formidable army, encamp'd on the banks of the Terk [4]. His camp was fortify'd on all ſides, and the regiments were ſurrounded with great bucklers and waggons which ſerv'd for walls. Timur drew up his army for battel, and march'd to attack Tocatmich; who, either thro fear, or to gain a more advantageous ground, decamp'd, and return'd back with his army, moſt of his ſoldiers flinging away their bucklers to fly with the greater expedition. Timur, having found a paſſage over the Terk, croſs'd it with his troops, while Tocatmich arriv'd at the Coura [5], where he ſtaid to get together the remains of his troops. On the other hand, our army being in want of proviſions, march'd along the ſides of the river Terk, towards the country of Coulat [6], where there were proviſions in abundance, that our ſoldiers might be able to purſue the enemys without any obſtruction. Our ſcouts having brought advice that Tocatmich had rally'd his troops, and was marching by the lower part of the river; Timur having reſolv'd to give him battel, rang'd his army in order, and always preſerving the higher ground,

[3] A river between the Terk and the Col, which falls into the Caſpian.

[4] The ſame as the Tigenki; it ariſes in mount Alburz, and falls into the Caſpian.

[5] A river in Capchac between the Caiſou and the Terk: it ariſes in mount Alburz, and falls into the Caſpian.

[6] A fortreſs in Georgia, near Tacus, on the Terk.

wheel'd

wheel'd about towards the part where the enemy advanc'd. Then the two armys encamp'd in ſight of each other. Chap. 53.

The twenty-ſecond of Jumaziulakher 797, which anſwers to the year of the Hog, our Tavatchis mark'd out the ground, and the ſoldiers made entrenchments round the camp, which they fortify'd with ſtakes and palliſados, inclos'd by a ditch. Then orders were given that every one ſhou'd remain that night in their reſpective poſts, and be cautious for fear of a ſurprize. Injunctions were alſo given that no fire ſhou'd be made; nor bell ſounded, and that no one ſhou'd ſpeak with a loud voice. This night, Aibadge Aglen, who till that time had faithfully ſerv'd Timur, went over to the enemy: but the preſence or abſence of ſuch men is of ſmall importance, ſeeing no one is hurt but themſelves. April. 21. 1395.

CHAP. LIII.

Battel between Timur and Tocatmich Can.

THE morning of the twenty-third of Jumaziulakher 797, the ſoldiors of both armys began to move, and rais'd a noiſe which reſembled two oceans beating againſt each other, when agitated by the tempeſtuous winds. The commanders diſplay'd their ſtandards, and put on their helmets at the firſt ſound of the emperor's kettledrums. Timur form'd his army into ſeven bodys, placing at the head thoſe who had the title of Behaders: the infantry being cover'd with their bucklers, were plac'd before the cavalry. The Mirza Mehemet Sultan commanded the main body, which he ſtrengthen'd with April. 22. 1395.

Book III. with the braveſt men of the army. Timur again rode before the ſoldiers, to ſee whether they had all their arms, which were ſwords, lances, clubs, bows, and nets to catch men. Then he mounted at the head of twenty-ſeven choſen companys, who compos'd the body of reſerve. The enemy alſo rang'd his army over-againſt ours, and diſplay'd his enſigns. The fight began, the great cry was heard on each ſide, and on a ſudden the air was darken'd with arrows, and fill'd with the cries of *dar* or *ghir*, that is, give and ſlay, hold and take. Then came a man from the left wing, who told Timur, that Condge Aglen, Bicyaroc Aglen, Actao, Daoud Soufi, ſon-in-law of Tocatmich, and Otourcou, were advanc'd with a conſiderable detachment from their right wing, to attack our left. Whereupon Timur immediately march'd againſt 'em with his companys of reſerve, and attack'd 'em with ſo much fury, that they turn'd their backs, and fled. One of the companys Timur had with him purſu'd the enemy, who being arriv'd at their main body, rally'd, and attack'd ours ſo briskly, that they ſlew ſeveral, and made 'em give ground, and retreat fighting as far as where Timur was. By this means the companys mix'd together, and broke their ranks; and one running away, by his example made ſeveral others fly. The enemy were willing to make their advantage of this diſorder; for which reaſon they advanc'd upon our men, as far as where Timur was poſted. They boldly attack'd our hero; and notwithſtanding his vigorous reſiſtance, accompany'd with a thouſand marks of intrepidity, wherein his arrows were all diſcharg'd, his half-pike broke to ſhatters, and his ſword always in action, they had hemm'd him in, if the Emir Cheik Noureddin, reſolv'd to ſacrifice his

his life for his maſter's ſafety, had not diſmount- Chap. 53.
ed cloſe by him, with fifty others, who kept off the enemy with their arrows. Mehemed Azad, his brother Alicha, and Touzel Baourchi, made themſelves maſters of three of the enemy's waggons, which they join'd together juſt before Timur, to embaraſs the enemy, and try to break their ranks. Allahdad came alſo to Timur's aſſiſtance with his faithful company; he got off his horſe, and poſted himſelf near the Cheik Noureddin. Huſſein Malec Coutchin arriv'd with his club-men; and Zirec Yacou with his. The regiment of guards came alſo with their enſigns diſplay'd, and the horſe-tail erected, and made the great cry: and Uſtoui, who advanc'd with his company, poſted himſelf behind the guards. All theſe troops having diſmounted, ſtood their ground againſt the enemy, whoſe ſoldiers made continual attacks upon ours, and perform'd actions of the utmoſt vigor: nevertheleſs they cou'd not make our infantry give ground, who continually let fly vaſt ſhowers of arrows. Codadad Huſſeini, who conducted the vanguard of our left wing, advanc'd between Condge Aglen, who commanded the enemy's right, and planted himſelf behind Actao, who boldly fac'd Timur. In the mean time the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, with his recruits, march'd towards the left of the emperor: theſe brave men ruſh'd upon the enemy, and with their ſcimetars and lances routed their right wing, and conſtrain'd Actao to fly. The Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, who commanded the vanguard of our right wing, found himſelf more preſs'd; for the enemy's left, whoſe vanguard was commanded by the Emirs Aiſa Bei and Bacchi Coja, had the advantage of this Emir: they got behind him and inclos'd him; ſo that deſpairing of his life,

he

Book III. he diſmounted with his Toman, and holding his great buckler before him, as all his ſoldiers did likewiſe, they put themſelves in a poſture to diſcharge their arrows, and defended themſelves with an unſhaken reſolution againſt the enemy, whoſe number continually increas'd. But tho they fell upon our men with their lances, ſcimetars and demi-ſabres; yet our ſoldiers did not ceaſe repulſing 'em with their arrows, ſlaying the moſt forward, till Gehancha Behader, who came from another part of the field, ſeeing the danger Seifeddin was in, fell impetuouſly with his Toman upon the enemy, who were almoſt conquerors: the club-men gave way on one ſide, and the lanciers on the other; and the attacks were ſuſtain'd ſo vigorouſly that there was a horrible ſlaughter. When theſe two great Emirs were join'd againſt the enemy, they ruſh'd upon 'em with ſo much courage and bravery that the vanguard of their left wing gave way. The Mirza Rouſtem, ſon of Omar Cheik, ruſh'd like a thunderbolt with his Toman upon the main body, which he put to flight, after having ſlain ſeveral, and ſignaliz'd his valor, tho ſo very young, to the honor of the emperor his father. Yaghlibi Behrin, a favorite and even a relation of Tocatmjch Can, being willing to diſtinguiſh himſelf by ſome great action, advanc'd with a troop of brave men, and haughtily cried out, that he dar'd to the combat the braveſt of Timur's army: he even call'd with a loud voice to Oſman Behader, and told him that the place he was in was the field of battel, and that he expected him there. This piece of vanity ſo incens'd Oſman, that without waiting any longer, he march'd againſt him at the head of his Toman: they came to blows, and having broke their ſabres, they ſeiz'd upon their war-clubs and

and poignards, and grappled with one another like two enrag'd lions. The ſoldiers of their Tomans imitated their chiefs, and fought hand to hand; ſo that the blood flow'd in this place like a torrent, and never were ſuch furious blows given before. At length Oſman Behader had the advantage; he overthrew his enemy, and fell upon his troops with ſo much fury, that he entirely defeated 'em. All our generals in their reſpective poſts perform'd their duty ſo well, that after a long obſtinate battel, they made the enemy give ground, and put 'em into diſorder. Yet we were not certain of the defeat till the flight of Tocatmich Can, who ſhamefully turn'd his back, with the princes of his blood, that is, of the race of Touchi, the Nevians, or foreign princes dwelling in the kingdom of Capchac, and the Emirs and generals of his troops. Then all our men rally'd, and joining together, fell upon the enemy, loudly crying out, *Victory!* They ſlew a vaſt number of 'em, and afterwards hung up a great many of thoſe whom they took alive. Chap. 53.

Timur finding himſelf ſure of the victory, got off his horſe, and humbly knelt down before God, to return thanks for the aſſiſtance he had given him, acknowledging that he had gain'd the victory intirely thro his goodneſs. The princes the emperor's ſons, and the other princes and Emirs, alſo on their knees congratulated Timur, and caſt gold and precious ſtones upon him. This monarch embrac'd 'em all one after another, loading 'em with praiſes and thanks. They departed from this place; and when they were come to the bank of the Corai', Timur

' A river in Couheſtan in Georgia, which falls into the Caſpian, north of Terki.

Book III. got an exact information of all who had bravely ſerv'd the public on this important occaſion. He granted great favors to the Emir Cheik Noureddin, who had with ſo much zeal expos'd his life, to ſave his prince: he gave him a more honorable and advantageous poſt than any he had poſſeſs'd before, preſented him with a horſe of great price, a veſt of gold brocade, a belt ſet with precious ſtones, and beſides all this, a hundred thouſand Dinars Copeghi. Timur diſtributed his treaſures among the Emirs and captains, who had perform'd extraordinary actions in this battel; and that every one might be contented, he made a general promotion of all the officers of the army.

CHAP. LIV.

Timur goes in purſuit of Tocatmich Can, and inſtals a new Can of Capchac.

TIMUR left with the baggage the great booty taken after this victory; and as the Mirza Miranchа had been wounded in his hand by a fall of his horſe before the battel, he order'd this prince to remain behind to be cur'd of his wound; and he left with him, the Emirs Yadghiar Berlas, and Hadgi Seifeddin. Then he march'd at the head of his beſt troops in purſuit of Tocatmich: but when he was arriv'd at the Volga, this Can having already paſs'd it, he ſtaid ſome time on the bank of the river at a paſſage call'd Touratou. Then he order'd Coiritchac Aglen, ſon of Ourous Can, who was an officer of his court, to come before him; he gave him for his houſhold-troops the ſquadron of brave

brave Uzbecs, who were enroll'd in his ſervice; Chap. 54.
he order'd an equipage worthy of a great emperor to be prepar'd for him; he gave him a veſt of gold brocade, and a belt of gold: and after having crown'd him emperor of Capchac, and all the empire of Touchi, he made him croſs the Volga. This new Can us'd all his endeavors to get together the troops of his nation, which were diſpers'd every where, and to govern his new ſubjects. In the mean while our men cloſely purſu'd the fugitives as far as Oukec[2]; they ſlew a great number of thoſe who were in the rear. And as the enemy had our Zagataians behind 'em, and the Volga before 'em, ſeveral were made captives, while the others croſs'd the river upon floats. Tocatmich ſeeing himſelf thus cloſely purſu'd, abandon'd his effects, houſes, and all his poſſeſſions, preferring his life before his kingdom; he fled with his moſt faithful ſervants, into the unknown and impenetrable foreſts of Boular[3]. Our army march'd by the weſt ſide of the river to the place where it had been in the firſt campain of Capchac on the eaſt ſide, and where it had ravag'd all the country to this very place, which is near the dark ocean, or icy ſea. At their return the ſoldiers pillag'd a great part of Capchac, and brought an immenſe booty to Timur; as gold, ſilver, furs of Condoz, rubys and pearls, young boys and girls of great beauty, ſpotted furs of Vachacs, and even live Vachacs, whoſe pace is extremely grave tho ſwift; beſides ſeveral ſorts of animals unknown among the Zagataians.

[2] The laſt town of the dependences of Serai, long. 64. lat. 57. in Capchac upon the Volga; between Bulgar and Gebrai, and fifteen leagues from each.

[3] Boular is Bulgaria, as far as Siberia, along the river Camal, to the icy ſea.

Book III. The Mirza Mirancha, and the Emirs who ſtaid behind with the baggage, join'd Timur in a place nam'd Youlucluc Azucluc [t]. And as in this expedition moſt part of the Emirs of the empire accompany'd Timur, and this prince had a deſign to advance into the remoteſt parts of Capchac, that his name might be known in the weſtern kingdoms; he us'd his precautions with regard to the kingdoms he left behind, where there were not Emirs ſufficient to guard 'em, on whom he cou'd entirely rely: whereupon he ſent to Chiraz the Mirza Pir Mehemet, ſon of Omar Cheik, with ſix thouſand horſe; and to Samarcand the Emir Chamſeddin Abbas, with three thouſand men, accompany'd by Cayas Eddin Tercan, becauſe he belong'd to his Toman. Theſe Emirs immediately ſet out; and when they had paſs'd Derbend, and were come to Ardebil, they receiv'd news from Tauris, that Cara Youſef had again aſſembled a troop of Turcomans, with whom he was encamp'd in the neighborhood of Alatac, deſigning to march to Coi. The Emirs Chamſeddin and Cayaſeddin continu'd their road towards Samarcand; but the Mirza Pir Mehemet, with the Emirs Abouſaid Berlas, Bekich, Dolet Coja, and Toukel Behader, being come to Tauris, aſſembled the troops of the neighborhood, and were join'd by the Emirs of the Mirza Miran Chah, who had remain'd at Tauris.

Pir Mehemet receiv'd all the troops he cou'd aſſemble together, and ſet out with a reſolution to attack the Turcomans. Being arriv'd at Coi, he there join'd Tezic and Jalic, who with their ſoldiers follow'd the army. Ad-

[t] A village in the deſart of Aſtracan.

vice

vice was brought that the ſcouts of Cara Youſef were in the defile of Caraderra [5]. The Mirza made haſte to overtake 'em; and being arriv'd at this defile, the ſcouts fled towards Cara Youſef, who lay encamp'd at Bend Mahi [6], to advertize him of the Mirza's approach: which advice made this robber fly. The Mirza purſu'd him, and was join'd at Bend Mahi by Malek Azeddin, a Courde, whom we have before mention'd. They purſu'd him together three days, and encamp'd; they likewiſe ſent Emirs after him, who went as far as Avenic, without being able to join him. Then the Mirza Pir Mehemet departed to return home; he paſs'd by Tauris to Sultania, where the princeſs Canzade gave him a magnificent entertainment and a veſt: and he afterwards ſet out for Chiraz, according to the emperor's orders. Chap. 55.

CHAP. LV.

Timur marches into Europe; and pillages the weſtern Capchac, as alſo Muſcovy and Ruſſia.

AS Timur's courage wou'd not permit him to be ſatisfy'd with an enterprize, till he had carry'd it to the utmoſt perfection; ſo he was not contented with having chas'd Tocatmich Can out of his empire, and having exterminated his army: but the ſame courage made

[5] A defile of mountains, at preſent the frontiers between Perſia and Turkey. The French tranſlator has paſs'd 'em.

[6] A little river, where they ſhut up the fiſh of the lake of Van, by a countrivance in the nature of a ſluice. The French tranſlator has croſs'd it.

Book III. him take up a reſolution to conquer the reſt of Aſia on that ſide, and reduce to obedience the nations of theſe weſtern frontiers. According to this generous ſentiment, he enter'd the great deſart which leads into Europe, at the river Ouzi, or the Boriſthenes. He gave the command of the ſcouts to the Emir Oſman, who being furniſh'd with good men for that purpoſe, march'd before. He found Bikyaroc Aglen at a town nam'd Mankirmen on the Boriſthenes, with ſome other Uzbec Tartars who reſided there: he cut almoſt all of 'em in pieces, and pillag'd their houſes, as well as the goods of Bikyaroc, who with a great deal of difficulty ſav'd himſelf with ſome of his Uzbecs. Bach Temour Aglen and Actao croſs'd the Boriſthenes, and fled into the country of Hermedai[7], the inhabitants of which were their enemys, and did 'em more damage than our men cou'd have done, if they had been pillag'd or made ſlaves. The Toman of Actao entirely abandon'd that country, and fled towards the kingdom of Roum in Anatolia, and fix'd it ſelf there in the plains of Iſra Yaca. Timur quitting the country on the Boriſthenes, march'd towards Muſcovy and grand Ruſſia; he arriv'd at the river Tanais[8]: and the army again overtook Bickyaroc, who had the river before him, and our army behind him. Our ſoldiers purſu'd him as far as Caraſou[9], a town of grand Ruſſia, which they entirely pillag'd. Bikyaroc finding himſelf ſo cloſely preſs'd, was conſtrain'd to abandon his wives and children to the con-

[7] A country between the Boriſthenes and the Danube.

[8] Or Don, a river which falls into the Palus Mæotis, near the town of Azac.

[9] A town of Muſcovy, otherwiſe call'd Coreſch, on the frontiers of Poland.

queror,

queror, and fly with his eldeſt ſon: he was o- Chap. 55.
bliſg'd to retreat thro the midſt of our troops in the night-time, which he did without being known. The ſoldiers brought to Timur his wives, children and domeſtics. The emperor order'd tents to be erected for 'em to lodge in; and after having treated 'em very civilly, he made 'em preſents of cattel, horſes, ſtuffs, furniture, and other raritys, and ſent 'em back to Bikyaroc. The Mirza Mirancha, Gehancha Behader, and the other Emirs, alſo went with their Tomans and Hezares to ravage the weſtern countrys. They exterminated Bic Coja, and other Emirs dependent on Capchac, as alſo the ſubjects of Oucoul, whom they pillag'd and ſack'd. They over-run all the great kingdom of Muſcovy, and of Ourouſdgic, or little Ruſſia, where they took prodigious droves of cattel, and abundance of women and girls, of all ages, and of an extraordinary beauty and ſhape. Then Timur went in perſon to the city of Moſcou, capital of grand Ruſſia, which his ſoldiers pillag'd, as they had done all the neighboring places dependent on it, defeating and cutting in pieces the governors and princes of theſe parts.

Timur marches to Moſcou, and pillages it.

The Ruſſians and Muſcovites ne'er beheld their kingdom in ſo bad a condition, their plains being cover'd with dead bodys. The army enrich'd themſelves with whatever precious things they cou'd find in this vaſt country: as ingots of gold; ſilver blades; great quantitys of flax of Antioch very much eſteem'd; cloth wove in Ruſſia with a great deal of skill and nicety; skins of Condoz full of points, of which each ſoldier had whole mule-loads; vaſt numbers of ſables black as jet, and ermins, with which every perſon in the army was ſufficiently furniſh'd, both for his own and his childrens lives; as likewiſe

Book III. ſkins of Vacach, grey and white, ſpotted like tygers ſkins. They alſo brought away many furs of grey, and ſkins of red foxes; and an infinite number of young colts, which had not yet been ſhod. It wou'd be tedious to give a detail of all the booty they obtain'd in this great country.

The Mirza Mehemet Sultan pillag'd all the province ſubject to Cabendgi Caraoul: he got together all the hords and nations who had ſerv'd in the enemy's army during the laſt campain, as thoſe of Courbouca, Pirlan, Yurkin, and Keladgi, who for fear of falling into the hands of our men wander'd up and down in the deſart: he pillag'd their effects, carrying away their wives and children captives.

Timur having got ſome guides, departed from thoſe quarters towards Baltchimkin [1] ſouthwards. When he was arriv'd at Azac [2], ſituate upon the Tanais, he was join'd by the Mirza Mirancha with his troops, who had been out to make inroads in the enemy's countrys along the bank of the Tanais. Timur order'd that the Mahometans of Azac ſhou'd be ſeparated from the others, and left at liberty; but that all the other inhabitants of the town ſhou'd be put to the ſword, and their houſes pillag'd and burnt.

[1] Baltchimkin is the Palus Mæotis.

[2] A town at the mouth of the Tangais, long. 74. lat. 52. 30.

CHAP.

CHAP. LVI.

Timur makes war in Circaſſia.

TIMUR departed from Azac for Couban[1]: and as the Circaſſians had deſtroy'd their meadows and paſture-grounds between thoſe two towns, a great number of the horſes of the army periſh'd. They ſuffer'd this want of forage between ſeven and eight days: but at length, having paſs'd many waters and marſhes, they arriv'd at Couban, where they ſtaid ſome time. Timur ſent the Mirza Mehemet Sultan and Miranchа, the Emir Gehanchа and other Emirs to make inroads in Circaſſia, with orders to return as ſoon as they had made themſelves maſters of that kingdom. Theſe princes march'd thither with expedition, pillag'd all the goods of the Circaſſians, brought away an infinite quantity of ſpoils, and happily return'd to Timur's camp, to whom they gave an account of their expedition.

[1] Capital of Circaſſia, long. 76. lat. 47.

CHAP. LVII.

Timur marches to Alburz Couh, or mount Caucaſus.

TIMUR being ſatisfy'd with the conqueſts of Muſcovy and Circaſſia, return'd with his whole army towards mount Alburz. Then ſome ſorry fellows, who are never wanting in the courts of princes, accus'd the Emir Oſman Abbas before Timur, of crimes which had no foundation of truth. Theſe ſlanders were believ'd by the emperor, who had before ſuſpected the worth and credit of Oſman. He order'd that this illuſtrious Emir ſhou'd be put to death, who on ſo many occaſions had given indiſputable marks of his courage and conduct: but fate is inevitable.

Timur having a deſign to deſtroy the infidels, march'd towards Bouraberdi, to attack Buraken, prince of the nation of As: and as there were foreſts on this road, he order'd 'em to be cut down, in order to make a free paſſage. There he left the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin with the baggage, and march'd himſelf to mount Alburz, where he ſeveral times attack'd the Georgians, took their caſtles, and made himſelf maſter of their fortify'd defiles, which they imagin'd inacceſſible: he put a great number of theſe Georgians to the ſword, after having ruin'd their fortreſſes, and enrich'd his ſoldiers with their ſpoils.

Timur came down from the mountain, very much pleas'd with the advantages he had gain'd. He return'd to his camp, and order'd a feaſt in joy of his victorys: whereupon the pavilion of

cere-

ceremony was erected, the cords of which were of ſilk, the pillars of gold, and the pins of ſilver; the throne, on which he ſat with his crown on his head, was of gold enrich'd with precious ſtones. The princes and great lords were rang'd before him ready to receive his orders. The inſide of the tent was ſprinkled with an odoriferous roſe-water; and then the tables were plac'd, and the meats ſerv'd up in diſhes of gold. After they had done eating [a], the bottles were unſtop'd, and the cups open'd; and every one drank wine of Georgia while they were entertain'd both with vocal and inſtrumental muſic. A whole week paſs'd in theſe pleaſures, and every one repos'd himſelf from the fatigues of the campain. At length Timur made choice of the moment to decamp, which the aſtrologers found to be moſt fortunate: which was done at the ſound of kettledrums and trumpets. Chap. 58.

CHAP. LVIII.

Timur attacks the fortreſſes of Coula, Taous, and others.

TIMUR again left the body of the army, to march to the fortreſſes of Coula and Taous in Georgia, which are inhabited by the ſame people as thoſe in mount Alburz, and who can retreat into ſtrong places ſituate on ſteep mountains, the paſſages to which are almoſt inacceſſible. They are ſo very ſteep that one is

[a] The Orientals ſeldom drink till the end of their meals.

daz-

Book III. dazzled in looking upon 'em, and eſpecially that of Taous, which is on the ridge of a high mountain, and is ſo very high, that the moſt skilful archer can't hit it with his arrow; which was the reaſon that no one had ever before attempted the taking of it. Timur order'd the Toman of the Mecrits who were in his army, to come before him: theſe men are ſo dextrous in climbing up mountains, that they will go wherever the antilopes or roe-bucks can. He order'd 'em to look out for the moſt difficult ways to aſcend the place. They went all round the mountain; but were not able to find out a ſingle paſſage to the caſtle. This very much diſquieted Timur: he thought ſome time upon this enterprize; and at length reſolv'd to make a great many high ladders, which might be join'd to one another: in effect they plac'd 'em againſt the firſt ridge of the mountain, and ſome brave men aſcended. A troop of the forlorn-hope, who were reſolv'd to ſacrifice their lives for the ſucceſs of the action, being upon the top of this ridge, bound themſelves with cords; and having faſten'd the ends of the cords to the ridge of the mountain, they came down even with the place, where the beſieg'd overwhelm'd 'em with ſtones. Several on this occaſion had the honor of martyrdom: but the others, encourag'd as much by a motive of religion as by the glory of dying in the ſervice of the great Timur, took the place of the ſlain, and advanc'd with an extraordinary reſolution. And as the whole army were continually mounting the ladders, and deſcending before the place, the beſieg'd loſt courage, and cou'd not hinder our men from getting to the caſtle, and making themſelves maſters of it. They put to the ſword all the men of the nation of Ircaoun, who had retir'd thither,

thither. The governors of Coula and Taous were alſo taken and put to death. Chap. 58.

From thence the army march'd towards the fortreſs of Poulad, whither Outarcou, one of the great Emirs of Capchac, was retir'd. Timur in his way ſtaid at a place nam'd Balacan[5], where there was ſo great a quantity of hony, that all the ſoldiers were provided with ſome. The emperor being willing to make the governor of this place, whoſe name was alſo Poulad, own his fault, wrote a letter to him, in which he declar'd, that if he did not ſend Outarcou to him, who had fled for refuge into his place, he wou'd make him repent of it. Poulad, confiding in the ſtrength of his citadel, ſlighted the letter, and ſent Timur word, that he was in a good fortreſs, and ready to defend himſelf if attack'd; that the lord Outarcou having fled for refuge to him, he wou'd not deliver him up, but as long as he had one drop of blood left, he wou'd defend him to the utmoſt of his power. Timur having receiv'd this anſwer, was more incens'd, and reſolv'd to take the caſtle at any rate. There was in the way to it a very thick wood, the trees of which grew ſo very cloſe together, that the wind cou'd ſcarce find a paſſage thro it: whereupon he order'd the ſoldiers to cut down this foreſt, and make a way thro it; which they accordingly did for the ſpace of three leagues. Then the ſtandards being diſplay'd, they began their march, and arriv'd at the place. The fortreſs is ſituate in a very ſteep defile of mountains; and the inhabitants had ſtopt up the way which leads to it, and plac'd a

[5] A town of Georgia, different from the town of Balaican, alſo in Georgia.

good

Book III. good guard there, having reſolv'd to ſacrifice their lives to their maſter's ſervice, at the incitation of the aſſaſſins we have already mention'd. They raſhly attack'd our ſoldiers firſt; but were ſoon defeated: our men enter'd the place, and having made themſelves maſters of it, put to the ſword all who were capable of bearing arms. Outarcou fled, and eſcap'd by the defiles of mount Alburz. Our ſoldiers pillag'd the goods, and ſet fire to the houſes of theſe miſerable people, making the inhabitants ſlaves, and carrying away much booty.

Advice being brought that three companys of Georgians, who had fled, were poſted on the top of a mountain, Timur march'd immediately againſt 'em, attack'd 'em, and after their defeat, caus'd 'em all to be caſt into the fire. Then the Mirza Miranchа, who commanded the troops of the right wing, acquainted the emperor that he had purſu'd Outarcou, who was got to the very middle of mount Alburz, where he defended himſelf in a place nam'd Abaſa. Timur hereupon immediately departed, enter'd the mount Alburz, and being encamp'd at Abaſa, they at length ſeiz'd on Outarcou, whom they brought before the emperor, who order'd him to be bound, and loaded with chains. The ſoldiers pillag'd all the habitations of this great and famous mountain, of which they entirely made themſelves maſters.

CHAP.

CHAP. LIX.

Timur marches to Semſem.

TIMUR march'd againſt the country of Semſem, where he no ſooner appear'd than he became maſter of all this tract of ground. Mehemet ſon of Gaiour Can, to whom it belong'd, came to offer it at his feet, and beg the honor for himſelf and all his ſubjects to be of the number of his ſervants: and he was enrol'd among the officers of Timur's court. Several of the inhabitants of theſe places had fled into the mountain, and maintain'd their ground in ſteep places, where the foot ſoldiers were ſcarce able to ſtand upon their legs. Timur went himſelf in ſearch of 'em, and mounted theſe difficult places; where his ſoldiers met with ſome reſiſtance from the enemys, who were at length overcome and brought to Timur, who order'd 'em to be bound, and precipitated from the top of the mountain. There were ſeveral places in Georgia, out of which neither horſe nor foot cou'd get, without gently ſliding down the ſteep hills. Timur's zeal for the honor of religion, and deſire to obtain the rewards promis'd to thoſe who make war for the faith, excited him to hazard his perſon in all theſe difficultys, and expoſe himſelf to the greateſt fatigues. But at length he clear'd this country of the infidels who inhabited it, ſetting fire to their houſes, and deſtroying their ſtatues and churches. From

* A town and country in mount Alburz in Georgia.

thence

Book III. thence he march'd to mount Aouhar, which he gave in pillage to his ſoldiers; and afterwards to Bichkunt [7], where he gave great largeſſes to the inhabitants, becauſe they had long ſince offer'd him their ſervices: he aſſign'd 'em lordſhips, with aſſurances that they need not fear any harm; for he prohibited his ſoldiers from wronging 'em in the leaſt manner, that every one might ſee, that what he did was either a recompence for their merits, or a puniſhment for their crimes. He then march'd on farther, and ravag'd the countrys of the Coſſacks of Jutour *, putting to the ſword all theſe robbers: our ſoldiers brought from thence great quantitys of goods, and eſpecially of hony, with which this country abounds. From thence they went to Bogaz Com [8], where the inhabitants of Mamcatou and Cazicomouc came to make their ſubmiſſions: he gave 'em a handſom reception and largeſſes, and promis'd 'em his protection againſt the inſults of his ſoldiers. Then there remain'd unconquer'd in Georgia only the iſles, the inhabitants of which confiding in the water which ſurrounded 'em, had fortify'd themſelves, and neglected to come and pay their devoirs to Timur: they were call'd Balectchian, that is to ſay, the fiſhermen. Timur ſent troops to reduce 'em: and as it was winter, and the waters were froze above two cubits in thickneſs, the ſoldiers paſs'd over, and fell upon the houſes of theſe iſlanders, pillag'd their effects, and carry'd 'em away captive to the imperial camp.

* In Georgia.

[7] A town of Georgia, long. 78. lat. 43.
[8] A defile of mountains in Georgia.

CHAP.

CHAP. LX.

Timur marches into Capchac, and pillages the town of Hadgi Tercan[a], or Aſtracan.

OMAR Taban, Timur's lieutenant in Hadgi Tercan, having obſerv'd ſomething treaſonable in the conduct of Mahmoudi, who was the Kelanter[b], caus'd a memorial to be writ of it, which he ſent to the emperor, who on that advice took up a reſolution to raze the town. He began his march during winter, which was very violent this year, leaving with the baggage the Mirzas Mehemet Sultan and Miraucha, and the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin. He went at the head of his troops thro the ſnows, and bad ways, caus'd by the ſeverity of the ſeaſon. Hadgi Tercan is ſituate on the bank of the Volga: the walls of this town are cloſe to the river, which runs round 'em by means of the ditches of the town, and ſo ſerves for a rampart to 'em. And as the river is froze in winter, they uſually build a wall of ice as ſtrong as one of brick, upon which they fling water in the night, that the whole may congeal, and become one piece: to which wall they make a gate. The mention of this wall we believe will not diſpleaſe the reader, becauſe it is ſo extraordinary. Timur being come near Hadgi Tercan, march'd before the army, and in the morning advanc'd before the town but with few men.

[a] A town of Capchac upon the Volga, long. 87. lat. 47.
[b] Governor of the town.

Book III. Mahmoudi was oblig'd to go out, to meet the emperor: but Timur caus'd him to be arreſted, and ſent towards Serai under the conduct of the Mirza Pir Mehemet, and the Emirs Gehancha, Cheik Noureddin, and Coja Acbouga. He then enter'd the place, the inhabitants of which he treated very courteouſly: but at length he made 'em go out, and after having brought out the men and beaſts, and all that was within, he caus'd it to be raz'd. The Mirza Pir Mehemet, having croſs'd the Volga which was frozen up, thruſt Mahmoudi under the ice, according to the orders they had receiv'd. Afterwards they went to Serai [a], capital of Capchac, which they ſet on fire, and reduc'd to aſhes, after having made the inhabitants go out. This deſtruction of Serai was to revenge the inſolence of the men of Capchac, who had ruin'd Zendgir Serai [b], the palace of Sultan Cazan Can, while it was without a governor; and there was ne'er a prince in Tranſoxiana, Timur being employ'd in the conqueſt of the kingdoms of Fars and Irac. After Timur had reveng'd himſelf of theſe traitors, he return'd to the winter-quarters: and inaſmuch as the violence of the cold had extremely weaken'd his army, ſo that moſt part of the horſes periſh'd, and the dearth was ſo great in the camp, that a pound of millet was ſold for ſeventy Dinars Copeghi, an ox's head for a hundred, and a ſheeps-head for two hundred and fifty; the emperor order'd that the ſpoils taken at Hadgi Tercan and Serai ſhou'd be divided among the ſoldiers. The Tavatchis had the

[a] Capital of Capchac, where the Tartar kings of Decht Barca, which is the Arabian name of Capchac, reſide: it is ſituate on the Volga, long. 81. lat. 52.

[b] Two leagues from Carchi in Tranſoxiana.

care

care of this: they gave horſes to all thoſe who had none; ſo that the army was very much eas'd. Chap. 61.

CHAP. LXI.

Timur returns to Capchac.

AS all the countrys of Capchac, Kéſer [5], and the weſt and north of the Caſpian ſea, were reduc'd under Timurs dominion, and his troops had pillag'd and ſack'd the towns and provinces of all theſe climates, as Onkec [6], Madgiar *, little Ruſſia, Circaſſia, Bachgorod [7], Mekes or Moſcow, Azac, Couban, and Alan [8]; and as all the princes of theſe countrys had given aſſurances of their obedience, and the enemy who had eſcap'd with their lives were diſpers'd like vagabonds, without either fire or houſes: at the beginning of the ſpring of the year 798 of the Hegira, which anſwers to the year of the Mouſe, Timur decamp'd from his winter-quarters in the defile of Bougaz Com, march'd into Derbend and Azerbijana; and at the ſound of drums, and the acclamations of the ſoldiers, with the enſigns diſplay'd, he croſs'd the river of Terk upon the ice. As ſoon as he was come to Terki, he left the baggage, rang'd his army in order of battel, and march'd towards Uchendge [9], to attack the Chriſtians there: he be-

* Hungary. An. Dom. 1396.

[5] The province between Coraſſana and the Caſpian ſea.
[6] A town of Capchac on the Volga, near Bulgar and Samera; long. 84. lat. 52. 30.
[7] A town of Capchac, long. 90. 35. lat. 58.
[8] A town and country between Georgia and the black ſea.
[9] A country of Georgia, north-eaſt of Teflis.

Book III. ſieg'd the town, and ſent ſoldiers into all the province to pillage it, and bring away what booty they cou'd. Then Choukel came from Cazi Comouc and Aouſcher, with three thouſand men, to ſuccour Uchindge, tho Choukel before had wag'd war with 'em. The ſcouts of the right were the firſt who perceiv'd their approach, and inform'd the emperor of it, who immediately went to meet 'em at the head of five hundred choſen horſe, and found 'em incamp'd behind a hill, having let looſe their horſes to feed. Timur got upon the hill, that he might take all neceſſary precautions as to what he obſerv'd: and when he was come down, he immediately gave a ſign to his ſoldiers to fall upon the enemy, who ſuſpected nothing; which they did with ſo much fury, that they put almoſt all to the ſword. Mobacher Behader overtook Choukel, who to ſave his life, got off his horſe, and retreated to a mountain. Mobacher let fly an arrow at him, which ſtruck him down, and he was wounded ſo deſperately that he expir'd forthwith: Mobacher cut off his head, and brought it to Timur, with ſome priſoners, whom Timur thus reproach'd: "Is it "poſſible that you who have had the honor of "entring into the Mahometan religion, and "have conſtantly made war on the Chriſtians, "ſhou'd now come to their ſuccour, and aban-"don your law?" They confeſs'd their fault, and begg'd for pardon and quarter; which Timur granted, gave 'em a handſom treatment, and preſented to 'em veſts and other things: he even permitted 'em to return home, that the Kelanters and other grandees of their nation might learn from them the affection he had for thoſe who were ſtrict adherers to the Mahometan religion, and might imitate 'em in coming before

before him to teſtify their repentance for their fault: he likewiſe promis'd they ſhou'd partake of his liberalitys, and that he wou'd confirm 'em in their principalitys. Chap. 61.

Timur was no ſooner return'd to his camp, than his ſoldiers made themſelves maſters of Uchendge: they put to the ſword all the ſoldiers in the gariſon, made piles of their bodys, and at length ravag'd all the country. Then the Kelanters of Cazi Comouc and Aouſcher, with the Cadis and other great men of the country, came to caſt themſelves at Timur's feet, confeſſing their fault, begging forgiveneſs, and offering their ſervice and obedience. The emperor not only pardon'd 'em, but even honor'd 'em with rich preſents, exhorting 'em to make war on the Chriſtians, according to their antient cuſtom, and ſo procure all the advantages which can be expected to the muſſulman religion: he likewiſe confirm'd 'em in their ſovereigntys by letters-patent, and then diſmiſs'd 'em.

From thence he went to attack the town of Norghes [1], which he took at the firſt onſet, put the inhabitants to the ſword, and order'd the place to be pillag'd and raz'd. Several of the inhabitants were got upon the top of the mountain, and others were retir'd into the clefts and caverns of the rocks. Timur order'd they ſhou'd be purſu'd, and being overtaken, they were ſlain with lances and arrows; and our ſoldiers carry'd away their effects. They afterwards took by aſſault the towns of Mica, Balou and Dercalou, at the foot of mount Alburz, which they raz'd; and after having pillag'd and ſeiz'd

[1] A town of Georgia or Mingrelia, long. 77. lat. 43.

Book III. on every thing they found in 'em, they return'd laden with ſpoils to the camp. After all the places and lordſhips, ſituate on the north of mount Alburz, were reduc'd to Timur's obedience, he decamp'd, and march'd with all his army, enrich'd with the ſpoils of Georgia and the northern countrys. Every ſoldier brought away five or ſix of the moſt beautiful young women of the country; and their waggons were fill'd with riches. The inhabitants of Zereghe-ran, the moſt skilful workmen in coats of mail, came to meet the emperor, and offer him their ſervices, and preſented him with ſeveral of the maſter-pieces of their art; his highneſs receiv'd 'em with all manner of civility, and was liberal to 'em. Thoſe of the mountain Caitagh alſo ſubmitted, and came to beg quarter; which Timur granted, and diſmiſs'd 'em. Then he march'd to Derbend Bacou, that is, the Caſpian gates, and caus'd the walls of the fortreſs to be built in a ſhort time.

The news of the emperor's return being ſpread every where, all the nations came to meet him; and he was receiv'd in triumph, with enſigns diſplay'd. The citys ſent to congratulate him upon his conqueſts with great pomp and ceremony, and made ſolemn plays and feaſts to return thanks to God. The Cheik Ibrahim, prince of Chirouan, who had follow'd the court in this expedition, beg'd leave to ſet out before the reſt. He enter'd into Chaberan [a], and us'd all his care to prepare a great banquet, to receive the emperor in a magnificent manner: in effect, his regale was ſplendid, and worthy of the court; and he acquitted himſelf like a good

[a] A town of Chirouan between Derbend and Chamaki.

ſer-

ſervant, and a compleat courtier. From thence Timur march'd to Chamaki [3], and encamp'd on the bank of the river of Cyrus. The ſame Cheik Ibrahim, who was alſo prince of this town, a ſecond time entertain'd the emperor and the court, making preſents likewiſe to Timur, and aſſuring him of a perfect obedience to his orders. This monarch gave him a veſt, and a belt of gold enrich'd with precious ſtones: he alſo diſtributed veſts among the relations of this Cheik, and the principal officers of his houſhold: he confirm'd him in the principality of Chirouan and Chamaki, recommended to him the care of the town of Derbend, as a place of importance, and to inform himſelf of whatever ſhou'd happen near the frontiers of his principality. Timur ſpent ſome days in this fine country in plays and pleaſures, croſs'd the river of Cyrus, and went to encamp at Actam. Chap. 62.

CHAP. LXII.

Timur gives the government of Azerbijana to the Mirza Mirancha, who beſieges Alengic.

TIMUR having given to the Mirza Miran-cha the government of Azerbijana, and all the country ſituate between Derbend Bacou and Bagdad, and from Hamadan to the country of the Ottomans; orders were ſent by an expreſs to all the officers of this Mirza, who had remain'd in Coraſſana, to march to Azerbijana with the Emirs and troops of his houſhold. The

[3] Capital of Chirouan, long. 83. lat. 40.

Book III. emperor order'd him to govern this kingdom by himſelf, and to beſiege Alengic. The Mirza, when he came to take his leave of the emperor, was tenderly embrac'd by him, who order'd the Mirza Rouſtem and Gehancha Behader to accompany him with ſome good troops, and conduct him as far as Alengic. The Emirs and troops, who were order'd from Coraſſana, being arriv'd, he fix'd the countrys of Carabagh and Nacchivan, as far as Avenic, for the hords and habitations of the troops of his right wing; and the hords of his left wing were quarter'd in the countrys from Saouc Boulac [4] and Derguzin [5], as far as Hamadan [6].

CHAP. LXIII.

Taking of the town of Seirjan, and the retreat of Behloul to Nehavend.

WHILE Timur was buſy'd in the campain of Capchac in the moſt northern countrys, the town of Seirjan ſuffer'd a ſiege of three years, wherein Chahchahan with the troops of Siſtan were employ'd. This place was ſo preſs'd by the beſiegers, that all the inhabitants and gariſon were ſlain in the aſſault, except Gouderz the governor and ſix other perſons. At length, the place being deliver'd up, Gouderz was put to death for his obſtinacy. Temouke Coutchin, governor of Yezd for Timur, left one of his domeſtic officers to govern this

[4] A town between Tauris and Sultania.
[5] A town near Sultania.
[6] A town of Irac Agemi, long. 83. lat. 35. 30.

town,

town, whilſt himſelf went to the imperial camp. Chap. 63.
The Sultan Mehemet, ſon of Abouſaid Tebeſi, with ſome troops of Coraſſana, which had formerly been in the ſervice of the princes of Muzaffer, and had ſtaid at Yezd, were ſo ambitious as to form a deſign to revolt, tho they had been witneſſes of the examples we have mention'd: he ſlew Temouke's lieutenant, and ſeveral of the great officers of Yezd, while others eſcap'd their hands by flight.

As the lieutenant had amaſs'd a conſiderable ſum of mony, being the revenue of this province for two years, which he had put into the hands of the receiver-general of the finances of Timur's Divan, and beſides had bought ſeveral loads of ſtuffs for the empreſs Serai Mulc Canum, which he had not yet ſent to her; this inſolent fellow ſeiz'd upon both the mony and ſtuffs, and made the taylors of the town come to him, whom he oblig'd to make him ſeveral veſts of theſe ſtuffs, that he might clothe all the rebels who had liſted themſelves into his ſervice, among whom he likewiſe ſhar'd the mony. By this means he aſſembled an infinite number of robbers and villains, who were come here from all parts, hoping to make their fortune on this occaſion. This ſedition oblig'd the Mirza Pir Mehemet, ſon of Omar Cheik, to depart from Chiraz with the Perſian army, to put a ſtop to theſe diſorders, and diſperſe the rebels. The governors of the neighboring provinces, as Iſpahan, Couheſtan, and Coraſſana, alſo march'd towards Yezd at the head of their troops; and being all aſſembled without the city, they form'd the ſiege.

Timur being inform'd of what had happen'd, order'd the Mirza Pir Mehemet, ſon of Gehanghir, to march thither, with Temour Coja ſon of Acbouga,

Book III. bouga, and other Emirs, at the head of his troops. When they were arriv'd there, they received a ſecond order, that, there not being a ſufficient quantity of paſture in the meadows of Yezd to feed all their horſes, they ſhou'd be left in the freſh countrys of Kiochec, and the province of Iſpahan, and that the cavalry ſhou'd march on foot to Yezd, to beſiege it. The Mirza and the Emirs departed according to this order; and when they had paſs'd by Iſpahan, and were come to Yezd, they encamp'd about it and beſieg'd it, giving two aſſaults each day, one in the morning, and the other in the evening.

When Timur was in Capchac, the Emir Mezid Berlas, a courteous, experienc'd, courageous prince, and of irreproachable conduct, was his governor in Nehavend. This lord had an officer nam'd Behloul, a man of a wicked and perverſe inclination, and deſtin'd to an evil end. His natural ingratitude excited him to deſpiſe the favors of the Emir Mezid, and treacherouſly to put him to death: by which means this villain got to be governor of Nehavend, and made preparations for an army, that he might maintain his revolt. Timur being arriv'd at Ardebil, ſent the Emir Cheik Noureddin to Chiraz, to receive the revenues of Perſia. When this Emir was arriv'd there, the Emir Sevindgic ſet out thence for the court, according to Timur's orders. Timur departed for Ardebil, and encamp'd at Sultania, where having compaſſion on the poor Sultan Aiſa prince of Merdin, who had then lain in priſon for three years, he order'd his chains to be taken off; and after having comforted him, and given him a veſt, he pardon'd him, and by letters-patent reſtor'd him to the principality of Merdin, which he had before enjoy'd; yet not till this prince had ſolemnly

lemnly ſworn before the Emirs who protected him, that he wou'd never fail in his obedience to the emperor, but accompany him in all his wars, and on every occaſion give marks of his reſpect and fidelity: and then he departed to return to Merdin. Chap. 63.

Timur after this order'd the Mirza Sultan Huſſein, and Codadad Huſſeini, to march with expedition to Nehavend, with the other Emirs and their troops, to take this place, and deſtroy the impious Behloul, as a puniſhment for what he had done. They immediately ſet out, and Timur went from Sultania to Hamadan. When the Emirs were come to Nehavend, they caus'd the drums to be beat, and the trumpets ſounded: then they beſieg'd the town, which they took with abundance of toil and fatigue, and cut in pieces all the rebels who defended it: the traitor Behloul was ſeiz'd, and burnt alive.

Timur then order'd the Emirs to march againſt Toſtar, to exterminate the robbers of the highways of Loreſtan, and quell the diſorders they had committed: he enjoin'd 'em to march along the ſhores of the Perſian gulf, to bring under his obedience all the maritim places as far as the frontiers of Ormus, and return to the court after they had gain'd all theſe conqueſts. The Emirs departed from Nehavend according to theſe orders; and Timur went to encamp in the great plain of Hamadan, with the uſual magnificence in his tents and pavilions. This monarch ſtaid there during the whole month of Ramadan, which he ſpent in prayer, faſting, and the other exerciſes of piety which good Muſſulmans obſerve: and he was not contented with practiſing all thoſe things he was oblig'd to, but he perform'd alſo ſuch acts of devotion as the prophet only adviſes.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXIV.

Timur ſends the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to conquer the kingdom of Ormus. The reduction of Yezd.

WHEN the feaſt of Bairam was over, the emperor order'd the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to march to Ormus, and make himſelf maſter of all the towns near the Perſian gulf: and he accordingly departed at the head of the army. Then advice was brought of the reduction of Yezd, which after a long ſiege was ſtarv'd out, thirty thouſand perſons dying of famine. Timur pardon'd the inhabitants, becauſe he knew they were not concern'd in the ſedition; but the rebels, who had carry'd on the war, were reduc'd to ſuch extremity, that they were conſtrain'd to dig a way under the ditch of the town, by which to eſcape: which our ſoldiers perceiving, they purſu'd 'em, and near Mehridgerd [7] ſlew the ſon of Abouſaid Tebeſi, the leader of theſe ſeditious perſons, ſome of whom were cut in pieces, and others burnt alive. As Timur prohibited every one from hurting or pillaging the inhabitants; he was alſo willing they ſhou'd pay no tax: and Temouke Coutchin, who had been governor there for Timur before the rebellion, had orders to go into the town with his men, and hinder the ſoldiers entrance, leſt they ſhou'd inſult the inhabitants.

[7] A town of Coraſſana, otherwiſe call'd Eſferain and Mehredjan, long. 91. 30. lat. 36. 30.

Timur

Timur did not demand of 'em even the revenues of the two laſt years: and as thro the tyranny of the rebels the town of Yezd had been ſo far ruin'd that there remain'd no ſhops in it, and moſt of the houſes were empty by the death of the inhabitants, it was now re-eſtabliſh'd, and in a ſhort time became as flouriſhing as before the revolt, thro the good conduct of Timur's officers. After the reduction of Yezd, the Mirzas had orders to return to court, and let their troops repair to their quarters. So the Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir return'd by Coraſſana to Condoz and Bacalan; the Mirza Pir Mehemet, ſon of Omar Cheik, came to court; and the troops of the victorious army march'd to their own habitations. Chap. 65.

CHAP. LXV.

Timur returns to the ſeat of his empire.

THE 2d of Chawal 798, which anſwers to the year of the Mouſe, Timur departed from Hamadan, in order to return to Samarcand. He went to encamp in a delightful meadow, from whence he ſent to the Emir Gehancha, with orders to leave the ſiege of Alengic to the Sultan Sondger, Hadgi Seifeddin, and the troops of the Mirza Mirancha, that he might follow the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to Fars. The ſame day he gave orders for a hunting: the principal officers of his court and houſhold form'd the great circle, ſurrounding the plain; and Timur took the diverſion of *killing* the beaſts. After the hunting was over, he ſent Abdel Malec Caracan, who came from Alengic, July 30. 1396

to

Book III. to the Mirza Rouſtem, to ſummon him to court. Abdel Malec met the Mirza at Sultania: and they came back with expedition. Timur diſbanded the whole army, and ſet out before the baggage, marching in one day as far as others wou'd in three or four. At his arrival at Veramin [a], the Mirza Rouſtem paid his reſpects to him, and was ſoon after ſent to Chiraz to join the Mirza Mehemet Sultan.

Timur at his return from Capchac, had ſent the Tavachi Sekizec to the Mirza Charoc at Samarcand, with orders to ſend the Mirza Aboubecre, the Emir Rouſtem ſon of Tagi Bougai Berlas, Pir Ali ſon of Mamut Chah Yeſouri, and other ſons of Emirs to the imperial camp, with the five thouſand horſe which remain'd with him. This Mirza join'd the emperor at Beſtan, and was receiv'd with all imaginable careſſes. Timur gave him a hundred thouſand Dinars Copeghi, with his bay horſe call'd Taharten, famous for his largeneſs and ſwiftneſs: he alſo made preſents to all the officers of this prince's houſhold; and then he ſent him to his father the Mirza Mirancha at Tauris.

Our conqueror continu'd his road towards Samarcand; and in all the places he paſs'd thro, the Emirs, captains and other officers, came to teſtify their obedience to him, and brought him preſents of all ſorts of raritys. When he was arriv'd at Coraſſana, the Emir Acbouga immediately departed from Herat, to pay his devoirs to him; and when he had that honor granted him, he offer'd his preſents, and ſprinkled upon him gold and precious ſtones. Timur inform'd

[a] A town of Couheſtan in the territory of Reja, long. 86. 30. lat. 35. 25.

him-

himſelf wherever he paſs'd of the condition of the people: he aveng'd thoſe who were oppreſs'd by tyrants, and ſeverely puniſh'd extortioners as an example to others, putting ſome of 'em to death. And the better to eſtabliſh juſtice, and hinder the great lords from wronging the people, he made the Emir Allahdad inſpector-general of Coraſſana. Chap. 65.

Timur having croſs'd the Oxus in boats before Amouye, he enter'd the country of Cuzar, where he found the empreſſes Sultan Bact Begum, Serai Mulc Canum, Touman Aga, and the other ladys and princeſſes who came to meet him with prince Charoc; they ſprinkled great quantitys of gold and precious ſtones upon his head, and made their preſents to him, which conſiſted of a thouſand horſes richly capariſon'd, adorn'd with precious ſtones, and harneſſes and bridles of gold; beſides a thouſand mules all of one colour. They gave thanks to God for the emperor's happy return, who departed from Cuzar and came to Kech, where he lodg'd in the palace of Acſerai, which himſelf had built. He then went to viſit the tombs of the Cheik Chamſeddin Kolar, and other great Santons of the country, where after his devotions, he gave largeſſes and alms to the Santons who at that time dwelt there: he enter'd into the tomb of the Emir Tragai his father, that of his dear ſon the Mirza Gehanghir, and thoſe of his other children and relations, where the whole Alcoran was recited by the readers, to whom he was exceeding liberal. The principal men of the city of Kech, and all the great lords of divers provinces, citys and towns of Tranſoxiana, came forthwith to court, where they kiſs'd the earth before the emperor, congratulated him on his conqueſts, and wiſh'd him a long and proſ-

perous

Book III. perous reign. Timur order'd a ſolemn feaſt with banquets and plays in Acſerai, to entertain 'em, with all the ceremonys uſual on ſuch occaſions.

At length Timur departed; and having paſs'd the mountain of Kech, made his entry into Samarcand, which the inhabitants had adorn'd, to receive this great emperor in triumph: on all ſides were to be ſeen garlands of flowers with crowns, amphitheaters, and muſicians performing the neweſt pieces of muſic to the honor of his majeſty. The walls of the houſes were hung with carpets, the roofs cover'd with ſtuffs, and the ſhops ſet off with curious pieces. There was a vaſt multitude of people, and the ſtreets were cover'd with velvet, ſattin, ſilks and carpets, which the horſes trampled under feet. Timur had no ſooner made his entry, than he went to viſit the ſepulchers of the ſaints, and of learned and illuſtrious perſons; he gave great largeſſes to the Santons who took care of 'em, and alms to the poor; and at length he came to his palace, and ſat upon the imperial throne. He order'd that for joy at his happy return, a magnificent feaſt ſhou'd be made with all manner of diverſions, in his own palace of Gheuc Serai, where the greateſt ſplendor and ſumptuouſneſs appear'd. All the poets compos'd verſes in his praiſe, and nothing was to be heard but *Long live the emperor.*

After this feaſt was over, Timur entirely employ'd his time in the government of the ſtate, and regulating the public affairs: he order'd the Cherifs, or deſcendents of Mahomet, the doctors, the men of letters, and the chief perſons belonging to the moſques of his empire, who were then at court, to come before him; and he gave to every one of 'em, according to his rank

and

and dignity, ſome of the booty he had taken in Perſia, Media, Hircania, Chaldea, Capchac, Georgia, Muſcovy, and the other countrys he had conquer'd ſince his departure from Samarcand. Then he inform'd himſelf of the affairs of the people, and did juſtice to all who made complaints. He order'd the tyrants to be put in chains, and the fork'd branch hung round their necks: and afterwards he put ſome of 'em to death. He exempted all the ſubjects of his empire from taxes for three years; and made choice of ſeveral men of merit, probity and piety, whom he ſent into all his kingdoms, to make an exact inquiſition into the public concerns, and render juſtice to the oppreſs'd. He alſo gave great alms to the poor both within and without Samarcand. Thus all his people, either near or at a diſtance, were ſo pleas'd with having ſuch an equitable, generous, and valiant emperor, that they juſtly ſtyl'd his reign the golden age. Chap. 65

Timur paſs'd the winter at Samarcand in the palace of Gheuc Serai, with abundance of magnificence, where he exercis'd his juſtice and liberality. He ſent back to Chiraz the Mirza Pir Mehemet, ſon of Omar Cheik, who was come expreſs to Samarcand to pay his duty to him. In the mean while a ſon was born to the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who was nam'd Mehemet Gehanghir. Timur order'd feaſts, banquets, preſents, and the uſual compliments to be made in all parts; and he choſe Toura Malec Coutchin to carry the agreeable news to the Mirza, the father of the new-born prince, who was then in Perſia.

CHAP. LXVI.

The building of the palace of Baghi Chemal.

An. Dom. 1397. AT the beginning of the ſpring of 799, Timur went to a pleaſure-houſe he had built north of Samarcand, and which for that reaſon he had nam'd Baghi Chemal, the garden of the north; where his canopy and royal tent were erected. He order'd a palace to be built in this delightful garden, whoſe beauty and magnificence ſhou'd be the admiration of the univerſe; and which ſhou'd be a proper place for plays and banquets on days of rejoicing. He dedicated this palace to the princeſs Beghiſi Sultan, daughter of the Mirza Mirancha. The architects of Perſia and Bagdad, who had been brought into this city, ſtrove to excel each other in their plans, according to the niceſt rules of architecture. His highneſs having made choice of one of theſe plans, gave orders that the palace ſhould be built according to that model: he commanded the aſtrologers to come before him, whom he enjoin'd to obſerve the happy moment for beginning this building. According to their directions, the foundations April 1397. were laid in the month of Jumaziulakher 799, which anſwers to the year of the Crocodile, under a fortunate horoſcope. The four pavilions of the corners were diſtributed among the Emirs, who were to inſpect the workmen. The moſt skilful maſters in each art were employ'd: and as they were carefully obſerv'd, the work was ſoon in its deſir'd condition: and Timur was ſo intent upon his building, that he

he ſtaid here a month and a half, that it might be the ſooner finiſh'd. Care was taken that the angles of the pavilions ſhou'd be extremely ſtrong and ſolid: and to that purpoſe a piece of marble which had been brought from Tauris was plac'd at each corner. The walls were painted in freſco by the moſt skilful painters from Perſia and Bagdad, with ſo much art and care, that the works of Artenc Mani*, ſeveral of whoſe pieces Timur kept in his cabinet of curioſitys, were leſs beautiful than theſe paintings; and ſome travellers on ſeeing 'em, ſaid, that the Neghiar Cané (which is the name of the palace of China, whoſe magnificence hath paſs'd into a proverb) is nothing in compariſon of Baghi Chemal. The court of it was pav'd with marble; the bottom of the walls, as well within as without, were cover'd with porcelane: and to crown the work, after the building was finiſh'd, Timur order'd a royal feaſt, where, with ſumptuous banquets, plays and diverſions, this charming retreat was for ever conſecrated to the pleaſure of the emperors of Zagatai. Chap. 67.

CHAP. LXVII.

Timur gives the principality of Coraſſana to the Mirza Charoc.

TIMUR having ſeveral children, whoſe power, credit and authority approach'd to ſovereignty, and who doubtleſs had in their hearts the ambition of reigning in their turns,

* The moſt antient painter of China and Perſia.

Book III. and leaving a crown to their ſucceſſors, reflected upon the diſorders which wou'd ariſe, if at any time diſcord ſhou'd creep in among 'em: but as he foreſaw that his auguſt poſterity wou'd be perpetuated in the Mirza Charoc his eldeſt ſon, he reſolv'd to give him during his life the propriety of the kingdom of Coraſſana, being that of all his kingdoms which by its ſituation ſeem'd fitteſt for the ſeat of his empire, as it lay in the fourth climate, and was a temperate country in the middle of Aſia, between the two empires of Iran and Touran. The feaſt of the conſecration of the palace of Baghi Chemal was a favorable conjuncture for the coronation of the Mirza. Timur was invited thither by this happy occaſion: and while moſt part of the lords of the empire were aſſembled, he proclaim'd the Mirza Charoc Behader ſovereign and abſolute prince of the kingdoms of Coraſſana, Siſtan, and Mazendran, as far as to Firouzcouh and the town of Rei. Then he nam'd Emirs and generals of the firſt rank for the principal poſts in the court of this new ſovereign; of whom the Emir Soliman Chah was the moſt conſiderable, tho the others were alſo lords of great figure. Each of 'em was plac'd at the head of a company ſelected out of a Toman; and all the other Emirs had the honor to ſend their ſons or brothers to accompany this prince. As ſoon as our conqueror had iſſu'd out his letters-patent to eſtabliſh Charoc king of Coraſſana, he tenderly embrac'd him, kiſs'd his eyes and forehead, and diſmiſs'd him, after having teſtify'd the ſorrow he felt at his abſence. The new king took leave of his father, and ſet out at the head of his army, being accompany'd by the princes his brothers for two days journy, as alſo by the Emirs and great lords

of

of the emperor's court, who were no ſooner on their return home than this king continu'd his road, and arriv'd at the Oxus near Amouye, where he croſs'd it in the month of Chaban 799, which anſwers to the year of the Crocodile: he encamp'd at Andcoud, where he was entertain'd, as he had been in all the places in his paſſage, with banquets, plays and dances, which were prepar'd for his honor. When he was at Tchitchectou, the Emir Acbouga, with the Cherifs, the great lords, lawyers, and perſons of quality of Herat, came to meet him in ceremony: they offer'd him their preſents, and accompany'd him the remainder of his journy. The laſt day of Chaban he happily came down into the meadow of Kehdeſtan, ſituate without the town of Herat, where he choſe for his reſidence the palace of Bagh Zaghan, which ſignifys the garden of crows; and there he immediately betook himſelf to render juſtice. The governors of Coraſſana, Mazendran and Siſtan, made haſte to pay their homage, and make their preſents to him: the merchants likewiſe made theirs, and the artiſans carry'd each a ſpecimen of their fineſt work. The lords of the countrys, and the governors of the citys, brought him the keys of their reſpective places; and all the ſons of ſovereigns, after having ſent their preſents, congratulated him on his coming to the crown. The night of the 21ſt of Zilhadge 799, which anſwers to the year of the Crocodile, he had a ſon born to him, who had Gemini for his aſcendent; advice of which he immediately ſent to the emperor, who nam'd the child Baiſancar.

Chap. 67.

June 1399.

Sept. 25.

CHAP. LXVIII.

Timur ſtays ſome time at Kech. Return of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan from the campain of Fars.

IN the month of Chaban of the ſame year, Timur departed from Baghi Chemal, paſs'd by Rebatyam, and march'd to the town of Sebz: then he went down into the charming meadow of Kech, where he reſolv'd to encamp. The abundance of beautiful flowers, its verdure, the freſhneſs of the air, the clearneſs of its waters, and the fine gravel which appear'd in its gentle ſtreams, and ſeveral other charms, invited Timur to ſtay there ſome time: but at length he enter'd the town, and lodg'd at Aceſerai, where he ſtaid during the faſt of Ramadan, and the feaſt of Bairam, after which he departed thence, and aſcended a delightful place, nam'd Sultan Artoudge, to ſpend the ſummer in. In the mean while the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who by order of the emperor his father had march'd from Chiraz to Ormuz with ſeveral Emirs and a good army, return'd to court, after the conqueſt of many countrys either by himſelf or lieutenants. He took the road of Darabjerd [1], and Tarom [2], accompany'd by the Emir Gehancha, and having left Seifeddin ſick at Kerbal;

[1] A town of Fars, where they find ſalt of all colors: in the middle of the town is a mountain of free-ſtone, which ſtands ſingle, not joining any other mountains; it lies in long. 89. 40. lat. 31. 40.

[2] A town of Fars near Seirdgian.

ſo he went to Ormuz, exterminating all thoſe who wou'd not ſubmit. The Mirza Rouſtem, ſon of Omar Cheik, march'd thither by the way of Cazeron [3] and Fal [4]. Gelalhamid and other Emirs paſs'd by Gehrom [5] and Lar [6]. The Emir Aidecou Berlas took the road of Kirman [7] and the province of Kidg [8], and Mecran [9], which he pillag'd as far as the plain of Decht Ali. When they were arriv'd at Ormuz, they took at the firſt onſet the ſeven fortreſſes, which are as it were the bulwarks of that kingdom, the ſovereign of which, Mehemet Chah, was conſtrain'd to retire to Gerom, where they oblig'd him to make a peace, and pay an annual tribute of ſix hundred thouſand Dinars, which he ſwore to do. The Mirza left Aidecou and his brother at Giroſt [1], to ſeek the enemy who had hid themſelves: and when he was on his return to Chiraz, he march'd towards the country of Coureſtan, while the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin return'd to court by the way of Yezd. The day that the Mirza departed, a perſon nam'd Jumaleddin, native of the mountain of Firouzcouh, who rode at the ſide of his horſe, ſtruck this prince with a knife: but his hour not being yet come, he was only ſlightly wounded. The villain thinking to ſave his life, got up to the ridge of the mountain, where he trip'd as he was running, Chap. 68.

---

[3] A town of Fars, long. 87. lat. 29.
[4] A town of Fars, long. 87. 30. lat. 28. 30.
[5] A town of Fars, long. 89. lat. 28. 30.
[6] A town of Fars, long. 88. 30. lat. 27. 30.
[7] A kingdom, of which Ormuz, Seirjan, Giroſt, Bam, &c. are citys.
[8] Capital of Mecran.
[9] A kingdom between Kirman and India.
[1] Capital of Kirman, long. 93. lat. 27. 30. four days journy from Ormuz, and two from Seirdgian.

Book III. and falling into a precipice, was kill'd. Some of the prince's domeſtics having purſu'd him to the top of the mountain, perceiv'd the dead body; they cut off his head, and caſt it at the Mirza's feet.

This prince, having ſucceſsfully finiſh'd his campain, reſolv'd to return to court: he departed by the ways of Ouroudgerd, paſs'd by Hamadan, and took the road to Samarcand. Having gone thro Coraſſana, he croſs'd the Gihon, and had the honor to ſalute Timur at the ſummer-palace of Sultan Actoudge. Timur tenderly embrac'd him, talk'd with him in relation to what had paſs'd in the campain he was now return'd from, and diſcover'd a great deal of joy at his arrival. The Mirza fell on his knees to offer his preſents; and on this occaſion there were banquets and public rejoicings. Then Timur return'd to Samarcand, to which place the princeſs Canzade alſo came from Tauris: and when ſhe was near the city, her dear ſon, the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, went to meet her; ſhe had the pleaſure of embracing him, whom ſhe ſo tenderly lov'd, and had ſo long deſir'd to ſee with the greateſt impatience. As ſoon as the princeſs was arriv'd at Samarcand, ſhe went to pay her reſpects to the emperor in the palace of Bagh Boulend; ſhe preſented him with ſtuffs embroider'd with gold, and Arabian horſes with ſaddles of gold: and to compleat this agreeable preſent, ſhe gave to each of Timur's ſons veſts embroider'd with gold.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXIX.

Timur demands in marriage for himſelf the daughter of Keſer Coja Aglen. He celebrates the nuptials of the Mirza Eskender with the princeſs Beghiſi Sultan.

AS it pleas'd Timur often to tie the ſacred knots of marriage, he gave ſeveral veſts, and other great preſents to Chamagehan ſon of Keſer Coja Aglen, and ſent him to his father to demand his ſiſter in marriage: and that this affair might be ſoon concluded, he order'd Cayaſeddin Tercan to accompany him, whom he loaded with preſents and riches. He afterwards went to encamp in the plain of Canigheul without Samarcand, the beauty of which ſurpaſs'd the cabinets of the Chineſe manufactures, for its variety of flowers. The princeſs Melket Aga arriv'd there from Herat: ſhe offer'd her preſents, and after having ſaluted Timur, made a panegyric on him with her uſual eloquence, which inflam'd the whole aſſembly with zeal and affection for him. The emperor order'd that preparations ſhou'd be made for a magnificent banquet, at which the princes his ſons, the Emirs, the Cherifs and Nevians were preſent, being conducted by the Chaoux on horſeback, with their golden wands in their hands. The empreſſes alſo had embroider'd veſts, and veils enrich'd with precious ſtones; and every one appear'd there with an extraordinary ſplendor and pomp. The muſic was much finer than on other occaſions: for the illuſtrious Coja Abdel

Book III. Abdel Cader, author of the book of Edouards, and who was the glory of the paſt ages for his skill in muſic, was there in perſon, and preſided over the reſt. The feaſt laſted three months; and the princeſs Beghiſi Sultan * was there marry'd to the Mirza Eskender, according to the laws of the Alcoran, and the maxims of Mahomet. Then the princeſs Canzade took leave of the emperor to return to Tauris by the way of Bocara.

* Timur's grand-daughter.

CHAP. LXX.

Timur gives orders for making the garden of Dilencha, and building a ſtately palace in it.

An. Dom. 1397. IN the beginning of the autumn of 799, Timur order'd that at the end of the delightful meadow of Canigheul, a garden ſhou'd be laid out, whoſe beauty ſhou'd ſurpaſs all the gardens which had ever yet been in the empire. The aſtrologers made choice of the hour in which they were to begin it, and the artiſts prepar'd the plans to regulate the alleys, and the compartments of the parterres. The painters prepar'd ſome new maſter-piece, to place in the palace which was to be built there: and the moſt skilful architects of Aſia, who liv'd at Samarcand, laid the foundations on a ſquare plan, each ſide of which was fifteen hundred cubits; and in the middle of each was a very high gate. The cielings of the palace were adorn'd with flowers of all ſorts, in moſaic work. The walls were cover'd with porcelane of Cachan. At each

each of the four corners of the garden a very lofty pavillon was erected, cover'd alſo with porcelane, with very delicate ſhadowings, rang'd with admirable art and skill. The parterre of the garden was laid out with perfect ſymmetry in alleys, ſquare-beds, and little wilderneſſes of divers figures. Sycomore-trees were planted on the borders of the alleys; and the compartments on all ſides fill'd with different ſorts of fruit-trees, and others which only bore flowers. When the garden was compleated, Timur gave it the name of Baghi Dilencha, that is, the garden which rejoices the heart. In the middle the foundations of the palace, which was three ſtorys high, were laid; the roofs were exceeding lofty: it was adorn'd with all the beautys which con'd charm the eyes of men: and it was built exceeding ſtrong. It was ſurrounded with a colonade of marble, which gave it a majeſtic aſpect. As it was cuſtomary to dedicate palaces to ſome lady, Timur dedicated this to his new miſtreſs Tukel Canum, daughter of Keſer Coja Aglen king of the Moguls, whom he had ſent Nevians to demand in marriage. The emperor then departed for Tachkunt to meet this princeſs, croſs'd the Sihon, and encamp'd at Dere Ahengheran, near the village of Tchinas, where he paſs'd the winter, after having built houſes, or rather cottages of reeds by reaſon of the weather; which ſort of houſes the Tartars call Couria. Timur went to the village of Iſſi, to viſit the tomb of the Cheik Ahmed Iſaici, one of the ſons of the Imam Zade Mehemet Hanoſi: he caus'd this illuſtrious ſepulcher to be rebuilt, it being partly ruin'd; and he augmented it with a ſuperb edifice, containing a lofty roof, two Minarets, and a dome with four fronts, the ſouth ſide

Chap. 70.

Book III. ſide of which was thirty cubits. Near the great dome was another of twelve cubits with an apartment of four bed-chambers, wherein the tomb of the Cheik is; and on the right and left of the dome are two other apartments of four bed-chambers each. Each apartment is thirteen cubits and a half in length, and ſixteen in breadth; being deſign'd to lodge the readers and their familys, with ſome chambers for ſtrangers who repair thither out of devotion. The walls and the dome were adorn'd with porcelane, and the ſtone of the ſepulcher was of white marble, embelliſh'd with rich ſculptures: and the care of this building was committed to the Moulla Obaidalla Sedre, who got it finiſh'd in two years.

Timur having perform'd his ordinary acts of piety at this place, diſtributed large alms among the keepers of the tomb, and the poor who were there. He then departed from that place; and as ſoon as he was on his return to his camp, advice was brought that the princeſs Toukel Canum was on her march. All the ladys and Emirs of the court took horſe to meet her, according to the orders they had receiv'd: they advanc'd ſixteen days journy, and having met her, ſprinkled gold and precious ſtones upon her head. They preſented horſes to her, and did her all the honor which is due to a great queen; and at each hord they arriv'd at, they made feaſts of the utmoſt magnificence. At length on the third of Rabiulevel of the year of the Hegira 800, they deliver'd this Caidafa * into the hands of our Alexander.

* Thaleſtris, queen of the Amazons, who came to ſeek Alexander, that ſhe might have iſſue of him. *Quintus Curtius.*

The

The emperor gave orders for a feast to be prepar'd, to celebrate the marriage: he commanded the grand Mufti, the Cadis, and doctors of the law, to come before him; and they marry'd him to the beautiful princess Toukel Canum according to the mahometan religion. He was at the same time congratulated by the empresses, the princes his sons, the Emirs and Nevians, who sprinkled upon him precious stones and pearls: and the feast lasted several days. Timur gave vests and considerable gratifications to the Nevians and Mogul ladys who accompany'd the new Sultaness. Chap. 70.

LIBRA OF THE BOMBA BRAN OF THE ASIATI

About this time ambassadors arriv'd from Tangouz Can, emperor of Catai *, with abundance of curious presents. They were introduc'd to their audience by the great Emirs: they offer'd their presents, and after having declar'd the subject of their embassy, and deliver'd their credentials, they had their audience of leave, and return'd home.

* China.

The emperor appointed Mehemed Sultan governor of the frontiers of Mogolistan, ordering him to build a fortress at Achira [3], and use all his care to augment the houses, and have the lands about it sown and cultivated better than they had ever been, and so render this city flourishing. He nam'd for the Mirza's officers, the Emirs Birdi Bei son of Sarbouga, Hadgi Seifeddin, Codadad Husseini, Chamseddin Abbas, and others, with forty thousand horse. Accordingly they departed, and having pass'd the mountain Coulan [4], they went

[3] A town of Mogolistan on the frontiers of China.

[4] A mountain at the extremity of Mogolistan towards China.

to

Book III. to encamp at Achira, the lands of which they caus'd to be cultivated.

In the beginning of the ſpring of the year An. Dom. 800, Timur departed from Tchinas, where he 1398. had paſs'd the winter, to return to Samarcand: he croſs'd the Sihon at Cogende, and happily arriv'd at the ſeat of his empire, from whence he ſet out ſome time after for Kech. On this road there is a mountain about five leagues diſtant from Samarcand, out of which ſprings a river. Timur conſidering that this wou'd be an agreeable place to live in, and that the ſoil was fit for cultivation, order'd a great garden to be made here, and a pleaſure-houſe built on the top of a rock in the middle of it: which being finiſh'd, he gave it the name of Tact Curatche, the black throne.

Two days after he departed, paſs'd by the foot of the mountain, and came to Rebatyam, where the Mirza Charoc, coming from the winter-quarters at Eſterabad, had the honor to kiſs his hands. Timur gave him a handſom reception, and was well pleas'd to ſee him. The Mirza made his preſents, and ſprinkled gold and precious ſtones upon him. Timur then went to Kech, and encamp'd at Eltchi Balec[1]; where he ſpent ſeveral days in the meadows of that place, which were ſo much the more agreeable to him, in that they put him in mind of his infancy, and the infinite favors he had receiv'd from the Almighty, who had rais'd him to the highe pitch of grandure that any conqueror ever ar riv'd at.

[1] A town in the meadow of Kech.

The end of the firſt volume.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 26 June, 2018